

## **1 Nephi**

### **1 Nephi Chapter 1**

1. Well now, let me tell ya 'bout Lehi and his sweet wife Sariah, and their four boys, startin' with the oldest, that's Laman, then Lemuel, Sam, an last but not least, Nephi. The Good Lord warned Lehi to skedaddle outta Jerusalem 'cause he was tellin' folks bout their sins, and they was fixin to take his life. So, he packed up his kin and took a three-day trip into the wild. Nephi got his brothers and headed back to Jerusalem lookin for the records of the Jews. They went through a heap of troubles. They took some of Ishmael's girls to be their wives, grabbed their families, and took off into the wilderness. They had themselves a tough time out there. They wandered all over and finally came to some big ol waters. Nephis brothers turned their backs on him, but he put em in their place and even built himself a ship. They named that spot Bountiful. Then they sailed across them waters to the promised land, and that's just the way it went down, accordin to Nephi; or, in simple terms, I, Nephi, wrote this down myself.

2. Now, Nephi kicked off his story, and his dad Lehi had himself a vision where he saw a fiery pillar and read from a prophecy book. He lifted up his voice to God, talkin bout the Messiah comin and how Jerusalem was gonna be in big trouble if folks didnt change their ways. Those Jews weren't too happy with him neither. This here was all 'round 600 B.C.

3. Well, Im Nephi, born to some real decent folks, so I picked up a bit of knowledge from my daddy. Ive seen my share of hard times, but the Lord sure has favored me plenty; I know a whole lot bout the goodness and mysteries of God, so I figured it was high time I put down what I been up to.

4. Yep, I'm writin' this here record usin my daddy's tongue, mixin in the Jews learnin and that ol Egyptian lingo.

5. And lemme tell ya, I know my record heres as true as Sunday mornin, writin it all out with my own two hands, accordin to what Ive come to know.

6. So, it was in the first year under Zedekiah, the king of Judah, (my dad Lehi had lived in Jerusalem his whole

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

life); and that same year, a whole mess of prophets started preachin' to folks that they better repent, or else that great city Jerusalem was gonna be toast.

7. Well, my daddy Lehi, he was out prayin to the Lord, pourin out all his heart for his people.

8. Then, it happened, as he was prayin', a pillar of fire showed up sittin on a rock right in front of him; he saw and heard a whole lot, and it shook him right down to his boots.

9. Next thing ya know, he went back to his house in Jerusalem, fell onto his bed, feelin mighty overcome by the Spirit and all the things he had just witnessed.

10. And bein all wrapped up in the Spirit, he got swept away in a vision; he saw the heavens opened up and thought he spotted God sittin on His throne, surrounded by a mountain of angels singin and givin praise to Him.

11. Then, he saw One comin down from the heavenly skies, glimmerin brighter than the hot sun at noon.

12. And there were twelve others right behind Him, shinier than the stars in the night sky.

13. They touched down and walked all over the earth; the first one came right up to my daddy, handed him a book, and told him to read it.

14. So, as he read, he got filled to the brim with the Spirit of the Lord.

15. He read loud and clear: Whoa, whoa, to Jerusalem, cause Ive seen all your wickedness! Yep, my father read a bunch about Jerusalem bout how its gonna be destroyed, and the folks there; many are gonna meet their end by the sword, and a whole bunch will be taken on off to Babylon.

16. Now, when my daddy had read and seen all them miraculous things, he couldnt help but shout out to the Lord; somethin like: Your works are truly grand, O Lord God Almighty! Your thrones up high in the heavens, and your power, goodness, and mercy are everywhere on this earth; and since youre merciful, you wont let folks who come to you just fade away!

17. And thats how my daddy spoke when he was givin praise to his God; his soul was just overflowin with joy cause of all the things he had seen, yeah, all that the Lord showed him.

18. Now, me, Nephi, I ain't goin through every little thing my daddy wrote down, cause he jotted down a

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

whole heap of stuff he saw in visions and dreams, and many other things he prophesied and said to his kids, which I ain't gonna cover in full.

19. But Im fixin to tell ya bout my own doings. So, Im makin a shorter version of my dads record, on some plates I made myself; once Ive shortened his record up, then Ill start on my own life story.

20. So, I want yall to know, after the Lord showed my daddy Lehi all these incredible things bout Jerusalem's destruction, he went right out among the people, started prophesyin and tellin them what he saw and heard.

21. But those Jews? They laughed him off cause of what he was sayin; he really did pointed out their wicked ways and how they were full of abominations; and he was sayin what he saw and heard showed clear as day about the Messiah comin and the world bein saved.

22. And when the Jews caught wind of all this, they got real mad at him; just like those old prophets they used to toss out, stone, and kill; they even set their sights on takin his life. But I, Nephi, am here to show ya that the tender mercies of the Lord are for all those Hes chosen, cause of their faith, to make em powerful enough for deliverance.

## **1 Nephi Chapter 2**

1. Well, let me tell ya, the good Lord spoke to my daddy, Lehi, in a dream, sayin': "Y'all are doin' right by me, Lehi, and cause you've been faithful and shared the word I told ya to, folks are fixin' to take ya out."

2. So, the Lord told my father, right there in the dream, "Grab your fam and skedaddle into the wild."

3. And it sure did happen that he followed the good Lord's orders to a T, so he packed up and took off.

4. Next thing ya know, he was off in the wilderness, leavin' behind his home, all his land, gold, silver, and fancy stuff, takin nothin' but his family, some grub, and a couple of tents to camp out.

5. Then he headed down by the edges close to the Red Sea, wanderin' around the wild with his kin, which included my mama, Sariah, and my older brothers, Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

6. After three days of trippin' in the wilderness, he set up his tent by a river in a nice lil valley.

7. So, he built himself a stone altar and made an offering to the Lord, givin thanks to our God up above.

8. He then decided to name that river Laman 'cause it flowed right into the Red Sea, and the valley was settin'

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

close by where it emptied out.

9. When my dad caught sight of that river flowin' on into the sea, he turned to Laman and said: "I sure wish you could be like this river, always flowin' into the fountain of all righteousness!"

10. Then he talked to Lemuel, sayin': "I hope you can be like this here valley, standin strong and steady, never budgin' when it comes to keepin' them commandments from the Lord!"

11. Now, he said all that 'cause Laman and Lemuel were bein real stubborn; they grumbled a whole lot about their daddy, callin' him a dreamer who dragged 'em outta Jerusalem, makin' 'em leave behind their homes, gold, silver, and all their good stuff, just to wander in the wild. They thought he did it cause he was bein' foolish in his head.

12. So Laman and Lemuel, bein' the oldest, kept grumblin' at their daddy. They didnt get nothin 'bout the ways of the God who made 'em.

13. They didn't believe that big ol city of Jerusalem could be taken down, just like the prophets warned. They was a lot like those folks in Jerusalem who were lookin' to do harm to my dad.

14. Well, it so happened that my daddy spoke to 'em right there in the valley of Lemuel, with a whole lotta power, filled with the Spirit, and he made 'em shake in their boots. They got so confounded they didnt even dare say a word against him; so you bet they did as he asked.

15. And my daddy lived in a tent, just so you know.

16. Now, Im Nephi, and even though I was still just a young'un, I was a big fella and mighty curious 'bout the mysteries of God. So I hollered out to the Lord, and lo and behold, He came to see me and softened my heart so I could believe all the words my daddy spoke; thats why I didnt give him any trouble like my brothers did.

17. I chatted with Sam, lettin' him in on what the Lord had shown me through His Holy Spirit. And wouldnt ya know it, he believed me right off.

18. But lemme tell ya, Laman and Lemuel wouldn't listen to me at all; they were hard-hearted, so I cried out to the Lord on their behalf.

19. Then the Lord spoke to me and said, "Hey there, Nephi, youre blessed 'cause you got faith, seein' as youve

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

been seekin me with a humble heart."

20. And as long as ya keep my commandments, youll do well and be led to a land of promise; yep, the best land Ive got laid out for ya.

21. And if your brothers start actin up, theyll be cut off from my presence.

22. But you keep my commandments, and you'll be a ruler and teach those brothers of yours.

23. Just so you know, when they go rebel against me, Ill lay a heavy curse on em, and they wont have no power over your kids unless they turn against me too.

24. And if they do go against me, they'll be a thorn in your kids' sides, tryin' to remind 'em of how to act right.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 3**

1. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, wandered back to the ol tent where my daddy was sittin after chattin with the good Lord.

2. And it came to pass that he sez to me, "Well, I had a mighty dream where the Lord told me you and your brothers gotta head back to Jerusalem."

3. For behold, Labans got them records of the Jews and even a family tree of our kin all fancy-like on plates of brass.

4. So the Lords tellin me yall need to haul it over to Labans place, look for them records, and bring em back out here to the wilderness.

5. And now, I tell ya, your brothers are grumblin, sayin its a tough ask, but shoot, I ain't askin' em, its a commandment straight from the Lord, ya hear?

6. So go on, my boy, 'cause youll be blessed by the Lord for bein' a good sport about it.

7. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, told my daddy, "Im a-goin to do what the Lords asked, 'cause I know He dont give commandments without makin a way for us to get it done."

8. And ol daddy was tickled pink when he heard them words, knowin Id been blessed by the good Lord.

9. So me and my brothers packed up and hit the road in the wilderness, tents all in tow, headin up to the land of Jerusalem.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. And it came to pass that once we reached Jerusalem, me and my brothers started talkin it over mongst ourselves.

11. We decided to cast lots whos gonna go inside Labans house. Well, the lot landed on Laman, and off he went inside to chat with Laban while he was sittin pretty at home.

12. And he asked Laban for them records that were carved on the plates of brass, which had our daddys family tree on it.

13. And behold, Laban got real mad and kicked him outta his place; he wasnt about to hand over them records. He said, "Youre a thief, and Ill put ya down if I have to!"

14. But Laman skedaddled outta there and told us what Laban had done, and we all got real sad, thinkin about headin back to our daddy in the wilderness.

15. But I said to em, "Listen here, as the Lords livin, we aint goin back to our daddy till we do what the Lord told us to do."

16. So lets be true to keepin the commandments of the Lord; we gotta head on down to where our daddys stuff is, cause hes got gold and silver and a whole heap of riches. He did this all 'cause of the Lords commandments.

17. For he knew that Jerusalem was fixin to get destroyed cause folks were bein wicked.

18. For behold, they done turned their backs on the prophets' words. So if my daddy stays in the land after bein told to skedaddle outta there, hed be in deep trouble. So off hes gotta go.

19. And behold, its wise in Gods eyes that we oughta get them records, so we can keep our kids learnin the language of our folks.

20. And also to make sure they got the words thatve been spoken by all the holy prophets from back when the world was first made, right down to now.

21. And it came to pass that I used that kinda talk to get my brothers to be good about keepin Gods commandments.

22. And it came to pass that we headed down to our land, gatherin up our gold, silver, and all the good stuff we could find.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

23. And after we got all that together, we went back up to Labans house.

24. And it came to pass that we went right in there and asked Laban real nice-like to hand over them records on the plates of brass, promising wed give him our gold and silver and all our good stuff.

25. And when Laban laid eyes on our stuff and saw how mighty fine it was, he couldnt help but want it for himself, so he tossed us out and sent his goons after us to take what we had.

26. And it came to pass that we hightailed it away from Labans men, and we had to leave our stuff behind; it ended up in Labans hands.

27. And it came to pass that we ran off into the wilderness, and Labans crew didnt catch up with us, so we found a cozy spot behind a rock to hide.

28. And it came to pass that Laman was all riled up with me and my daddy, and Lemuel was too, listenin to all Lamans fussin. So them two started throwin all kinds of mean words at us younger brothers, and they even hit us with a stick.

29. And it came to pass that while they were whippin us, an angel of the Lord showed up, stood right there, and said to them, Why yall hittin your little brother? Dont ya know the Lords picked him to lead over ya, and thats cause of your wrongdoings? Now youll be a-goin up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will hand Laban over to ya.

30. And right after the angel had said his piece, he took off.

31. And after the angel left, Laman and Lemuel started bellyachin again, sayin, Hows it even possible that the Lords gonna hand Laban over to us? Hes a powerhouse, can command fifty folks, shoot, he could take us down; why not?

## **1 Nephi Chapter 4**

1. Well, it turned out that I hollered at my brothers, sayin, Lets head back up to Jerusalem, yall, and keep the Lords commandments, cause Hes way tougher than all this here earth. So tell me, why aint He stronger than Laban and his fifty fellas, or even all his thousands?

2. So lets go on up; lets be tough like Moses, cause he sure talked to that Red Sea, and it split like a fence in a

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

windstorm. Our folks made it through all right, on dry ground, while Pharaohs armies got themselves drowned in them waters.

3. Now yall know this heres true; and yall also heard an angel speakin to ya, so why in tarnation would yall doubt? Lets go on up; the Lord can save us, just like He did our daddies, and take care of Laban, just like He dealt with them Egyptians.

4. But when I said all this, they were still mad and grumblin on, yet they followed me till we got just outside them Jerusalem walls.

5. And it was nighttime, so I told em to hide outside the walls. After they got themselves hid, I, Nephi, sneaked right into the city and made my way to Labans house.

6. And let me tell ya, I was guided by the Spirit, not knowin beforehand what I was bout to do.

7. But I kept movin forward, and when I got close to Labans house, I spotted a fella who was flat on the ground, 'cause he had too much wine.

8. And when I got to him, I realized it was good ol Laban.

9. I laid my eyes on his sword, pulled it right outta its sheath; that hilt was pure gold, and dang, the craftsmanship was somethin else. That blade was made of the finest steel around.

10. So it happened that the Spirit pressed me to take Laban out; but I thought to myself, Well shoot, I ain't never killed a man before. I recoiled a bit and wished I could just walk away from slayin him.

11. Then the Spirit told me again, Listen here, the Lords handed him over to ya. And I knew he had tried to take my life, and he wouldnt listen to the Lords commandments, plus hed taken our stuff.

12. Then the Spirit said again, "Take him out, 'cause the Lord's put him in your hands.

13. The Lord takes down the wicked to fulfill His good purposes. Better one man take the fall than a whole nation fade away into disbelief.

14. So when I, Nephi, heard all that, I remembered what the Lord told me out in the wild, sayin, As long as your seed keeps my commandments, they'll thrive in the promised land.

15. Yep, and I thought, Ain't no way they can keep the Lords commandments under Moses law if they dont



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

have the law itself.

16. Plus, I knew that the law was all written down on them brass plates.

17. And again, I figured the Lord had put Laban right in my path for a reason, so I could grab the records just like He said.

18. So, I listened to the Spirit, grabbed Laban by the hair, and off came his head with his own sword.

19. After I done that, I took Laban's clothes and put em on me, every last piece; and I strapped on his armor around my waist.

20. Once Id done all that, I headed to Labans treasury. As I walked toward there, I saw Laban's servant, who had the keys to the treasury. I told him in Labans voice to come with me to the cash box.

21. He thought I was Laban, since he saw the garments and my sword strapped on me.

22. He started chattin with me about the Jewish elders, knowin his master had been out with em at night.

23. I talked to him like I was Laban.

24. I also told him I was gonna carry those engravings on the brass plates back to my older brothers waitin just outside the walls.

25. Then I told him to follow me on along.

26. He thought I was talkin bout the church folks, and since I was Laban who had just put the hurt on, he went ahead and followed me.

27. He kept mentionin the Jewish elders as we walked toward my brothers waitin outside.

28. And when Laman saw me, he got so scared he practically jumped outta his skin, and Lemuel and Sam took off runnin. They thought I was Laban and that hed killed me, tryin to take their lives too.

29. So I yelled after em, and they finally heard me and stopped runnin from me.

30. Then when Labans servant saw my brothers, he started shakin all over, ready to bolt back to Jerusalem.

31. Now, I, Nephi, bein a big ol fella and havin gotten some strength from the Lord, grabbed hold of Labans servant and wouldnt let him run off.

32. Then I talked to him, tellin him, If youll listen to what I say, just as the Lord lives and I do too, if youll just

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

listen to our words, well let ya keep your life.

33. I told him with an oath that he didnt need to worry; hed be free like us if he came down into the wilderness with us.

34. And I added, Surely the Lord told us to do this here, so shouldnt we keep His commandments? If youll come down to the wilderness with my father, youll have a spot with us.

35. Then Zoram got his courage from what I said. Zoram was that servant's name, and he swore he would follow us out into the wilderness. He even promised hed stick with us from then on.

36. We were real keen on him stickin with us so them Jews wouldnt catch wind of our getaway into the wild, cause they might come after us and wipe us out.

37. After Zoram swore to us, our worries about him eased up.

38. So, we took them brass plates and Laban's servant, and we set off into the wilderness, making our way to our daddys tent.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 5**

1. Well, it turned out that after we hiked down into the wild to see our daddy, bless his heart, he was just plumb tickled, and my mama Sariah was just downright overjoyed, 'cause she had truly feared somethin bad had happened to us.

2. She thought wed kicked the bucket out there in the wild; and aint no lie, she had a bone to pick with my daddy, tellin him he was just dreamin' too big; sayin: Look here, you done dragged us from our good ol' home, and now my boys are gone, and were all gonna starve out here.

3. Thats the way my mama was goin on bout my daddy.

4. Well, it turned out that my daddy spoke up to her, sayin: Now I know I might be a bit fanciful; 'cause if I hadnt seen the Lords wonders in a dream, I wouldnt know how good He is, and wouldve just stayed back in Jerusalem, perished right alongside my kin.

5. But looky here, Ive got me a mighty fine piece of land thats filled with promise, and let me tell ya, Im happier than a lark; yeah, I just know the Lords gonna save my boys from that Laban feller, and bring em back

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

to us here in the wild.

6. And thats how my daddy Lehi lifted my mama Sariah's spirits, while we were wanderin round in the wild towards Jerusalem to fetch that record of the Jews.

7. When we finally got back to my daddys tent, you best believe they were just grinning from ear to ear, and my mama felt all warm and fuzzy inside.

8. And she piped up, sayin: Well, now I can tell for sure the Lord made my husband hightail it into these woods; yep, and I know down in my bones that the Lords looked after my boys, saved em from Laban, and gave em the strength to do what He told em to do. And thats how she went on.

9. Then it came to pass that they were just over the moon with happiness, and offered up sacrifices and burnt offerings to the Lord; givin thanks to the Good Lord of Israel.

10. After they praised the Lord, my daddy Lehi took them fancy brass plates and started lookin' em over from the get-go.

11. And he saw they had the five books of Moses in em, tellin the tale of how the world got made, and included Adam and Eve, who were our first folks;

12. And there was a record of the Jews goin all the way back to the start, right up to the time Zedekiah was king over Judah;

13. Plus, it had all them prophecies from them holy prophets, goin right from the beginning, even up to when Zedekiah took the throne; as well as a heap of sayings from good ol Jeremiah.

14. Then my daddy, Lehi, spotted a family tree on them plates, and it hit him that he was kin to Joseph; yep, that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, sold down in Egypt, and was kept safe by the Lords hand so he could save his daddy Jacob and the whole family from starvin.

15. And they was also led clean outta captivity and Egypt by that same God who, bless 'em, saved em.

16. So there you have it, my daddy Lehi figured out his family history, and Laban was also from Joseph's bloodline, so no wonder they kept those records safe.

17. Now when my daddy caught wind of all this, he was filled with the Spirit and started prophesyin bout his

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

kids

18. Sayin that these brass plates should be spread far and wide to all nations, kindreds, languages, and folks from his family.

19. So he declared that these plates of brass oughta last forever; aint nobody gonna dull em with time again. And he prophesied a whole bunch about his descendants.

20. And it finally came to pass that me and my daddy had been stickin to the commandments the Lord laid out for us.

21. We got em records that the Lord wanted us to have, searched em high n low and found em to be mighty valuable; yeah, they were worth a whole lot to us, so we could keep the Lords commandments for our younguns.

22. So, it made sense for us to haul em along as we trekked through the wild towards that promised land.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 6**

1. Nephi's scratchin' down the good stuff 'bout the Lordhis goal's to get folks to come on over to the God o' Abraham and find some salvation. 'Bout 600 to 592 B.C., y'all.

2. Well now, I, Nephi, ain't gonna spill the beans 'bout my family's history in this here part o' my writin'; I ain't plannin' to do it later neither on these plates I'm choosin' to scribble on; my daddy's kept that record, so I ain't botherin' with it here.

3. Its enough for me to say were kin to Joseph.

4. And honestly, I ain't too keen on gettin' all detailed 'bout my pops whole story, 'cause it just wont fit on these plates; Im lookin for space to write 'bout the things of the Lord.

5. Truth is, I'm all about tryin' to get folks to come to the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and find their salvation.

6. So, I ain't gonna scribble down what the world finds all shiny and pretty; I'm just fixin' to write what makes the Lord happy and what speaks to folks who ain't caught up in the world.

7. So, Im tellin my kin they best not fill these plates up with stuff that dont matter to the kids of man.

## **1 Nephi Chapter 7**

1. Well, let me tell yall, after my dad, Lehi, got done spoutin prophecies bout his kids, the Lord spoke to him again, sayin it aint right for him to be wanderin through the wilderness all by his lonesome; he needed to make sure his boys found themselves some wives to help bring up little ones for the Lord in that promised land.
2. Then the Lord told him to send me, Nephi, and my brothers back to Jerusalem to fetch Ishmael and his whole clan out to the wilderness with us.
3. So, it happened that me and my brothers set out again in the wild, headin on up to Jerusalem.
4. When we got to Ishmaels place, we found favor in his eyesso much so that we shared with him the good word from the Lord.
5. And sure enough, the Lord softened Ishmael's heart, along with his family's, enough for them to join our little trek down into the wilderness to Dad's tent.
6. As we were makin our way through the wild, wouldnt ya know it, Laman, Lemuel, and two of Ishmael's daughters, along with his two sons and their families started actin all rebellious against usyep, against me, Nephi, Sam, along with their ol man Ishmael and his missus, and his other three daughters too.
7. In that whole ruckus, they was itchin to head back to Jerusalem.
8. So there I was, grievin for them hard-hearted folks, and I told 'em flat out, even to Laman and Lemuel: Now yall are my big brothers, so what in tarnations got you bein so cold-hearted and blind that I gotta show you the way?
9. Why aint yall listenin to the word of the Lord?
10. What in the worlds gotten into you that youve forgotten you saw an angel from the Lord?
11. And why on earth have you all just let slip the great things the Lords done for us, savin us from Laban and makin sure we got the record?
12. And why have you forgotten that the Lord can do whatever He pleases for folks if they just have a little faith? So, lets keep our faith strong, yall.
13. If we stick to our faith, were gonna end up with that promised land, and one day, youll see that the Lords

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

word about Jerusalems destruction is gonna come to pass; everything He said bout destroyin Jerusalems gotta happen.

14. Cause let me tell ya, the Lords Spirit aint gonna hang around with em much longer; theyve already shut out the prophets and thrown Jeremiah in jail. Theyre tryin to take my daddy's life, runnin him outta the land.

15. Now listen here, if you all choose to go back to Jerusalem, yall gonna meet your end right along with em. And if you got any say in it, you best head to higher ground, rememberin what Im tellin ya, cause if you go, its gonna be curtains for ya; thats just how the Spirit of the Lord is pushin me to say it.

16. So, after I laid all that out to my brothers, they wound up gettin' real angry with me. Then they laid hands on me, cause they was furious, and they tied me up good, thinkin they would end my life, leavin me out there to be dinner for critters.

17. But I went to prayin real hard to the Lord, sayin, O Lord, based on my faith in you, will You take me from my brothers grip; give me the strength to break free from these bonds?

18. Then it happened, right after I deciren, those ropes fell right off my hands and feet, and I was standin tall in front of my brothers, ready to talk to em again.

19. But wouldnt ya know it, they got all huffy at me again, tryin to grab me up; but lo and behold, one of Ishmaels daughters, her mama, and one of his sons started talkin' to my brothers, and it softened their hearts enough that they stopped tryin to take my life.

20. Then they felt sorry for their wicked ways, actually kneelin down before me and beggin me to forgive em for what they did.

21. So I told em straight out I forgave em for all that mess, and I urged em to hit their knees and pray to the Lord their God for forgiveness. And they did just that. After they finished prayin to the Lord, we got back on the road, headin toward Dads tent.

22. Finally, we made it down to my daddys tent. After me and my brothers and all of Ishmael's folks got there, they thanked the Lord their God and offered up sacrifices and burnt offerings to Him.

## **1 Nephi Chapter 8**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well, one day, we all got together, bringin every kinda seed you could think of, grains and fruits alike.
2. While Daddy was hangin' out in the wilderness, he started talkin to us, sayin: Yall, I just had a dream; or, ya know, I seen a vision.
3. And lemme tell ya, 'cause of what I saw, I got good reason to feel happy 'bout the Lord, especially for Nephi and Sam; I think they're gonna be alright, and their kiddos too.
4. But I gotta say, Laman and Lemuel, Im mighty worried bout yall; cause in my dream, I thought I saw a dark and dreary wilderness.
5. Then I saw a fella dressed in white robes, standin right in front of me.
6. He started talkin to me and told me to follow him.
7. So, I went on after him, only to find myself in a dark and dreary place.
8. After bein lost in that darkness for hours, I started prayin to the Lord to show me mercy, cause I sure needed it.
9. Eventually, after I prayed, I looked up and saw a big ol open field.
10. Then I spotted a tree with fruit that looked downright happy to eat.
11. As I made my way to that tree, I took a bite of the fruit, and let me tell ya, it was sweeter than anything I ever tasted! And it was whiter than any white I ever seen.
12. When I ate that fruit, it filled my heart with joy, and I started wishing my family could try it too, cause I knew it was better than any other fruit out there.
13. While I was lookin around, hopin' to find my family, I noticed a river of water runnin' right by that tree I was munchin' on.
14. I squinted to see where that river came from, and I spotted your mama Sariah, Sam, and Nephi a little ways off, lookin lost as a ball in high weeds.
15. So, I waved em over, shoutin loud for em to come on over and partake of that fruit, which was the bestest of the best.
16. And wouldnt ya know it, they came over and ate the fruit too.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

17. I was hopin' Laman and Lemuel would join in and try that fruit, so I turned my gaze back up the river to see if I could spot em.

18. I did see em, but they wouldnt come and taste the fruit.

19. Then I saw a rod of iron stretchin' along the riverbank, leadin' right to the tree I was at.

20. There was also a tight, narrow path that ran along with that iron rod, leadin' to the tree and the fountain, clearin to a big ol open field, kinda like a whole new world.

21. I saw a whole mess of folks tryin to get to that path, pushin hard to reach that tree I was by.

22. Then they came onto the path that led to the tree.

23. But then, outta nowhere, a whole cloud of darkness showed up; I mean, it was a thick mist that got so wild, folks lost their way and wandered off.

24. But I saw others pushin through, grabbin hold of that iron rod, and they pressed on through the darkness, hangin on tight til they made it to that fruit.

25. After munchin on the tree fruit, they looked around like they was embarrassed or somethin.

26. I turned my eyes, too, and saw a great big fancy buildin on the other side of that river, floatin way up high above the ground.

27. It was packed with folks, all ages and kinds, wearin fancy clothes, laughin and pointin' fingers at them who was eatin the fruit.

28. Once they tasted that fruit, they got real ashamed cause of folks makin fun of em, and they fell away into paths that were no good and got lost.

29. Now, I, Nephi, aint sharin every single word from my dad.

30. But to make it quick, he saw some more folks closin in, grabbin that iron rod, and makin their way forward, holdin on tight, til they fell down and ate that tree fruit.

31. He also noticed more folks tryin to feel their way towards that big ol fancy buildin.

32. Some ended up drownin in the fountain, and others got lost on strange paths.

33. And boy, was a heap of people wanderin into that strange buildin. After they got in there, they pointed



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

their fingers at me and others who was eatin the fruit, but we just ignored em.

34. These are my daddys words: Anyone who listened to em, well, they fell away.

35. Laman and Lemuel didnt eat the fruit, so my father said.

36. After he finished spillin' the beans 'bout his dream or vision, he said he was plenty scared for Laman and Lemuel; he was worried they'd be cast away from the Lord.

37. He even urged em with all the love of a worried parent, to listen close to him, hopin the Lord would be kind and not cast em off; yeah, my dad preached to em good.

38. And once he was done preachin and prophesyin to em bout a whole mess of things, he told em to keep the Lord's commandments, and he finally stopped talkin to em.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 9**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, Nephi done whipped up two sets o recordscall em the plates of Nephi, yallone sets got all that everyday kinda history, while the smaller ones get all spiritual and stuff. Were talkin round 600592 B.C.

2. Now, my daddy saw a whole heap a things, heard em too, and ran his mouth bout it all while he was livin in a tent down in the valley o Lemuel. And let me tell ya, there was a bunch more things he laid eyes on that aint fit to be scribbled down on these here plates.

3. Now, as Im talkin bout these plates, let me set ya straightthese aint the ones where Im givin a full rundown on my folks story; nope, those plates I call by my very own name, Nephiso thats why they call em the plates of Nephi. And these other plates, well, they go by the same name too.

4. But I done got a message from the Lord sayin I gotta make these plates for a special reason to make sure theres a record of my peoples ministry sittin right there.

5. On the other plates, they oughta have a record o the kings and all the battles and fussin my people has been in; so these plates mainly focus on the ministry, while the other ones are more bout the kings and all that jivin and fussin.

6. So, the Lords told me to make these plates for a smart reason that I reckon I dont quite understand.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. But the Lord, well, He knows everything from the very start; so Hes got a way figured out to get all His work done with His children down here; cause, ya see, Hes got all the power to make sure His words come to pass. And thats how it is. Amen.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 10**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya what Nephi's sayin' here 'bout all that went down.
2. So, I reckon Im gonna note down all the happenings on these here plates bout what I've been up to, my reign, and my work; and I need to yall to know a bit bout my daddy and my brothers too.
3. Well shoot, it happened after my daddy wrapped up splainin' that dream of his, and was givin his folks a good talkin to about bein real careful, he started jawin bout the Jews
4. How theyd end up all wiped out, especially that big ol city Jerusalem, and a whole mess of em would get taken off to Babylon, just like the Lords got it planned. But they gonna come back, and yes-siree, get brought back outta captivity; and once theyre back, they gonna have their rightful land again.
5. Yup, a good six hundred years after Daddy skedaddled outta Jerusalem, the Lord Gods gonna raise up a prophet among them Jewseven a Messiah, or a Savior of the whole dang world.
6. He also chatted bout the prophetsa heap of em had given witness to these things about that there Messiah, or the Redeemer of the world.
7. So, yall see, all mankind was in a real bad spot, lost and down in the dumps, and it ain't gonna change unless they lean on that Redeemer.
8. And he said thered be a prophet comin before the Messiah, to get things ready for the Lord
9. Yep, this fella's gonna stomp out into the wilderness yellin: Get ready for the Lord, and make sure his paths are all straight and tidy; cause theres one amongst you that yall dont even know yet; he's way more powerful than me, and I ain't even fit to untie his shoelaces. Daddy yapped on quite a bit bout this.
10. And my daddy said hed be baptizin over in Bethabara, beyond the Jordan; also, hed be usin water for itall ready to dunk the Messiah in that water.
11. And once he dunks the Messiah, hes gonna see and testify that he went and baptized the Lamb of God,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

whos takin away all the sins in the world.

12. Then, not long after my daddy said all this, he started talkin to my brothers bout that gospel thatd be preachin to the Jews, and how the Jews were losin their faith. After they go and kill the Messiah whos comin, hed shuck off this mortal coil, rise up from the dead, and make himself known to the Gentiles by the Holy Ghost.

13. Yep, Daddy went on bout the Gentiles and the house of Israel, like theyre compared to an olive tree, with branches gettin clipped off and scattered all over the world.

14. So, he said we gotta be all on the same page headin to the promised land, fulfillin' the word of the Lord that wed be scattered all over this here earth.

15. And after they get scattered, they gonna be pulled back together again; or, better yet, once the Gentiles get all the goodness of the Gospel, the natural branches of that olive tree, or the leftover folks from Israel, gonna be put back in there, and theyll finally know who the real Messiah is, their Lord and Redeemer.

16. So, in this way, my daddy prophesied and had a good ol' talk with my brothers, and he shared a whole bunch more stuff that I ain't writin' down here; just what seemed fitting for me to jot down in this book.

17. And all this stuff I been talkin' bout happened while my daddy was livin in a tent out in the valley of Lemuel.

18. Then after I, Nephi, had listened to every word my daddy spoke bout the things he saw in that vision, and all that he said by the power of the Holy Ghostwhich he got through faith in the Son of God, whos the Messiah cominI, Nephi, wanted just as much to see, hear, and know these things by the Holy Ghosts power, which is a gift from God to anyone whos serious about searchin for him, just like folks did back in the day and even now.

19. Cause he aint changed a lick from yesterday, today, or forever; and the ways all laid out for folks from the very beginning, if they just repent and come to him.

20. Cause if ya really lookin for it, you gonna find it; and the mysteries of God gonna be revealed to ya, by the power of the Holy Ghost, just like it was back then and how itll be in times to come; so, the way of the Lords like a big ol circle that just keeps on goin.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. So, yall remember this, man, cause for all you do, you gonna have to face judgment.

22. If youve been up to no good during your time here, then you gonna find yourself unclean before Gods judgment seat; and ain't no unclean thing sittin with God; so, best believe, you gonna be cast off for good.

23. And the Holy Ghost gives me the authority to talk about all this, and I ain't gonna back down from it.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 11**

1. Well, let me tell ya, after I got real curious bout what my daddy had seen, I figured the good Lord could let me in on it too. So, I was sittin there, deep in thought, when I got snatched away in the Spirit of the Lord, yes sir, to a mighty tall mountain, one I ain't never laid eyes on before, and sure nough never set foot on either.

2. Then the Spirit asked me, "What in the world do ya want?"

3. And I told em, "I wanna see them things my daddy laid eyes on."

4. The Spirit hit me back with, "Do ya really believe your father saw that tree he talked bout?"

5. And I replied, "Yep, you know I believe every word my dad said."

6. Then right after I said that, the Spirit shouted real loud, saying, "Hallelujah to the Lord, the most high God; 'cause Hes God over all the earth, above everything else. And bless your heart, Nephi, 'cause you got faith in the Son of the most high God; youre gonna see what you been askin for."

7. Then the Spirit went on to say, "Looky here, this is gonna be your sign; after you see that tree with the fruit your father tasted, youre gonna see a man comin down from heaven, and youll bear witness; and after you see him, youll know hes the Son of God."

8. Well, the Spirit told me, "Look!" And when I looked, I saw this tree, and it was just like the one my father saw; oh, the beauty of it was beyond compare, and it shone whiter than any snow you ever seen.

9. After I laid eyes on that tree, I said to the Spirit, "Well, you showed me a tree thats more precious than anything else."

10. And he asked me, "What do you want?"

11. I said, "I wanna know what it meanstalkin to him just like you would another fella; I could tell he was in the shape of a man, but I knew he was the Spirit of the Lord; and he talked to me just like a buddy would."

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

12. Then, the Spirit said, "Look!" And I turned to see him, but he was gone from my sight.
13. Then I looked around and saw the big city of Jerusalem, along with a few other towns. I noticed Nazareth, and in that town, I caught sight of this virgin, and she was just the prettiest thing you ever laid eyes on.
14. Then the heavens opened up, and an angel came down and stood right in front of me, sayin, "Nephi, what do you see?"
15. I told him, "I see a virgin, more beautiful than any other."
16. And he asked me, "Do ya know bout the condescension of God?"
17. I said, "I know He loves His children; but truth be told, I dont fully get the meaning of everything."
18. He said, "Well, that virgin you're seein' is the mother of the Son of God, in the flesh."
19. Then I saw her taken away in the Spirit; and after some time, the angel said to me, "Look!"
20. And I turned to see the virgin again, holdin a baby in her arms.
21. And the angel told me, "Take a gander at the Lamb of God, the Son of the Eternal Father! Do ya know what that tree your daddy saw means?"
22. I replied, "Yeah, its the love of God, spreadin through the hearts of folks; that makes it the most desired of all things."
23. And he said, "Thats right, its the most joyful thing for the soul."
24. After he said that, he told me, "Look!" I looked, and saw the Son of God walkin' among the people; and I saw a whole crowd fall down at his feet, worshipin him.
25. Then I saw that rod of iron my father talked about, and it was the word of God leadin to the fountain of livin waters, or to the tree of life; and those waters, they stand for Gods love; and I saw that tree of life stood for Gods love too.
26. The angel said again, "Look and see the condescension of God!"
27. So, I looked and saw the Redeemer of the world, just like my daddy mentioned; and I also saw the prophet whod prepare the way for him. The Lamb of God went on and got baptized; and after that, I witnessed the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost came down from heaven, restin on him like a dove.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

28. Then I watched him ministerin to the people, all in power and glory; and folks were gatherin round to hear him; but I also saw them throw him out.

29. And I caught sight of twelve more folk followin' him. It happened that they were taken away in the Spirit right in front of me, and I couldnt see em no more.

30. Then the angel spoke to me again, sayin, "Look!" And I looked, and behold, the heavens opened up again, and angels were comin down to the people; and they were ministerin to em.

31. Then he said to me again, "Look!" And I turned and saw the Lamb of God walking among the folks. I saw a whole bunch of people sick and afflicted with all kinds of diseases, havin devils and bad spirits; and the angel showed me all those things. They got healed by the power of the Lamb of God, and those devils and bad spirits were cast out.

32. Then the angel spoke to me again, sayin, "Look!" And I looked and saw the Lamb of God being taken by the people; yes sir, the Son of the everlasting God was judged by the world; and I witnessed it and can testify.

33. I, Nephi, saw him lifted up on that cross and slain for the sins of the world.

34. After he was slain, I saw the multitudes of folks gathered round, ready to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; and thats what the twelve were called by the angel of the Lord.

35. The earths folks were all gathered up; and I laid my eyes on a big fancy building, just like the one my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spoke to me again, sayin, "Look at the world and its wisdom; see, the house of Israel has come together to fight the twelve apostles of the Lamb."

36. Then I saw and can testify that that big fancy building was the pride of the world; and it fell, oh boy, it fell hard. And the angel of the Lord spoke to me again, sayin, "Thats how all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people gonna be destroyed if they fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb."

## **1 Nephi Chapter 12**

1. Well, it all started when the angel told me, "Hey there, take a gander at yer folks and yer kin." So I looked around and saw that land of promise, and there were folks everywhere, Im tellin ya, like grains of sand out by the beach.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. Then I noticed a whole bunch of folks fixin to battle each other; there was wars and all sorts of talk about em, with some mighty fierce fights goin on among my people.
3. Next thing, I witnessed generations goin by, all wrapped up in their fussin and fightin on that land; I saw so many towns, I swear, I stopped tryin to count em.
4. Then I caught sight of this thick mist hangin over the land of promise, and I saw lightnin flashin, heard thundering, felt the ground shakin, and heard all kinds of ruckus. The earth cracked and the rocks broke apart; mountains were fallin apart and the flatlands got busted up real good. I saw places all sunk down and others burnin up, and some just dropped to the ground cause it was shakin so bad.
5. After all that, I noticed the dark mist liftin off the earth, and wouldnt ya know it, I saw a bunch of folks who hadnt gone down cause the Lords mighty judgments hadnt taken em.
6. Then I saw the skies open up, and the Lamb of God was comin down from heaven; He showed Himself right there.
7. I also saw and can tell ya that the Holy Ghost came down on twelve other fellas, and they were called by God to do His work.
8. The angel then spoke to me, sayin, Look over yonder at them twelve disciples of the Lamb, theyre picked to help yer family.
9. He went on to say, Yremember them twelve apostles? Well, theyre the ones wholl be judgin the twelve tribes of Israel; so yer twelve ministers will be under their watch, cause yall are from the house of Israel.
10. And these twelve ministers I beheld will judge yer kin. Let me tell ya, theyre righteous forever; cause of their faith in the Lamb of God, their clothes got made white in His blood.
11. Then the angel said to me, Look there! and I did, and I saw three generations goin by in righteousness, and their garments were as white as the Lamb of God. The angel told me, These folks are white cause of the Lambs blood, cause they put their faith in Him.
12. I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation passin on in righteousness.
13. Then I saw the folks from the earth all gather together.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. The angel said to me again, Look at yer seed and the seed of yer kin."

15. I looked and saw that my folks were all clustered up against my kin, and they was all fixin to fight.

16. The angel said to me, You seen that dirty ol fountain your daddy talked about? Yeah, that river he mentioned? Well, its depths are bottomless like hell.

17. And the mists of darkness? Thats just the devils temptations messin with folks heads, makin em blind and hardenin their hearts, leadin em off down them wide roads where they end up lost.

18. And that big fancy building, your dad laid eyes on, its just folks pride and wild imaginations runnin wild. Theres a huge, scary gap between em; kinda like the justice of the Eternal God and the Lamb of God, who the Holy Ghost has been tellin folks about since time began.

19. While the angel was sayin all this, I saw that my kin was fightin against my folks, just like the angel said. Cause of the pride my folks had, and the devils tricks, I saw that my kin was winnin over my people.

20. I beheld how the folks from my kin had beaten my folks; they was movin in great numbers cross the land.

21. Then I spotted em all gathered up, and there was wars and rumors of em all around; among em, I saw many generations just fade away.

22. The angel said to me, Look here, theyre gonna fall away into disbelief.

23. And it just so happened that after they lost their way, they turned into a dark, no-good, filthy bunch, lazy like and full of all kinds of wickedness.

## **1 Nephi Chapter 13**

1. Well, let me tell ya, one day that angel came a-talkin' to me, sayin': "Looky here!" So I gave it a glance and saw a whole mess of nations and kingdoms.

2. Then the angel asks me, "What're ya seein'?" And I told him, "I see a whole bunch of nations and kingdoms."

3. And he said, "These here are the nations and kingdoms of them Gentiles."

4. Next thing ya know, I spotted this big ol' church poppin' up among them Gentiles.

5. The angel pointed out, sayin': "Check out this church that's downright horrible, worse than any other one,



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

that goes 'round causin' harm to the saints of God, torturin' 'em, and puttin' chains on 'em, heavy as iron, draggin' em into captivity."

6. I looked closer and saw that big bad church; turns out, the devil founded it.

7. Then I noticed gold, silver, fancy silks, and scarlet threads, and all kinds of nice clothes; I also saw plenty of ladies of ill repute.

8. The angel spoke again, sayin': "See all that gold, silver, silk, and fine clothes? That's what this nasty church craves."

9. And for the world's glory, they done went destroyin' the saints of God, dragging 'em into captivity.

10. I looked around and saw a whole lotta water, keepin' the Gentiles separated from my kin.

11. Then the angel told me: "Lift yer eyes, the wrath of God is on your kinfolk."

12. I saw a fella among the Gentiles, way far away from my family 'cause of all that water; I watched the Spirit of God come down and work on him, and he set out on them waters to reach my kin who were in that promised land.

13. Before long, I saw the Spirit of God workin' on other Gentiles too; they were makin' their way outta captivity on those waters.

14. I noticed a heap of Gentiles in the promised land; I also saw God's anger sittin' on my folks, scatterin' 'em before the Gentiles and givin' 'em a good ol' smackin'.

15. And I saw the Spirit of the Lord with them Gentiles, helpin' em thrive and claim that land for themselves; they looked white and fair as my folks used to be before the trouble started.

16. I, Nephi, saw that them Gentiles who made it outta captivity humbled themselves before the Lord, and the Lord's power was right there with 'em.

17. I also saw their mama Gentiles gatherin up on the waters and land, gettin ready to tussle with em.

18. I realized Gods power was with them, and His wrath was heavy on those folks comin together against em.

19. I, Nephi, realized that the Gentiles who broke free from captivity were saved by Gods might from all those other nations.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

20. Next thing I knew, I saw that they were doin' well in the land; and I spotted a book bein passed around among em.

21. The angel asked me, You know what that book's all about?

22. I told him, Nope, not a clue.

23. He replied, Well, it came straight outta the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, looked again, and he said: "What you're lookin' at is a history of the Jews, chock-full of the Lord's promises to the house of Israel; it also has lots of prophecies from the holy prophets; it's a record kinda like whats on the brass plates, just not as many; but it surely has the Lords promises, and its worth a whole lot to the Gentiles."

24. Then the angel of the Lord said to me: You saw that book come outta a Jew's mouth; when it did, it had the fullness of the Lord's gospel, the one those twelve apostles are shoutin' about; and theyre tellin it like it is, based on the truth found in the Lamb of God."

25. So, you'd see these things comin' from the Jews, all pure-like, straight to the Gentiles, based on the truth that is in God.

26. And after the twelve apostles hand it down, you notice that awful church comin' together, which is the worst of all; cause they took away a whole lotta the gospel of the Lamb, messin' with precious pieces, and theyve also taken many of Gods promises.

27. All that fuss was to make folks go astray, blindin their eyes and hardenin their hearts.

28. So, you see after that books traveled through the hands of that nasty church, theres a heap of simple and precious things taken out, from the Lamb of Gods book.

29. And once those simple things were gone, it spread across all them Gentile nations; and after it hit all them nations, even over all the waters you spotted with the Gentiles who escaped captivity, you see that because of those missing simple and precious things, folks get all mixed up, even to the point where ol Satan wields great power over em.

30. But you can see that those Gentiles who got outta captivity and got lifted by God above all others are livin on a special piece of land, the one God promised your daddy for his kids' inheritance; if not, then God wont let

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

those Gentiles wipe out all your folks mixed in with em.

31. And He wont sit back and let them Gentiles destroy your kin.

32. That good Lords not gonna stand by and let them Gentiles stay in that sorry state of blindness you see on 'em, cause of the precious pieces of the gospel of the Lamb that that nasty church kept to itself.

33. So the Lamb of God says: Ill show mercy to the Gentiles, to the remnant of the house of Israel when I judge 'em.

34. Then the angel of the Lord talked to me again, sayin: Look, the Lamb of God said, after I drop in on the remnant of the house of IsraelIm talking bout your daddys folksso after I visit em in judgment, and I smack em by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles trip up real bad cause of those simple and precious pieces of the Lambs gospel that that nasty church kept hidden, the mother of all harlots will say, that LambIll show mercy to the Gentiles that day, bringin em a lot of my gospel thatll be plain and precious, says the Lamb."

35. Cause, listen up, says the Lamb: Im gonna reveal myself to your kin so they write a heap of things Im gonna teach em, whichll be plain as day; and once your kin get wiped out, and their belief's gone down the drain, even your brethren's seed, just know all this will be tucked away and then brought out for the Gentiles, by my power, the Lamb's gift."

36. And in those records, my gospels gonna be written, says the Lamb, along with my rock and my salvation.

37. And bless those who strive to bring my Zion to life that day, for theyll have the gift and the strength of the Holy Ghost; and if they keep going 'til the end, theyll be lifted up on the last day, saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoever spreads good news, talkin about joy, itll be beautiful pon the mountains.

38. Then I saw the remnant of my kin, and also that book of the Lamb of God, which came outta the mouth of the Jew, makin' its way from the Gentiles to the remnant of my family.

39. And after that book reached em, I noticed some other books comin through the power of the Lambgoing from the Gentiles to em, convinvin the Gentiles and the remnant of my folks, plus the Jews scattered all over, that the prophets records and those twelve apostles of the Lamb are right on the money.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

40. Then the angel said to me: These last records you seen among the Gentiles gonna confirm the truth of the first onesthe twelve apostles of the Lamband will show the plain and precious things that got taken away from em, and will let all folks know, of every kind, tongue, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Everlastin Father, the Savior of this world; and everyones gotta come to Him, or they aint gonna be saved."

41. And they gotta come followin the words thatll be laid down by the mouth of the Lamb; and them words of the Lamb will be writ down in the records of your kin, just like theyll be in the records of those twelve apostles of the Lamb; so both gonna come together as one theres one God and one Shepherd watchin over all the earth.

42. And the time's comin when Hes gonna show Himself to all nations, both Jews and Gentiles; and after Hes shown to the Jews and also the Gentiles, then Hell reveal Himself to both again, and the last shall be first, while the first shall be last.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 14**

1. Well, let me tell ya, one day, if them Gentiles listen up to the Lamb of God, Hes gonna show Himself right clear to 'em, both in talkin and in powerful actions, takin away all them things trip em up

2. If they dont harden their hearts against the Lamb of God, theyll be counted with your kin, the seed of your father; yep, they'll be part of the house of Israel; and theyre gonna be a mighty blessed folks on that promised land forever; they ain't gonna be dragged off into captivity no more; and the house of Israel wont be left confused again.

3. And that big ol pit, dug by that nasty, abominable church, which was set up by the devil and his little ones, just to lead folks down to hellyep, that big pit meant to destroy folks will be filled back up by them that dug it, bringin' em to their own end, says the Lamb of God; not just the death of the soul, unless it's thrown into that hell that just dont quit.

4. For ya see, this heres how the devil holds folks captive, and its also about Gods justice comin down on all them who go about doin wickedness and nasty stuff in front of Him.

5. Then that angel started talkin to me, Nephi, sayin': Ya seen it, if the Gentiles turn their ways, things gonna

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

go well for 'em; and ya know about the Lord's promises to the house of Israel; and ya heard that whoever dont repent is bound to meet their end.

6. So, watch out, Gentiles, if ya end up hardenin your hearts against the Lamb of God.

7. 'Cause the times comin, says the Lamb of God, when Ill be doin a mighty fine and marvelous work among folks; a work thatll last forever, on either sideeither gonna convince em to find peace and eternal life, or turn em over to their hard hearts and blind minds, draggin em down into captivity and ruin, both in this life and the next, thanks to the devils grip, which Ive mentioned.

8. And then when the angel had said all that, he asked me: Ya remember the Fathers promises to the house of Israel? I said, Yup, I do.

9. And then the angel pointed at that big ol church, the mother of all treacheries, started by the devil himself.

10. And he told me: Look here, theres only two churches; ones the church of the Lamb of God, and the others the devils church; so, whoever aint part of the church of the Lamb is with that great big ol church, the mother of all evils; and shes the whore of the whole earth.

11. Next thing I knew, I laid my eyes on that whore of the earth, sittin on a mess of waters; she had control over all the earth, across all nations, kin, tongues, and peoples.

12. Then I saw the church of the Lamb of God, and their numbers were few 'cause of all the wickedness comin from that whore sittin on them waters; but I also saw that the Lambs saints were spread across the entire earth; their reigns were tiny, what with all the wrongdoings from that big ol' whore I was seein.

13. Well, I saw that great mother of evils gatherin heaps of folks from all over to come together and fight against the Lamb of God.

14. And I, Nephi, peeped at the power of the Lamb comin down on the saints of the church of the Lamb, and on the Lord's covenant folks who were all over the earth; they were loaded up with right livin and the power of God shinin bright.

15. Then I noticed the wrath of God was bein poured out on that great and abominable church, so much so that wars and murmurs of wars shook up all the nations and kin of the earth.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

16. And when them wars kicked off among all them nation folks belonging to the mother of evils, the angel spoke to me, sayin: Look out, the wrath of Gods settin in on the mother of harlots; and boy, youre seein all this

17. Then, when the day rolls around that the wrath of God spills down on that mother of harlots, that great nasty church of the earth that the devil started, well, on that day, the Fathers work's gonna kick off, preparin the way to fulfill His promises He's made to His people from the house of Israel.

18. Then that angel spoke again, sayin: Look!

19. So I looked and saw a fella, wearin a white robe.

20. And the angel told me: Theres one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

21. Yep, hes gonna see and write down all these things thats left; and hell also write about the end of the world.

22. So, what hes gonna write is straight and true; and guess what, its all writ down in that book you saw comin' outta the mouth of that Jew; and when it came outta his mouth, it was clear and pure, and the most precious, easy for folks to understand.

23. And lookee here, the things that this apostle of the Lambs gonna write include lots of stuff youve already seen; and the rest of it youre gonna witness too.

24. But the stuff youll see comin up next aint for you to write down; cause the Lord Gods got it set up that the apostle of the Lambs the one to write those.

25. Plus, theres others whove seen everything too, and theyve written to that effect; and its all sealed up to come out in their good time, pure as can be, according to the truth in the Lamb, for the house of Israel.

26. And I, Nephi, heard and bear witness that the name of that apostle of the Lamb was John, just like the angel said.

27. And look, I, Nephi, am told I cant write the rest of what I saw and heard; so what Ive written is enough for me; and I reckon Ive only shared a little bit of what I saw.

28. And I swear I saw the same things my daddy saw, and the Lords angel made all that known to me.

29. Now Im fixin to wrap up what Ive said about what I saw while I was swept up in the Spirit; and if not

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

every little thing I witnessed is jotted down, know this: what Ive wrote is true. And thats how it is. Amen.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 15**

1. Well, it just so happened that after I, Nephi, got all caught up in the Spirit and seen a whole mess of things, I made my way back to my daddy's tent.
2. So, I looked over and saw my brothers gettin all worked up and arguin 'bout what my daddy had been yappin about.
3. Now, lemme tell ya, he sure talked a heap of big stuff to 'em, but it was hard to make sense of unless a feller took it straight to the Lord; but since their hearts were all hard as rocks, they didn't bother lookin to Him like they shoulda.
4. And here I was, real bothered 'bout how hard-headed they were, and also 'bout the wild things I had seen, knowin that they was gonna happen cause folks were just as wicked as they come.
5. And I got all overwhelmed by my troubles, thinkin my troubles was bigger than anything else, mainly cause of what happened to my people; I had seen their downfall, ya know?
6. But after I found some strength, I turned to my brothers, wantin to know why they was fussin so much.
7. They said to me: We just can't make heads or tails of what our daddy was talkin about with them there olive tree branches and them Gentiles.
8. And I asked 'em: Well, have yall asked the Lord bout it?
9. They told me: Nope, we ain't; it seems like the Lord aint spillin the beans to us on that.
10. So I said: How come yall dont keep the Lords commandments? How come yall gonna perish 'cause your hearts are so hard?
11. Dont yall remember what the Lord has said? If yall dont harden your hearts and ask me in faith, really believein that youll get it, and put in the effort to keep my commandments, I promise yall these thingsll be revealed to ya.
12. Im tellin ya, our daddy said the house of Israels like an olive tree, blessed by the Spirit of the Lord that was in him; and just look at us, we ain't split off from the house of Israel, were part of it, ain't we?

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

13. Now, when our daddy talked about bringin them natural branches back in through the fullness of the Gentiles, what he meant was that in the last days, when our descendants are swimmin in doubt for a long spell after the Messiah shows up in the flesh to folks, then the fullness of the gospel of the Messiah will come to the Gentiles, then back to whats left of our folks

14. And on that day, them left behind will realize theyre from the house of Israel, and theyre the Lords covenant people; and then theyll really know their ancestors and the gospel of their Redeemer, which was shared with their daddies by Him; and that's how they'll come to know their Redeemer and understand His teachings, so they can find their way to Him and be saved.

15. And on that day, dont yall reckon they'll be shoutin and givin thanks to their eternal God, their rock and their rescue? Yep, on that day, won't they be drawin strength and good nourishment from the real vine? Will they not wander into the true fold of God?

16. Well, let me tell ya, yes sir, they sure will be remembered again among the house of Israel; theyll be grafted back in, bein a natural branch of that olive tree, into the real olive tree.

17. And thats where our daddy was goin with his talk; he means its not gonna happen 'til after they get scattered by the Gentiles; and itll come through them Gentiles, so the Lord can show off His power to them, cause Hell be rejected by the Jews or the house of Israel.

18. Now, our daddy ain't just talkin bout our folks alone; he's got all the house of Israel in mind, pointin to the promise thatll come to pass in the last days; that promise the Lord gave to our daddy Abraham, sayin: Through your seed, all the folks on this earth will be blessed.

19. And I gotta say, I talked a whole lot to them about this stuff; yep, I went on bout the comeback of the Jews in the last days.

20. And I recounted to them what Isaiah was sayin about the Jews restoration; and once they're back, they won't be confounded no more, nor scattered again. It came to pass that I said a whole bunch to my brothers, gettin em all calmed down so theyd humble themselves before the Lord.

21. Then they spoke up to me again, askin: What does this dream our daddy had mean? Whats up with that



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

tree he saw?

22. And I told em: It was a picture of the tree of life.

23. They asked, whats that iron rod our daddy saw that led to the tree?

24. And I said that was the word of God; anyone who listens closely to that word and holds on tight wont ever be lost; nothin that tempts em or the devils missiles can take 'em away into darkness and destruction.

25. So I, Nephi, told em straight to pay attention to the word of the Lord; I put all my heart into it, beggin em with every bit of strength I had, to remember the word of God and keep His commandments all the time.

26. They asked me: Whats that river of water our daddy saw?

27. And I responded that water my daddy saw was nasty; he was so caught up in other thoughts that he didnt see how filthy that water was.

28. I told 'em it was a terrible chasm, separatin the wicked from the tree of life and from the saints of God.

29. I said it was a picture of that awful hell, which an angel told me was made for the wicked.

30. And I mentioned that our daddy had seen how Gods justice splits the wicked from the righteous; and its brightness was like a hot flame, risin up to God forever and ever, with no end in sight.

31. Then they asked me: Does this mean folks will have bodily torment in this life, or does it refer to what happens to the soul after this life, or is it about the temporary stuff?

32. And I said to them that it shows things both temporary and spiritual; 'cause the days a-comin when they gotta stand before God to be judged for what they done, even the actions taken by their bodies during their time here.

33. So if they up and die in their wickedness, they gotta be cut off from the things pertaining to righteousness, and stand before God to get judged; if their works were all filthy, then they gotta be filthy; and if theyre filthy, it just means they aint gonna be livin in the kingdom of God; if so, then the kingdom of God must be filthy too.

34. But listen here, Im tellin yall, the kingdom of God aint filthy, and no unclean thing can enter there; and that means theres gotta be a place for all that filthiness.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

35. And sure enough, theres a place made for them, yep, that awful hell I been talkin about, and the devils the one who set that up; so the final spot for folks souls is either in the kingdom of God or gettin kicked out cause of that justice I mentioned.

36. Thats why the wicked get turned away from the righteous, and from that tree of life whose fruit is the most precious and desirable of all fruits; yep, its the greatest gift God has to offer. And thats how I laid it all out for my brothers. Amen.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 16**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya, after I, Nephi, wrapped up talkin to my brothers, they turned to me and said: You sure got a way of givin us some tough news, things we just cant handle.

2. So I replied, I know I've said some mighty harsh things 'bout the wicked folks, just spillin' the truth; Ive lifted up the good folks, tellin em theyll get their just rewards come judgment day; but the guilty ones, they just cant take the truth, cause it cuts em right to the heart.

3. Now listen here, my brothers, if yall were righteous and open to the truth, walkin straight with God, you wouldnt be complainin bout the truth, sayin, You got it out for us with all these hard words.

4. Then I, Nephi, put in a good word to my brothers, makin sure they kept the Lords commandments with a whole lotta effort.

5. And wouldnt you know it, they humbled themselves before the Lord; I was feelin pretty good and hopeful that theyd stick to the straight and narrow.

6. All this chit-chat went down while our daddy was livin in a tent down in the valley he liked to call Lemuel.

7. So then, I, Nephi, went and married one of Ishmaels daughters; my brothers did the same, and Zoram, well, he grabbed the eldest daughter of Ishmael too.

8. You see, my daddy had checked off all the boxes on the Lords to-do list for him, and bless my heart, I, Nephi, received major blessings from the Lord too.

9. Then one night, the voice of the Lord came to my daddy, tellin him to pack up his things come morning cause we were headin into the wilderness.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. When daddy rose up the next mornin, and stepped outside the tent, he was mighty surprised to find a shiny round ball made of fine brass sittin there; and inside that ball were two spindly things pointin the way we needed to go in the wilderness.

11. So we gathered up all the stuff we could carry into the wild, takin along every bit of food the Lord had provided, includin seeds of every sort for plantin.

12. Next thing you know, we took our tents and set off into the wilderness, crossin the river Laman.

13. We trekked on for about four days, mostly headin south-southeast, then we pitched our tents again and named the spot Shazer.

14. After that, we grabbed our bows and arrows and headed out into the wild to hunt some grub for our families; and once we stocked up, we returned to our loved ones at Shazer. Then we hit the trail again, stickin to the most fertile parts of the wilderness near the Red Sea.

15. We traveled for what felt like a heap of days, huntin the whole way with our bows, arrows, rocks, and slings.

16. We followed that balls instructions, keepin us in the best parts of the wild.

17. After a bunch of days on the road, we set up our tents for a spell, so we could catch our breath and find some food for our crew.

18. So there I was, Nephi, out huntin when, bless my luck, I broke my bow made of fine steel; my brothers got real mad 'cause we didnt bring back any food.

19. And we returned empty-handed to our families, and folk were tired and hungry from the travelin, sufferin real bad cause of the lack of grub.

20. Next thing you know, Laman, Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael started complainin something fierce, grumblin bout the hardships of bein out in the wild; even my daddy started grumblin at the Lord his Godfolks were all super sorrowful, murmur in and all.

21. Well, I, Nephi, was feelin the weight of those struggles with my brothers cause I lost my bow, and theirs couldnt shoot anymore neither; things got real tough cause we just couldnt find any food.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

22. So I spoke my piece to my brothers, tryin to get em to soften their hearts, cause they was just complainin against the Lord again.

23. There I was, Nephi, whittlin a bow from some wood, and makin an arrow from a straight stick; I armed myself with my bow and arrow, and I even had a sling and some stones. Looked at my daddy and asked, Where should I go to find us some food?

24. He started askin the Lord, cause theyd humbled themselves after I put my heart into my words.

25. Then the voice of the Lord came to my daddy and brought him back down to earth for all the grumblin hed been doin, leavin him in some deep sorrow.

26. And the voice of the Lord said to him, Look at that ball and pay close attention to whats written on it.

27. When my daddy saw what was on that ball, he got scared and trembled all over, and so did my brothers, the sons of Ishmael, and our wives too.

28. I, Nephi, saw that the pointers on the ball worked according to the faith, energy, and attention we put into it.

29. There was also some new stuff written on it that was clear as day, givin us insight on the Lords ways; and that writin changed from time to time just like our faith and hard work did too. So ya see, little old things can lead to big ol outcomes when it comes to the Lord.

30. Then I, Nephi, climbed my way up to the top of the mountain, just like the ball told me to.

31. And I went out and hunted some wild game, gettin us food for our families.

32. Finally, I came back to the tents, draggin the beasts Id caught; and when they saw I brought home some food, their joy was off the charts! They humbled themselves before the Lord and gave thanks.

33. Then we took off again, followin pretty much the same path we started down; after many more days on the road, we set up our tents again to rest for a bit.

34. And wouldnt ya know it, Ishmael passed away, and we buried him where the place is called Nahom.

35. Now, the daughters of Ishmael were all torn up, moanin lost their daddy and all the hard times we faced in the wilderness; they started gripin about my daddy for leadin em off from Jerusalem, sayin dejectedly, Our

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

daddys gone; weve been wanderin for so long, sufferin from hunger, thirst, and bein worn out; and after all this, were just gonna starve out here in the wild.

36. So they griped at my daddy and me too; they wanted to pack it up and head back to Jerusalem.

37. Laman got all riled up and started whisperin to Lemuel and Ishmaels boys: Hey, lets just take out dad and that brother Nephi who thinks he can boss us around with his big talkin.

38. Now, he was claimin that the Lord had spoken to him and angels were visitin him. But lemme tell ya, we knew he was lyin through his teeth; he tells us this stuff and pulls all these tricks, tryin to lead us off into some strange wilds, hopin to make himself the king and run the whole shoindig, just doin whatever he wants with us. And thats how my brother Laman got everyone all riled up.

39. Well, the Lord was with us, and the voice of the Lord came and said a bunch of firm words to them, chastening em real good; once they got the lowdown from the Lord, they calmed down, turned away their anger, and repented of their sins, so the Lord blessed us once more with food, so we wouldn't go hungry.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 17**

1. Well, it was all well and good that we took off on our journey through the wild country again; we headed on almost due east from then on. We sure did slog through a heap of troubles out there in the wilderness, and our gals had them babies right there in the wild.

2. And bless our hearts, the Lord showered us with blessings so much so, that even while we was chompin on raw meat out there, the womenfolk were givin plenty of milk to their young 'uns and were strong as oxen. They started hauln their loads without a peep of complaint.

3. So, we can see right clear that Gods commandments gotta be followed. If folks keep to His ways, He takes care of 'em, gives 'em strength, and sets 'em up with whatever they need to get done what Hes asked; and sure enough, He provided for us while we were kickin around out in the wilderness.

4. And we did roam around there for a good spell, about eight years if Im not missin my guess.

5. Then we found us a land we called Bountiful, cause it had so much fruit and some wild honey; all of it was laid out nice-like by the Lord so we wouldn't just up and perish. And we laid eyes on the sea, which we called

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Irreantum, which, ya know, means a whole mess of water.

6. Next thing you know, we pitched our tents by the shoreline; even though we had a heap of troubles and had to deal with hardships we cant even write down, we was downright joyful once we made it to the coast, callin that place Bountiful cause of all the fruit sittin around.

7. Then, after I, Nephi, had been hangin around in Bountiful for a good while, I heard the Lords voice callin me, sayin: Get up and head up into that there mountain. So, I got up and climbed that mountain, and I called out to the Lord.

8. And lo and behold, the Lord told me, you gotta build a ship like Ill show ya, so I can carry your folks across these waters.

9. So, I asked Him: Lord, where in tarnation am I s'posed to find me some ore to melt down for makin tools to build that ship?

10. And the Lord told me exactly where to go for that ore, so I could whip up some tools.

11. And I, Nephi, ended up makin a bellows outta beast skins to get the fire goin. Once I had the bellows, I banged two rocks together to spark me some fire.

12. See, the Lord hadnt let us make much fire til then, cause while we was wanderin' in that wilderness, He said: Ill make your food sweet, so ya dont have to cook it up all fancy.

13. And Ill be your light out there in the wild; Ill pave the way for ya, if ya keep my commandments; so, as long as ya stick to my ways, youll head toward that promised land, and youll know its me leadin ya.

14. Yall take note, and the Lord also said: Once yall get to that promised land, youll see that I, the Lord, am your God, and I did save ya from bein wiped out; yep, I brought ya outta Jerusalem.

15. So, I, Nephi, made it my business to keep the Lords commandments, and I kept pushin my kinfolk to be faithful and work hard.

16. And it came to pass that I made me some tools outta the ore I melted from the rock.

17. But when my brothers caught wind that I was fixin to build a ship, they started grumblin, sayin: Aint our brother a fool, thinkin he can build a ship; yep, he thinks he can cross these mighty waters too.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. So my brothers just keep complainin', wishin they wouldnt have to put their backs into it, seein as they didnt believe I could build that ship; they wouldnt dare believe I was gettin guidance from the Lord.

19. And now, I, Nephi, was really feelin' down 'bout how hard-hearted they were; and when they saw I was gettin all sorrowful-like, they just cheered in their hearts, sayin: We knew ya couldnt build no ship, cause we knew ya didnt have good sense; you ain't gonna be able to pull off somethin that big.

20. And they said I was just like our pa, led away by all them foolish ideas floatin around in his heart; yep, he done led us outta Jerusalem, and weve been wanderin in this wilderness for ages; our womenfolk have had to deal with labor, bein heavy with child; theyve born them babies in the wild and suffered through all sorts of troubles, except for dyin; and it woulda been better if theyd up and died before leavin Jerusalem than puttin up with all this mess.

21. Lookee here, all these years weve been sufferin in the wild, when we coulda been enjoyin our stuff and bein happy in our inheritance; sure as shootin, we couldve been happy.

22. We know them folks back in Jerusalem were righteous cause they followed Gods laws and commandments per Moses teachings; thats why we reckon theyre the good folks; and our father judged em wrong and took us away cause we wouldnt listen to his words; and our brother is just like him. And they was a-complainin just like that.

23. And I, Nephi, spoke to them, askin: Do ya really believe our folks, the Israelites, wouldve been led outta the Egyptians if they hadnt listened to the Lord?

24. Ya reckon theyd have gotten outta bondage if the Lord hadnt told Moses to lead 'em out?

25. Now, yknow the Israelites was in chains; and they had loads of burdens that was heavy to bear; so its gotta be a good thing that they got brought outta bondage.

26. Now, we all know that the Lord told Moses to do that great work; and yall remember that by his word, the Red Sea split right open, and they walked through on dry ground?

27. But the Egyptians? Well, they went down in that sea, cause they were Pharaohs army.

28. And yall also know they munched on manna out in the wild.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

29. Yeah, and yall know that Moses, by the Lords word which was mighty in him, smote that rock, and out came the water, just so the Israelites could quench their thirst.

30. Yet, even with all that guidance from the Lord their God, their Redeemer leadin em by day and givin em light at night, doin all sorts of good for em, they went and hardened their hearts and turned a blind eye, revilin Moses and the true, livin God.

31. And it came to pass that, just as He said, He destroyed 'em; He led em according to His word, and did all things for them; aint nothin been done that wasnt by His word.

32. And after they crossed the Jordan, He made 'em mighty to drive out them folks from the land, scatterin em to their doom.

33. Now, do yall think the kiddos in this here promised land, the ones our daddies drove out, were righteous? Im tellin ya, Nah.

34. Do ya think our fathers wouldve been better than them if they was righteous? I say again, Nah.

35. See, the Lord dont favor one flesh over another; the righteous is favored by God. But look at this folks, they done turned down every word from God, and they were ripe for sin; God was mad at em, cursed that land against em, and blessed it for our fathers; He cursed it against 'em for their destruction, and blessed it for our folks to gain power over it.

36. The Lord made this earth so it would be filled with people, and He made His own kids to have it.

37. He raises up the good folks, and wipes out the wicked ones.

38. He leads the righteous to good lands, and the evil, He destroys and curses the land for their sakes.

39. Hes sittin high in the heavens, thats His throne, and this earth here? Thats just His footstool.

40. And He loves those who want Him to be their God. He loved our fathers, made a deal with em, yep, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and He didnt forget them deals, so He brought 'em outta Egypt.

41. And He put 'em under His rod out in the wild cause they went and hardened their hearts, just like yall did; and the Lord had to keep 'em in line cause of their sins. He sent fiery serpents among 'em; once they got bitten, He made a way for em to be healed; all they had to do was look, and because it was so simple, a whole mess



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

of 'em perished.

42. And they kept hardenin their hearts from one time to the next, revilin Moses and God; but you know they was led by His unmatched power into that promised land.

43. Now, after all this, it seems like the times come for them to be wicked, bout ripe for judgement; and I reckon theyre on the verge of bein destroyed; I know that days surely comin where theyll see their end, except for just a handful wholl be led away into captivity.

44. So the Lord told my father he needed to take off into the wilderness; and the Jews were lookin to end his life; and you folks been lookin to do the same; so lets just say, youve got murder in your hearts just like em.

45. Yall are quick to do wrong but slow to remember the Lord your God. Youve seen an angel, you heard him talkin to ya; reckon you heard His voice time and again, and He spoke to ya in a whisper, but you got your hearts so hard you couldnt feel His words; so Hes had to speak to ya like a thunderclap, makin the earth shake like it was gonna split apart.

46. And you know real well that by His mighty word He could make the earth just vanish; and ya know by His word, He could smooth out the rough spots, and break up smooth spots. So, why in the world cant yall just soften yer hearts?

47. My souls in anguish cause of yall, and my heart aches; Im worried youre gonna be cast off forever. Im full up with the Spirit of God, to the point my strength is runnin low.

48. Then it happened that once I said all this, they got all riled up with me, and wanted to toss me into the sea; and as they reached out to grab hold of me, I said: In the name of the Almighty God, I command ya not to lay a finger on me, cause Im filled up with the power of God, all the way down to my bones; whoever touches me will wither away just like a dried up reed; and in front of Gods power, theyll be as nothin.

49. Then I, Nephi, told 'em they best quit their mumblin about their father; and they oughta get to workin with me, cause God had commanded me to build that ship.

50. And I said to 'em: If God said I could do anything, I could do it! If He told me to ask this water to turn to dirt, itd turn to dirt; and if I said it, itd happen.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

51. Now, if the Lord has so much power, and has done miracles among folks, how come He cant show me how to build that ship?

52. And I, Nephi, went on talkin to my brothers so much that they got all confused and couldnt argue with me; they didnt even dare to touch me, not even for days on end. They was mighty scared to do that, or they'd wither right in front of me, 'cause the Spirit of God was workin hard on 'em.

53. And the Lord said to me: Go ahead and reach out to your brothers again, and they wont wither before ya, but Ill give 'em a mighty shake, says the Lord, so theyll know I am their God.

54. So, I stretched out my hand to my brothers, and they didnt wither; but the Lord shook 'em, just like He said He would.

55. And they said: We know for sure the Lords with ya, cause we felt His power shake us. They fell down before me, about to worship me, but I wouldnt let it happen, sayin: Im your brother, your younger brother; now lets worship the Lord our God, and honor our parents, so we can have long days in the land the Lords gonna give us.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 18**

1. Well, it happened that we went an' worshiped the Lord, then set off with me, workin' on them fancy ship timbers. The Lord kept givin' me hints on how to shape 'em just right.

2. Now I, Nephi, I ain't gonna lie, I didn't do things the way them folks been taught, nor did I build that ship like the world woulda done; I built it the way the Lord showed me, so it was far from ordinary.

3. I was climbin that mountain a whole lot, prayin to the Lord every chance I got; thats where He showed me some mighty fine things.

4. After I wrapped up that ship just like the Lord told me, my brothers took a look and they saw how good it was, just fine craftsmanship, and they humbled themselves once again before the Lord.

5. And then the Lord's voice rang out to my dad, tellin' us to get up and head down to the ship.

6. Well, the next mornin', after we got everything readyfruits, meats from the wild, a heap of honey, and supplies just like the Lord askedwe all headed down to that ship, takin' every last bit we owned, bout each

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

according to their age. So we all packed ourselves down into that ship with our women and kids.

7. Now my dad had two boys down in that wildone's name was Jacob, and the other was Joseph.

8. We all hopped on board that ship, haulin our supplies and everything the Lord told us to bring, and we set sail out into that sea towards the promised land.

9. After bein blown around by the wind for quite a few days, my brothers and the sons of Ishmael, along with their wives, started a little shindigdancin, singin, and actin real foolish, forgettin all about how they came to be there; they got mighty rowdy, thats for sure.

10. Well, I, Nephi, got real worried that the Lord might get mad at us and send us to the bottom of the sea cause of our sins, so I started talkin to em real serious-like; but they got mighty angry with me, claimin they werent gonna let their little brother rule over em.

11. Then Laman and Lemuel grabbed me, tied me up tight, and treated me real rough; but the Lord allowed it to show His strength, fulfillin what He said about the wicked.

12. So after they had me tied up so I couldnt move a muscle, that fancy compass the Lord set up stopped workin'.

13. With no idea where to steer, a huge storm kicked up, a downright terrible tempest, and we got pushed back on the water for three whole days; folks were gettin real scared, worryin theyd drown, but they didnt untie me.

14. On the fourth day, after bein driven back, that storm got even meaner.

15. Well, it looked like we was fixin to be swallowed up in the sea. After four days of bein tossed around, my brothers started seein that Gods judgments were upon em, and theyd perish if they didnt own up to their wrongdoings; so they came to me and loosened the ropes around my wrists, and man, they were swelled up something fierce; my ankles were puffy too, hurtin something awful.

16. But I kept lookin up to my God, givin Him praise all day long, never grumblin bout my troubles.

17. My dad, Lehi, had said a whole mess of things to em, includin the sons of Ishmael; but they was spittin out threats at anyone who dared speak for me. And my folks, well, they were old and had been hit with a lot of heartache cause of their kids, and they were layin low, even laid up in bed.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. Cuz of all that sadness and trouble from my brothers, they were near the end, about to meet their Maker; their grey hairs were gonna be laid down in the dirt, and they was close to slippin off into the deep blue.

19. And Jacob and Joseph, bein' but young ones, needed a lot of food, were feelin the weight of their mamas troubles; and my wifes tears and prayers, along with my kids, couldnt melt my brothers' hearts into lettin me go.

20. Ain't nothin' but the power of God, threatenin em with destruction, could soften their hearts; so when they saw they was about to be swallowed by the sea, they finally fessed up to their mistakes and untied me.

21. Well, after they let me loose, I grabbed that compass, and it started workin just the way I wanted. I prayed to the Lord, and after I prayed, the winds calmed down, the storm settled, and there was a big ol peace.

22. Then I, Nephi, took the wheel of that ship, and we set our sails once more towards the promised land.

23. After sailin for many days, we finally reached that promised land; we stepped on the ground, set up our tents, and called it the promised land.

24. Then we got busy with the dirt, plantin seeds; we put all the seeds we brought from Jerusalem in the ground. And let me tell ya, they sprouted like crazy; we got blessed real good.

25. And as we wandered the promised land, we found all kinds of animals in those woods, from cows and oxen to donkeys, horses, goats, and wild critters, all there for our usin. We also discovered a heapin load of ore, gold, silver, and copper.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 19**

1. Well, reckon it happened that the Good Lord told me to fashion up some plates made of ore, so I could carve on 'em the history of my folks. And on them plates I made, I went ahead and recorded the tale of my daddy, our travels through the wilderness, and my own prophecies too.

2. Now, I didnt quite realize at the time when I was makin' these here plates that I'd be told by the Good Lord to do so; so, the record of my dad, his family tree, and most of our adventures in the wild are all scratched onto those first plates I mentioned. So, all them happenings before I got to makin' these plates are really laid out on the original ones.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

3. Once I got them plates done up under command, I, Nephi, received another word that the ministry and prophecies, the most precious parts, oughta be writ on these plates; and whatever was written should be kept for teachin my folks who'll live on the land, along with other good reasons the Lord knows about.

4. So, I, Nephi, went ahead and made another record on them other plates, which tells more about the fights, squabbles, and downfalls of my people. And I done that, plus I instructed my folks on what they oughta do once I was gone; and that these plates should get passed down from one generation to the next, or from one prophet to another, till the Lord gives more commands.

5. And Ill be given a proper account of makin' these plates later on; and looky here, Im carryin on just like I said I would; and the reason I do this is so that the holiest things can be kept for the knowledge of my people.

6. Now, I aint writin nuthin on these plates unless I reckon its somethin sacred. So, if I screw up, well, they done goofed in the past too; not that Im makin excuses cause of em folks, but Im just acknowledging the weakness in me, bein' human and all.

7. Some folks hold some things as mighty important, both for body and soul, while others just brush em off and stomp on em. Yeah, even the Good Lord of Israel gets trampled on by some folks; I say trampled, but lemme tell ya, they just pay Him no mind, and dont listen to the counsel He gives.

8. And look here, Hes comin, just like that angel said, in six hundred years from when my daddy skipped outta Jerusalem.

9. And those in the world, cause they got sin runnin rampant, will treat Him like He aint worth nuthin; so theyll whip Him, and Hell take it; theyll smack Him around, and Hell take it. Yup, theyll spit on Him too, and Hell let em, 'cause Hes all about love and patient-like toward the children of men.

10. And the God of our ancestors, who busted em outta Egypt and showed em the way in the wild, yeah, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, Hes gonna give Himself up, just like the angel said, into the hands of some wicked folks, to be lifted up, just like Zenock talked about, and crucified, like Neum said, and buried in a tomb, just like Zenos mentioned about them three days of darkness, which is gonna serve as a sign of His death for those livin' on the islands, especially the folks from the house of Israel.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

11. Cause the prophet said this: The Good Lord is surely gonna visit all the house of Israel on that day, some with His voice, cause theyre right with Him, whichll bring em great joy and salvation, while others will get the loud thunderings and flashes of His strength through storms, fire, smoke, darkness, ground shakin, and mountains movin around.

12. And all these things are surely gonna happen, the prophet Zenos said. And the rocks on this here earth are gonna burst apart; and cause the earth is groanin, a lot of kings on them islands are gonna feel the Spirit of God movin on em, shoutin: The Good Lord suffers.

13. As for them in Jerusalem, the prophet says theyll be whipped by everyone since they crucified the God of Israel, turnin their hearts away, refusin to heed the signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

14. And cause theyre turnin away, the prophet says, and dissing the Holy One of Israel, theyll wander in the flesh, perish, and become a joke and a byword, and folksll hate em everywhere.

15. But when that day rolls around, the prophet says, when they stop turnin away from the Holy One of Israel, then He'll remember the promises He made to their daddies.

16. Yeah, then Hell remember the islands; and all the folks from the house of Israel, Hes gonna gather em in, says the Lord, just like the prophet Zenos said, from all four corners of the earth.

17. Sure enough, all the earth is gonna see the salvation of the Lord, says the prophet; every nation, family, tongue and people is gonna be blessed.

18. And I, Nephi, wrote all this down for my folks, hopin I can nudge em to remember the Lord, their Redeemer.

19. So, Im talkin to all the house of Israel, hopin theyll grab hold of these things.

20. Cause you see, Ive been workin in the spirit, and it wears me out so much that all my limbs feel weak, thinkin of them in Jerusalem; cause if the Lord hadnt been merciful, showin me whats up about em, just like He did the prophets from days past, Id have been lost too.

21. And He surely did show the prophets of old all kinds of stuff about em; and He showed a whole mess of

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

things concerning us too; so we gotta know about em, cause theyre written on the brass plates.

22. Now it happened that I, Nephi, taught my brothers these things; and I also read a bunch of stuff to em that was carved on the brass plates, so they could learn about the Lords doings in other lands, with folks from way back.

23. And I read em tons of things that were written in the books of Moses; but to really persuade em to believe in the Lord, their Redeemer, I read em the words of the prophet Isaiah; cause I likened all scriptures to us, so it would be good for our learnin' and betterment.

24. So, I said to em: Yall listen up to the words of the prophet, you who are a remnant from the house of Israel, a branch that got broken off; hear what the prophet said, which was for the whole house of Israel, and relate it to yourselves, so you all have hope like your brothers who came before you; thats how the prophet wrote it.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 20**

1. Well now, listen up, folks, heres the deal, ya hear? O house of Jacob, yall who go by Israels name, yall comin outta them Judah waters, or maybe outta that baptism water, swearin by the Lords name, but lemme tell ya, yall aint bein honest or righteous about it.

2. Now, they call themselves from the holy city, but they aint leanin on the Lord of Hosts, the one and only God of Israel; yep, thats what they call Him.

3. You best believe Ive been talkin 'bout whats been goin on right from the start; its all come straight from my mouth, and I laid it out there for ya. I done showed it to ya quick-like.

4. I did that cause I knew yall were hard-headed, with necks like iron and brows like brass, not budgin an inch.

5. From the get-go, Ive let you in on what was comin; I showed ya before it happened cause I didnt want ya sayinMy idol made this happen, and my fancy carvings made this go down.

6. Yall seen and heard all this; why aint ya spillin the beans? Ive shown ya fresh stuff from now on, some secret things, and you just didnt know em.

7. Theyre comin out now, not from way back; even before you heard em, they was told to ya, so you couldnt

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

say Well, I kinda knew em.

8. Yep, and you didnt hear em; nope, you didnt know em; from back then, your ears were shut tight; I knew youd be tricky, called a sinner right from the womb.

9. But, for my name's sake, Im holdin back my anger, and cause of my glory, I aint cuttin you off.

10. Looky here, Ive cleaned you up, Ive picked you outta the furnace of hard times.

11. For my own sake, sure as shootin, Im doin this, cause I aint lettin' nobody mess with my name, nor givin my glory to no one else.

12. Listen up, Jacob, and Israel my chosen one; yep, thats me; I was the first, and Im the last.

13. My hand laid the groundwork of this ol earth, and my right hands stretched out the heavens. I call to 'em, and they all stand up together.

14. Yall come together, and listen; who among em has said whats goin on? The Lords got love for him; sure enough, Hell do what He promised through em; and Hell take care of Babylon, and His might will hit the Chaldeans.

15. The Lord says, Im the one speakin; Ive called him to shout it out, I brought him along, and hes gonna make his way smooth as can be.

16. Come on over here, I aint been whisperin in the shadows; from the start, since it was brought up, Ive been talkin; the Lord God, along with His Spirit, sent me, yall.

17. And heres what the Lord, your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel, says: I sent him, your Lord who teaches ya how to get ahead, leadin you along the path you oughta be walkin, thats what He did.

18. Oh, if only youd listened to my commandments your peace wouldve been as steady as a river, and your righteousness like them waves rollin' in from the sea.

19. Your descendants woulda been like grains of sand; the kids from your loins like little rocks; they wouldnt been cut off or wiped out before me.

20. Now get on outta Babylon, run from them Chaldeans, singin all the way, tellin everyone, shout it all the way to the ends of the earth; say: The Lord has saved His servant Jacob.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. And they didnt thirst; led em through them deserts; made water gush outta the rock; He even split that rock and the waters flowed like crazy.

22. And even after all that, and then some, theres still no peace, says the Lord, for the wicked ones.

### **1 Nephi Chapter 21**

1. The Messiahs gonna shine a light on them Gentiles and free them poor folks locked upIsrael's fixin to be gathered up strong in the last daysKings, theyll be like daddies nursing their youngin'sJust think on Isaiah 49. Bout 588-570 B.C.

2. Now listen up, yall in Israel, all yall who got cut off and tossed out cause of them wicked preachers; yeah, all yall scattered out there, youre still part of my folks, O house of Israel. Pay attention, you folks on them isles, and listen up, people far away; the Lord called me from the very start; even from my mamas belly, He been mentionin my name.

3. Hes got my mouth like a sharp sword; tucked away in His shadow, Hes hid me, and made me into a fine arrow; stored up real nice in His quiver.

4. Then He told me: Youre my servant, O Israel, and Im fixin to be glorified through you.

5. Then I reckon I said, Ive worked my tail off for nothin, spent all my strength and its been in vain; but surely my judgment is with the Lord and my works with my God.

6. And now, says the Lordwho shaped me in my mama's womb to be His servant and bring Jacob back to Himeven if Israel aint gathered, Ill still be glorified in the Lord's eyes, and my Gods gonna be my strength.

7. He said: It aint no big deal for you to be my servant raisin up Jacobs tribes and bring back the folks of Israel. Ill also make you a light for the Gentiles, so you can be my salvation all round the globe.

8. Thus says the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, His Holy One, to the fella folks dont like, to the one nations cant stand, to the servant of rulers: Kings gonna see and stand up, and princes gonna worship cause of the Lord whos faithful.

9. Thus says the Lord: In a right time, I heard ya, O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation, I helped ya; Ill keep ya safe, and give you my servant for a covenant to the people, to set the earth right, and help folks claim

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

whats been left desolate;

10. So you can tell the prisoners: Get on out; to the folks sittin in the dark: Show yall's selves. Theyll find food along the way, and theyll have pastures up high.

11. They won't be hungry or thirsty, nor will the heat or the sun burn em up; cause He whos got mercy on em will lead em, even by the springs of water, Hell guide em.

12. Im gonna make all my mountains a highway, and my roads will be lifted up high.

13. And then, O house of Israel, looky here, these folks are comin from far away; and look, these from the north and west; and these from the land of Sinim.

14. Sing, O heavens; and be glad, O earth; cause the feet of those from the east gonna be settlin down; and break out in song, O mountains; they aint gonna get stomped on no more; for the Lords comfortin His people, and showin' mercy to those in need.

15. But behold, Zions been sayin: The Lords forgotten me, and my Lords forsaken mebut Hes gonna show He ain't forgotten.

16. Can a mama forget her baby shes nursing, and not have compassion on the child of her belly? Sure, some may forget, but I won't forget you, O house of Israel.

17. Looky here, Ive etched you on the palms of my hands; your walls are ever before me.

18. Your children gonna rush against those who done you wrong; and them that laid waste to you gonna be pushin on out.

19. Lift up your eyes all round and see; all these folks are gatherin together, and they gonna come to you. And as I live, says the Lord, youll surely get yourself all them as if theyre fine jewelry, and tie em on like a bride.

20. For your waste and desolate spots, and the land thats been wrecked, is gonna be too small now cause of all the folks; and them that swallowed you up gonna be far away.

21. The children youre gonna have after losing the first, will tell you: This place is too tight for me; make room for me so I can settle.

22. Then you'll be thinkin in your heart: Whos brought me these, cause I lost my kids, and Im all alone, a

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

captive, and movin round? And whos raised these? Look, I was left all by my lonesome; these, where they been?

23. Thus says the Lord God: Looky here, Im gonna lift my hand to the Gentiles, and set my banner for the people; they gonna carry your boys in their arms, and your daughters gonna be on their shoulders.

24. And kings gonna be like daddies to you, and their queens gonna be like mamas; they gonna bow down to you face first in the dirt, and lick up the dust from your feet; and youll know Im the Lord; cause they wont be ashamed waitin on me.

25. For can the prey be taken from the strong, or gonna the lawful captives be set free?

26. But thus says the Lord, even the captives of the strong gonna be freed, and the spoils from the terrible gonna be saved; for Im gonna fight for ya against those against you, and Ill save your children.

27. And Ill feed those who oppress ya with their own flesh; they gonna get drunk on their own blood like it's sweet wine; and all folks gonna know that I, the Lord, am your Savior and Redeemer, the Almighty One of Jacob.

## **1 Nephi Chapter 22**

1. Israels gonna be scattered all 'cross this here earthThe Gentiles are gonna nurse and take care of Israel with the gospel in the latter daysIsraels gonna get gathered up and saved, and the wicked folks, well, theyre gonna burn up like dried grassThe devils kingdoms gonna get wiped out, and Satan, hell be tied up tight. 'Bout 588570 B.C.

2. Well, let me tell ya, after I, Nephi, read what was carved on them brass plates, my brothers came up to me askin, What in tarnation do them words mean? They was wonderin if it all could be understood in a spiritual kinda way, stuff thats gonna happen in the spirit, not in the flesh.

3. And I told 'em, Look here, it was all shown to the prophet by the Spirits voice; cause its through the Spirit that the prophets find out whats gonna happen to folks down here on earth.

4. So, the stuff I reads got to do with both the everyday and the spiritual; looks like the house of Israel's gonna get scattered all over this big ol world and into all the nations sooner or later.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

5. Now, I reckon theres a whole lotta folks already lost from what they oughta know bout Jerusalem. Yep, most of the tribes been led off, scattered to the winds on them islands of the sea; and where they all went, none of us really knows, except we know theyve been led away.

6. Now since theyve been led astray, prophetic words been said about em, and also those wholl be scattered and confused in the future cause of the Holy One of Israel; theyll harden their hearts against him, and cause of that, they'll get spread out among the nations and folks are gonna hate em.

7. Still, after the Gentiles take care of em, and the Lord lifts up his hand towards the Gentiles, makin em a standard, and their kids get carried in their arms, and their daughters on their shoulders, well, those words Im talkin about are just for the here and now; cause thats how the Lords covenants work with our ancestors; and it means us in the days comin up, and all our kin in the house of Israel too.

8. And it means that times a-comin when after all the house of Israel has been scattered and confused, the Lord Gods gonna raise up a strong nation among the Gentiles, right here on this land; and through em, our descendants are gonna get scattered too.

9. After our folks are scattered, the Lord Gods gonna do some amazing things with the Gentiles, which is gonna be mighty important for our descendants; cause itll be like they're bein taken care of by the Gentiles, held in their arms and on their shoulders.

10. And its gonna be valuable for the Gentiles too; not just them, but for all the house of Israel, showin the covenants of the Father of Heaven to Abraham, when He told him, In your seed, all the families of the earth are gonna be blessed.

11. And I wanna tell ya, my brothers, that all them families out there cant be blessed unless He shows His power to the nations.

12. So, the Lord Gods gonna make His arm bare for all the nations to see, bringin' His covenants and gospel to folks in the house of Israel.

13. Hes gonna gather em back from bein' held captive, and theyll come together in their own lands; theyll come outta the shadows and the dark; theyll know the Lord is their Savior and Redeemer, the Mighty One of

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Israel.

14. And the blood from that wicked church, the one thats a whore to all the earth, is gonna fall back on their own heads; theyll be fightin amongst themselves, and their own swords'll come down on em, and theyll be drunk on their own blood.

15. And every nation that wars against ya, O house of Israel, is gonna turn on itself, stumbling right into the trap they set for the Lords people. And all who fight against Zion are gonna be wiped out, and that great whore, who messed up the right paths of the Lord, that great and wicked church, is gonna crash into the dirt, and its gonna be a mighty fall.

16. Cause look here, the prophet says, the times a-comin real quick when Satan wont have no power over the hearts of men no more; 'cause the days comin soon when all the proud and the wicked are gonna be burned up like dried grass; and that day is gonna come when they gotta face the fire.

17. Cause soon as a whistle, the full wrath of Gods gonna be dumped out on all of mankind; cause He aint gonna let the bad folks destroy the good ones.

18. So, Hes gonna keep the righteous safe by His mighty hand, even if it means His full wrath needs to come, and the good folks are gonna be preserved, even when their enemies are getting burnt up. Dont you worry, the righteous aint gotta fear; the prophet says theyll be saved, even if its by fire.

19. Now listen up, my brothers, Im tellin ya, these things gotta come real soon; yep, all of it blood, fire, and smoke's gotta come; and its gotta happen right here on this earth; its gonna come to people down here in the flesh if they harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

20. Cause the righteous aint gonna perish; surely the times a-comin when all those fightin against Zion are gonna be cut off.

21. And the Lords definitely gonna make a way for His folks, fulfillin the words of Moses, where he said, A prophets gonna be raised up by the Lord your God, just like me; yall better listen to everything he says. And its gonna happen that all who dont listen to that prophet are gonna be cut off from the people.

22. And now I, Nephi, m tellin ya, that the prophet Moses spoke about is the Holy One of Israel; so hes gonna

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

bring judgment the right way.

23. And the good folks dont need to worry, cause they aint gonna be confounded. But its the devils kingdom thats buildin up among the kids of men, that kingdom thats settin its roots in the flesh

24. Cause the time's gonna come real fast when all them churches built for profit, and those lookin for power over others, and those tryin to be popular in the world's eyes, and those chasing after the desires of the flesh and worldly treasures, doin all kinds of wrong; yeah, in short, all those belongin to the devils kingdom are the ones who gotta tremble in fear; they're gonna be brought low in the dirt; theyre the ones whore gonna be consumed like stubble; and thats just what the prophet said.

25. And the times comin quick when the good folks are gonna be led like young calves, and the Holy One of Israel's gonna reign in power and might and glory.

26. He gathers His kids from all over the earth; counts His sheep, and they know Him; theres gonna be one flock with one Shepherd; Hes gonna feed His sheep, and theyre gonna find pasture in Him.

27. And cause His people are righteous, Satans got no power; he cant be let loose for a good long while; cause he got no hold on the hearts of the people, since theyre livin right, and the Holy One of Israel is in charge.

28. And now look here, I, Nephi,m sayin to ya that all this gotta happen in the flesh.

29. But, yall listen, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and folks are gonna feel safe in the Holy One of Israel if theyll just repent.

30. And now I, Nephi,m gonna wrap it up; I wasnt gonna go on much more about these things.

31. So, my brothers, think hard on the stuff thats been written on them brass plates; its true, and they testify that a mans gotta be obedient to Gods commandments.

32. So dont go thinkin that me and my dad are the only ones whove said this or taught it. So if yall are obedient to the commandments and stick it out to the end, youll be saved at the end of the days. And thats just how it is. Amen.

## **2 Nephi**

### **2 Nephi Chapter 1**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya about this here story. After I, Nephi, finished teachin my brothers, our daddy, Lehi, started ramblin on bout a heap of things, remindin em of all the mighty deeds the Lord done pulled off for us when He brought us outta Jerusalem.
2. He went on bout how we acted up out there on the waters and talked bout all the good grace God showed us, keepin us from gettin swallowed up by the sea.
3. Then he chatted bout this land of promise we got, tellin us how merciful the Lord was to warn us to hightail it outta Jerusalem.
4. He said, Yall listen here, I had this vision, and let me tell ya, Jerusalems a goner; if wed a stuck around, wed a gone down with it too.
5. But he reminded us, even though times were tough, we snagged ourselves a land of promise, a place thats better than all the rest; a land the Lord promised me for my kinfolk. Yup, the Lord made sure this land's ours forever, and anyone else that He leads outta other places gets to claim it too.
6. So, here I am, Lehi, prophesyin bout the way the Spirits movin in me, sayin not a soul will enter this land less the Lord brings em here.
7. In fact, this here land is all set aside for whoever the Lord brings. And if they do right by Him and follow His commandments, thisll be a land of freedom; they wont ever be brought low, cept if they go and mess it up. So if wrongdoings pile up, this landll be cursed cause of em, but for the righteous, itll be blessed forever.
8. Now, I reckon its smart that this land stays under the radar of other nations; cause if too many folks knew bout it, theyd swarm in, and there wouldnt be no place left for us to claim as our own.
9. So listen up, I, Lehi, got a promise: if those the Lord drags outta Jerusalem keep His commandments, theyll thrive on this land; theyll be kept safe from other nations so they can enjoy it all themselves. If they follow His rules, blessingsll rain down, and nobodyll bother em or try to take their inheritance; theyll live in peace forever.
10. But I tell ya, when the day comes they start doubtin after gettin so many blessings from the Lordknowin all bout how the earth and folks got created, seein all the wondrous works of the Lord since the very starthaving

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the power to do anything by faith, keepin all them commandments since day one, and bein shown kindness by His goodness into this fine land of promiselisten here, if they go rejectin the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Savior and God, then the fair judgments of a just God are gonna come down on em.

11. Oh, you bet Hell send other nations their way, take away their lands, and make em scatter and suffer.

12. Yep, just as one generation gives way to another, theres gonna be bloodshed and great troubles among em; so I urge ya, my sons, do remember that; I really want ya to listen to what Im sayin.

13. Oh, if only yall would wake up; rise up from that deep sleep, shake off them awful chains that got ya bound up, them chains that carry folks right down into eternal misery and despair.

14. Wake up! Get off that ground, and lend an ear to a worried parent whose time is runnin out, cause soon enough my body will be layin down in the cold and silent ground where no traveler returns from; just a few more days and Ill be followin the way of all the earth.

15. But you see, the Lord done saved my soul from hell; Ive seen His glory, and Im wrapped up tight in the arms of His love forever.

16. And I want badly for yall to remember to keep the laws and rules of the Lord; this has been the worry of my heart since the get-go.

17. My heart gets heavy with sorrow every now and then, cause I fret that cause of yalls stubborn hearts, the Lord your God might unleash His full wrath on ya, cuttin you off and destroyin you for good;

18. Or that a curse could befall ya for a pile of generations; you might face swords and hunger, be hated, and be led round by the devil's will and captivity.

19. Oh my sons, I hope these troubles dont come your way; I want yall to be a special and favored people of the Lord. But, whatever happens, let His will be done; His paths are righteous forever.

20. And He said that: as long as ya keep my commandments, youll thrive in the land; but if you dont, youll be cut off from my presence.

21. Now, I want my heart to be joyful thanks to yall, and to leave this world with happiness over you, not sorrow weighin me down to the grave; rise up from the dust, my boys, and be real men, and get your hearts



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

and minds together, united in all ways, so you can avoid captivity;

22. So you dont end up cursed with a bad curse; and so you dont get on the wrong side of a just God, resulting in the destruction, thats right, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

23. Wake up, my boys; suit up in the armor of righteousness. Shake off those chains binding ya, and come outta that darkness, and rise from the dust.

24. Quit makin trouble for your brother, whos had glorious visions and kept the commandments since we left Jerusalem; whos been used by God to get us into this land of promise; cause if it werent for him, wed a-starved out there in the wilderness; still, yall tried to take his life, and hes suffered a whole lot cause of your actions.

25. And Im downright scared and tremblin cause of yall, wishin he aint have to go through that again; for yall have accused him of seekin some power over ya; but I know hes not been after power nor authority over you, no sir, hes only wanted Gods glory, and whats best for your eternal souls.

26. And yall have grumbled cause hes been straight with ya. Yall sayin he used sharp words; sayin hes been mad at you; but listen here, his sharp words came from Gods power in him; and what yall call anger was just the truth from God that he couldnt hide, speakin boldly bout your wrongdoings.

27. And it gotta be that Gods power is with him, even givin him the command to tell yall to obey. But it wasnt just him; it was the Spirit of the Lord in him that opened his mouth to speak and couldnt keep quiet.

28. And now my son, Laman, and Lemuel and Sam, and my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, listen here, if youll listen to Nephi, you wont perish. And if you listen to him, Im givin ya a blessing, my first blessing.

29. But if ya wont listen, Im takin back my first blessing, yep, gonna rest it on him instead.

30. And now, Zoram, I talk to you: Youre Labans servant; yet, you made it outta Jerusalem, and I know youre a true buddy to my son, Nephi, for good.

31. So, cause youve been loyal, your kins gonna be blessed with his kin, livin the good life right here on this land; and nothing, unless its iniquity among em, will ever mess up their good times here forever.

32. So if you keep the Lords commandments, the Lords set this land aside to keep your family safe alongside

my sons family.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 2**

1. Well now, redemption comes from the Holy Messiah, yall. Gotta understand that havin the freedom to choose (thats agency, darlin) is just downright crucial to livin and movin forward Adam took a tumble so folks could be, and now, folks can choose between livin free and chasin eternal life.
2. Alrighty, Jacob, Im fixin to talk to you now. Youre my firstborn, and I reckon youve been through a heap of trouble out there in the wild. Youve seen a lot of heartache and sorrow 'cause your brothers aint treated ya right.
3. But listen here, Jacob, my firstborn in the wild, you know just how great God is; Hes gonna turn your troubles into somethin good.
4. So your souls gonna be blessed, and youll be safe hangin with your brother Nephi, servin your God with all your days. Im sure of it, youre redeemed, all thanks to the goodness of your Redeemer; youve seen that in the right time Hes gonna come and save folks.
5. Youve caught a glimpse of His glory when you was young; thus, youre blessed just like those Hell serve in the flesh; the Spirit aint changed yesterday, today, and forever. The road's been paved since man fell, and salvations a free gift.
6. Folks been taught enough to know what's good and what's evil. Laws been handed down to us, and by those laws, nobody gets justified; or, through the law, folks get cut off. Yep, they got cut off by earthly laws, and by spiritual laws, theyre missin out on the good and endin up miserable forever.
7. So, redemption comes from the Holy Messiah, 'cause Hes loaded with grace and truth.
8. Look here, Hes offerin Himself as a sacrifice for sin, fulfillin the law for all them with broken hearts and humble spirits; and for anyone else, well, those law ends just aint gonna work.
9. So its mighty important we share this news with the folks on this planet, let em know nobody can stand before God unless its thanks to the grace, mercy, and goodness of the Holy Messiah, who laid down His life in the flesh, took it back through the Spirits power, and made resurrection happen, bein the first to rise.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. Thats why Hes the firstfruit for God, cause He gonna speak up for all of us folks; and them that got faith in Him will be saved.

11. And 'cause of His intercession, everybody gets a shot at comin' to God; theyre standin in His presence, ready to be judged by the truth and holiness thats in Him. So, the law ends given by the Holy One bringin' down the punishmentsthose punishments stand against the happiness thats also in play, to meet the law's end

12. Its gotta be; theres gotta be opposin forces in every lil' thing. If there werent none, my firstborn in the wild, righteousness wouldnt even exist, nor wickedness, nor holiness or misery, nor good or bad. So, everythings gotta be a mixin of some sort; if it was just one thing, itd just lay there dead, not livin or dyin, not corrupted nor incorrupt, not happy nor miserable, just senseless.

13. So, it mustve been created for nothin at all; otherwise, whats the point of makin it? Our good Lord's wisdom and eternal plans would get wrecked, along with His power and mercy and justice.

14. If youre sayin there aint no law, then youre also sayin there aint no sin. If theres no sin, then there aint no righteousness. If there aint no righteousness, then shoot, there aint no happiness. If theres no righteousness or happiness, that means no punishment nor misery. If none of that exists, then theres no God. And if theres no God, well then honey, we aint here, neither is the good ol earth; cause there couldnt have been nothin created to be or to act upon; so every lil' thing would just vanish.

15. Now, listen up, my boys, Im tellin yall this for your own good; there is a God whos made all thingsheavens, earth, and everything in em, things that do stuff and things that get done to.

16. And to get His eternal plans rollin with man after creatin our first folks, the critters, and the birds flyin high, it just had to include opposin things; even that forbidden fruit standin against the tree of life; ones sweet as peaches and the others bitter.

17. So, the Lord God gave man the right to act for himself. So, man cant act unless hes drawn to one side or the other.

18. And me, Lehi, from what Ive read, reckon I gotta assume an angel of God fell from heaven, and that made him a devil, 'cause he went after evil things in Gods sight.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

19. And since he hit rock bottom and is a miserable old soul now, he was out to drag down all of humanity too. So, he whispered to Eve, that ol serpent, the devil himself, father of all lies, said: "Go on, eat that forbidden fruit, yall wont die; youll be like God, knowin good and evil."

20. After Adam and Eve tasted that fruit, they got booted from the garden of Eden, had to work the land.

21. And they've been havin babies; yep, the whole family tree of all the earth.

22. The lives of man lasted longer, all thanks to Gods will, so they could repent while still kickin it in the flesh; their time got stretched, keepin' in line with Gods commandments. He commanded that all men need to repent; guided 'em to see they was lost 'cause of their folks' mess-ups.

23. And now, look here, if Adam hadnt messed up, he wouldn't have fallen; hed still be kickin it in the garden. Everything made wouldve stayed just like it was when it rolled off the Creators table, and theyd be here forever, never endin.

24. And they wouldnt have no kiddos; so theyd be in a state of innocence, knowin no joy 'cause they didnt know nothin 'bout misery; doin no good 'cause they aint know nothin 'bout sin.

25. But hey, its all been done with the good sense of Him who knows everything.

26. Adam fell so that folks could be; and folks are here so they can find joy.

27. And the Messiah shows up when the time is right, to redeem mankind from that whole fall deal. And since theyre set free from it all, theyre free aint never comin back, knowin good from evilactin for themselves without bein acted upon, except when the law lays down the hammer on that great and final day, just like God said.

28. So, folks are free in the flesh; and all things are givin to 'em that are good for man. And they can choose liberty and eternal life, through the big Mediator for all, or they can pick captivity and death, all thanks to the devils power; he wants everybody to be as miserable as he is.

29. And now, my boys, I hope yall keep your eyes on the great Mediator; listen to His big commandments; stick to His words, and choose eternal life, just like the Holy Spirit wants you to;

30. And dont go for eternal death, fallin for the flesh and the bad junk that comes with it, givin the devils spirit

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

strength to drag you down to hell, lettin him rule you in his own little kingdom.

31. Ive shared a bit of wisdom with yall, my sons, in my last days of keepin' watch; and Ive picked the good side, just like the prophet said. Aint nothin more on my mind except for your everlasting well-being. Amen.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 3**

1. Well now, Joseph in Egypt, he seen them Nephites in a visionHe was talkin 'bout Joseph Smith, the seer from these last days; and Moses, who was gonna lead them Israelites outta trouble; and how that Book of Mormon was gonna come 'round. Were lookin at 'bout 588570 B.C. here.

2. Now Im fixin to have a word with you, Joseph, my baby boy. You come into this world while I was out wanderin round in my hard times; shoot, your mama had you during my saddest days.

3. And I pray the Lord blesses this here land for you too, cause its a right precious spot, destined to be yours and your kins, alongside your brothers, for your safe-keepin foreveras long as yall keep the Holy One of Israels commandments.

4. And now, Joseph, my little one, I brought you outta the rough patches of my life, and may the Lord bless you for good, cause your family ain't gonna be wiped out.

5. You see, youre the fruit of my loins; and Im a kin to Joseph who got snagged and taken down to Egypt. Man, the promises from the Lord were mighty fine that He made to Joseph.

6. So yeah, Joseph really saw whats goin on in our time. He got a word from the Lord that from his kids, the Lord God was gonna raise up a right branch for the house of Israel; not the Messiah, mind you, but a branch that would be broken off but remembered in the Lords covenants, so the Messiah could show Himself to em in the latter days, lookin' all powerful, bringin' em from darkness to lightyep, outta hidden shadows and into freedom.

7. For Joseph rightly said, the Lords gonna raise up a seera real choice onefrom my kin.

8. Yeah, Joseph went on to say: This is what the Lords tellin me: Ill raise up a mighty seer from your seed, and hes gonna be highly regarded among your kin. Im gonna have him do a big ol job for all your folks, helpin em know about the covenants I made with your daddies.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

9. Hell be under command to do just that job I give him, and Ill make him shine in my eyes, cause hell do my work.

10. And hes gonna be great like Moses, the one I promised to raise up to save my people, O house of Israel.

11. Moses, I swear, Im gonna raise him up, to get your people outta Egypt.

12. But a seer? Oh yeah, Im raising one up from your kin; and Ill empower him to bring forth my word to your descendants and it ain't just about spittin' out my word, the Lord says, but hell convince em of my word that's already been out here.

13. So heres the deal: your kids are gonna write; and the folks from Judah will write too; and what gets written by your descendants and by Judahs folks is gonna come together, messin up false teachings, settlin down arguments, bringin peace among your kin, and helpin em realize who their daddies were in the last days, and also know my covenants, says the Lord.

14. And when the day comes that my work kicks off among my folks, theyll be made strong outta weakness, just like Im tellin ya, O house of Israel, says the Lord.

15. So Joseph prophesied, sayin: Look, that seer the Lords gonna bless; and those who try to take him down? Theyll be put to shame, cause this promise I got from the Lord bout my seed is gonna happen. I know its gonna come true.

16. And his names gonna be after mine; just like his daddys name. Hes gonna be like me; cause whatever the Lord brings forth by his hand, through the Lord's power, will lead my people to salvation.

17. Yeah, thats how Joseph put it: I know this for sure, just like I know the promise of Moses; cause the Lord told me Hed take care of your seed for good.

18. And the Lord said: Im raisin up a Moses too; and Ill give him power with a rod; and hell get the judgment in writein. Yet I won't loosen his tongue so he can chit-chat too much, cause I aint makin him a smooth talker. But Ill be givin him my law, with my own finger, and Ill set him up with a spokesperson.

19. And the Lord also told me: I'm raisin' up from your kin; and Ill make a spokesperson for him too. And Ill see to it that he writes down the words for your kids, and the spokesperson from your kin is gonna declare it

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

all.

20. And the words he writes will be just whats wise for goin out to your folks. Itll be like your kin are shoutin to 'em from the dust, cause I know how strong their faith is.

21. And theyre gonna cry out from the dust; yeah, even talkin repentance to their brothers, even after a heap of generations pass by. And itll come to pass that their cry will be heard, simple as it may be.

22. Cause of their faith, their words will come right outta my mouth to their brothers who are your descendants; and Ill make their words strong through their faith, helpin 'em remember my covenant with their daddies.

23. And now, look here, my son Joseph, this is how my father from way back prophesied.

24. So yknow, cause of this covenant, youre blessed; cause your seed aint gonna be destroyed, theyll listen to the words of the book.

25. And one mighty souls gonna rise up from em, doin a heap of good, both in talk and action, bein a tool in Gods hands with incredible faith, workin mighty wonders, doin whats grand in Gods eyes, and bringing a whole lot of restoration to the house of Israel and your brothers seed.

26. And look at you, Joseph, youre blessed, even if youre a bit on the small side; so ya listen close to your brother Nephis words, and itll happen just like I said. Dont you forget what your daddy said on his deathbed. Amen.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 4**

1. Well, now, Im Nephi, and I gotta tell ya bout the prophecies my pa was jawin bout, especially concerning old Joseph who got taken down to Egypt.

2. Looky here, he sure did make some prophecies bout all his folk. And the things he wrote, well, ain't too many better than those. He was talkin bout us and our kiddos, and its all jotted down on them brass plates.

3. So, after my daddy wrapped up his talkin bout Josephs prophecies, he gathered up Lamans youngunshis boys and girlsand he said to em: Hey yall, listen up now to what I got to say.

4. Cause the Lord God done said, as long as yall stick to my commandments, youll do just fine here; but if you

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

dont, then youre gonna be outta His presence for sure.

5. Now, look, my sons and my daughters, I cant just slide into my grave without leavin ya a blessin; cause I know if yall grow up right, you ain't ever gonna stray from that path.

6. So, if yall are cursed, Im leavin my blessin on ya, so that curse gets lifted off ya and lands right on your folks instead.

7. Therefore, cause of my blessin, the Lord God aint gonna let yall perish; Hell show some mercy on ya and your kin for all time.

8. Then it happened that after my father finished speakin to Lamans younguns, he had the Lemuel kids brought on up to him.

9. And he said to em: Hey there, my sons and daughters from my second boy; Im givin ya the same blessin I gave to Lamans kids; so, yall wont be wiped out completely; in the end, your descendants will be blessed.

10. Sure enough, after my daddy finished talkin to em, he turned to Ishmaels boys, and even called in the whole crew.

11. Once he was done with them, he turned to Sam and said: Bless your heart, you and your kiddos; youre gonna get the land just like your brother Nephi. Your children will be counted with his, and aint gonna be no different; youll all be blessed throughout your days.

12. And after my pop, Lehi, had shared his heart with the whole family, he got on up there in years. And sure enough, he passed away and got buried.

13. Not too long after he was gone, Laman and Lemuel and Ishmaels boys started gettin all riled up with me cause the Lord was layin down some admonishments.

14. You see, I, Nephi, felt it was my duty to speak to em just like the Lord told me to; cause I had already said plenty to em, and my daddy did too before he kicked the bucket; a bunch of what we said is written down on my other plates, cause the other history is captured there too.

15. And on these here plates, Im scribblin bout the things weighin on my heart, along with many scriptures carved on them brass plates. My heart is just tickled with them scriptures, and I ponder on em and write em



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

down for my kids to learn from and benefit.

16. Look, my soul is happy with the things of the Lord; and I keep thinkin bout all that Ive seen and heard.

17. But still, for all the goodness from the Lord, showin me His big ol marvelous works, my hearts just shoutin: Oh man, how wretched I am! Yeah, my hearts heavy cause of my flesh; my souls feelin real low cause of my wrongs.

18. Im surrounded by temptations and sins that just seem to stick like glue.

19. And when I wanna be happy, my heart just groans cause of my sins; but I know who it is I trust in.

20. My Gods been my backbone; Hes led me through tough times in the wild; and He kept me safe on them deep waters.

21. He done filled me up with His love, right down to my bones.

22. Hes made my enemies shuffle their feet when they see me.

23. Just look, He heard my cries during the day, and at night, He gave me wisdom through visions.

24. And during the day, Ive been brave in prayin real hard to Him; yep, Ive sent my voice up high, and angels came down to lend me a hand.

25. And through the wings of His Spirit, my bodys been carried high up on them mountains. My eyes have seen some powerful things, even too mighty for a man to write down.

26. So, if Ive seen all these grand things, and the Lords shown so much mercy to folks, why should my heart be sad and my soul linger in the low valley, and my body wear down, and my strength grow weak because of my troubles?

27. And why should I cave in to sin cause of my flesh? Yeah, why should I give in to temptations, lettin that evil one take root in my heart and mess with my peace and weigh down my soul? Why am I mad because of my enemies?

28. Hey now, wake up, soul of mine! Dont let sin keep draggin you down. Rejoice, my heart, and dont give any room for the enemy of my soul.

29. Dont let my enemies get me all fired up again. Dont let my strength slack off because of my troubles.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

30. Rejoice, my heart, and call out to the Lord, and say: Oh Lord, Ill praise you forever; yeah, my souls gonna be happy in you, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

31. Oh Lord, will you save my soul? Will you pull me out of my enemies clutches? Will you help me be shakin in front of sin?

32. May them gates of hell stay shut real tight cause my hearts broken and my spirits low! Oh Lord, dont you keep the gates of your righteousness closed on me, so I can walk the path through the low valley, and keep it real on the straight road!

33. Oh Lord, wrap me up in the robe of your righteousness! Oh Lord, make a way for me to escape before my enemies! Make my path straight in front of me! Dont throw a tripwire in my way clear my path up ahead and keep my enemies from blockin it.

34. Oh Lord, Ive trusted in you, and Im gonna keep on trusting forever. I wont lean on my own flesh; cause I know its cursed to trust in flesh. Yep, cursed is anyone who trusts in man or makes flesh their strength.

35. Yeah, I know God gives plenty to the one who asks. Yep, my God will give to me if Im askin right; so Im gonna lift my voice to you; yep, Im gonna cry out to you, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Just look, my voice is gonna keep risin up to you, my rock and everlasting God. Amen.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 5**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, it all went down like this, I, Nephi, found myself hollerin a whole lot to the Lord, 'cause my brothers were mighty mad at me.

2. Now, wouldnt ya know it, their fury just kept growin', so much so that they wanted to end my existence.

3. Shoot, they were grumblin, sayin': Our little brother thinks hes gonna be in charge of us; weve been put through the wringer cause of him; lets just take him out so we aint gotta deal with his jabberin' no more. We just aint havin him as our chief; thats our right as the older brothers to lead this bunch.

4. I aint gonna write down all the nasty stuff they said bout me, but lemme just say, they were dead set on takin my life.

5. Then the Lord gave me the heads-up to skedaddle outta there, take off into the wild, and gather up anyone

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

who wanted to join me.

6. So, I packed up my fam, along with Zoram and his kin, Sam my big brother and his family, along with Jacob and Joseph, my brothers, and even my sisters, all them who was willin to follow me. And everyone who tagged along was folks who believed in Gods warnings, so they listened to what I had to say.

7. We loaded up our tents and whatever we could carry and set off into the wilderness for a long stretch of time. After wanderin a good long while, we finally set up camp.

8. Now, my folks thought we oughta name the spot Nephi, so thats what we went and done.

9. And everyone rollin with me decided to call ourselves the people of Nephi.

10. We made sure to stick to the laws, judgments, and commandments of the Lord in every little thing, just like Moses taught.

11. And let me tell ya, the Lord was with us; we were doin real good; we sowed our seeds, and boy oh boy, did we reap a bountiful harvest. We even started raisin flocks and herds, all kinds of critters.

12. I also brought along them records carved on thick brass plates, and that compass the Lord had a hand in makin for my daddy, like it was written down.

13. Well, before ya knew it, we started thrivin and multiplyin across the land.

14. I took Labans sword and fashioned a whole bunch of swords, just in case them folks now called Lamanites decided to come at us; I knew they had a vendetta against me and my clan.

15. I taught my people how to build stuff, workin with wood, iron, copper, brass, steel, gold, silver, and all them precious rocksthere was plenty of em around.

16. I went ahead and built a temple, structured kinda like Solomons, but without all the fancy stuff cause it just wasnt around in our neck of the woods. But still, it sure looked good, like Solomon's temple, with fine craftsmanship.

17. So it came to pass that I got my folks bein real hard workers, laborin with their hands.

18. They figured they wanted me as their king. But I, Nephi, didnt want them havin no king; still, I did what I could for em.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

19. And wouldnt ya know it, the Lords words came true for my brothers, that Id be their leader and teacher. So I was their leader and teacher, til they got that crazy idea to take me out.

20. Thats when the word of the Lord came to pass tellin me that since they wouldnt listen to my words, theyd be cut off from His presence. And lo and behold, they were.

21. He went and put a curse on em, a rough one, cause of their wickedness. They hardened their hearts against Him, turnin themselves into hard stones; once fair and lovely, the Lord made their skin dark as a reminder to my people.

22. And the good Lord said: Ill make em repulsive to your folks, less they turn from their wrongs.

23. And let me tell ya, cursed be the descendants of anyone who mixes in with em, cause theyll share in that same curse. Thats what the Lord said, and it happened just like that.

24. Cause of that curse, they turned into a lazy bunch, full of mischief and cunning, lookin for beasts to hunt in the wild.

25. The Lord God told me: They gonna be a bother to your lineage, always stirring em up to remember me; and if they dawdle in forgettin me and not listenin, they gonna be harassed right until theyre wiped out.

26. And then it happened that I, Nephi, dedicated Jacob and Joseph as priests and teachers to look after my people.

27. And wouldnt ya know, we was livin a pretty happy life.

28. A whole thirty years slid on by since we bolted from Jerusalem.

29. And I, Nephi, was keepin the records on the plates I made about our people up to that point.

30. Then the Lord God said to me: Go ahead and make some more plates; and youll write all kinds of good stuff on em for your folks to benefit from.

31. So, bein obedient to what the Lord commanded, I went and made these plates and etched on em what I thought was right nice.

32. I engraved things thatd please God, and if my people like the good things of God, theyll surely like the stuff Ive put on these here plates.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

33. And if they want the deep-down details of my peoples history, they gotta look up my other plates.

34. And its enough to say that forty years passed us by, and we was already caught up in wars and quarrels with our brothers.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 6**

1. Well now, let me tell ya 'bout the words of Jacob, Nephi's brother, what he shared with the folks of Nephi:

2. Lookee here, my dear brothers, Im Jacob, yknow, called by God and set apart in that holy order way, consecrated by my bro Nephi, the one yall look to like a king or a protector, and you lean on him for your safety. I reckon yall know Ive been yappin' at ya a whole heap.

3. But shoot, Im gonna talk to ya again 'cause I really care 'bout yer souls. Yup, Im mighty worried 'bout yall; bet yall know I always have been. Ive been pushin ya hard, teachin ya what my daddy told me, and spillin' all the stories from the very start of this ol world.

4. Now, look here, I want to chat 'bout whats goin on and whats comin down the pike; so Im fixin to read you the words of Isaiah. These are the words my brother wanted me to share with you. Im speakin to yall for yer own good, hopin yall might learn and give some glory to the name of your God.

5. Now, the words Im bout to read are what Isaiah said bout all the house of Israel, and that means yall too, since ya come from that house. Theres a whole heap of things Isaiah said that fit right with you, cause yall are part of that house of Israel.

6. So, heres what the Lord God said: Listen up, Im gonna lift my hand to the Gentiles and set my standard for the folks; theyll be carryin yer sons in their arms and holdin yer daughters on their shoulders.

7. Kings will be like the daddies nursin ya, and queens like the mommas nursin ya; theyll bow down to you with their faces in the dirt and lick the dust off yer feet; and youll know Im the Lord, cause them what wait on me aint gonna feel no shame.

8. Now, I, Jacob, wanna say a few words 'bout these here sayings. Look, the Lords shown me that them folks over in Jerusalem, where we hailed from, done got slain and dragged off all captive.

9. But hold on, the Lords also shown me that they gonna come back home again. Plus, Hes revealed to me that

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, is gonna show up in the flesh; and after He shows His face, they gonna whip Him and nail Him down, just like that angel told me.

10. And once they go hard-headed and stiffen their necks against the Holy One, that's when the judgments of the Holy One of Israel will be comin down on em. The day surely comes when they gonna get smacked and be all afflicted.

11. So, after theyve been tossed 'round, cause thats what the angel said, plenty gonna be afflicted right here on earth, and they wont be allowed to just vanish cause of the prayers from the faithful; theyll be spread out, hurtin, and bein' hated. But still, the Lord will show mercy, and when they remember their Redeemer, theyll be gathered back to their lands and all.

12. And them Gentiles, bless their hearts, theyre who the prophet wrote about; 'cause if they get themselves to repent and dont fight against Zion and steer clear of that big ol abominable church, they're gonna be saved; the Lord Gods gonna keep His promises to His children, and thats why the prophet put pen to paper on this.

13. Now, those whore fightin against Zion and the Lords covenant folks gonna eat the dust off their feet; and the Lords people aint gonna feel no shame. For the Lords people are those who keep on waitin for Him; they still lookin forward to the Messiahs arrival.

14. And listen up, just like the prophet said, the Messiah's gonna show up again for a second time to bring em back; and Hell reveal Himself with power and great glory, puttin an end to all their enemies when that day comes that they believe in Him; and none of them who believe in Him will be destroyed.

15. But those who dont believe in Him? Well, they gonna meet their end, by fire and storm, and earthquakes, and bloodshed, and sickness, and hunger. And they gonna know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

16. Now, is it possible to snatch away the prey from the mighty, or to set free the lawful captive?

17. Well, heres what the Lord said: Even the strong will lose their captives, and the prey of the mighty will be let go; cause the Mighty Gods gonna rescue His covenant folks. For the Lord said: Im gonna go to bat against em thatre goin against you

18. And Ill feed them thats givin you a hard time with their own flesh; they gonna get all drunk on their own

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

blood like its sweet wine; and all flesh will know that I, the Lord, am your Savior and your Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 7**

1. Well now, listen here, the Lord's askin': Did I just up and throw ya out, or am I done with ya for good? Now tell me, wheres the papers from your mamas divorce? Whod I kick ya to the curb for, or which of my folks did I sell ya off to? I mean, who exactly did I hand ya over to? Lookie here, its your own mess that got ya sold off, and your mamas upset cause of the trouble you caused.

2. So, when I showed up, there wasnt a soul around; when I hollered, there wasnt a single body to answer back. Hey, Israel, is my hand too short to save ya, or am I just too weak to help? Take a gander, when I give a shout, I dry up the sea, turn rivers into dry ol deserts, and the fish start stinkin cause the waters gone and theyre croakin from thirst.

3. I drape the sky in darkness, aint no sunshine round, and I make it look like were wearin sackcloth up there.

4. The Lord God gave me a good way with words, teachin me how to speak just what you need to hear, Israel. When yall are plum tuckered out, Hes up bright and early, wakin me up to listen real good like a learned fella.

5. The Lord God opened my ear, and I didnt put up no fuss, nor did I turn tail and run.

6. I bared my back to the one swingin the whip and let em take the hair from my face. I sure didnt shy away from the shame or the spit.

7. The Lords got my back, so I ain't gonna be ashamed. Ive got my face set like a rock, and I know I wont have to hang my head.

8. Now the Lords close by, and Hes the one whos makin things right for me. Whos gonna take me on? Lets stand up together. Whos my enemy? Let em come on over, and Ill set em straight with the words from my mouth.

9. The Lord Gods my helper. And all them folks thinkin to condemn me, well, theyre gonna fade away like old clothes, and the moths are gonna feast on em.

10. Whos in the crowd that fears the Lord, that listens to His servants voice, walkin' around in the dark, not

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

seein a thing?

11. Hey yall, gather 'round that fire you started, wrap yourselves up in those sparks you made. Thisll be your reward from meyoure gonna lay your heads down feelin mighty low.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 8**

1. Well, listen up, yall whore chasin after whats right. Take a gander at that ol rock you came from, and think bout the muck you got pulled outta.

2. Now think bout Abraham, your daddy, and Sarah, the one who brought you into this world; I called him all by his lonesome and blessed him real good.

3. The Lords gonna wrap His arms round Zion, comfortin all them places that got all used up; Hell turn that wild, barren land into somethin sweet like Eden, and that dry old desert just like the Lords own garden. Yall gonna find joy and happiness there, with thankful hearts singin sweet tunes.

4. Hey, listen up, my people; lend me your ears, oh my country folks; a law is comin straight from me, and Im gonna set my judgments shinin bright like a light for yall.

5. My righteousness is right here, my rescues already out the door, and my strong arms gonna judge the folks. The islands are gonna be waitin on me, trustin in my mighty arm.

6. Lift your eyes up to the skies and take a peek at the ground below; cause the heavens gonna fade away like a puff of smoke, and the earth, well, its gonna wear out like an old coat; and those livin on it gonna meet the same fate. But my salvation is forever, and my righteousness aint goin' nowhere.

7. Listen up, yall who know whats right, the folks in whose hearts Ive scribbled my laws, dont be scared of what folks might say, and dont worry bout their nasty talk.

8. Cause them moths gonna chew em up like a worn-out shirt, and them worms gonna eat em like its a wool blanket. But my righteousness is forever, and my salvation gonna last from one generation to the next.

9. Wake up, wake up! Get your strength back, oh arm of the Lord; rise up like you did back in the good ol days. Aint you the one that cut down Rahab and put the hurt on that dragon?

10. Ain't you the one dried up the sea, the waters of that big ol deep; you made a path for the ones bein rescued



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

to cross over?

11. So, them folks the Lord freed are gonna come back singin to Zion; with everlasting joy and holiness sittin pretty on their heads; they gonna find gladness and joy; all that sorrow and sadness gonna run away.

12. Im the one; yep, thats me comforting you. Now tell me, who are you gonna be scared of, a man whos gonna kick the bucket, or a mere human whos gonna be turned into grass?

13. And you forgettin the Lord who made you, cause He stretched out the heavens and set the earth up right; but youre sittin there all scared day after day cause of the oppressors fury, like hes about to bring it all down? So wheres that doomsday fury comin from?

14. The captured ones hightailin it, wantin to be set free, not lookin to die in the pit, nor wantin to run outta bread.

15. But Im the Lord your God, the one whose waves roar; the Lord of Hosts, thats my name.

16. And Ive put my words in your mouth, and shaded you with my hand, so I could shape the heavens and lay down the foundations of the earth, and say to Zion: Look here, youre my people.

17. Wake up, wake up, rise up, oh Jerusalem, whos been drinkin from the Lords cup of wrathyouve sipped the dregs left at the bottom

18. And there aint nobody to guide her among all the kids shes raised; nor a single one takin her by the hand, outta all the sons shes brought up.

19. These two boys have shown up for you, they gonna feel sorry for youcause of your ruins and wreckage, the hunger and the swordwhos gonna comfort you now?

20. Your sons done fainted, cept these two; they sprawled out at the ends of all the streets; like a wild bull caught in a net, theyre filled with the fury of the Lord, the rebuke from your God.

21. So listen up now, you afflicted ones, drunk but not from no wine:

22. Thus says your Lord, the Lord and your God is fightin for his folks; lookee here, Ive taken the cup of tremblin outta your hand, the dregs of my fury; you aint gonna drink it no more.

23. But Im gonna hand it over to them folks whove been hurtin you; them who said to your soul: Get down, so

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

we can walk over and you laid yourself down like the ground and the street for those who passed by.

24. Wake up, wake up, get your strength back, oh Zion; put on your finest clothes, oh Jerusalem, the holy city; from now on, there ain't gonna be no more uncircumcised and unclean folks comin on in.

25. Shake off that dust; get up, sit up, oh Jerusalem; break free from the chains round your neck, oh captive daughter of Zion.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 9**

1. Well now, my dear folks, I've been readin these here words so yall can understand what the Lords promised to all the kin of Israel

2. Hes been talkin to them Jews for quite a spell, speakin through His holy prophets since way back, keepin that message flowin from one generation to the next, til it's time for em to find their way back to the true faith and fold of God; when theyll be brought home to the lands theyre meant to inherit, settlin down in all them promised places.

3. Look here, my beloved folks, Im sayin this so yall can be filled with joy and hold your heads high forever, 'cause of the blessings the Lord Gods gonna shower on your younguns.

4. I reckon yall been ponderin a lot of deep questions, many of ya, tryin to figure out whats comin next; so I know yall understand that our bodies gonna wear out and die; but still, with these here fleshly bodies, we'll get to see God.

5. Yup, I know yall get that Hes gonna show Himself to the folks over in Jerusalem, where we hail from; its only right that Hed do it among 'em; 'cause it just makes good sense for the great Creator to humble Himself and take on our human form, dyin for all of us, so all of us might end up servin' Him.

6. Just like death's knocked on everybody's door, to carry out the kind heart of the great Creator, theres gotta be a resurrection, and its gotta come to us folks cause of the fall; and that fall happened cause we strayed; and since man fell, well, we got cut off from bein in Gods presence.

7. So, ya see, its gotta be a limitless atonement 'cause without that, this here corruption couldnt ever put on incorruption. Folks, its plain as day that the first judgment that came about mustve stuck around forever.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Otherwise, this flesh wouldve just rotted and returned to the dirt, never to rise up again.

8. Oh, the wisdom of God, His mercy and grace! If our bodies couldnt rise again, our spirits would be stuck servin that fallen angel who turned into the devil, never to get back up.

9. And our spirits would be all twisted up like he is, turnin into devils, just like him, kept away from our God, sufferin alongside that father of lies, in misery just like he is; yes sir, just like that deceiver who tricked our first folks, who even dressed up like an angel of light, stirrin up the kids of man to do all kinds of secret evil deeds.

10. Oh, ain't our God good, preparin a way for us to escape the grip of that terrible monster? Yessir, that monster named death and hell, which I call the death of our bodies, and also the death of our spirits.

11. Thanks to our Gods deliverance, the Holy One of Israel, this death Im talkin aboutthe kinda death thats just temporarygotta give back what it took; that deaths just the grave.

12. And this death I mentioned, the spiritual one, it too has to give back its dead; that spiritual death is hell; so death and hell gotta cough up what theyve got, and hells gotta turn loose of its captive spirits, and the graves gotta let go of its captive bodies, and the bodies and spirits of folks will be brought back together; its all through the resurrection power of the Holy One of Israel.

13. Oh, how great Gods plan is! On the flip side, Gods paradise gotta give back the spirits of the good folks, and the graves gotta give back the bodies of the good folks; and the spirit and the body will come back together again, and everyone will be incorruptible, immortal, and livin souls, havin perfect knowledge just like we do in the flesh, cept our knowledge will be all perfect.

14. So, well know all our wrongs, all our dirtiness, and our nakedness; and those who lived right will know all about their joy and righteousness, all dressed up in purity, even wearin a robe of righteousness.

15. And its gonna happen that when everybody passes from the first death to life, since theyve become immortal, they gotta stand before the judgment seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then comes the judgment, and theyll be judged according to Gods holy judgment.

16. And you can bet your boots, just like the Lord lives, cause Gods said it, and its His eternal word, it aint

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

gonna change; those who've been righteous will still be righteous, and those who've been filthy will still be filthy; so the filthy ones are the devil and his minions; and they'll be thrown into everlasting fire, a place made just for them; and their torments gonna be like a lake of fire and brimstone, burnin up forever and ever, with no end in sight.

17. Oh the greatness and fairness of our God! He does what He says, cause His words have gone out, and His laws gotta be followed.

18. But hey, those righteous folks, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, who've believed in Him, who've carried their burdens in this world, and brushed off all the shame why, they're gonna inherit God's kingdom, that was prepared for em since the world began, and their joys gonna be full forever.

19. Oh the vast mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! He saves His saints from that dreadful monster, the devil, along with death, hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone that brings continuous torment.

20. Oh how great the holiness of our God! 'Cause He knows everything, and there ain't nothin that He don't know.

21. And He came into this world to save all yall, if yall will listen to His voice; cause He took on the pains of all folks, yes indeed, the pains of every livin thing, men, women, and children, all part of the Adam family.

22. And He went through all this just so the resurrection could happen for everyone, so all could stand before Him on that great judgment day.

23. And He commands all folks to repent, and to get baptized in His name, havin perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or else they ain't gonna be saved in His kingdom.

24. And if they won't repent, and believe in His name, and get baptized, and hold on till the end, then they gotta face condemnation; cause God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

25. So, He laid down a law; and where there ain't no law, there ain't no punishment; and if there's no punishment, then there ain't no condemnation; and where there's no condemnation, the mercies of the Holy One of Israel got a hold of them, all cause of the atonement; cause they're freed by His power.

26. The atonement makes sure justice gets what it wants from all those who ain't had the law laid down for

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

em, so theyre saved from that terrible monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone that brings endless torment; and theyre brought back to that God who gave em breath, the Holy One of Israel.

27. But oh, woe to that fella thats had the law laid down for him, yessir, whos got all Gods commandments like us, and dont follow em, thinkin he can waste his time here and there; his state is downright awful!

28. Oh, that sly plan of the evil one! Oh the emptiness and the foolishness of humans! When they get learned, they start thinkin theyre so smart, and they aint listenin to Gods counsel, pushin it aside like they got it all figured out, and thats why their wisdom is just plain foolishness, and it dont do 'em no good. And theyll perish cause of it.

29. But bein learned aint a bad thing if you listen to Gods counsel.

30. But oh, woe to those rich folks, rich in all the worldly stuff. Since they got wealth, they look down on the poor, and they pick on the meek, and their hearts are all caught up in their treasures; so their treasure becomes their god. And just watch, their treasures gonna fade right away along with em.

31. And woe to the deaf ones who refuse to listen; theyre gonna perish.

32. Woe to the blind folks who wont see; theyre gonna perish too.

33. Woe to folks whose hearts are unclean, cause theyll be hit hard with the knowledge of their sins come judgment day.

34. Woe to the liar, hes gonna be kicked down to hell.

35. Woe to anyone who just outright kills, for him, death's comin.

36. Woe to the folks who chase after whores, cause theyre gonna get thrown down to hell.

37. Yep, woe to those idol worshippers; for that devil of all devils just loves it when they do.

38. And, all said and done, woe to those who die in their sins; cause theyre gonna return to God, and see His face, but still be stuck in their sins.

39. Oh, my beloved folks, don't forget how awful it is to transgress against that mighty God, and how terrible it is to give in to the temptations of that sly one. Remember, bein all about carnal things is death, but bein spiritual means you get eternal life.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

40. Oh, my dear folks, lend me your ears. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Dont go sayin Ive said hard things bout you; cause if you do, youll be fightin against the truth; Im just sayin what your Makers put on my heart. I get that the truth hits hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous, they dont fear the truth, they embrace it and stand strong.

41. So then, my dear folks, come to the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that His ways are just. The path for mans narrow, but its laid straight ahead of em, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and He dont hire no help there; and aint no other way cept through that gate; cause He cant be fooled, thats the Lord Gods name.

42. And whoever knocks, Hell open up for em; and those wise folks, learned folks, and rich folks who strut round like peacocks cause of their smarts and richesthose are the ones He looks down on; and unless they throw all that away, considerin themselves foolish before God, and humble themselves right down, He aint gonna open up for em.

43. But the wise and the prudent things? Theyll stay hid from em foreveryep, that happiness thats out there for the saints.

44. Oh, my beloved folks, dont forget my words. Im takin off my clothes and shakin 'em out in front of ya; Im prayin to the God of my salvation that He sees me with His all-knowing eye; and when judgment day comes, yall will know that the God of Israel witnessed me shakin your sins off my soul, and that I stand bright before Him, rid of your blood.

45. Oh, my dear folks, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of that one who wants to keep you bound; come to that God who is the rock of your salvation.

46. Get your souls ready for that glorious day when justice is doled out to the good folks, even the day of judgment, so you wont be shrinkin away in fear; so you dont remember all your guilt perfectly and feel forced to shout: Holy, holy are Thy judgments, O Lord God Almightybut I know my guilt; I broke Your law, and my sins are my own; and the devils got me, and Im just prey to his misery.

47. But hey, my folks, ain't it right for me to wake yall up to the heavy truth of all this? Would I really upset

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

your souls if yer hearts were pure? Would I lay it all out plainly if you were free from sin?

48. If you were holy, Id just talk bout holiness; but since you aint holy, and you see me as a teacher, I gotta teach yall the consequences of sin.

49. Ill tell ya, my soul cant stand sin, and my hearts all about righteousness; and Ill give praise to the holy name of my God.

50. Come on now, anyone thirsty, come to the waters; and if ya dont have no money, come on and eat; yeah, come get yall some wine and milk without a dime to your name.

51. So dont waste your money on stuff that dont mean a thing, or labor for things that can't satisfy. Listen up good to me, and remember what Ive said; come to the Holy One of Israel, and feast on what dont perish or go bad, let your soul find some joy.

52. Behold, my beloved folks, remember what your Gods said; pray to Him all the time during the day, and give thanks for His holy name at night. Let your hearts be glad.

53. And just look at how great the covenants of the Lord are, and how He humbles Himself to the children of men; and cause of His greatness, grace, and mercy, He promised us our seed won't just be wiped out according to the flesh, but Hell take care of em; and in future times theyll grow into a righteous branch of Israel.

54. And now, my folks, I wanna keep on talkin to ya; but tomorrow, Im gonna share more of my words. Amen.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 10**

1. Well now, let me reckon this fer ya, heres what I gotta say:

2. Im a-gonna chit chat with yall again, my dear kinfolk, about this here good branch I been talkin bout.

3. Now, ya see, the promises we got are flesh and blood promises; reckon I been shown that a whole heap of our younguns gonna kick the bucket cause they dont believe, but ya know what? Gods gonna be real kind to a lot of folks, and our kiddos will be brought back, so they can see the real deal bout their Redeemer.

4. So, like I said, its gotta be somethin real important that Christcause an angel told me just last night thats his nameshould come to the Jews, them folks whos actin all wicked-like; and they gonna go and crucify himcause

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

- thats just the way its gotta be for our God, and no other nation on this ol earth would dare do that to their God.
5. Cause if all them other folks saw them mighty miracles, theyd turn right round and know hes their God.
6. But down in Jerusalem, cause of them preacher tricks and all kinds of wickedness, they gonna harden their hearts against him, and thats why they gonna nail him to a cross.
7. So, cause of all that mess, they gonna face destruction, famines, pestilences, and blood gonna be spilled; and the ones that dont get wiped out gonna be scattered all over the place.
8. But hold on now, heres what the Lord God says: When the time comes that theyll finally believe in me, that Im Christ, then I made a promise to their daddies that theyll get back in the flesh here on this earth, to the lands that belong to em.
9. And its gonna happen that theyll be gathered back from all their wanderin, from the islands out there in the sea and every corner of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles gonna look pretty good in my eyes, says God, as they bring em back to their homeland.
10. Yep, them kings of the Gentiles gonna be like daddies to em, and the queens will be like mommas; thus, the Lords got some mighty fine promises for them Gentiles 'cause he said so, and whos gonna argue with that?
11. But dont forget, God says this land heres gonna be yours, and them Gentiles will be blessed on it.
12. And this here lands gonna be a place of freedom for the Gentiles, and there aint gonna be no kings tryin to rule over em.
13. Im a-gonna protect this land from all them other nations.
14. And anyone who goes pickin a fight with Zion, well, they gonna meet their end, says God.
15. Now, if someone tries to put a king against me, they gonna meet the same fate, cause I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and Ill shine a light for em forever for those who listen to my words.
16. So listen up, cause I gotta keep my promises I made to the folks down here: while theyre livin, I gotta get rid of all them sneaky dark deeds, all the murders, and the nasty stuff.
17. That bein said, anyone who fights against Zion, be they Jew or Gentile, whether theyre free or bound, man or woman, theyll be done for; cause theys the ones whore like the whore of the earth, and if you aint with me,



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

youre against me, says our God.

18. Now, Ill see my promises through that I made to the folks down here, while theyre livin

19. So, my dear kin, this is what God says: Im gonna put some trials on your descendants by the hands of the Gentiles; yet, Ill soften them Gentile hearts so theyll be like daddies to yall, and the Gentiles gonna be blessed and counted among the house of Israel.

20. And Im gonna set this land apart for your folks and whoevers countin as your kin forever, cause its a chosen piece of ground, says God to me, above all other places; and I want all folks livin there to worship me, says God.

21. And now, my dear relatives, since our merciful Gods given us such mighty knowledge about these matters, lets not forget him, and shake off our sins, and hold our heads high, cause we aint been thrown away; sure, we got booted from our home, but the Lords led us to a better spot, and the seas our road, puttin us on an isle of the sea.

22. But the Lords promises to those on the isles of the sea sure are big; so when it talks about isles, that means theres gotta be more than just this one, and theyre livin there too, just like us.

23. Now just lookie here, the Lord Gods been leadin folks away from the house of Israel from time to time, cause thats how he wants it. And now, arent we lucky? The Lord remembers all them folks whove been cut off, so he remembers us too.

24. So lift up your spirits, and remember yall are free to make your own choicesto pick between everlasting death or eternal life.

25. Now, my dear siblings, make peace with Gods will, not the devils or them fleshly desires; and remember, once youre at peace with God, its only by Gods grace that you get saved.

26. And may God raise you up from death through the resurrections power, and also from everlasting death by the atonements power, so yall can join in the eternal kingdom of God, and sing his praises through that divine grace. Amen.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 11**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well, Jacob done seen his RedeemerThe law of Moses is a preview of Christ comin' 'round, ya hear? Makin' it back in 'bout 559545 B.C.
2. Now, Jacob had a heap more to say to my folks at that time; but shoot, I only wrote down what needed writin, 'cause what I got down suits me just fine.
3. And now I, Nephi, I'm gonna share more of Isaiah's words, 'cause my heart sure loves every bit of 'em. Ill make them fit for my people, and send 'em on out to all my young'uns, 'cause he truly saw my Redeemer, just like I done seen Him.
4. And my brother Jacob, hes laid his eyes on Him too, same as I did; so Im passin' their words along to my kids to show 'em my words ain't no fairy tales. By the word of three, God said, Im gonna make sure my message sticks. But God keeps sendin' more folks to back it up, 'cause Hes gotta prove all He says.
5. Look here, my heart takes joy in showin' my people the truth about Christ comin'; that's why the law of Moses was handed down; all them things God gave to folks since the world kicked off, theyre all pointin' to Him.
6. And Im also happy as a lark in the covenants from the Lord He made with our ancestors; yep, my soul is all about His grace, justice, power, and mercy in the grand ol' plan to save us from kickin' the bucket.
7. And I find joy in showin' my people that if Christ ain't comin', then we're all stuck in a mess.
8. 'Cause if there ain't no Christ, there ain't no God; and if there ain't no God, well shoot, we wouldnt even be here, 'cause there couldnt be no creation. But lemme tell ya, there is a God, and He is Christ, and Hes comin when the time is just right.
9. Now I'm fixin to write some of Isaiah's words, so whosoever in my crowd sees 'em can lift their spirits and celebrate for all folks. These here are the words, and yall can make 'em fit for yourselves and everybody else too.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 12**

1. The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:
2. And yall, its gonna happen in the last days, when the mountain of the Lords house is set up real high like on

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

top of them mountains, and its gonna be lifted up above the hills, and all them nations are gonna flow on over to it.

3. And many folks gonna say, Come on now, lets head on up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; He gonna teach us His ways, and we gonna walk in His paths; cause outta Zion gonna come the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

4. And He gonna judge among the nations, and He gonna set folks straight: they gonna turn their swords into plow-shares and their spears into pruning-hooksaint no nation gonna lift up sword against another, and they ain't gonna learn to fight no more.

5. Oh house of Jacob, come on now, lets walk in the light of the Lord; yeah, come on, cause yall done gone off track, every last one of ya to your wicked ways.

6. So, Lord, You done left Your people, the house of Jacob, cause they got all mixed up with the east, listenin to those fortune-tellers like the Philistines, and they real pleased with the kids of strangers.

7. Their lands packed full of silver and gold, and there aint no end to their treasures; their lands also filled up with horses, and they got plenty of chariots too.

8. Their lands just crowded with idols; they be worshippin what their own hands done made, all that stuff they crafted themselves.

9. And the lowly fella aint bowin down, and the highfalutin one aint humble, so dont you go forgivin him.

10. Oh you wicked ones, go on and crawl into the rocks, and hide yourself in the dust, cause the fear of the Lord and the glory of His majesty gonna knock you down.

11. And its gonna happen that the proud looks of man gonna be brought low, and the haughtiness of men gonna be humbled, and the Lord gonna stand alone exalted on that day.

12. Cause the day of the Lord of Hosts comin on fast for all nations, yep, everybody; yep, for the proud and lofty, and for everyone who thinks too highly of themselves, and they gonna be brought down.

13. And yeah, the day of the Lord gonna come right upon all them tall cedars of Lebanon, cause theyre high and mighty; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. And upon all them high mountains, and all the hills, and every nation thinkin they high and lifted up, and upon every people;
15. And upon every tall tower, and every fenced-up wall;
16. And upon all them ships of the sea, and all them ships of Tarshish, and all them pretty pictures.
17. And the pride of man gonna be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men gonna be made humble; and the Lord alone gonna be exalted on that day.
18. And them idols? He gonna wipe them out completely.
19. And they gonna run into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, cause the fear of the Lord gonna come upon them and the glory of His majesty gonna smite em, when He stands up to shake the earth real bad.
20. On that day, a fella gonna toss away his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, that he done made for himself to worship, giving em over to the moles and the bats;
21. To hide in the cracks of the rocks, and on the tops of the jagged rocks, cause the fear of the Lord gonna come upon them and the majesty of His glory gonna smite em, when He stands up to shake the earth real hard.
22. Just stop relying on man, whose breath is just in his nostrils; whats he gonna mean to ya anyway?

## **2 Nephi Chapter 13**

1. Well now, let me tell ya, the Lord, that big ol Lord of Hosts, Hes fixin' to take away all that support from Jerusalem and Judah, all their bread and water too
2. Hes takin out the strong fellas, the warriors, the judges, the prophets, the wise folks, and the ol timers;
3. The captain of fifty, them respected men, the counselors, the crafty artisans, and those smooth talkin speakers.
4. And I reckon Hes gonna make little ones their rulers, like babies bein in charge and whatnot.
5. Folks are gonna be all troubled, one bein all snarky towards the other, with kids actin' all high and mighty towards the elders, and the lowly givin' the honorable a hard time.
6. When one man grabs his brother from their daddys house and says: Ya got some clothes, why dont you be

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

our boss, and dont let this mess happen

7. That fella's gonna swear up and down: I ain't gonna be a healer; there aint no food nor clothes in my house; dont make me the boss of these folks.

8. Jerusalems in a heap of trouble, and Judahs hit rock bottom, cause their mouths and their actions are all against the Lord, makin' Him mad as a hornet.

9. The way they look tells on em, shoutin their sins out loud like Sodom, and they cant hide it none. Oh my, what a pitiful state, for theyve brought this mess onto themselves!

10. Tell the good folks that everythings just fine; theyll be munchin on the fruits of their good works.

11. Oh, but the wicked, theyre in for a rough ride; they gonna be in a world of hurt, cause what theyve earned is comin right back at em!

12. And my people, its the kids givin em a hard time, and the women runnin the show. Oh my, the ones who are supposed to lead ya, theyre leadin ya straight to trouble and makin a mess of your paths.

13. The Lords standin up to argue, ready to judge the folks.

14. Hes fixin' to take those old timers and the princes to court; yall been eatin up the vineyard and robbin' them poor folks right in your own houses.

15. Whats wrong with ya? Youre breakin my people down and grindin the faces of the poor, says the Lord God of Hosts.

16. On top of that, the Lord says: Cause them daughters of Zion are struttin around all high and mighty, walkin with their necks stretched out and their eyes all flirtatious, walkin and scufflin like they own the place, makin' all that racket with their feet

17. Well, the Lord's about to smack em with a scab right on their heads, and Hes gonna expose their private parts too.

18. On that day, the Lord's gonna take away all their fancy trinkets, their ornaments and those round thingamajigs like the moon;

19. The chains and bracelets, and them mufflers;

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

20. The bonnets, the leg ornaments, the headbands, the tablets, and the ear-rings;
21. The rings and nose bling;
22. The fancy clothes, the mantles, the wimples, and those crispin pins;
23. The mirrors, the fine linens, the hoods, and the veils.
24. And lemme tell ya, instead of sweet smells, there gonna be a stench; instead of nice belts, therell be rags; instead of well-done hairdos, bald heads; and instead of nice fancy stuff, sackcloth, burnin instead of lookin fine.
25. Your men gonna fall by the sword, and your mighty ones in battle.
26. And her gates, theyre gonna wail and moan; shell be laid low and just sittin' on the ground.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 14**

1. Well now, Zion and them younguns are gonna get themselves saved and cleaned up come that big ol millennial daytake a look at Isaiah 4 for what I'm sayin. 'Bout 559 to 545 B.C., yknow.
2. And come that day, seven gals are gonna grab onto one feller, sayin: Well cook our own grub and wear our own duds; just let us be known by yer name so we ain't lookin' so bad.
3. That day, the branch of the Lord's gonna be lookin mighty fine and proud; the fruits of the earth gonna be pure and pretty for them folks that made it out of Israel.
4. And its gonna happen that those still kickin' it in Zion and still hangin' around in Jerusalem will be called holy, everyone whose name's written down among the livin' in Jerusalem
5. When the Lords scrubbed off all the muck from them daughters of Zion and cleared out the blood from Jerusalem right in the middle with that spirit of judgment and that spirit of burnin'.
6. And the Lord's gonna set up a cloud and smoke over every house on Mount Zion and over her gatherin's by day, and a bright flaming fire at night; 'cause every bit of Zion's glory's gonna be a protective shield.
7. And therell be a little shelter to shade ya from the hot sun in the daytime, a safe spot to hunker down from the storms and the rain.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 15**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, the Lords vineyards fixin to be all empty and lonely, and His folksll be scattered roundtroubles are comin down on em while theys out there lost and aloneBut the Lords gonna raise up a flag and get His people back togetherNow, thats kinda like what Isaiah was sayin. Bout 559 to 545 years before Christ, yall.
2. And Im a-gonna sing me a sweet tune for my beloved, all bout his vineyard. My beloveds got himself a vineyard sittin on a mighty fine hill, full of good stuff.
3. He put up a fence, got rid of them pesky rocks, and planted the best dang grapes he could find. Built a tower right there in the middle and made a wine-press too; he was hopin for some nice grapes, but all he got was a bunch of wild ones.
4. Now listen here, folks of Jerusalem and men from Judah, yall judge for me between me and my vineyard.
5. What couldve been done better to my vineyard that I aint already done? So when I looked for some nice grapes, whyd it have to go and give me wild ones instead?
6. Now yall come listen; Im gonna tell ya what Im gonna do to my vineyardIm gonna take away the fence, and itll get all eaten up; Im gonna knock down the wall, and itll get trampled down;
7. And Ill leave it all wastin away; ain't gonna prune it or dig up no weeds; briers and thorns will take over; and Ill even tell the clouds not to rain on it.
8. Cause the vineyard of the Lord Almighty is the house of Israel, and them folks from Judah, theyre His favorite little plants; He was lookin for justice, but all He found was oppression; He wanted righteousness, but all He heard was cries for help.
9. Well, bless their hearts, woes to them that pile house on top of house, till there ain't no space left, just so they can be sittin all by their lonesome in the middle of the earth!
10. In my ears, the Lord of Hosts said, For real, lots of houses gonna be all empty, and grand old towns gonna be without a soul.
11. Yeah, ten acres of vineyard gonna yield you barely a sip, and a whole mess of seed gonna give you just a little handful.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

12. Woe to them that rise up at the crack of dawn, chasin after the strong drink, stayin at it till the nights all gone, and that wine got em all stirred up!
13. And they got their harps, and fiddles, tambourines and flutes, and wine flowin at their parties; but they aint payin no mind to the work of the Lord, nor considerin what Hes done.
14. So, my people went off to captivity cause they aint got no smarts; their good folks are goin hungry, and their crowds are dry as bones.
15. So, hells makin more room for em, with its mouth wide open; theyll be headin right down along with their glory, crowds, big shows, and all them folks who was having a good time.
16. And the little mans gonna be brought down, and the powerful folks gonna be humbled, while them lofty eyes get dropped low.
17. But the Lord of Hosts, Hes gonna be high and lifted up in judgment, and the holy God, Hes gonna be respected in all His rightness.
18. Then them lambs will be fed as they should, and them waste spots where the fat ones were will have strangers munchin down.
19. Woe to them that pull iniquity with fancy ropes, and sin like its just a ride in a cart;
20. That say, Hey, let Him hurry up, speed things along, so we can see it; let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel get here quick, so we can know what's goin on.
21. Woe to them that call evil good, and good evil, that make darkness seem like light and light into darkness, that turn bitterness into sweetness, and sweetness into bitterness!
22. Woe to them wise in their own eyes and slick in their own minds!
23. Woe to them mighty ones drinkin' wine, and them strong fellas mixin' up strong drinks;
24. Who stand up for the wicked cause it pays, and take away the rights from the good folks!
25. So, just like fire eatin' up stubble and flames burnin up the chaff, they roots gonna rot, and their blooms gonna float away like dust; cause they threw away the law of the Lord of Hosts and turned their backs on the word of the Holy One of Israel.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

26. Therefore, the Lords got His anger lit up against His people, Hes stretched out His hand against em and hit em hard; the hills shook, and their bodies laid torn out in the streets. Even with all this, His anger aint eased, His hands still stretched out.

27. And Hell lift up a flag for the nations far away, and Hell hiss to em from the ends of the earth; and sure enough, theyll come a-runnin quick; aint nobody gonna be tired or trippin among em.

28. Nobody gonna be snoozin or slumberin; aint nobody gonna loosen their sashes or break their shoelaces;

29. Their arrows gonna be sharp, their bows all drawn back, and their horses hooves gonna be hard like flint, and their wheels gonna spin like a whirlwind, roarin like a lion.

30. They gonna roar like young lions; oh yeah, they gonna roar, grabbin up the prey and carryin it away safe, and none is gonna get em back.

31. And on that day, they gonna roar against em like the seas roarin; and if they look out at the land, behold, it gonna be all dark and sad, and the skies gonna be shadowed over.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 16**

1. In the year when King Uzziah kicked the bucket, I also laid my eyes on the Lord sittin' up high on a throne, lookin' all majestic, and His train filled the whole temple.

2. Up above was them seraphim; each one sportin' six wings; with two, they covered their faces, with two, they covered their feet, and with the last two, they took to the skies.

3. And one yelled out to another, sayin: Holy, holy, holy is the Lord of Hosts; the whole dang earth is packed full of His glory.

4. And the doorposts shook at the sound of the one yellin, and the whole place filled up with smoke.

5. Then I said: Whoa, Im in a real pickle! Im a mess, cause I got unclean lips, and Im surrounded by folks who got unclean lips too; Ive seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

6. Then one of them seraphim zipped over to me, holdin a hot coal in his hand, that he grabbed with some tongs from the altar.

7. He put that thing on my lips and said: Look here, this has touched your lips; your wrongdoings are all

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

washed away, and your sins are cleaned up.

8. I also heard the Lords voice sayin: Whom I gonna send, and whos gonna go for us? I piped up: Here I am; send me on my way.

9. And He said: Go and tell these folks Yall listenin, but you aint gettin it; yall lookin, but you cant see nothin.

10. Make these folks hearts heavy, and their ears dull, and their eyes shut'cause if they see with their eyes, hear with their ears, and get it in their hearts, they might turn and get healed.

11. Then I asked: Lord, how longs this gonna go on? And He said: 'Til the cities are all empty, and the houses are without a soul, and the lands all messed up.

12. And the Lords gonna move folks far away, cause there's gonna be a whole lot of neglect right in the middle of the land.

13. But even so, therell be a little remnant, and theyll come back, gonna be like a teil tree, or like an oak that still has strength when its leaves fall off; that holy seeds gonna hold it all together.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 17**

1. Well, back in the days of King Ahaz, yknow, that feller who was the son of Jotham and grandson of Uzziah, Rezin, the king of Syria, and Pekah, that boy who was the son of Remaliah from Israel, they decided to march on up to Jerusalem lookin for a fight, but bless their hearts, they just couldnt get the upper hand.

2. Word got around to Davids clan, sayin': Looks like Syrias buddy-buddy with Ephraim. And let me tell ya, it shook Ahaz up somethin fierce, just like the trees tremblin in a strong wind.

3. Then, the Lord spoke to Isaiah and told him, Go on now, meet up with Ahaz and bring your boy Shearjashub along, over by that end of the upper pool down by the fullers field.

4. And tell him: Listen here, dont get all worked up and scared; dont you worry bout them two smolderin firebrands stirrin up trouble, the temper of Rezin and his Syrian pals, and that Remaliahs boy.

5. Cause you see, Syria, Ephraim, and Remaliahs fella, they all got up to some mischievous talkin', schemin against ya, sayin:

6. Lets march on up to Judah and give it a hard time, see if we can tear it down and put a king right smack in

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the middle, yeah, the son of Tabeal.

7. But good Lord, heres what Gods got to say about it: It aint gonna happen, it ain't gonna stick.

8. Now, the head honcho over there in Syria is Damascus, and that Rezin fella runs the show over in Damascus; and in sixty-five years, Ephraim gonna be shattered, just like that, wont even be a people no more.

9. And Ephraims got Samaria as their head, and Samarias run by Remaliahs son. Now, yall best believe, cause if ya dont, you ain't gonna stand firm.

10. But the Lord wasnt done yet, so He had more words for Ahaz, sayin:

11. Go on now, ask the Lord your God for a sign; could be down deep in the ground or way up high in the sky.

12. But Ahaz snapped back, I aint askin for nothin, and I aint gonna put the Lord to the test.

13. And the Lord said: Now, listen up, house of David; it aint a small task to wear out folks, but do yall really wanna wear me out too?

14. So heres the deal, the Lords gonna give ya a signLookey here, a virgins gonna have a baby boy, and His names gonna be Immanuel.

15. Hes gonna munch on butter and honey, that way Hell learn how to know whats good and whats not.

16. Cause before that little one learns to pick the good stuff over the bad, the land you cant stand is gonna be left empty without both kings.

17. The Lords fixin to bring some days upon you, your people, and your daddys kin, somethin we aint seen since Ephraim got outta dodge from Judah and the Assyrian king rolled on in.

18. Now, when that day comes, the Lords gonna whistle for the fly sittin' way down in Egypt and for the bee buzzin' in Assyria.

19. And theys gonna show up and rest in those desolate valleys, and all them cracks in the rocks, and all the thorny bits, and bushes all around.

20. That same day, the Lords gonna use a hired razor, sittin back beyond the river with that Assyrian king, to shave the head and feet hair; might even take the beard too.

21. And guess what, in that same day, a mans gonna be feedin a lil calf and two sheep;

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

22. And its all cause theres gonna be so much milk, that butters gonna be on the menu; butter and honeys whats gonna be eaten by everyone left in that land.

23. When that day comes, every spot where there used to be a thousand vines worth a thousand silver coins, its all gonna turn into briars and thorns.

24. Folks gonna show up with bows and arrows, cause everythings gonna end up bein briars and thorns, all of it.

25. And all them hills you plowed with a mattock aint gonna give yall any fear of bramble or thorn; instead, its gonna be for sendin out oxen and trample for the little critters.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 18**

1. Well now, Christ's gonna be a stone folks keep trippin over and a rock that's real troublesomeYall best be seekin the Lord instead of listenin to them peepin wizardsLook to the law and what they testify bout fer some directionJust check out Isaiah 8, yall.

2. Then, the good Lord told me: Grab a big ol' scroll, and write on it with a fella's pen bout Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

3. I got me some trusty folks to back me up, Uriah the priest and Zechariah, the son of that Jeberechiah fella.

4. I went to the prophetess, and shoot, she got herself knocked up and had a boy. Thats when the Lord told me: Name him Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

5. Now, this little tyke aint gonna know how to cry My daddy or My mama fore them riches of Damascus and all the loot from Samaria get snatched away from the king of Assyria.

6. And the Lord spoke to me again, sayin:

7. Since these folks aint wantin the gentle waters of Shiloah, and theyre all happy bout Rezin and Remaliahs boy;

8. Well, lookie here, the Lords fixin to bring up a whole river on em, mighty and full, even the king of Assyria and all his splendor; and hes gonna cover all the channels, overflow all the banks.

9. Hes gonna march right through Judah; hell spill over and go past up to your neck; and the stretch of his

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

wings is gonna fill up your whole land, O Immanuel.

10. Yall gather round now, and youre gonna get all smashed up; listen up out there in faraway lands; strap yourselves in, cause you gonna get broken up; strap yourselves in, and you gonna get broken up.

11. Yall huddle up and plot, but it aint gonna amount to nothin; say what you will, but it aint gonna stick; cause Gods with us.

12. For the Lord told me good and firm, and laid it on me not to walk the same path as these folks, sayin:

13. Don't yall go callin it a confederacy when these folks start blabbin bout a confederacy; don't you fear what they fear, nor get all scared.

14. Make the Lord of Hosts your sanctuary, and let Him be the one you fear, and the one that makes ya tremble.

15. Hell be a safe place for ya, but also a rock folks trip over and a stone of offense for both houses of Israel, a trap and a snare for the folks in Jerusalem.

16. A whole bunch of em will trip up, fall down, get broken, caught up, and taken away.

17. Wrap up the testimony, seal up the law tight with my disciples.

18. Im gonna be waitin on the Lord, whos hidin His face from Jacobs house, and Ill be on the lookout for Him.

19. Look here, me and the kiddos the Lords given me are for signs and wonders in Israel, comin from the Lord of Hosts, whos settin' up shop in Mount Zion.

20. And when they say to ya: Go seek out them who got familiar spirits, and them wizards mumblin and peepinAint folks supposed to be seekin their God for the livin instead of tryin to hear from the dead?

21. To the law and to the testimony; if they ain't talkin right, its cause they aint got no light in em.

22. And theyll be hustlin through it, barely hangin on and all hungry; when they start feelin that hunger, theyre gonna get all riled up, curse the king and their God, and be lookin up.

23. And theyll be lookin at the earth and seein trouble, darkness, gloomy anguish, and be driven straight into darkness.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 19**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well now, let me tell ya, the gloom ain't gonna be near as bad as it was when them folks in Zebulun and Naphtali were gettin a raw deal at first, then it just got worse when they were messin round the Red Sea over yonder in Galilee with all them nations.
2. Them thatve been wandern round in the dark, well, they done seen a big ol light shinin; folks livin in the shadow of death, that lights bustin through for em.
3. You done multiplied our people and cranked up the joytheyre celebratin like its harvest time, just like when folks are grinnin and split up the loot.
4. You done broke the heavy yoke off folks backs and tossed the oppressors stick away too.
5. Every battle a warrior fights is just a noisy mess, clothes all bloodied up; but this one heres gonna be like burnin firewood, I reckon.
6. For us, a little one is born, a son is given; the whole governments gonna rest on his shoulders, and theyll call him Wonderful, Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, and Prince of Peace.
7. There ain't no end to the growth of that government nor the peace it brings, sittin on Davids throne, runnin things with judgment and justice forevermore. The Lord's fired up about doin this.
8. The Lord sent his word to Jacob, and its hit Israel square in the face.
9. And all the folks, even Ephraim and them livin in Samaria, theyre puffin up with pride and sayin all kinda mess:
10. Them bricks done fell, but were gonna build back up with fancy stones; them sycamores got chopped down, but well swap em for cedars.
11. So the Lords gonna rally up Rezins foes against him, bringin his enemies together for a good ol showdown;
12. The Syrians in front and Philistines behind; theyre gonna gobble up Israel, just like that. For all this, His anger aint cooled off, His hands still reachin out.
13. But the folks aint turnin to the one thats layin the smack down on em, nor are they seekin the Lord of Hosts.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. So the Lord's gonna cut off head and tail, branch and rush all in one day from Israel.

15. The ancient fellow is the head, and the prophet peddlin lies, hes the tail.

16. The leaders of this crowd, theyre leadin' folks astray; and anyone followin ems endin up in a world of hurt.

17. So the Lord ain't gonna take no pleasure in their young'uns, nor show mercy to the orphans and widows; every one of ems a two-timer and a wrongdoer, and folks are talkin nonsense. For all this, His angers still not quite lettin up.

18. Cause wickedness is burnin like a fire; its gonna eat up them thorns and briars, catchin in them woods, risin up like smoke.

19. By the rage of the Lord of Hosts, the lands grown dark, and the people are just fuel for that fire; ain't nobody lookin out for their brother.

20. And hell grab to the right and still be hungry; eatin with the left hand, but aint no satisfaction; every mans gonna be munchin on his own arm

21. Manasseh and Ephraim, and Ephraim and Manasseh; theyre all gonna be ganging up on Judah. For all this, His angers still burnin, and His hands still stretched out.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 20**

1. Well now, heres how it goes:

2. Watch out, yall, for them folks makin' unfair laws and writin' up all sorts of heavy burdens they done laid out.

3. Theyre tryin to keep the needy from gettin their fair shake, and takin rights from the poor folks, lettin' them widows be easy pickins and robbin the orphans!

4. So what in tarnation yall gonna do when the Lord comes a-callin, and when all that destruction rolls in from afar? Who you think you gonna run to for help? And where ya gonna stash your pride?

5. Without me, theyll be bowin down under them prison chains, and fallin like the dead ones. Even still, all this mess aint makin' the Lord's anger go away, and His hands still reachin out.

6. O Assyrian, youre the stick of my anger, and that staff theyre holdin is just their frustration.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. I'm gonna send him right into a hypocritical crowd, and give him the go-ahead to scoop up the loot, grab the catch, and stomp 'em down like mud in the streets.
8. But he dont mean nothin like that, him and his heart ain't thinkin' on that; deep down hes all about destroyin and cuttin' off a whole lotta nations.
9. Cause hes a-sayin: Aint my princes all kings?
10. Aint Calno like Carchemish? Aint Hamath like Arpad? Aint Samaria like Damascus?
11. Just like my hand done built the kingdoms of them idols, and their carved images were better than whats in Jerusalem and Samaria;
12. Ain't I gonna do to Jerusalem and her idols just like I did to Samaria and her idols?
13. So here's the deal: when the Lords folded up all His work on Mount Zion and in Jerusalem, Im gonna whip the pride right outta the king of Assyria, and hes gonna see his lofty looks come crashin down.
14. He thinks: By the might of my own hand and my own smarts, I done all this here; cause Im wise; I moved folks around, grabbed their treasures, and pushed them folks down like a brave man.
15. And my hand done found all the riches of the people like it was a nest; just like someone gatherin' up the leftover eggs, Ive gathered all that earth up; and ain't nobody flapped a wing, opened their mouth, or made a peep.
16. Can the ax go braggin bout itself to the one whos usin' it? Can the saw go actin' fancy gainst the one shakinin' it? Its like the stick tryin' to shake itself gainst them thats holdin it up, or like the staff thinkin' it can lift itself up like it aint just a hunk of wood!
17. So the Lord of Hosts is bout to send some lean times among them well-fed folks; and His glorys gonna set off a burnin like a good ol fire.
18. And the light of Israel gonna be a fire, and His Holy One gonna be a flame, burnin right up them thorns and briers in a single day;
19. And ain't nothin left of His glorious forest or fruitful fields, not a soul nor body; theyll be like when a flag-bearers bout to drop.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

20. And the rest of them trees in His forest gonna be so few, a kid can just write 'em down.
21. On that day, the leftover of Israel, and them that got away from the house of Jacob, they ain't gonna lean on the one who hit 'em no more, but they gonna depend on the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, for real.
22. The remnant gonna come back, yep, even the leftovers of Jacob, back to the mighty God.
23. Cause even if your people Israel be as plenty as the sand on the seashore, still, some of em gonna come back; whats been decreed to happen will overflow with goodness.
24. For the Lord God of Hosts gonna make it happen, right across the whole land.
25. So heres what the Lord God of Hosts says: O my folks livin in Zion, dont you be scared of the Assyrian; hes gonna swing at ya with a stick, and raise up his staff against ya, just like they did down in Egypt.
26. Cause it wont be long now, and that angers gonna chill out, and my wrath in their takin down.
27. And the Lord of Hosts gonna stir up a whippin for him, like the killin of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and just like his rod was over the sea, hes gonna lift it up like they did in Egypt.
28. And on that day, his loads gonna be taken off your shoulder, and his yoke from your neck; that yoke gonna be shattered cause of the anointin.
29. Hes come to Aiath, passed through Migron; at Michmash he done set up his rides.
30. They crossed over the passage; they made camp at Geba; Ramath's shakin in fear; Gibeah of Sauls high-tailin it.
31. Raise up your voice, O daughter of Gallim; let it reach Laish, O poor Anathoth.
32. Madmenahs gettin outta here; the folks of Gebim are gatherin' to skedaddle.
33. Hes still gonna be hangin around at Nob that day; hes gonna wave his hand long the mountain of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.
34. Look yonder, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts gonna chop off the boughs with a fright; the tall ones gonna get cut down, and them haughty gonna be brought low.
35. And hes gonna cut down the thickets of the woods with iron, and mighty ones gonna bring Lebanon to its knees.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 21**

1. Well now, listen close, 'cause here's what it says: A shoot's gonna pop outta Jesses family tree, and a little sprout's gonna grow from his roots.
2. And the Spirit of the Lord's gonna settle on him, bringin' along wisdom and understandin', good advice and some good ol strength, plus knowledge and a healthy respect for the Lord.
3. Hell be quick to get whats what round the Lord; he aint gonna judge folks just by what he sees or hears.
4. No sir, hes gonna look out for the poor and treat the meek right, and he'll put a hurtin' on the wicked just by speakin' and with the breath of his lips.
5. He's wearin' righteousness like a belt, and he's wrapped up in faithfulness.
6. Even the wolfs gonna hang out with the lamb, and the leopards gonna chill with the kid; a calf, a young lion, and a fattened critter will all lay down together, and a little child will lead 'em.
7. The cow and the bear are gonna graze together, let their young ones snooze side by side; and a lions gonna munch on grass like its hay.
8. Even a little babys gonna play where the asp is, and the weaned child'll put his hand right on the den of the cockatrice.
9. There aint gonna be no harm nor destruction on my holy mountain, cause the whole earth will be filled with the knowledge of the Lord, just like the waters cover the sea.
10. And on that day, therell be a root from Jesse standin' tall as a sign for the folks; the Gentiles will be lookin' for it, and his rest will be somethin mighty fine.
11. Its gonna happen that day, the Lord's gonna reach out again to bring back whats left of his people who are scattered, comin' from Assyria, Egypt, Pathros, Cush, Elam, Shinar, Hamath, and all them islands out in the sea.
12. Hell set up a sign for the nations, gather the lost sheep of Israel and pull together the folks of Judah from all four corners of the earth.
13. Ephraim won't be jealous of Judah no more, and all them foes of Judah will be done for; Ephraim ain't

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

gonna envy Judah, and Judah won't be botherin Ephraim.

14. But theyre gonna take to the skies on the backs of the Philistines headin' west; theyll plunder the east together; theyll have their hands on Edom and Moab, and the kids of Ammon will fall in line behind 'em.

15. And the Lords gonna wipe out the tongue of the Egyptian sea; with his mighty wind, he'll wave his hand over the river and split it into seven streams, makin' folks cross over dry as a bone.

16. Theres gonna be a straight shot for what's left of his people from Assyria, just like it was for Israel when they came up outta Egypt.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 22**

1. In them good ol days, all folksll be givin the Good Lord some praiseHell be hangin out with usJust like it says in Isaiah 12. Bout 559545 B.C.

2. Well now, on that day, youre gonna say: Hey Lord, Im gonna sing your praises; even when you were mad at me, youve backed off that anger and wrapped me up in comfort.

3. Looky here, Gods my salvation; Im gonna trust Him and not be scared; cause the Lord Jehovahs my strength and my tune; Hes my salvation, too.

4. So go on and fill up them buckets with joy from the wells of salvation.

5. And on that day, yallll be shoutin: Praise the Lord, call on His name, let folks know what Hes been up to, and make sure everybody knows His names somethin special.

6. Sing to the Lord, cause Hes done some mighty fine stuff; thats known all over this big ol earth.

7. Yell and holler, you folks livin in Zion; cause the Holy One of Israels right there in the middle of ya.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 23**

1. Well now, heres what I got for ya, rephrased real nice-like:

2. The weighty message about Babylon that ol Isaiah saw comin at ya.

3. Raise up a sign on that high mountain, yell loud for em, wave your hands, so they can strut right into them fancy gates.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

4. I done told my chosen folks, and I called up my strong ones, 'cause I ain't mad at those folks who take pride in my greatness.
5. You can hear all the ruckus up in them mountains, like a huge crowd hollerin, a whole mess of nations gettin together, the Lord of Hosts is callin up the troops for battle.
6. Theyre comin from way out yonder, all the way from the end of the sky, yep, the Lord, and His weapons of fury, ready to wreck the whole place.
7. Hollerin time, yall, 'cause the Lords day is comin real soon; its gonna hit like a tidal wave from the Almighty.
8. So all them hands are gonna feel weak, and every fellas heart is gonna turn to mush;
9. And theyll be scared silly; pains and sorrows are gonna grab hold of em; theyll be starin at each other in shock; their faces all lit up like flames.
10. Look out! The day of the Lord is comin, mean and ready with a big ol sledgehammer, gonna make the land a ghost town; Hes gonna wipe out the sinners livin there.
11. The stars up in the sky and all them constellations wont shine a lick; the suns gonna be dark when it rises, and the moon wont be glowin either.
12. Im gonna dish out some punishment to the world for all that evil, and the wicked folks for their wrongdoings; Ill put an end to them proud folks, and knock the haughty off their high horses.
13. I'm fixin to make a man worth more than gold; even a single fellers worth more than the finest gold nugget.
14. So Ill shake the heavens, and the earths gonna move outta place, cause of the Lord of Hosts wrath, and on the day of His fierce temper.
15. And its gonna be like a scared deer, and like a sheep with no one to look after it; every mans gonna turn tail to his own folks, and run home.
16. Every proud souls gonna get run through; yep, all them who stick with the wicked will fall by the sword.
17. Their little ones are gonna be smashed right before their eyes; their homes are gonna be turned upside

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

down, and their wives taken from em.

18. Just wait, Im gonna get those Medes riled up against em, and they aint gonna care about silver or gold, dont think theyll take a shine to any of it.

19. Their bows are gonna make short work of the young men; they wont have no pity on the expectin women; they aint gonna spare a single child.

20. And Babylon, the pride of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldeans, is gonna be just like when the Good Lord turned Sodom and Gomorrah to dust.

21. Aint nobody gonna live there, not now or in the future; no way the Arabs gonna set up camp there, nor the shepherds gonna fold their flocks there.

22. But the wild critters from the desert will lay low in there; and all them houses gonna be full of sad creatures, and owls gonna make their home there, and funny folks gonna be dancing about.

23. And the wild beasts from the islands will be callin out in their empty homes, and dragons in their fancy places; and Babylons time is real close, ain't gonna take long now. 'Cause Ill wipe her out quick, sure as shootin; Ill be merciful to my people, but the wicked are gonna meet their end.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 24**

1. Well now, the Good Lord's gonna have mercy on Jacob, yknow he ain't forgettin' 'bout Israel, gonna set 'em right back in their own land; them strangers gonna hitch their wagons to the house of Jacob.

2. And folks'll take 'em, bring 'em on home; yep, from far and wide, all the way to the ends of the earth, they gonna return to their promised land. And the house of Israel gonna claim 'em, and the land of the Lord gonna be for servants and handmaids; and they gonna haul 'em off just like they was hauled off, and they gonna have themselves rule over them oppressors.

3. And its gonna come to pass that day that the Lord gonna give you some rest from all that sorrow, all that fear, and from the hard work you been bustin' your tail doin'.

4. And that day gonna roll around, and you gonna take up this ol' saying against the king of Babylon, sayin':  
How in the world did the oppressor stop, that golden city done stopped shut!

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

5. The Lord done broke the staff of them wicked folks, and the scepters of them rulers.
6. That one who smacked the folks in a rage with a constant beatdown, the one who ruled the nations in anger, hes gettin' chased down, and ain't nobody gonna stop it.
7. The whole earth's at rest, real quiet-like; folks breakin' out in song.
8. Yeah, even the fir trees are havin' a hoedown over ya, and the cedars of Lebanon, sayin': Since you been laid down, no chopper's comin' up against us.
9. Hells movin' down below to meet ya when you show up; its stirrin' up the dead for ya, even the big shots from the earth; its raised up all them kings from their thrones.
10. All of 'em gonna speak and say to ya: Well, shoot, you done got weak like us? You turned into just like us?
11. Your fancy stuff's been brought down to the grave; aint no music from your fancy viols heard no more; the worms been spread out under you, and the worm's coverin' ya up.
12. Well, howd you end up fallin' from heaven, oh Lucifer, son of the mornin'! You got cut down to the ground, the one who done weakened the nations!
13. Cause you done said in your heart: I'm gonna rise up to heaven, Im gonna put my throne above the stars of God; I'm fixin' to sit on the mount of the congregation, on the sides of the north;
14. Im gonna rise above the heights of them clouds; I'm gonna be like the Most High.
15. But you're gonna get dragged down to hell, to the sides of the pit.
16. Folks that see ya gonna look real close and say: Is this the fella that made the earth tremble, that shook up kingdoms?
17. And made the world like a wild place, destroyed all them cities, and didnt even open the doors for his prisoners?
18. All them kings of the nations, yeah, all of 'em, lie there in glory, each one in their own fancy digs.
19. But you, you been kicked out of your grave like some rotten branch, and them few that got taken out with a sword, goin' down to the stones of the pit; like a carcass kicked underfoot.
20. You ain't gonna get buried with 'em, 'cause you done wrecked your own land and killed your people; the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

seed of them evildoers ain't never gonna be famous.

21. Get ready to do some slayin for his kids 'cause of their daddies' sins, so they don't rise up, nor take the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

22. For I'm gonna rise up against 'em, says the Lord of Hosts, and wipe out from Babylon the names, the leftovers, the sons, and the nephews, says the Lord.

23. Im also gonna make it a place for the bittern and some pools of water; and Ill sweep it away with the broom of destruction, says the Lord of Hosts.

24. The Lord of Hosts swore, sayin': Just like I thought it would happen, its gonna happen; and just like I planned, its gonna stand

25. That Im gonna bring that Assyrian into my land, and stomp him down on my mountains; then his yoke gonna come off 'em, and that burden gonna lift right off their shoulders.

26. This here is the plan that's set for the whole earth; and this is the hand stretched out against all nations.

27. For the Lord of Hosts has made up his mind, and who can undo that? And His hands stretched out, and who gonna turn it back?

28. In the year when King Ahaz died was this heavy load.

29. Dont you go rejoicing, whole Palestina, cause the rod of the one who smacked ya is broken; 'cause outta the serpent's root gonna come a cockatrice, and his fruit gonna be a fiery flyin' serpent.

30. And the firstborn of the poor will eat, and the needy gonna lay down safe; and Im gonna whack your root with famine, and he gonna wipe out your leftovers.

31. Holler, oh gate; cry out, oh city; you, whole Palestina, youre all done for; 'cause theres a smoke comin' from the north, and none gonna be alone in whats meant to happen.

32. So what they gonna say to the messengers from the nations? That the Lord done built Zion, and the poor among His people gonna trust in it.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 25**

1. Now, I reckon Im fixin to say a few things bout the words I done wrote, the ones Isaiah himself spoke. See,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Isaiah said a whole heap of things that kinda went over the heads of folks like mine, cause they dont rightly get how them Jews prophesy.

2. I aint taught em much bout how the Jews operate, cause their ways were all dark and their doins were downright nasty.

3. So, Im a-writin to my folks, and all yall who come after em, so they can know Gods judgments come down on every nation, like hes been sayin.

4. Now yall listen up, house of Israel, give a listen to what Im sayin; the words of Isaiah might not make sense to ya, but they sure are clear to those filled with the spirit of prophecy. Im givin yall a prophecy thats straight from the spirit in me, cause I been prophesyin plain n simple ever since I left Jerusalem with my daddy; my heart just loves plain talk so my folks can learn.

5. Yep, I take joy in Isaiahs words, cause I saw a lot while I was in Jerusalem, and I can tell you, them Jews do know what the prophets say. Aint no other folks catchin on to what the prophets said like they do, less they learn it the way the Jews do.

6. But shoot, I aint raised my younguns like them Jews do; I know Jerusalem real well, so Ive talked to my kids bout the judgments of God thatve come down on the Jews, accordn to all that Isaiah had to say, but I aint writin em down.

7. But hey, Im carryin on with my own prophecy, keepin it plain; I know nobodys gonna mess that up. But therell come a time when folks will really know when Isaiahs prophecies come true.

8. So, them words are real useful for folks, and if someone thinks they aint, then Ill speak directly to my own folks; I reckon they gonna be mighty useful for em in the last days, when they finally understand em; thats why I wrote em down for their good.

9. Just like one generation of Jews was wiped out cause of their wrongdoings, so it goes on from one to the next, all cause of their sins; aint nobody been destroyed less the Lords prophets warned em first.

10. Theyve been told about the destruction comin their way right after my daddy split Jerusalem; but they went and hardened their hearts; and just like I said, they got destroyed, cept for them that got dragged off to



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Babylon.

11. Now Im sayin this cause somethin in me makes me speak. Even though they got dragged away, they gonna come back round and reclaim Jerusalem; they gonna get back to their land.

12. But yall best believe, they gonna have themselves some wars and hear all sorts of mess bout wars; and when the day finally comes that the Only Begotten of the Father shows up in the flesh, well, they gonna turn im away cause theyre full of sin, hard hearts, and stubborn necks.

13. And just like that, they gonna crucify him; and after hes laid to rest for three days, he gonna rise up again, bringin about healings; and all who believe in his name gonna be saved in the Kingdom of God. Thats why it makes my heart happy to prophesy bout him, cause Ive seen his day and Im all about praise for his holy name.

14. And ya know, after the Messiah gets up from the dead and shows himself to the people who will believe in his name, Jerusalem gonna face destruction again; woe to them who go up against God and his church.

15. So, the Jews gonna find themselves scattered mong all nations; and Babylon gonna be brought down too; hence, the Jews gonna be spread apart by other nations.

16. And after they been scattered, the Lords gonna whip em by other nations for many generations, all the way down to when they finally figure out to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and bout the atonement thats for everybodyand when that day rolls around, when they up and believe in Christ, worshippin the Father in his name, with clean hearts and honest hands, not lookin for another Messiah, then they gonna see the day they oughta believe in these things.

17. And the Lord, hes gonna take his hand again to bring back his people from their lost ways. Thats why hes gonna do a marvel, a wonder for the children of men.

18. Hes gonna bring forth his words thatll judge em come the last day, cause they gotta be convinced bout the real Messiah, the one they turned away; and they wont need to be lookin for a Messiah anymore cause aint nobody but a false one gonna be out there foolin folks; the only one talked about by the prophets, that ones the Messiah wholl be rejected by the Jews.

19. For the prophets said, the Messiah's comin in six hundred years after my pa left Jerusalem; according to

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

what them prophets said, and the word from Gods angel, his names gonna be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

20. And now, brothers of mine, Ive been real plain with you so there aint no messin it up. And as sure as the Lord God liveth who got Israel outta Egypt and gave Moses the power to heal folks after they got bitten by them snakes, if theyd just look at the serpent he raised up for em, and also gave him power to hit that rock and make the water flow; ye see, Im tellin you, just like thats true, cause the Lord God liveth, there aint no other name under heaven except this Jesus Christ that Ive told yall about thatll save a man.

21. Thats why the Lord God promised me that what Im writin heres gonna be kept safe, passed down to my kin, from generation to generation, so the promise made to Joseph can be kept; that his descendants wont ever perish as long as this old earth stands.

22. So these words gonna get passed down from generation to generation as long as this earth keeps spinnin; and they gonna go just how God wants; and the nations that hold em gonna be judged by em based on whats written.

23. We work real hard to write and persuade our kids and our brothers to believe in Christ, get right with God, cause we know its by grace were saved, after all we can manage.

24. And even if we believe in Christ, we still keep the law of Moses, lookin' ahead with hopefulness to Christ, til the laws got fulfilled.

25. Cause thats why the law was handed down; so that laws become dead to us, but we live cause of our faith in Christ; though we still follow the law cause of the commandments.

26. We talk bout Christ, we get happy bout him, we tell the good news of him, we prophesy about him, and we write down our prophecies so our kids know where to turn for forgiveness of their sins.

27. So were speakin about the law to our kids so they can understand how dead the law is; and by knowin the deadness of the law, they can look forward to that life thats in Christ, and see for what purpose the law was given. Once the laws got fulfilled through Christ, they wont harden their hearts against him when the law oughta be set aside.

28. And now listen here, my people, youre a stubborn bunch; Ive spoken real clear so there aint no way you

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

could misunderstand. The words I shared gonna stand against you, cause theyre enough to teach anyone the right way; and the right way is to believe in Christ and not deny him; cause by denyin him, youre also sayin no to the prophets and the law.

29. And now, Im tellin you the right way is to believe in Christ and not deny him; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; hence, you gotta bow down to him, and worship him with all your might, mind, strength, and whole soul; and if you do this, you aint gonna be cast out no way.

30. And, as long as it makes sense, you gotta keep up with the duties and ordinances of God until the law given to Moses is fulfilled.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 26**

1. Well now, after Jesus done risen up from the grave, Hes gonna show Himself to yall, my younguns and my dear brethren; and the words Hell say to ya will be the law yall gotta follow.

2. Yall listen up, 'cause I done seen plenty generations pass on by, and theres gonna be some fierce wars and arguments amongst my folks.

3. And after the Messiah swings by, therell be all sorts of signs givin away His birth, and His death and resurrection too; that days gonna be somethin awful for the wicked, 'cause they gonna get wiped out; and its their own fault for tossin out the prophets and the saints, stonin em and takin em out. So the blood of the saints is gonna raise a ruckus up to God from the ground gainst em.

4. So, all yall who strut around all proud and doin wicked things, the days gonna come when itll set fire to ya, says the Lord of Hosts; they gonna be like dry grass ready to burn.

5. And them that go round killin the prophets and saints, the depths of the earth is gonna swallow em up, says the Lord of Hosts; mountains gonna hide em, whirlwinds gonna carry em off, buildings gonna come crashin down on em and just turn em to dust and grind em up real fine.

6. And they gonna be hit with thunder, lightning, and quakes, along with all sorts of destroyin, 'cause the Lords angers gonna blaze up against em, and they gonna be like dry grass, and that days gonna consume em, says the Lord of Hosts.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. Oh, the hurt and sorrow in my heart for losin my folks! 'Cause I, Nephi, seen it all, and its near about done me in in front of the Lord; but I gotta cry out to my God: Your ways are fair.

8. But check it out, the good folks who listen to the prophets and dont do 'em wrong, but stay lookin towards Christ with steady hearts waitin for the signs, no matter the hard timetheyre the ones that wont be lost.

9. But the Son of Righteousness gonna shine on them; Hes gonna heal em, and they gonna have peace with Him, 'til three generations pass, and many from the fourth generation gonna leave this world right.

10. And once all this goes on, a quick destruction's comin for my folks; 'cause, even with all the trouble in my soul, I seen it comin; so I know its gonna happen; and they sell themselves for nothinbecause of their pride and foolishness, they gonna harvest their own ruin. They choose dark works instead of light, so down to hell they go.

11. 'Cause the Spirit of the Lord aint gonna fight with folks forever. And when the Spirit stops tryin to work with em, the destruction comes real quick, and that just breaks my heart.

12. And when I was talkin 'bout tryin to convince the Jews that Jesus is the real deal, its gotta be that the Gentiles gonna get convinced too that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

13. And He shows Himself to everyone who believes in Him, through the power of the Holy Ghost; yessiree, to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, workin mighty wonders, signs, and miracles 'mongst the folks dependin on their faith.

14. But hey now, Im tellin yall whats coming in the last days; when the Lord Gods gonna bring these things forth to the children of men.

15. After my people and my kin have dwindled in doubt, and have been knocked around by the Gentiles; yeah, after the Lord God sets up camp against em tight and lays siege with a big ol mountain, buildin forts against em; and after they been brought down low in the dirt, even like they dont exist, yet the words of the righteous will get penned down, and the prayers of the faithful gonna be heard, and all whove faded in disbelief wont be forgotten.

16. 'Cause those who get destroyed gonna speak to 'em from the ground, and their words gonna rise soft from

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the dust, like a familiar spirit; for the Lord Gods gonna give em power to whisper about em, even like its comin outta the ground; and their words gonna be a soft murmur from the dust.

17. So says the Lord God: They gonna write whats gonna happen to 'em, and itll get penned and sealed in a book, and those whove fallen away in doubt aint gonna see it, 'cause they tryin to wreck the things of God.

18. So just like those whove been taken out got taken out real quick; and the lot of their terrible ones gonna be like chaff blown awayyeah, thus says the Lord God: Its gonna be in a flash, just like that

19. And its gonna happen that those whove faded away in doubt gonna get hit by the Gentiles.

20. And the Gentiles are all puffed up with pride, and they fell flat, 'cause they got a heap of stumbling blocks, buildin all them fancy churches; but they push aside the power and miracles of God, and preach their own wisdom and learnin, all so they can profit off the backs of the poor.

21. And theres a whole mess of churches goin up that stir up jealousy, and fights, and hatred.

22. And theres also some secret groups, just like back in the day, all those devilish combinations, cause hes the mastermind behind all this mess; yep, founder of murder and dark deeds; and he pulls em along by the neck with a pretty little cord, till he ties 'em up tight forever.

23. Listen up, my dear brethren, Im tellin ya, the Lord God aint workin in darkness.

24. He dont do nothin 'less its for the good of the world; for He loves the world, even enough to lay down His own life to draw all folks to Him. So take it to heart, He dont command nobody to stay away from His salvation.

25. Is He out there shoutin at anyone, sayin: Get away from me? Nope, I tell ya, He dont; but Hes sayin: Come to me, all ya folks from far and wide, come on down for milk and honey, without payin a dime.

26. Now, has He told noone to leave the synagogues or the places of worship? Listen here, I say to ya, Nah.

27. Has He said folks shouldnt take part in His salvation? Well, Im tellin ya, Nah; Hes made it free for everyone; and Hes told His people to persuade all folks to turn back to Him.

28. Now, has the Lord gone round sayin folks shouldnt enjoy His goodness? Nah, Im tellin ya, they all get the same privilege, and nobodys left out.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

29. Hes commanded there be no priestcrafts; cause priestcrafts is when folks preach and make themselves out to be the light of the world, just to rake in some bucks and the worlds applause; but they aint lookin out for Zions well-being.

30. Yall, the Lords put a stop to that; so the Lord Gods given a command that all folks oughta love, and that love is charity. And if they dont have charity, they ain't nothin'. So if they do have charity, they wont let the laborers in Zion go hungry.

31. But the laborer in Zion gonna work for Zion; cause if they labor just for money, they gonna be lost.

32. And again, the Lord Gods commanded folks not to kill; not to lie; not to steal; not to misuse the name of the Lord; not to envy; not to hold grudges; not to fight with one another; not to commit whoredoms; and to steer clear of all this stuff; 'cause whoever does these things gonna meet their end.

33. None of these wickedness comes from the Lord; for He does good amongst the children of men, and He dont do nothin unless its plain to see for the children of men; and He invites everyone to come to Him and enjoy His goodness; and He aint denyin' none that come to Him, black or white, slave or free, male or female; and He remembers the heathen; and all are equal in the eyes of God, both Jew and Gentile.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 27**

1. Well now, listen close, 'cause here's how it goes in them last days, ysee. That darkness and a whole mess of folks strayin' from the good ol' ways is gonna blanket the earth real thickoh, but dont yall worry, The Book of Mormons gonna pop up like a surprise at a family reunion. Three folks are gonna swear up and down bout that book, and those brainy types will scratch their heads and say they cant make heads or tails of that sealed book. But lemme tell ya, the Lords fixin to pull off some mighty fine works and wondersjust like in Isaiah 29, ya know. We're talkin 'round 559 to 545 B.C. here.

2. Now reckon in them last days, or when the Gentiles be comin' aroundyou best believe every nation, Gentiles and Jews alike, whether they be settlin' down here or far off yonder, well, theyre gonna be so wrapped up in their own mess and all sorts of sin it ain't even funny.

3. When that day rolls round, they gonna get a visit from the Lord of Hosts, and it ain't gonna be pretty, no sir.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Expect thunder rollin', ground shakin', noises blastin, with storms fiercer than a gator huntin in the rain, and flames lickin at everything.

4. All them nations hell-bent on fightin against Zion, makin' her squirm, they gonna be like a bad dream, just like a hungry feller dreamin hes munchin away, but when he wakes up, he ain't got nothin' in his belly; or a thirsty soul thinkin' hes sippin sweet tea, but when he comes to, hes still parched, just like the folks goin' against that holy hill.

5. Yall that keep doin wrong, take a step back and scratch your heads some, cause you gonna be hollerin real loud, but not for the good stuff; youll be feelin dizzy, but it won't be from the shine, no sirree, but cause you aint livin right.

6. For the Lords gone and poured some deep slumber juice right on ya. You've gone and shut them eyes tight, pushin away the prophets, and your leaders and seers hes covered up cause yall keep stirrin up trouble.

7. Then the Lord Gods gonna bring ya some words from a book, and they gonna be from folks restin easy in the ground.

8. Now that books gonna be all sealed up, with revelations from God runnin all the way from when the world kicked off to the very end.

9. So, cause of all them sealed-up secrets, they ain't gonna see the light of day while folks is caught up in their wicked ways and shenanigans. That books gonna stay hidden from em.

10. But that books gonna get handed off to a fella, and hell pass along them words, words from them layin in the dust, and hell share em with others.

11. But the sealed words? Nah, he wont hand those out, nor will he let go of the book. That books sealed tight by the power of God, and those revelations? They gonna stay put til the right time shows up cause they'll lay bare everything from the get-go to the end of time.

12. Theres gonna come a day when them sealed words gonna be blasted out on rooftops, and they gonna get read out loud with Christs power, where all truths come out to the good folks, past, present, and even up to the end of the earth.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

13. So, come that day when that books finally passed to the man I been crowin' about, itll be hid from the worlds eyesaint nobody gonna see it but three witnesses, and thatll be thanks to the Big Guy upstairs, besides the fellow its given to. Theyre gonna swear up and down that book's truth and whats in it.

14. And ain't no one else gonna lay eyes on it, except a few folks cause thats how the Lords rollin, wantin to share His word with the folks. The Lords made it clear that the faithful's words gonna sound like theys comin from beyond the grave.

15. So, the Lords gonna get to work bringin out the books words, and however many witnesses He sees fit, Hell make sure His word is standin strong; and woe, oh woe, to them that look down their noses at Gods word!

16. But listen up good now, cause the Lords gonna say to whoever gets that book: Here, take these words that ain't sealed and show em around, tellin em smart folks, Read this here, ya hear? And those book-smart types will say: Bring me that book, and I reckon Ill read it.

17. And at that point, it's all bout the worlds glory and makin' a buck; they sure ain't gonna do it for Gods glory.

18. And that fellas gonna shout, I cant bring back that book, its sealed up tighter than a drum.

19. Then the educated ones will say: I cant read it!

20. So, its gonna come to pass that the Lords gonna hand off that book and its words again to someone who aint so learned; and that simple souls gonna say: Well shoot, I aint got no book learnin.

21. Then the Lords gonna tell him: Them book-smart folks aint gonna read it cause they turned their backs on it, but I can handle my own business; so you go ahead and read the words Im givin you.

22. Dont go messin with them sealed things, cause Im bringin em out in my own time; Ill show the good folks I can do what I say.

23. So, once youve read what I told ya and got the witnesses I promised, youre gonna seal that book up tight again, put it away for me so I can keep those words safe til the times right in my own wise way to show all the folks everything.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

24. Cause lemme tell ya, I am God; and I do miracles; and Ill make it known to the world Im the same now, yesterday, and always; and I don't work in the business of men unless its cause of their faith.

25. And again, the Lords gonna tell the one readin' the words given to him:

26. Now look here, these folks are closin in on me with their mouths, but their hearts? Theys miles away, and theyre learnin fear from what other folks say

27. So, Im gonna roll out a marvel of a project with these folks, an incredible work, for their wise guys are gonna go dim-witted, and those who think theyre smart gonna be kept in the dark.

28. And woe be to them thats tryin to sneak around and hide their plans from the Lord! Their deeds in shadows, thinkin, Whos seein us? Who knows our dirt? They even got the nerve to say: Turnin things upside downs gonna be like potters clay. But let me tell ya, Ill let them know, says the Lord of Hosts, that I see all they doin. Cant the clay go sayin to the potter, You didnt make me? Or can something built go tellin the builder, You messed up?

29. But hold on now, says the Lord of Hosts: Im gonna show folks it wont be long til Lebanons gonna be a fruitful field, and that fruitful fieldll look like a big ol forest.

30. On that day, the deaf gonna hear the books words, and blind folks gonna see right through the murk and the dark.

31. And the meek gonna flourish, their joy found in the Lord, and the poor among men gonna delight in the Holy One of Israel.

32. Cause you bet your boots, as surely as the Lord lives, they gonna see that the tough ones been sent packin, and them scoffers gonna be washed away, and they who lurk for sin gonna be cut off;

33. And those who trip a man up for a single word, and lay a trap for them that speaks right in the gate, and turn aside the fair for nothin.

34. So, heres the scoop from the Lord, who saved Abraham, about the house of Jacob: Jacob aint gonna be ashamed now, and his face aint gonna get all pale.

35. But when he sees his younguns, the work of my hands, right in front of him, they gonna honor my name,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

and set apart the Holy One of Jacob, and they gonna stand in awe of the God of Israel.

36. And them that went astray in spirit, they gonna come round to understanding, and them that been grumblin gonna learn a thing or two.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 28**

1. Well now, listen up, yall. I gotta tell ya, in them last days, there's gonna be a whole mess of false churches poppin upgonna preach nothin but lies, foolish ideas, and empty talkinand with all those false teachers runnin' round, apostasy's gonna be thicker than molasses. The devils gonna be havin himself a field day stirrin up trouble in folks' heartsteaching all sorts of wild ideas.

2. Now, let me catch yer ear a minute, folks. Im here to share what the Spirit's pushed on me, so I reckon it's bound to come true.

3. And whats written down in that book is gonna mean a heap to folks, especially to our kin, who are part of the chosen folks, yknow, the house of Israel.

4. Cause there's gonna come a day when these churches poppin' up aint got the Lord in 'em at all, and folks will be braggin like, "Hey there, I'm the Lord's," while others chime in just the same, and every preacher with their church will be claimin the same thing, but not really givin' the Lord His due

5. And therell be a whole lotta fussin back and forth; their priests will be bickerin too, all while teachin their fancy learnin and turnin away the Holy Ghost that actually speaks the truth.

6. And theyll be keepin people in the dark bout Gods power, the Holy One of Israel, tellin everyone to listen up to their own rules, sayin, Aint no God round here today; the Lords finished His work, and Hes given the reins to folks like us.

7. Now, yall listen here; if they start claimin some miracle done by the Lord, dont you believe it, cause today, it seems He aint doin miracles no more; Hes already done what He needed to do.

8. Shoot, therell be plenty out there sayin, Go on now, eat, drink, and have a good time, cause we aint got long to live; everythings gonna be just fine.

9. And you'll have another crowd sayin, "Go ahead and live it up," but remember to give some thought to God,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

cause hes okay with a little sin, right? Just a little lie here and there, maybe take advantage of someone cause of the way they speak, or dig a little hole for your neighbor; theyll say its all goodgo on and have your fun, after all, we only live once; and if we slip up, God will just give us a little slap on the wrist, and in the end, well still find our way into His happy place.

10. Yeah, and there'll be plenty folks teachin all this nonsense, puffed up in pride, tryin to hide their plans from the Lord; theyll be a-workin in the shadows.

11. And the blood of the good people is gonna yell from the ground against em.

12. Yessiree, theyve strayed from the path; theyre all corrupted now.

13. All this pride, false teachers, and crazy ideas have messed up their churches; theyre way too big for their britches.

14. Theyre robbin the poor with their fancy buildings; takin from the needy while flauntin their fine clothes, puttin the squeeze on the humble and those with kind hearts, just cause they cant see past their own pride.

15. They walk round like theyre the king of the hill, all stiff-necked; and on account of that pride, all the wickedness and wrong turns, theyve lost their wayexcept for a few humble followers of Christ; but even they get led off track sometimes, cause theyre taught by men who aint on the level.

16. Oh, those so-called wise folks, with their big brains and fat pockets, all puffed up with pride, mixin up false preachin and silly ways, and all those who mess with whats right before the Lordwoe unto em, says the Almighty God, cause theyll be takin a long tumble straight to hell!

17. Woe to them who push aside the righteous for nothin and insult whats truly good, sayin it aint worth a dime! Cause one fine day, the Lord's gonna come down quick-like, and those who are knee-deep in their wrongdoings are gonna face their end.

18. But hold up now, if the people on this earth turn round from their bad ways, set aside all that mess, they wont be wiped out, says the Lord of Hosts.

19. Now listen, that big ol' abominable churchthe whore of all earthits gotta come tumblin down, and its gonna be a sight to see.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

20. Cause the devil's kingdoms gotta shake, and those who play for him better get ready to change their tune, or hes gonna hold em tight with his heavy chains, stirrin em up to be mad and leadin em to their doom;

21. For look here, on that day, he sure will be furious in the hearts of men, gettin' em riled up against whats good.

22. And then others, hell sweet-talk, lullin em into a false sense of security, makin em say, Everythings peachy in Zion; yeah, things are good, all's right until he leads their very souls gently down to that fiery place.

23. And just you wait; hell flatter folks into thinkin there's no hell, whisperin sweet nothings, I ain't no devil, cause there just aint noneand hell be whisperin in em until he wraps em up tight in his awful chains, from which there ain't no escape.

24. Yep, theyll be caught up in death and hell; all that have gotten dragged down with em will stand before Gods throne, gettin judged by what they done, and then its off to the spot prepared for em, a lake of fire and brimstone, where the torment never ends.

25. So woe be to the ones sittin easy in Zion!

26. Woe be to those who shout, Alls well!

27. Yessir, woe be to folks who follow the rules of men and turn away from Gods power and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

28. Yessiree, woe be to anyone sayin, Weve got all we need, no more from God!

29. And in short, woe to all yall who are shakin' and gettin mad bout the truth of God! Cause look here, them built on solid rock are gonna soak it all in with joy; and those who build on a shaky base will be tremblin like a leaf, scared they might just fall.

30. Woe to those claimin, Weve gotten the word of God, and we sure dont need any more, cause that just aint right!

31. For heres what the Lord God says: Im gonna give folks line by line, bit by bit; and bless the ones who listen up to what I say and pay attention to my counsel, cause theyre gonna gain wisdom; and to him thats willin to learn, Ill give em more; but those sayin, Weve got plenty, from them, even what they got will be

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

taken away.

32. Cursed is the one who trusts in man or makes flesh his strength, or listens to mans ways unless they come by the Spirit of God.

33. Woe to the Gentiles, says the Lord God of Hosts! Even though I reach out my hand to em every single day, theyre still gonna turn me down; still, Ill be merciful if they turn from their bad ways and come home to me, cause my hands out there waitin all day long, says the Lord God of Hosts.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 29**

1. Many folks 'round here gonna turn their backs on the Book of MormonThey'll say, "We don't need no more Bible" Well, the Lord's got somethin to say to all kinds of nationsHe'll be judgin' the world from them books what'll be writin' down.

2. But yall listen up, theres gonna be a whole mess of folkswhen Im fixin to do somethin amazing among em, so I can keep them promises I made to all yall, settin' my hands back to reel in my people from the house of Israel;

3. And I also wanna keep them promises I made to you, Nephi, and to your daddy too, bout rememberin your kin; and them words of your folks gonna be comin' straight from my mouth to your folks; and my words gonna echo to the ends of the earth, for a standard for my people, them from the house of Israel;

4. And since my words gonna echo outplenty of the Gentiles gonna be shoutin': "A Bible! A Bible! We got us a Bible, and aint no more gonna be comin'."

5. But the Lord God's sayin: "Yall fools, they gonna have a Bible; and its gonna come from the Jews, my old covenant folks. And what in tarnation do the Jews get for the Bible they hand over? Whats the Gentiles deal? Do they remember all the struggles and hard work of them Jews, and how theyve hustled to bring salvation to the Gentiles?"

6. O yall Gentiles, have ya thought about the Jews, my old covenant folks? Nah; yall just cursed 'em, hated 'em, and didnt even try to help em. But listen up, Im gonna bring all that back around to ya; cause I, the Lord, aint forgot my folks.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. Youre a fool if you say: "A Bible, we got us a Bible, dont need no more Bible." You reckon you got a Bible none other than the Jews doing?

8. Dont ya know theres moren one nation out there? Dont ya know that I, the Lord your God, made all men, and I remember those folks on the islands in the sea; and Im in charge way up in the heavens and down here on earth; and I bring my word to all the children of men, yeah, even all them nations out there?

9. So why yall gripin 'bout gettin more of my word? Dont ya know that the testimony from two nations is proof that Im God, that I remember one nation just like I do another? So Im gonna speak the same words to one nation just like I do the other. And when them two nations come together, their testimony gonna come together too.

10. And I do this so I can show many that Im the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I talk the words I want to. And just cause Ive said one word dont mean I cant say another; cause I aint done yet; and it wont stop til the end of man, not now or thereon after.

11. So just cause yall got a Bible dont mean you can think it holds all my words; or think that I aint got more to write down.

12. Cause I command all folks, from the east to the west, the north and the south, and even on them islands of the sea, to write down the words I speak to 'em; cause from them books what gets written, Ill judge the world, every man by his works, by whats been written down.

13. For Im gonna speak to the Jews, and they gonna write it down; and Im gonna talk to the Nephites, and they gonna write it; and Ill also speak to other tribes of the house of Israel, the ones I led away, and they gonna write it too; and Ill speak to all them nations of the earth and they gonna write it.

14. And its gonna happen that the Jews gonna have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites gonna have the words of the Jews; and both the Nephites and the Jews gonna hold onto the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes gonna have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

15. And its gonna come to pass that my folks, them from the house of Israel, gonna be brought back to their own lands; and my word gonna get gathered up too. And Im gonna show those who fight against my word and

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

my people, from the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I promised Abraham I'd remember his kin forever.

### **2 Nephi Chapter 30**

1. Well now, listen up yall, I got somethin to say; I reckon I'm Nephi, and I don't want yall thinkin you're any better than them Gentiles. Now, I tell ya, if yall ain't keepin' them commandments from God, well, yall gonna meet the same fate as the rest, and don't go thinkin them Gentiles ain't got a chance either.
2. Now, lemme tell ya, all them Gentiles who wanna turn their lives round are the Lord's own folks; but them Jews who ain't will get cast aside, reckonin the Lord don't make no promises cept to them who repent and believe in His Son, the Holy One of Israel.
3. Now I got more to prophesy bout them Jews and Gentiles. Once that book I been yappin about gets out there, written for the Gentiles and sealed up to the Lord, well, lots of folks gonna believe them words, and they'll take it to the last bit of our kin.
4. Then them folks who come after us will figure out just where we come from and know that we left Jerusalem, and they be kin to the Jews.
5. And the gospel of Jesus Christ, well, it gonna get spread mongst em; they gonna get back to knowin' their own folks and also know about Jesus Christ, just like their folks did.
6. And boy, they gonna be tickled pink; they gonna see it's a real blessing from the good Lord, and the darkness gonna start fallin off their eyes; and a whole bunch of generations gonna pass and they gonna be pure and delightful folks.
7. And it gonna happen that them scattered Jews gonna start believe in Christ too, and they gonna gather round on this here land; and anyone who puts their faith in Christ gonna be a delightful bunch as well.
8. Come to pass, the Lord God gonna kickstart His work with all them nations, tribes, tongues, and people, bringin His folks back on this earth.
9. And with righteousness, the Lord God gonna judge the poor folks, givin em fair treatment. He gonna smack the earth with the mighty words from His mouth, and with the breath of His lips, He's takin out the wicked.
10. You best believe the times comin real quick when the Lord God gonna make a big ol split mongst the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

people, and the wicked? Well, they ain't makin it through; He gonna save His folks, even if it means they gotta be burnt up by fire.

11. Righteousness will be wrapped round His waist, and faithfulness holdin Him tight.

12. And then yall gonna see wolves layin up with lambs, and leopards chillin with little goats, calves, young lions, and fatlings all together. Just wait till a little bitty child shows em how to behave.

13. Youll have cows and bears grazin' side by side; their babies will be layin down together; and that lion? Hell munch on grass just like an ox.

14. And the little ones gonna play right by the snake holes, and the weaned ones gonna put their hands right on the cockatrices den.

15. Ain't nobody gonna hurt or destroy nothin on all my holy mountain; the earth gonna be filled with the Lords knowledge like the waters round the sea.

16. So, all the stuff from all them nations gonna be laid out, yhear? Yup, everything gonna come to light for the children of men.

17. Aint nothin secret but what gonna get revealed; no darkness gonna stay hidden in the light; and nothin sealed up on this earth that wont get opened up.

18. So, every single thing thats been shared with the folks will come to light on that day; and Satan aint gonna have no power over the hearts of men for a long spell. Now Im done sayin my piece, my beloved brethren.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 31**

1. Well now, I reckon it's time for this ol gal Nephi to wrap up my preachin to yall, my dear brothers. I aint got much space here, just a few things I knowre gonna happen for sure; and I can only jot down a handful of words from my brother Jacob too.

2. So, the stuff Ive written's enough for me, 'cept for a few things I gotta say bout the good ol teachings of Christ; so Ill talk to ya plain-like, true to the simple prophesyin' Ive done.

3. See, I just love keepin it simple; thats how the Good Lord rolls with His children. The Lord fills folks minds with clarity; He speaks to em in ways they can get it, in their own lingo.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

4. Now, I want yall to remember what I told ya bout that prophet the Lord showed me, who was gonna dunk the Lamb of God, the one whod wash away the worlds sins.
5. And I reckon if the Lamb of God, bein' all holy and whatnot, needed to get dunked in water to make things right, well, how much more do we, bein' all unholy, need to get baptized, sure as shootin'!
6. So now Ill ask yall, my dear brothers, whats the deal with the Lamb of God fulfillin' all righteousness by gettin baptized in water?
7. Yall aint forgotten hes holy, right? But even though hes holy, he humbles himself before the Father and shows folks hes ready to obey Him by followin the commandments.
8. After that good dunkin in water, the Holy Ghost came down on him like a dove, bless his heart.
9. And it shows folks just how tight that path is, and how narrow that gate is that folks gotta pass through, since he went first settin' the example for all of us.
10. And he told the children of men: Follow me on this here journey. So, my dear brothers, can we really follow Jesus if we ain't willin to keep the Fathers commands?
11. And the Father said: Yall best repent, ya hear? Get yerself baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.
12. And then, the voice of the Son reached out to me, sayin': Whoever gets dunked in my name, the Fathers gonna give 'em the Holy Ghost, just like me; so, follow me and do what youve seen me do.
13. So Im tellin ya, my dearest brothers, I know that if yall follow the Son with all your heart, actin honest and true before God, and truly repentin of your sins, and tellin' the Father youre willin to take on Christs name through baptismyeah, by followin your Lord and Savior down into that water, just like he saidthen youre gonna get the Holy Ghost; thats when the fire and the Spirit will come to ya; and then youll be talkin like angels and shoutin praises to the Holy One of Israel.
14. But, listen here, my beloved brothers, heres what the voice of the Son said to me: After yallve repented of your sins and told the Father youre gonna keep my commandments through water baptism, and youve received that fiery baptism with the Holy Ghost, and youre speakin with a new language, even like them angels, if after all that you turn your back on me, itd be better for ya if you never even known me.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

15. And I caught a word from the Father, sayin: Yup, the words of my Beloved are true and real. Whoever hangs in there till the end, thats the one wholl be saved.

16. Now, my beloved brothers, I know that if a man dont stick it out to the end by followin the example of the living Gods Son, hes gonna miss out on salvation.

17. So, go do what Ive told ya I seen our Lord and Redeemer do; cause thats why theyve been laid out before me, so yall would know the gate ya need to stroll through. The way ya get in is through repentin and water baptism; and then ya get yerself a clean slate through fire and the Holy Ghost.

18. And then, youre in this here tight and narrow path that leads to eternal life; youve strolled through the gate; youve followed the Father and Sons commandments; and youve got the Holy Ghost, which tells you bout the Father and Son, fulfillin the promise that if you stepped in by this way, youll get your reward.

19. Now, my dear brothers, after youve made it onto this narrow path, I gotta ask, is that it? Well, Im tellin ya, nah; you aint got this far less it was through the word of Christ and rock-solid faith in him, dependin fully on the one who can save you.

20. So, yall gotta keep pushin on with a strong heart in Christ, holdin onto that bright hope and lovin God and all folks. So if you keep pressing on, feastin on the good word of Christ, and toughin it out to the end, then heres what the Father says: Youre gonna get eternal life.

21. And now, look here, my dear brothers, this is the way; and there aint no other way or name under heaven that folks can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, take this in mind, this here's the doctrine of Christ, the one and only true doctrine of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, who is one God, forever and ever. Amen.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 32**

1. Well now, listen here, folks, them angels got a way of talkin 'cause of the Holy Ghost, and if y'all wanna get wise, you gotta pray and figure things out for yerself straight from that Holy Ghost. We're talkin' 'bout 559 to 545 B.C. here.

2. Now, ya see, my dear friends, I reckon yall might be thinkin on what to do after takin that first step. But I

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

gotta ask, why yall sittin there wonderin?

3. Dont ya recall I told ya that once yall got the Holy Ghost, ya could gab like angels? Now, tell me, how inarnation could ya talk like angels less its by the Holy Ghost?

4. Them angels chatter on account of the Holy Ghost; that means theyre just spoutin off the words of Christ. So Im tellin ya, chow down on the words of Christ, cause theyll tell ya everything ya need to know.

5. So now, after Ive chewed the fat a bit, if ya aint catchin what I'm throwin out there, its cause ya ain't askin, and ya ain't knockin; so yall arent seein the light, and ya gonna be stuck in the dark.

6. Cause Im tellin ya again, if ya wanna step right and get that Holy Ghost, itll guide ya on all the things ya oughta do.

7. Now, this here is the word of Christ, and there aint gonna be no more preachin 'til He shows up in the flesh. And when He does come a-visitin, ya best pay attention to what He says and put it into action.

8. And now, Im Nephi, and I can't say much more; the Spirits got me tongue-tied, and it troubles me seein folks takin things lightly, bein all wicked, ignorant, and hard-headed-like; 'cause they ain't searchin for knowledge nor gettin' the good stuff when its laid out plain as day.

9. So here I am, my dear folks, and I can see you still wonderin in your hearts; it pains me to bring this up. If yall would just listen to that Spirit teachin folks how to pray, ya would know its somethin' you gotta do; cause that mean ol' spirit ain't gonna teach ya to pray, instead, itll steer ya away from it.

10. But listen here, Im tellin ya, yall need to pray all the time, dont be givin up; and dont you do nothin for the Lord til youve prayed to the Father first in Jesus name, askin Him to bless what you do, so itll be good for your soul.

## **2 Nephi Chapter 33**

1. Nephi, he sure speaks the truthno doubt bout thatHes givin a shout-out to ChristFolks who got faith in Christ, theyll be all ears for Nephis words, cause theyll stand tall at that judgment day.

2. Now look here, Im Nephi, and I cant go and spill all the tales my folks been taught; writin aint my strong suit like jawin is; ya see, when a fella speaks with that Holy Spirits power, it hits deep in folks hearts.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

3. But hold on now, theres plenty who harden their hearts gainst the Holy Spirit, keepin it out; they toss away a whole heap of good stuff thats been written, treatin it like it aint worth a hill of beans.

4. But me, Nephi, I done wrote what I wrote, and I reckon its worth a whole lotespecially to my kin. I keep prayin' for em night and day, and my eyes get all leaky cause of em; I call out to my God with faith, knowin He hears me.

5. And Im sure that the Good Lord will take my prayers and bless my people with em. The words I scribbled down, though I may be shaky in doin so, will end up bein strong for em; theyll encourage em to do right; theyll remind em of their daddies; and theyll talk bout Jesus, helpin em believe in Him and hold on till the end, which is that sweet life forever.

6. And these words dont pull no punches gainst sin, plain as day; so, aint no soul gonna get riled up bout what Ive written less theyre dancin with the devil.

7. I take pride in plain talk; I take pride in truth; I take pride in my Jesus, cause He saved my soul from the fiery pit.

8. I got love for my people, and big ol faith in Christ that one day Ill meet many pure souls at His judgment-seat.

9. I got love for the Jewyep, I call em Jews 'cause thats where I hail from.

10. I got love for the Gentiles too. But I reckon I cant expect much for none of em unless they get right with Christ, slip through that narrow gate, walk the straight path leadin to life, and keep on truckin down that road til the end of their days.

11. Now listen up, my dear brethren, and hey there, Jew, and every last soul round the globe, lend me yer ears and have faith in Christ; if you aint buyin what Im sellin, then just believe in Christ. And if ya do believe in Christ, youll find yerself agreein with these words, cause theyre straight from Him, and He handed em to me, teachin all folks to do good.

12. And if these aint the words of Christ, you go ahead and judgecause Hell show you, with power and a whole heap of glory, that these words are His come that final day; and you and I, well stand toe-to-toe at His

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

bar; and youll know that I was told by Him to write this, despite my shortcomings.

13. And Im prayin to the Father in Christs name that plenty of us, if not all, can find salvation in His kingdom on that great last day.

14. And now, my good folks, all yall from the house of Israel, and ye who roam the ends of the earth, Im talkin to you like a voice shoutin from the dust: So long til that great day rolls round.

15. And you who turn your back on all the goodness of God, and dont pay mind to the words of the Jews, and my words too, and all that comes from the Lamb of God, well, Im givin you a warm farewell, cause these words will find you guilty on that final day.

16. Cause what I bind here on earth, itll be brought up against ya at the judgment bar; thats how the Lord laid it down for me, and I gotta follow suit. Amen.

## **Jacob**

### **Jacob Chapter 1**

1. The Book of Jacob the Brother of Nephi

2. Well, let me tell ya what Jacob preached to his folks. He sure knew how to put a fella in his place who was tryin to mess with the good word of Christ. Just a lil bit bout the history of them Nephites.

3. Now Jacob and Joseph were real keen on changin folks minds to believe in Jesus and to follow his commandmentsNephi done passed onAnd them Nephites were gettin real wicked-like. Were talkin bout five hundred forty-four to four hundred twenty-one years fore Christ.

4. So, it turns out, bout fifty-five years had gone by since Lehi left Jerusalem; so Nephi told me, Jacob, to take care of these here small plates where all this stuffs written down.

5. He told me to jot down a few of the most important things on these plates, and not to mess too much with the history of our people called the Nephites.

6. He said that the history of his folks would be on his other plates, and I should keep these plates safe and pass em down to my kids for generations.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. If there was somethin sacred to preach about, or a big ol revelation, or prophesize, I should etch the main points on these plates, and talk about em as much as I could, for Christs sake, and for our folks.

8. Seein as how we had plenty of faith and were real anxious, it was clear to us what was gonna happen to our people.

9. We also got a heap of revelations and plenty of prophecy; so we knew bout Christ and his kingdom that was fixin to come.

10. So we worked our tails off tryin to get our people to come to Christ and enjoy the goodness of God, so they could find rest and not make Him mad and miss out, just like back in the day when the Israelites were wanderin in the wilderness.

11. Wed be mighty thankful if we could convince everyone not to rebel against God, not to make Him angry, but to believe in Christ, see his death, and bear his cross and the shame of this world; so I, Jacob, am takin it on myself to follow what my brother Nephi told me to do.

12. Now Nephi was gettin up in years, and he knew his time was near; so he went and appointed a man to be king and ruler over his folks, just like the other kings had done.

13. The folks loved Nephi a whole lot; he was their protector, wieldin Labans sword to keep em safe, and workin hard all his days for their good

14. So the people really wanted to remember his name. Whoever took over after him was called second Nephi, third Nephi, and so on, just like them kings reigns; and folks would call em that, no matter what name they had.

15. And then Nephi passed away.

16. Now the folks who wasnt Lamanites were Nephites; but they got called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

17. But I, Jacob, ain't gonna keep callin em all those names; Ill just call em Lamanites if theyre tryin to mess with the Nephites, and them who are friendly to Nephi, Ill just call em Nephites or the people of Nephi, just like them reigns of the kings.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. Well, it happened that the Nephites, under the second king, started to get a little hard-hearted and indulge in some wicked ways, kinda like David back in the day, wantin a bunch of wives and concubines, and Solomon, his boy.

19. Yup, they started hankerin after gold and silver, gettin a bit proud-like.

20. So I, Jacob, laid down these words to em as I taught em in the temple, after I got my task straight from the Lord.

21. Me and my brother Joseph had been made priests and teachers for our people, thanks to Nephi.

22. And we put our heart into our work for the Lord, takin on the responsibility to answer for the peoples sins if we didnt teach em Gods word real good; so we labored hard so none of their blood would be on our hands; otherwise, it would weigh on us, and we wouldn't be found clean on that final day.

### **Jacob Chapter 2**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya what Jacob, Nephi's brother, had to say to the Nephites after Nephi kicked the bucket:

2. Now, listen up yall, Im Jacob and I got a job to do for God, so Im here tryin to keep my act together and clean my clothes of your wickedness. I came to the temple today to share with you what the Good Lord wants ya to know.

3. Yall know Ive been pretty darn good at my calling, but today Im feelin a heavy weight on my heart cause I care a whole lot more about yer souls than I ever did before.

4. Well, looky here, so far youve been listenin to what the Lords said to you.

5. But now, you need to lend me yer ears and understand that with the help of the Big Man upstairs, I can tell ya whats goin on in your heartsyoure startin to wander off into sin, and let me tell ya, its downright nasty in my eyes, and in Gods too.

6. It pains me to tell ya these things, puttin me to shame in front of my Maker, but I gotta call out the bad stuff goin on in your hearts.

7. And its just as hard to talk openly bout these matters fore your wives and kids, whose feelings are as tender

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

and pure as a daisy in bloom, and God sure loves that.

8. I reckon they came here hopin to hear some good news from God, a word that can mend their broken spirits.

9. So it weighs heavy on my heart that cause of the strict orders from God, I gotta shame yall for your wrongdoings and pile on the hurt for those whore already hurt, rather than comfortin em; and those who aint hurt aint gettin none of Gods good word but are gettin jabbed with daggers that tear at their souls and smart real bad.

10. But even with how mighty tough this is, I gotta stick to Gods orders and lay it all out there about your deeds and mischief, in front of the good folks with pure hearts and broken hearts, all under the watchful eye of Almighty God.

11. So I gotta tell ya the straight dope according to the plain ol word of God. For when I asked the Lord, He told me to get up to the temple tomorrow and share what He was gonna give me for this folks.

12. Now, listen close, my brothers, heres the message Im lettin loose: many of yall are lookin for gold, silver, and all sorts of shiny stuff in this land overflowing with promise for you and your kin.

13. The good Lords smiled on ya, helpin ya gather all these riches; but 'cause some of you got more than others, youve puffed up your chests with pride, struttin around like roosters and pickin on your buddies thinkin youre all that and a side of biscuits.

14. So Im askin you, do you reckon Gods okay with that? Im here to tell ya, Nope. Hes not happy with yall, and if you keep this up, His judgments gonna come swoopin down on ya quick.

15. Oh, how I wish Hed show you He can take ya down a notch, just with one look, He can lay ya flat in the dust!

16. I sure wish Hed clean you up from this mess and sin. And oh, I hope youd listen to His commands and not let your pride take your souls down the drain!

17. Think bout your brothers like theyre folks just like you, and be generous with what ya got, so they can have a good life too.

18. But before you go chasin after riches, why not chase after Gods kingdom first?



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

19. After youve got that hope in Christ, riches will come, if youre searchin for em to do goodto cover the naked, feed the hungry, free the captives, and help the sick and the needy.

20. And now, my brothers, Ive talked about pride; and if youve been pickin on your neighbors cause you felt all high and mighty from what Gods givin you, what do ya have to say for that?

21. Dont you think thats downright nasty in the sight of the One who created all of us? Every single one is special to Him, and were just dust in the wind anyways; He made us to keep His commandments and glorify Him forever.

22. So now Im wrap up talkin about pride. If it werent for the need to call out a bigger sin, my heart would be singin with joy over yall.

23. But the Word from God weighs heavy on me cause of your bigger sins. Look here, the Lord said: This crowd's startin to go down the wrong path; yall aint understandin them scriptures, tryin to make excuses for bein immoral cause of what was said bout David and Solomon.

24. Sure enough, David and Solomon had a whole heap of wives and mistresses, which was just plain wrong in my eyes, says the Lord.

25. So, thus says the Lord, I been leadin this group from Jerusalem with a mighty hand, to bring forth a righteous bunch from the good seed of Joseph.

26. So, I the Lord God aint gonna let yall behave like the folks from back then.

27. So listen here, my brothers, hear me out, and pay heed to the Lords word: No man among yall better have more than one wife; no mistresses allowed;

28. Cause I, the Lord God, take delight in women keepin their purity. And bein immoral is an abomination to me, says the Lord of Hosts.

29. So this group better keep my commandments, says the Lord of Hosts, or the lands gonna suffer for their wrongdoings.

30. Cause if I want, says the Lord of Hosts, to bring forth a line of descendants, Ill tell my people what to do; otherwise they better listen up.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

31. Cause I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow and heard the cries of the daughters of my people back in Jerusalem and all over, cause of the wickedness and shameful acts of their husbands.

32. And I wont let, says the Lord of Hosts, the cries of the fair women Ive brought out from Jerusalem, rise up against the men of my people, says the Lord of Hosts.

33. Cause they aint gonna lead away my tender daughters cause of their sweet nature, less I hit em hard with curses, even unto destruction; cause they aint gonna commit immoral acts like them folks did back in the day, says the Lord of Hosts.

34. So now, listen up, my brothers, yall know these commandments were handed down to our father, Lehi; so yave heard em before; and yall are under some serious scrutiny now cause youve done things ya shouldnt have done.

35. Look here, youve done worse than the Lamanites, our kin. Youve broken the hearts of your gentle wives and lost the trust of your kids cause of the bad examples youve set; and the cries from their hearts are risin up to God against ya. And cause of how strict the Word of God is comin down on ya, many hearts have withered away, pierced with deep wounds.

### **Jacob Chapter 3**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, the folks who got good hearts, they sure gonna take in them sweet words from the Good Lord now the Lamanites, they got more good in em than them Nephites Jacobs fixin to warn folks bout messin around, livin lasciviously, and all kinds of sinful ways. Now we talkin bout a time round 544421 B.C.

2. But hey yall, Im Jacob, and I got some words for them of yall with clear hearts. Set your minds on God and pray real hard, cause if ya do, Hell be there to comfort ya when the struggles rough, and Hell stand up for ya against those fixin' to bring ya down.

3. Hey there, all yall with good hearts, lift up them heads and soak in the sweet words of God; feast on His love too; if you keep your minds steady, itll last ya forever.

4. But whoa, whoa, yall who aint pure at heart, and filthy as a hog today in Gods eyes; if you dont turn away from that, the lands gonna be cursed cause of you; them Lamanites, they aint dirty like yall, but they still

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

cursed hard, and they gonna bring you to ruin.

5. And let me tell ya, the times comin fast when if yall dont repent, they gonna take over your land, and God Almighty will guide the good folks right on outta your way.

6. Look at the Lamanites, your kin, whom yall cant stand cause of what yall see on their skins, but theyre more righteous than you; they didnt forget the Lords command to have just one wife, no concubines, and no whorin' goin on.

7. And now, theyre keepin that commandment; cause they do, God wont lay waste to em, but will show them mercy; one day, theyll be a blessed bunch.

8. Now, their men love their women, and their women love their men; plus, they all love their little ones, and if they hold a grudge against you, well thats cause of what their daddies did. So, how much better are yall in the eyes of the big guy upstairs?

9. Brothers, Im worried that if yall dont change your ways, when we all stand before God, their skins might be whiter than yours.

10. So heres a word from God: yall best not be hatin on em just cause of the color of their skin; dont bring em down for bein dirty either; remember your own dirtiness, and know their mess comes from their forefathers.

11. So remember your younguns, how yall mightve crushed their spirits cause of how you act; and remember, your filthiness could send your kids spiralin down, and their sins gonna weigh heavy on your heads when its all over.

12. Brothers, listen to me; wake up your hearts; shake off that dead weight and shake loose from the grips of hell, or you might just end up bein angels for the devil, thrown into that lake of fire and brimstone, which is the second death, yall.

13. And now, Im Jacob, and I said a whole heap more to the Nephites, warnin em against shacking up, livin wild, and all sorts of sinful ways, tellin em the dreadful stuff that comes from that business.

14. And theres no way to write down a hundredth of what this people was doin, cause they was startin to multiply, but plenty of their stories are scribbled on the bigger plates, like their battles and their squabbles, and

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the reigns of their kings.

15. These plates are known as Jacobs plates, made by Nephis hand. And I reckon Im done sayin all this here.

### **Jacob Chapter 4**

1. All them prophets was givin' their thanks to the Father in the name of Christyknow, Abrahams sacrifice of Isaac was just like what God and His Only Begotten didFolks oughta make peace with God through the AtonementThem Jews gonna turn their backs on the cornerstone. 'Bout 544421 B.C.

2. Now, looky here, I, Jacob, been preachin a whole lot to my people with my words (but I cant scribble down much cause its mighty hard chippin' our stuff on them plates) and we know whatever we carve on them plates gotta stick around;

3. But anything else we scribble on other stuff gonna come to nothin and disappear; but we can write a few words on them plates, whichll give our younguns, and our dear brothers, a smidge of knowledge bout us, or their daddies

4. Now this heres somethin were real happy bout; and were workin hard to etch these words on them plates, hopin our dear ones and kids gonna take em to heart and learn with joy, not with sadness, nor scorn, concernin their first folks.

5. Cause we done wrote these things so they could know we was privy to Christ, and had a hope for his glory many a hundred years before he showed up; and it ain't just us what had hope for his glory, but all them holy prophets before us too.

6. See, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and we do the same. And thats why we stick to the law of Moses, cause it points our souls right to Him; and for this reason, its blessed to us for doin right, just like it was accounted to Abraham in the wilderness for bein obedient to God when he offered up his boy Isaac, which is like God and His Only Begotten.

7. So, we dig into them prophets and got us plenty revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and with all these witnesses we hold onto hope, and our faith gets real sturdy, so much so that we can truly command in Jesus name and the trees of the field gotta listen, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

8. But still, the Lord God shows us where were weak, so we can know its by His grace and His big ol kindness to us folks that we can do these things.

9. Looky here, the works of the Lord are truly wondrous. Its beyond our reach to figure out all His mysteries; folks cant find all His ways unless He lets 'em know; so dont be hatin on Gods revelations, yall.

10. Cause look, its by the power of His word that man appeared on this here earth, and this earth was made by the power of His word. So if God can speak and the world comes to be, and speak and man shows up, then why ain't He able to command the earth, or the stuff He made on it, according to His own will?

11. So, yall, dont be tryin to give God advice; just take advice from Him. 'Cause yall know He counsels with smarts, and justice, and plenty mercy over all His works.

12. So, beloved brothers, make peace with Him through the atonement of Christ, His Only Begotten Son, and you might get yourselves a resurrection, blessed by the power of the resurrection in Christ, and end up presented as the first-fruits of Christ to God, with faith, and holdin' a good hope of glory in Him before He shows up in the flesh.

13. And now, yall, dont be strugglin with me sayin all this; cause why not talk bout Christs atonement, and aim for a perfect knowledge of Him, just like reaching for the knowledge of the resurrection and the world comin' next?

14. Look, my brethren, if a fella's gonna prophesy, he oughta do it so folks can understand; 'cause the Spirit tells the truth and dont fib. So it talks 'bout things as they really are, and things as they really will be; these truths are made real plain for us, for the sake of savin our souls. But dont forget, we aint the only ones testifyin bout this; thats right, God spoke to them old prophets too.

15. But lemme tell ya, them Jews were a stubborn bunch; they be turnin' their noses up at plain words, killin them prophets, and chasin' after things they just couldnt grasp. So on account of their blindness, which came cause they looked past the mark, they gotta trip up; 'cause God took away His plainness from em, and gave 'em all sorts of stuff they couldnt understand, just cause they wanted it. And since they wanted it, God did it, so theyd stumble.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

16. And now I, Jacob, feelin led by the Spirit to prophesy; cause I sense in my spirit workin that because them Jews be trippin, they gonna reject the stone they oughta build on for a solid foundation.

17. But behold, according to the scriptures, this here stone gonna be the great, the last, and the only solid foundation for them Jews to build on.

18. And now, my dear ones, how in the world can they, after tossin aside that sure foundation, ever build upon it, so it can become the head of their corner?

19. Looky here, my beloved brethren, Im gonna lay out this mystery for ya; specially if I dont get all shaky in the Spirit, and trip up cause Im worryin too much bout you.

### **Jacob Chapter 5**

1. Well, listen up, y'all, do y'all remember readin' them words from that prophet Zenos, what he told the house of Israel, sayin':

2. Pay attention now, oh house of Israel, and hear my words, Im a prophet of the Lord.

3. See here, the Lords sayin', Hes gonna liken ya, oh house of Israel, to a tame ol' olive tree, one that a fella took and cared for in his vineyard; it grew, got old, and started to go downhill.

4. Then one day, the master of the vineyard went out and noticed his olive tree startin to wither; he said, Ill trim it up, dig around it, and take care of it, hopin itll sprout some tender new branches and not just waste away.

5. Sure enough, he pruned it, dug around it, and took care of it just like he promised.

6. After a spell, it started to grow a few young, tender branches, but darn if the main top of it didnt start to fade away.

7. Then that master of the vineyard saw it and said to his helper, It just breaks my heart to lose this tree; so go grab some branches off a wild olive tree and bring em here to me; well take off those main branches thatre startin to die and toss 'em in the fire to burn.

8. And this the Lord of the vineyard said, Im takin away lots of them young tender branches, and Ill graft em wherever I want; and it dont matter if the root of this tree goes away, I might still save the fruit for myself; so

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Im takin these young tender branches and graftin em where I want.

9. Now you take them wild olive tree branches and put em in their place; and them ones I took off, Ill throw into the fire so they dont clutter up my vineyard.

10. And sure enough, the Lords servant did what the Lord said, added those wild olive tree branches in.

11. And the Lord made sure it was dug around, pruned, and nourished, sayin to his servant, It pains me to lose this tree; so maybe I can save its roots so they dont go bad, kept em safe for myself, I did this thing.

12. So you go on now; watch that tree and take care of it like I told ya.

13. And Im gonna put these where I want in the lowest part of my vineyard, it dont matter to you; I'm doin' this to keep the original branches safe, and also so I can stash some fruit for the season, 'cause it pains me to lose this tree and the fruit.

14. Then the Lord of the vineyard went off and hid the natural branches of that tame olive tree in the lowest parts of the vineyard, some in one spot and some in another, according to his wishes.

15. Well, a heap of time went by, and the Lord of the vineyard called his servant and said, Come on, lets head down into the vineyard and do some work.

16. So they both went down to work in the vineyard. And the servant said to his master, Hey now, look here; take a gander at this tree.

17. And the Lord of the vineyard looked at the tree with the wild olive branches mixed in; it had sprung up and started to bear fruit. He saw it was doin good; the fruit was like the natural fruit.

18. And he told the servant, Look here, them wild branches have soaked up moisture from the roots so the roots are strong; and cause theyre strong, the wild branches are makin sweet fruit. If we hadnt put in them branches, this here tree would've been goners. Now, Im settin aside a whole lotta fruit from this tree to keep for myself for when the season comes.

19. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to his servant, Lets go check out the lowest part of the vineyard and see if the natural branches of the tree have made good fruit too, so I can stash some for myself when its time.

20. And they headed to where the master had hid the natural branches, and he told the servant, Look here; he

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

saw the first one had brought forth a pile of fruit; and he saw it was good too. Then he told the servant, Take some of that fruit and save it for when the time comes, cause Ive been taking care of it a long time and its produced a whole mess of fruit.

21. The servant then said to his master, Howd you come to plant this tree, or this branch, right here? Its the crummiest spot in all your vineyard.

22. And the Lord of the vineyard replied, Dont be givin me advice; I knew it was a bad spot; Ive nurtured it this long and you see its produced a lotta fruit.

23. Then the Lord of the vineyard said again to his servant, Looky here; Ive planted another branch of the tree; and you know this spot was worse than the last. But, look at that tree. Ive taken care of it a long time and its brought forth lotsa fruit; so gather it up and stash it for when the time comes, so I can keep it for myself.

24. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to his servant again, Looky here, I got another branch I planted; see, I've taken care of it too, and its produced fruit.

25. And he said to the servant, Look at this last one. I planted it in a fine spot; Ive nurtured it, and part of the trees givin sweet fruit, while the other parts givin wild fruit; Ive taken care of this tree just like the rest.

26. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to the servant, Pull off the branches that ain't givin good fruit, and throw em in the fire.

27. But the servant said, Hold on now, lets trim it some more, dig around it, and take care of it a bit longer, maybe it can still produce good fruit for you, so you can stash it when the time comes.

28. Then it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and his servant took care of all the fruit from the vineyard.

29. And after a good long while, the Lord said to his servant, Come on, lets head back down into the vineyard and work some more. The times closin in, and the end is comin soon; so I need to stash fruit for when the time comes, for myself.

30. So the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down, and they got to the tree where the natural branches had been stripped off and the wild ones added in; and looky there, all kinds of fruit was overloadin the tree.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

31. And the Lord of the vineyard tasted all kinds of fruits, checkin em one by one. And he said, Looky here, weve been takin' care of this tree a long time now, and Ive put aside a whole bunch of fruit for myself for the season.

32. But look, this time its thrown off tons of fruit, and none of its no good. And theres all sorts of bad fruit here; it aint worth nothin, despite all our hard work, and it sure troubles me to think Ill lose this here tree.

33. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to the servant, What we gonna do about this tree, so I can save some good fruit for myself?

34. The servant replied, Well, since you grafted in them wild olive branches, theyve strengthened the roots, keptin em alive and kickin; looks like theyre still good.

35. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to his servant, That tree aint doin me no good, and them roots aint doin me no good as long as it keeps givin rotten fruit.

36. Still, I know those roots are good, and for my own purposes, Ive kept 'em; cause theyve been strong enough to keep givin good fruit, from them wild branches.

37. But the wild branches got outta control and are takin over the roots; cause them wild branches have overshadowed the roots, now its producin a whole mess of bad fruit; and since it's makin so much bad fruit, its startin to wither away; soon itll ripen and get tossed into the fire unless we do somethin to save it.

38. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to his servant, Lets head on down to the lower parts of the vineyard and see if the natural branches brought forth any bad fruit.

39. So they went down to the lower parts of the vineyard, and they saw that the fruit from the natural branches had turned rotten too; yep, the first, the second, and the last; theyd all gone bad.

40. And that last ones wild fruit had overtaken the part of the tree that used to be good, made that branch just wither away and die.

41. Then the Lord of the vineyard cried, sayin to his servant, What more could I have done for my vineyard?

42. Look here, I knew that all the fruit from my vineyard, except for these, had gone sour. And now these branches that once bore good fruit have now gone rogue too; and now all the trees in my vineyard ain't worth

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

nothin, except to be chopped down and thrown in the fire.

43. And look at this last one, whose branch has withered away, I planted it in a fine spot; yep, the one I thought was best of all the land in my vineyard.

44. And you saw I took down that which was cluttering this good spot, so I could plant this tree in its place.

45. And you saw that part of it produced good fruit, while the other part brought forth wild fruit; and cause I didnt pull the branches off and throw 'em in the fire, look, theyve overrun the good branch till its withered away.

46. And now, look, despite all the care we put into my vineyard, the trees been corrupted, and they aint makin no good fruit; and I was hopin to keep em, to stash some good fruit for when the time came, for myself. But look, theyve turned into a wild olive tree now, and they aint worth a lick except to be chopped down and tossed in the fire; and it sure saddens me to think Ill lose em.

47. But what more could I do in my vineyard? Have I eased up on my care, not lookin after it? No sir, Ive been takin care of it, diggin around it, prunin it, and fertilizin it; Ive stretched my hands out nearly all day long, and the times runnin out. It troubles me to think Ill have to chop down all the trees of my vineyard and throw em in the fire. Whos been corruptin my vineyard?

48. Then the servant said to his master, Ain't it the height of your vineyard that the branches have overtaken the good roots? And since the branches have outgrown the roots, theyre lookin to take strength for themselves. Dont ya reckon thats whats caused your vineyard trees to go bad?

49. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to the servant, Lets get to it; lets chop down the trees in the vineyard and toss 'em in the fire so they dont crowd any more of my vineyard, cause Ive done all I can. What more could Ive done for my vineyard?

50. But the servant said to the Lord of the vineyard, Lets hold off a bit longer.

51. And the Lord said, Alright then, Ill hold off a bit longer, cause it pains me to lose these trees in my vineyard.

52. So lets take some branches from these I planted in the lower part of my vineyard and graft em back into

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the tree they came from; and lets pick from the tree those branches that got the most bitter fruit and stick in the natural branches in their place.

53. And Im doin this so the tree dont perish, so maybe I can keep the roots for my own needs.

54. And lo, the roots from the natural branches of the tree I planted wherever I wanted are still alive; and to keep em for my own purpose, Ill be takin branches from this tree and graftin' them back onto those roots. Yessiree, Ill be stickin back their original branches so I can keep them roots for my own efforts, and when they get strong enough, they might just bear good fruit for me, and maybe Ill still get some glory from my vineyards fruits.

55. So then they took from the natural tree thatd gone wild and stuck em back onto the natural trees thatd also gone wild.

56. And they took from the natural trees that had turned wild and grafted em back into their mother tree.

57. Then the Lord of the vineyard said to the servant, Dont pull the wild branches from the trees, cept for the ones that are truly bitter; in em, yall can graft them like I said.

58. Well take care of them trees in the vineyard, tidy up the branches; well pick the ripe branches that have to go and toss em in the fire.

59. Im doin this so the roots can get strong due to their goodness; and the branches changes will help the good beat the bad.

60. Since Ive kept the natural branches and their roots alive, and grafted the natural branches back into their mom tree, and kept the roots of their mama tree, maybe the trees in my vineyard can produce good fruit again; and I can get joy from the fruits of my vineyard, and maybe, just maybe, Ill be so pleased I preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruits

61. So lets get to it and call our workers so we can work real hard in the vineyard, makin ready that I can bring back the natural fruit, which is good and the most precious of all fruits.

62. So, lets go work with all our might one last time, cause the end is closin in, and thisll be the last time I prune my vineyard.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

63. Graft in them branches; start at the end so they can be first, and the first can be last, diggin around the trees, both old and young the first and the last; and the last and the first, so all can get nourished once more before the end comes.

64. So dig around em, and trim em up, and fertilize em one more time for the last time; the end is near. And if these last grafts take root and produce the natural fruit, then you better prepare the way for em to grow.

65. And as they start to grow, youll clear away them branches that bring bad fruit, based on the good ones strength and how big they are; dont clear em all away at once, or the roots might get too strong for the graft and itll perish and Ill lose the trees of my vineyard.

66. Cause it pains me to see my vineyard trees take a dive; so yall will clear away the bad as the good comes in, to keep the roots and tops equally strong, until the good outshines the bad, and the bad gets chopped down and tossed in the fire, so they dont clutter the ground in my vineyard; and thats how Ill clear out the bad from my vineyard.

67. And the branches of the natural tree, Im gonna graft back in that natural tree;

68. And the branches of the natural tree, Ill stick into the natural branches of the tree; and thisll bring em back together again, so they can bear the natural fruit and be one.

69. And the bads gonna be tossed away, even out of all the land in my vineyard; cause Im only gonna prune my vineyard this once.

70. Then the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant, and the servant went and did just what the Lord told him and brought back some other workers; and they were few.

71. And the Lord of the vineyard said to em, Go on now, and work in the vineyard with all your might. Cause this is the last time Ill nourish my vineyard; the end is gettin real close, and the season is comin up fast; if yall work hard with me, youll have joy from the fruit Ill put away for myself til the time comes.

72. So the servants went and worked hard; and the Lord of the vineyard worked with em too; and they followed all the commands from the Lord of the vineyard in every little thing.

73. And the natural fruit started comin' back in the vineyard; and the natural branches were growin strong and

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

doin real well; and them wild branches started gettin plucked off and tossed away; and they kept the roots and tops equal in strength.

74. So they toiled diligently based on what the Lord of the vineyard commanded, until all the bad had been cleared out of the vineyard, and the Lord had kept it safe so the trees could produce natural fruit, and they became like one big happy family; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard kept for himself the precious natural fruit he had since the beginning.

75. And when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good and that his vineyard was no longer corrupt, he called his servants and said, Look here, for this last time weve been nourished in my vineyard; and you see that Ive done as I willed; and Ive saved the natural fruit, and its good, just like it always was. And blessed are you; cause youve been workin hard alongside me in my vineyard, keepin my commandments, and bringin back the natural fruit, so my vineyard aint gone rogue no more, and the bads been cleared out; youll rejoice with me cause of the fruit of my vineyard.

76. For, for a good long while, Ill be stashin away the fruit of my vineyard for myself for the coming season thats speedily closin in; and for the last time, Ive taken care of my vineyard, pruned it, dug around it, and fertilized it; now Ill lay up for myself of the fruit, for a long time, based on what Ive said.

77. And when the time rolls around that evil fruit makes its way back into my vineyard, then Ill gather up the good and the bad; and Ill keep the good for myself, and the bad Ill toss away to its own place. And then the season comes and the end shows up; and Ill see to it that my vineyard gets burned with fire.

## **Jacob Chapter 6**

1. Well now, listen up, yall. Im fixin to share a little somethin' thats been prophesied what that fella Zenos talked 'bout, likenin the house of Israel to a good ol' olive tree, its gonna happen, no doubt.

2. Now, the day the Lord rolls up his sleeves again to gather His folks back in is gonna be the very last time when His servants get to working real hard in the fields, tendin to His vineyard; after that, yall best believe the end's just 'round the corner.

3. Aint no blessin quite like the ones whove toiled hard in that vineyard; and let me tell ya, its a sorry state for

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

them that get tossed outta there! And heavens gonna rain down fire, folks.

4. Aint our God just a kind soul? Hes rememberin' His people, Israel, the roots and branchestheyre like a stubborn mule, but bless their hearts, those who keep their hearts soft will find their way into Gods kingdom.

5. So listen here, my dear friends, Im implorin ya real serious-like to change your ways, come on back to God with all ya got, and stick close to Him like He sticks close to you. While Gods mercy is reachin out to ya during the daylight, dont harden your hearts now.

6. Im tellin ya, today, if yall hear Him callin, dont shut your hearts up tight; whats the point in just rollin over and dyin'?

7. Now, after youve been fed the good word of God all day long, how could you possibly bear bad fruit? If you do, youll get cut down and tossed into the fire.

8. So tell me, are ya gonna turn your back on these words? Are ya gonna ignore what the prophets had to say about Christ, after so many have shared their thoughts, and walk away from the good word of Christ, the power of God, and the Holy Ghost? Dont go makin a joke of the grand plan of redemption thats been laid out just for you.

9. Dont you know that if you keep on down that road, the power of redemption and resurrection through Christ is gonna leave ya standin there full of shame and guilt before Gods judgment?

10. And reckonin Gods justice, which cant be turned away, means youll be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone, burnin' hot and eternal, where them flames just keep on blazin and the smoke rises up forever.

11. So, I tell ya, my dear friends, turn away from your sins, slide right on through that narrow gate, and stick to that straight and narrow path till you grab hold of eternal life.

12. Now be smart, what else could I possibly say?

13. Lastly, Im sayin goodbye for now, until we meet up at Gods doorstep, which sure strikes a chill in the hearts of the wicked. Amen.

## **Jacob Chapter 7**

1. Well, after a good spell of time, there strolled into town a fella by the name of Sherem, and he was among

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the folks of Nephi.

2. Now, this fella started preachin' to everybody, sayin' that there ain't no such thing as Christ. He spun a bunch of sweet talk that tickled the ears of the crowd, hopin' to unravel the whole doctrine of Christ.

3. He worked real hard tryin' to pull folks away from their beliefs, and he sure did sway a whole mess of 'em; and knowin' I, Jacob, had faith in that there Christ who was comin, he was lookin' for any chance to chat with me.

4. Sherem was pretty sharp, had himself a solid grasp of the folks' lingo, and could dish out plenty of charm and a whole lotta smooth words, all thanks to the devils handiwork.

5. He thought he could shake my faith up a bit, even with all them revelations and the miracles Id seen, 'cause Id truly seen angels, and theyd helped me out. I had also heard the Lord's voice talkin' to me time and time again; so I wasn't budging none.

6. So, he came up to me, and this is how he laid it out: "Brother Jacob, Ive been lookin' for a chance to chat with ya; Ive heard you've been runnin' around preachin' what folks call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ."

7. And I reckon youve led a whole heap of folks away, twistin Gods true path and not keepin' the law of Moses, which is the right way; turnin the law into worship of somethin' you say is comin' many years down the road. Now listen here, I, Sherem, am tellin you straight up thats blasphemy; no man can know about such things, 'cause he cant predict the future. And thats how Sherem went up against me.

8. But lemme tell ya, the Lord God filled my soul with His Spirit, and I was able to put him in his place with every word he said.

9. I asked him, "Ain't ya denyin' that there Christ who's comin'?" And he replied, "If there was a Christ, I wouldn't argue with ya; but I reckon there ain't no Christ, never has been, and never will be."

10. So I asked him, "Do you believe the scriptures? And he said, Well, sure.

11. And I said, Then you ain't really gettin' 'em; 'cause they truly speak of Christ. I'm tellin' ya that none of the prophets wrote or prophesied without talkin' 'bout this Christ."

12. And hold onto your hattheres more! I've seen and heard these truths myself, made clear to me by the Holy

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Ghost; so I know if there ain't no atonement made, all mankind's gonna be lost.

13. Then he asked me to show him a sign by that Holy Ghost power I know so much about.

14. And I said, What in the world am I that I should test God by askin Him for a sign on what ya already know to be true? But you know what? Youll reject it cause youre with the devil. But let the Lords will be done; if He wants to smite you, let that be a sign for ya that Hes got power both in heaven and on earth; and that Christs gonna come. So let the Lords will be done, not mine."

15. Well, I had just finished sayin' that when the Lord's power fell all over Sherem, and he hit the ground hard. And he was out cold for several days.

16. Eventually, he told the people, Gather round tomorrow, cause it looks like Im fixin to kick the bucket; and I wanna talk to yall before I go.

17. And sure enough, when the next day rolled around, the crowd had gathered, and he spoke real clear-like, denouncin' all the stuff hed been preachin, confessin' the Christ, the power of the Holy Ghost, and the angels comin to minister.

18. He laid it all out to them, sayin hed been tricked by the devils power. He talked about hell, eternity, and everlasting punishment.

19. He admitted, Im scared I mightve committed the unforgivable sin cause Ive lied to God; I denied Christ, and claimed I believed the scriptures, which clearly point to Him. And since Ive lied to God, Im really afraid my fates gonna be terrible, but I confess it to God.

20. Right after sayin that, he could no longer speak, and he breathed his last.

21. When the crowd saw him talkin like this right before he passed, they were totally blown away; the power of God came down on em, and they were so overcome they fell down too.

22. Now, this whole situation made me, Jacob, feel real good, cause I had prayed to my Father up in heaven, and He heard me and answered my prayers.

23. Then peace and the love of God came back to the people; they started searchin the scriptures again and didnt listen to that wicked man no more.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

24. A whole bunch of ideas were cooked up to bring the Lamanites back to the truth, but it all went south, cause they just loved fightin and spillin' blood, and they held a deep-seated hatred for us, their own kin. They kept tryin to take us out with the might of their armies.

25. So, the Nephites fortified themselves against em, armed to the teeth and puttin their trust in the God and rock of their salvation; and they managed to come out on top against their foes.

26. Now, I, Jacob, started feelin my years weighin' on me; and since the record of the people was keepin' on those other plates of Nephi, Im wrapin up this account here, just sayin' Ive written down the best I know how, and time just slipped on by for us, our lives flashin before our eyes like a dream, us being a lonely and solemn people, wanderers, kicked outta Jerusalem, born into tribulation, lost in the wilderness, and hated by our kin, which led to our share of wars and fights; so we spent our days mournin'.

27. And I, Jacob, figured it was my time to meet my maker; so I told my son Enos, Take these plates. And I filled him in on what my brother Nephi had told me, and he promised hed follow my lead. Now Ill put down my pen on these plates, which aint been much written on, and to the reader I say farewell, hopin' some of my people might read my words. So long, brethren.

## **Enos**

### **Enos Chapter 1**

1. Well now, it happened that I, Enos, knew my daddy was a good manhe taught me his words, along with the ways of the Lordbless his name for that

2. Let me tell yall 'bout the fight I had with God before I got a clean slate on my sins.

3. So, I went huntin' critters in the woods, and all them words I heard from my daddy 'bout eternal life and what joy the good folks got really sank into my heart.

4. I was downright hungry in my soul; I knelt down before my Maker, cryin out for my own soul in a powerful prayer, and I spent the whole day hollerin' out to Him; come nightfall, I still lifted my voice high enough to reach the heavens.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

5. And then, I heard a voice sayin' to me: Enos, your sins are gone, and you gonna be blessed.

6. And I, Enos, knew that God aint no liar; so my guilt was all cleaned out.

7. I asked, Lord, how's that work?

8. And He told me: 'Cause of your faith in Christ, whom you've never laid eyes on before. Therell be many years pass by before He shows up in the flesh; so get on with it, your faith has made you whole.

9. Now, right then, when I heard these words, I started feelin a real deep desire for the well-being of my folks, the Nephites; so I laid out my whole soul to God for 'em.

10. And while I was out there wrestlin' in the spirit, lo and behold, the voice of the Lord came back to my mind and said: Ill pay a visit to your kin based on how hard they keep my commandments. I gave em this land, and it's holy to me; I aint cursing it unless it's for wickedness; so, Ill visit your folks just like I said, and their mess-ups gonna weigh heavy on em.

11. After I, Enos, heard these words, my faith in the Lord got real strong; I prayed hard for my brothers, the Lamanites.

12. And it came to pass that after I prayed my heart out, the Lord spoke to me: Ill give you what you ask for, 'cause of your faith.

13. And look here, this was what I wantedthat if my people, the Nephites, messed up and got wiped out but the Lamanites didnt, that the Lord God would keep a record of my folks, even if it took His holy power to bring it out one day for the Lamanites to maybe find their way to salvation

14. Cause right then, all our effort to bring 'em back to the real faith was a flop. They were swearin' in their fury that if they could, theyd wipe out our records, us, and all the stories from our fathers.

15. So, knowin God was capable of keepin our records safe, I cried out to Him constantly, 'cause He told me: Whatever yall ask in faith, thinkin youll receive it in the name of Christ, you gonna get it.

16. And I had that faith, and I cried out to God to preserve them records; He promised me that Hed bring 'em back to the Lamanites in His own good time.

17. And I, Enos, knew itd go just like the promise He made; my soul found rest in that.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. And the Lord said to me: Your daddies done asked me this too; itll happen for em like itll happen for you; they had faith like yours.

19. And then it came to pass that I, Enos, was out wanderin 'round among the Nephites, prophesying what was to come, and telling 'em what I heard and saw.

20. I can testify that the Nephites were tryin real hard to bring the Lamanites back to true faith in God. But our work was in vain; their hatred was deep-rooted, and they were led by their wicked ways, turnin' into wild, fierce folks, bloodthirsty, full of idol worship and muck; feedin on beasts, livin' in tents, wanderin' the wilderness, wearin' just a little skin wrap round their middle and their heads all shaved; they were good with bow and sword and axe. Many didnt eat nothin' but raw meat, always tryin to destroy us.

21. Now, it come to pass that the Nephites worked the land, growin' all kinds of grains, fruits, and raisin' herds of cattle, goats, wild goats, and a whole bunch of horses.

22. And we had a heap of prophets among us. But the folks were stiff-necked, hard to get through to.

23. There wasnt nothin but tough love, preachin' bout wars, fights, and destruction, keepin' 'em reminded of death, eternity, and Gods judgments, keepin' 'em stirred up to stay in the fear of the Lord. I say, nothin' short of that and real plain talk could keep em from headin' straight for destruction. And thats how I got to writin' about 'em.

24. I saw fights between the Nephites and the Lamanites in my day.

25. And it come to pass that I started feelin' old, and a hundred seventy-nine years done slipped by since our daddy Lehi left Jerusalem.

26. I realized Id be takin' a dirt nap soon, 'cause God was workin' on me to preach and prophesy to this people, sayin' the word according to the truth thats in Christ. And Ive been shoutin' it out all my days, and found joy in it over what the world had to offer.

27. And Ill soon be headin' to my restin' place, which is with my Redeemer; 'cause I know in Him Ill find that rest. And I look forward to the day when my mortal frame puts on immortality, and I stand before Him; then Ill see His face with happiness, and Hell say to me: Come on in, you blessed one, got a spot ready for ya in my

Fathers house. Amen.

## **Jarom**

### **Jarom Chapter 1**

1. Now listen here, Im Jarom, just jottin down a few words 'cause my daddy Enos told me we ought to keep track of our family tree.
2. These plates aint much to write on, and Im penning this for our Lamanite kin, so I aint gonna be scribblin a whole lot; specially not my prophecies or revelations. What more could I even say that my folks aint already laid out? Theyve already spilled the beans on salvation, and thats good enough for me.
3. Yall better pay attention, cause theres a heap that needs doin with these folks. Their hearts are as hard as a rock, their ears deaf as a post, their minds blinded, and their necks stiff as a board; but bless their hearts, Gods been real good to em, not just tossing em off the land just yet.
4. Now, theres a good many of us who got some revelations, 'cause not everyones as hard-headed. Those who aint stiffnecked and got a little faith can have some chit-chat with the Holy Spirit, who shows em whats what, dependin on their level of faith.
5. Well, let me tell ya, two hundred years flew by, and ol' Nephi's folks got strong out here. They kept the law of Moses and made sure the Sabbath was sacred to the Lord. They didnt go profanin or blaspheming. The laws of the land were mighty strict, yknow.
6. And they were spreadin all over the place, just like the Lamanites, who were a whole lot more numerous than us Nephites; those folks loved themselves some murder and drank the blood of critters without a second thought.
7. Time and time again, they came at us Nephites lookin for a fight. But our kings and leaders were strong in their faith in the Lord; they showed the folks how to walk in His ways, and we held our ground against the Lamanites, sendin em runnin from our lands, and we started makin our cities strong, or any place we could call home.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

8. We got real thick, stretched out all over the place, and got ourselves plenty rich in gold, silver, all sorts of fancy stuff, and fine craftsmanship in wood, buildings, machinery, iron, copper, brass, and steel toomade all kinds of tools to work the land, and weapons for when trouble came knockinyep, sharp arrows, quivers, darts, javelins, the whole works for war.

9. So, bein all set to handle the Lamanites, they didnt have much luck against us. The Lords word came to pass, just like He told our forefathers: as long as you keep my commandments, youll thrive in this land.

10. Now, the Lord's prophets gave the Nephites some stern warnings, cause God said if they didnt stick to His commandments and slipped into mischief, theyd be wiped off the land.

11. So, the prophets, priests, and teachers worked real hard, preachin with patience to keep the folks diligent; teachin the law of Moses and why it was laid down; coaxin em to look forward to the Messiah and believe He was on His way, like He was already here. Thats how they taught.

12. By doin all that, they kept the folks from gettin wiped off the land; they pricked their hearts with the word, keepin em stirred up to repent.

13. And lo and behold, two hundred thirty-eight years rolled on bywhat with all the wars, fussin', and disagreements, that took up a bunch of time.

14. And I, Jarom, aint gonna write no more cause these plates are just tiny. But listen here, yall can check out the other plates of Nephi; cause them's got all the records of our skirmishes carved in, just like the kings had it wrote down.

15. Now, Im passin these plates to my boy Omni, so he can keep em right, just like my daddies taught me to do.

**Omni**

### **Omni Chapter 1**

1. Well now, let me tell ya, it came to pass that I, Omni, was told by my daddy, Jarom, that I oughta jot down some stuff on these here plates to keep track of our family tree

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. So, back in my day, I want yall to know I tussled a whole lot with my sword tryin to protect my folks, the Nephites, from fallin into the hands of them Lamanites. But hey, I gotta confess, Im just a no-good, rotten sinner, and I ain't followed the Lord's rules like I shouldve.

3. Then it happened that two hundred and seventy-six years went by, and we had our fair share of peaceful times, but also some serious wars and blood spilled. Yup, in total, two hundred eighty-two years went by, and I kept these plates like my folks told me to; I handed 'em off to my boy Amaron. And thats a wrap.

4. Now I, Amaron, Im just gonna write down the few bits of stuff Im gonna put in my daddys book.

5. Well, it came to pass that three hundred twenty years rolled on by, and the nastier part of the Nephites got wiped out.

6. The Lord, He just wouldnt let em be, even after leadin em outta Jerusalem and keepin 'em safe from their enemies. Yep, He wasnt bout to let His words go unfulfilled, which He told our ancestorsthat if yall dont follow my commandments, you ain't gonna do well in the land.

7. So the Lord showed em some serious judgment; but dont you worry, He spared the good folks so they wouldnt be lost, and He got 'em outta the clutches of their enemies.

8. Then I went ahead and passed the plates onto my bro Chemish.

9. Now Im Chemish, and Im gonna write down what little I got to share in the same book as my brother; cause I saw with my own eyes the last bit he wrote, and he did that right when he handed 'em over to me. And we keep our records this way, just like our daddies said to. And thats all for me.

10. Hey now, Im Abinadom, son of Chemish. It come to pass that I witnessed a whole lotta war and arguments between my folks, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and Ive done took the lives of many Lamanites with my own sword fightin for my kin.

11. And ysee, the record of these folks is etched on plates, kept by the kings through the ages; and I dont know nothin' cept whats already been wrote, no prophecies neither; so whatevers enough, thats whats written down. And thats it for me.

12. Well, Im Amaleki, son of Abinadom. And Im fixin' to say a little somethin bout Mosiah, who was made

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

king over Zarahemla; cause you see, he got a warning from the Lord to hightail it outta Nephi, and anyone who would listen to Him should skedaddle too, out into the wilderness

13. And sure enough, he did what the Lord told him. So they all packed up and left the land for the wilderness, all who would listen; they were guided by plenty of preachin and prophecy. They kept gettin told by Gods word, and they were led by His strong hand, through the wild until they hit the land called Zarahemla.

14. And lo and behold, they found a folks called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was a whole lotta rejoicin among the Zarahemla crowd; and good ol Zarahemla rejoiced somethin fierce, cause the Lord had sent Mosiah's folks back with them brass plates holdin the Jewish history.

15. Well, it came to pass that Mosiah found out them Zarahemlaites come outta Jerusalem when Zedekiah, king of Judah, got carried off to Babylon.

16. They traveled through the wild, and the Lords hand brought em across the big waters, til Mosiah found 'em; and they'd been livin there ever since.

17. And at the time Mosiah discovered em, there were a whole heap of em. But boy howdy, they had their fair share of fights and serious scrapes, and they fell by the sword many a time; their language got all kinds of mixed up; and they didnt bring no records with em; and they didnt even believe in their Creator; and Mosiah and his folks couldnt make heads or tails of em.

18. But Mosiah made sure they got taught his language. And after they learned what Mosiah spoke, Zarahemla gave 'em a rundown of his family line, just like he could remember; and its written down, but not on these plates.

19. And it come to pass that the people of Zarahemla and Mosiah joined forces, and Mosiah was made their king.

20. Now, in Mosiahs time, a big ol stone was brought to him with some carvings on it; and by the grace of God, he figured out what them carvings meant.

21. And it told the tale of one Coriantumr and the folks he lost. Coriantumr was found by the Zarahemlaites, and he stayed with em for nine moons.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

22. And it even had a few words about his folks. His first ancestors came down from the tower when the Lord mixed up the language of the people, and the Lords judgment fell on em proper; their bones lay scattered up north.

23. Hey now, Im Amaleki, born in the days of Mosiah; and Ive lived long enough to see him pass on; and Benjamin, his boy, is reignin' now.

24. And I reckon Ive seen, in King Benjamin's days, a real serious fight and plenty of bloodshed tween the Nephites and the Lamanites. But the Nephites came out on top over em; so much so that King Benjamin drove em outta Zarahemla.

25. Well, it come to pass that I was startin to get old, and without no kids, and knowin King Benjamins a right stand-up fella before the Lord, so I figured Id hand over these plates to him, tellin folks to come to God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophecy, revelations, angels, talkin in tongues, and interpretin languages, and all things good; cause there ain't nothin' good unless it comes from the Lord, and all the bad stuff comes from the devil.

26. And now, my dear brothers, I want ya to come to Christ, the Holy One of Israel, and take part in His salvation and redemption power. Yeah, come to Him and offer your whole selves as an offering, keep fastin and prayin, and hang on until the end; and as sure as the Lord lives, youll be saved.

27. And now I gotta say a few words bout a bunch that went up into the wild tryin to get back to Nephi; cause there was a big ol crowd wantin to grab their inheritance land.

28. So they took off up into the wild. Their leader was a strong, stubborn fella, and he stirred up a fuss among em all; and they ended up being wiped out, except for fifty, out in the wilderness, and they made their way back to Zarahemla.

29. And so it happened they took some others along too, and headed back into the wilderness again.

30. And I, Amaleki, had a brother who went with em; and I ain't heard a lick about em since. And Im about to lay myself down for a long nap in the grave; these plates are full. And thats all I got to say.

## **Words of Mormon**



## **Words of Mormon Chapter 1**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya 'bout this ol' tale from Mormon's wrk.
2. So Im sittin here, Mormon, fixin to hand over this here record I been workin on to my boy Moroni. I reckon Ive seen just bout all the wreckin of my people, them Nephites.
3. Now, its been hundreds of years since Christ came on down, and Im passin these records over to my son; I cant help but think hell see the complete downfall of our folks. But Im hopin and prayin hell make it through, so he can write a bit bout us and a bit bout Christ, maybe one day itll do em some good.
4. Now, let me talk a bit bout what Ive been scribblin; after I summed up them plates from Nephi, all the way to King Benjamins time that Amaleki yapped about, I went diggin through the records I had, and I stumbled upon these plates that held a few stories from the prophets, startin with Jacob and goin right on to King Benjamins reign, plus a heap of Nephis words.
5. And I gotta say, whats on them plates tickles my fancy cause of the prophecies bout Christ comin; my folks knew many of em came true; yeah, I know that whatever was prophesied bout us up to today has happened, and whatevers supposed to come after this day is bound to happen too
6. So, I picked out these bits to wrap up my record on em, and Ill pull the rest of my story from Nephis plates; cant hardly jot down even a hundredth of what my folks have been through.
7. But listen here, Im gonna grab these plates filled with those prophecies and revelations, and toss em in with the rest of my record cause they mean a whole lot to me; and I reckon theyll mean just as much to my kin.
8. Im doin this for a mighty good reason; the Spirit of the Lords been whisperin to me, guidin me along. And I dont know everything, mind ya, but the Lord does, and Hes the one workin in me to get things done His way.
9. And my prayer to God is for my kin, hopin theyll find their way back to knowin Him again, yeah, and gettin to know Christs redemption; I want em to be a happy folks again.
10. Now Im gonna finish up my record takin from Nephis plates, and Im doin it with the understanding Gods granted me.
11. So it happened that after Amaleki handed over them plates to King Benjamin, he went and put em with the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

others which had been passed down from king to king, all the way through to King Benjamins day.

12. And they got passed down from King Benjamin, generation after generation, till they landed right in my hands. And let me tell ya, Im prayin to God they stay safe from here on out. I know they will cause theres mighty important stuff written on em, outta which my people and theirs will be judged come the final day, all based on Gods word thats been put down.

13. And now, bout that King Benjaminhe had himself a bit of fuss among his folks.

14. And it sure did come to pass that the Lamanites marched on down from Nephis land to take on his people. But lemme tell ya, King Benjamin rallied his armies and stood his ground; he fought like a true warrior, brandishin Labans sword.

15. And with the Lords strength, they went up against their foes, puttin down a whole heap of them Lamanites. And it sure enough came to pass they fought til theyd driven them clean outta all the lands they called their own.

16. And after there was some false Christs runnin round, and they got their mouths shut up, gettin punished for their misdeeds;

17. And after there were false prophets, preachin and teachin all sorts of nonsense among the people, and all them folks gettin punished just like the others; after all the squabblin and bickerin that went over to the Lamanites, it came to be that King Benjamin, with help from them holy prophets hangin around his folks

18. Cause see here, King Benjamin was a right good man, reignin over his people with justice; and there was a whole passel of holy men in the land who spoke Gods word with power and authority; they sure did use a bit of sharpness cause them folks had such hard heads

19. So, with their help, King Benjamin, givin it all he had, body and soul, along with them prophets, brought back peace to the land once again.

## **Mosiah**

### **Mosiah Chapter 1**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well now, there was just no more fussin' round in all the land of Zarahemla, with all them folks belongin' to King Benjamin, so he enjoyed himself some good ol' peace for the rest of his days.
2. And then it turned out he had three boys; called 'em Mosiah, Helorum, and Helaman. He made sure they learned all that fancy talk from their kin, so they could be smart fellas; and so they could know 'bout all them prophecies their daddies done told em that the Lord had laid on their hearts.
3. And he also filled 'em in on them records carved on them brass plates, sayin': "Listen up, boys! You gotta remember that if it weren't for these plates with all these records and commandments, wed be stuck in the dark, clueless about Gods mysteries, even right now.
4. Cause I tell ya, it wouldnt have been possible for our daddy, Lehi, to keep all that straight to teach his kids without them plates helpin' him out; cause he learned how to talk the Egyptian way, so he could read them engravings and pass em on, and they could teach their own younguns, keepin Gods commandments goin even to this day.
5. Im tellin you, my boys, if it weren't for this stuff that Gods hand preserved for us to read and get wise on His mysteries and keepin His commandments in our sight, even our papas wouldve stumbled in doubt, and wed be just like our kin, the Lamanites, who dont know squat about these things or don't even believe em when theyre told, cause of the old traditions from their papas that just aint right.
6. Oh, my boys, I want yall to hold on to these words as the gospel truth, and also remember them records are legit. And looky here, we got the plates of Nephi, which hold the tales and sayings of our daddies since they hightailed it outta Jerusalem till now, and theyre indeed true; we can know em for certain cause we got 'em right in front of us.
7. Now listen here, my boys, Im hopin' yall will dig into those diligently, so you can benefit from em; and I want ya to keep Gods commandments so yall can thrive in the land like the good Lord promised our daddies.
8. And there were many more lessons King Benjamin taught his boys that aint written down in this here book.
9. Next thing ya know, after King Benjamin finished teachin up his boys, he was gettin on in years, and he realized it was high time to go on home like all folks do; so he figured hed better hand off the kingdom to one

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

of his boys.

10. So, he had Mosiah come on up to him; and heres what he said: "Son, I want you to spread the word all over this land with all these folks, or the folks of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah livin' here, so they can all come together; cause come tomorrow, Ill be tellin my people right from my own mouth that youre the king and a ruler over these folks the Lord our God has blessed us with."

11. And on top of that, Im gonna give this people a name, so they can stand out from all them others the Lord God brought outta Jerusalem; and I'm doin' it cause theyve been a good bunch, keepin the Lords commandments.

12. And Im givin em a name that ain't never gonna get wiped out, unless they run afoul of the rules.

13. Yep, and Ill tell ya this too, if this mighty favored people of the Lord go astray and turn into a wicked and unfaithful bunch, the Lord's gonna turn em loose, and theyll end up weak like their kin; and He wont be keepin em safe with His unmatched power like Hes done for our daddies.

14. Cause Im here to tell ya, if He hadnt reached out to preserve our daddies, they surely wouldve fell into the hands of them Lamanites, and been victims of their hate.

15. And it came to pass that after King Benjamin finished all this talkin to his boy, he entrusted him with all the kingdoms goin-ons.

16. And he also put him in charge of the records that were carved on them brass plates; and them plates of Nephi too; and dont forget the sword of Laban, and the seer stone that guided our daddies through the wilds, which was set up by the Lords own hand so they could be led, each according to how much attention and effort they put into it.

17. So, when they werent faithful, they didnt get no progress on their journey, but instead, they got pushed back and ticked off God; and then they faced hunger and hard times to remind em of their duties.

18. And so, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did just what his daddy told him, and he proclaimed to all the folks in the land of Zarahemla to gather together, so they could head up to the temple and hear the words his daddy had for em.

## **Mosiah Chapter 2**

1. Well, let me tell ya 'bout how it all went down. After Mosiah followed his daddy's orders and shouted out across the whole kit and caboodle, folks gathered round from all over the land, eager to haul themselves up to the temple and catch the words King Benjamin had to say.
2. Shoot, there were so many folks there that they couldn't even count em; theyd really multiplied and got large like a summer crop in the south.
3. They brought the best of their livestock, lookin to make some sacrifices and burnt offerings, just like good ol Moses said to do.
4. And they were also fixin to thank the good Lord for bringin em outta Jerusalem, rescuin em from their enemies, and sendin some righteous folks to teach em, bless their hearts, along with a just king who brought peace to Zarahemla and showed em how to keep Gods commandments so they could have love fillin their hearts.
5. When they made it to the temple, folks set up their tents all around, each man with his family, wives and kids and all, spread out from the oldest to the youngest, every clan keepin to themselves.
6. They had them tents facing the temple, so they could stay cozy and still hear King Benjamin's words rollin' out.
7. Well, since there were just too many folks for him to chat with inside the temple, the King had 'em build a tower so everyone could catch his words.
8. Then he started preachin from that tower, but some folks couldnt hear him cause of all the people chattin and makin a ruckus, so he had his words wrote down and sent out to those who couldnt catch what he was sayin.
9. Herere the words he spoke and had scribbled down: Now listen up, everybody that gathered here, yall hearin me today aint here just to dally round with what Im sayin, but you gotta pay attention, open your ears and hearts so you can understand and soak up the mysteries of God.
10. I aint asked yall to come up here so youd be scared of me, or think Im somethin special or better than any

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

of ya.

11. "Truth is, Im just like you, dealin with all kinds of weaknesses in my body and mind; but Ive been chosen by you folks, blessed by my daddy and looked after by the Lord so I could be your ruler, and Hes given me the strength to serve yall with all the might Hes given me.

12. "I reckon Ive spent my days lookin out for your interests, not chasin after gold or silver or riches from you;

13. "And Ive sure not let you folks end up in dungeons, or become each others slaves, nor murder, steal, plunder, or cheat on one another; and I aint let you do any wickedness either, teachin you to follow the Lords commandments in all things

14. "And Ive worked hard with my own hands to serve you, keepin burdens off your back and not lettin anything hard come your way and yall can back me up on all this Im sayin.

15. "But, listen here, I aint been doin this to brag or point fingers at yall; Im sayin all this so you know I aint got a guilty conscience before God today."

16. "Now, dont get me wrong, I aint tryin to boast cause Ive floated along servin you; I really been servin God the whole time."

17. "And Im lettin you know all this so you can pick up a bit of wisdom; when youre helpin your fellow humans, youre really servin your God.

18. "Now yall been callin me your king; and if Im bustin my hump tryin to serve ya, then shouldnt you all be servin each other?

19. "And if I, your king who's been servin yall, and still hangin tight to God, deserve any thanks, well, yall oughta be thankful to your heavenly King!

20. "Im tellin ya, if you were to give every bit of thanks and praise that your heart could muster to the God that made ya, kept ya safe, and caused ya to rejoice, you still wouldnt come close to what He deserves.

21. "I mean, if yall served the one who made you from the very start, keepin ya goin day after day by givin ya breath and strength servin Him whole hog with every fiber of your being youd still be forgettin just how much Hes done.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

22. "And all He asks of ya is to keep His commandments; and Hes promised that if yall do, youll thrive in this land, and He aint ever gonna change His mind on that; so if you keep His commandments, Hell bless ya up right.

23. "And first off, Hes the one who made ya and given ya these lives, so you owe Him for that.

24. "And second, He wants ya to follow what Hes told ya; and if you do what He commands, Hell bless ya right on the spot; and even then, you still owe Him, always and forever; so whats there to brag about?

25. "Now I ask ya, what's there to say bout yourselves? Can ya even say nothin? I reckon not. You cant say youre worth more than the dust yall were made from; but dont forget, that dust belongs to the one who created ya.

26. "And me, even I, your king, am nothin better than yall; Im just dust like the rest of ya. And as yall can see, Im gettin on in years, fixin to give up this ol body to Mother Earth.

27. "So, just like I said about servin ya with a clear heart before God, Ive brought yall together so I can stand before yall clear of blame, and that none of your blood be on my hands when I face Gods judgement.

28. "Im sayin Ive gathered you all round so I can shake off your blood before I head to my grave, and go down in peace, hopin my spirit joins the heavenly choir singin praises to a just God.

29. "And dont forget, I gotta say that Ive gathered you up so I can tell ya I can't be your teacher or king no more;

30. "Cause right now, my whole self is shakin like a leaf just tryin to talk to yall; but the Lord Gods keepin me up, let me speak, and told me I gotta announce today that my boy Mosiahs gonna be your new king.

31. "Now, folks, I reckon you should keep on doin just as youve been doin. Stayin true to my commandments, and those of my father, has kept yall safe from your enemies, so if you'll stick with my sons commandments, or Gods commands brought to ya through him, youll do just fine in the land, and your enemies wont touch ya.

32. "But, oh my people, keep your eyes peeled for any fuss or trouble that might crop up, and dont listen to that evil spirit my father Mosiah warned about.

33. "Cause listen close, theres a woeful fate for anyone who listens to that spirit; if they go followin' it and end

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

up stuck in their sins, thatll be damned to their soulyou see, theyll be earnin' themselves an everlasting punishment for breakin Gods law against what they know.

34. "Im tellin ya, there aint any of you who havent been taught these things, cept maybe the youngins who cant understand yet; you all know you owe your heavenly Father all that youve got; yall learned about the records keepin' track of all the prophecies since our old man Lehi left Jerusalem;

35. "And everything thats been said by our forefathers up till now is true and right cause they spoke it under Gods command.

36. "Now, after youve learned all this, if you decide to go against whats been taught, pushin the Spirit of the Lord to the side, then you wont get no blessings or guidance in your life, and youll miss out on all the good.

37. "Yall, the person doin this is just rebelling against God; theyll be listenin to that evil spirit and become enemies of all thats right; so the Lord wont be near em cause He dont dwell in unholy places.

38. "So, if that fella dont repent and goes on bein an enemy to God when he dies, then the heaviness of his sin will awaken his soul to feel the weight of his own guilt, makin him shy away from the Lord, filled with guilt and pain, like burnin fire that wont ever go out.

39. "And now Im tellin you, mercy aint got nothin for that man; his final fate is to suffer forever."

40. "O all you old-timers, young men, and little ones who can grasp my words, I hope I made it clear for yall to wake up to just how awful it is for those who slip into transgression."

41. "And on the flip side, consider the blessed life of those who keep Gods commandments. They get blessed in everything, both in this life and the next; and if they stick it out till the end, theyre welcomed into heaven, where they get to chill with God in pure happiness. Just remember that, remember its all true, cause the Lord God said so.

## **Mosiah Chapter 3**

1. Alright, heres what I reckon it sounds like in a Southern drawl:

2. Well now, listen up, yall, cause Ive got somethin more to say to ya; I got some words bout whats comin up ahead.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

3. The stuff Im fixin to share came straight from an angel sent by the Good Lord. He told me, Wake up! and sure enough, I opened my eyes, and there he was standin right in front of me.
4. He says, Wake up, and lend an ear to what Im fixin to say; cause Im here to bring ya some real good news thats gonna make ya happy.
5. The Lord done heard your prayers and saw your good works, and He sent me to let ya know so you can celebrate; and share it with your folks so they can be full of joy too.
6. Yall best be payin attention, cause not far off, the Lord Almighty whos been around since forever is comin down from the skies to live among folks in a body made of clay, and Hes gonna go round doin some mighty works like heal the sick, bring the dead back to life, help folks walk who couldnt, make the blind see, help the deaf hear, and fix up all sorts of ailments.
7. Hes gonna cast out them evil spirits livin in folks hearts.
8. And yall, Hes gonna face temptations and all sorts of hurt, hunger, thirst, and tireless labor, moren any man could handle til he nearly dies; cause bloods gonna pour from every pore, just from the pain of all the sins and the wrongdoings of His people.
9. And theyll call Him Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of everything from day one, and His mama will be named Mary.
10. And looky there, Hes comin for His own, so salvation can reach the children of men who believe in His name; and after all that, folks gonna see Him as just a man, sayin Hes got a devil, and theyll beat Him and hang Him on a cross.
11. But listen here, on the third day, Hes gonna rise up from the dead; and guess what, Hes standin there to judge the world; all these things gotta happen so that theres fair judgement for all.
12. Cause heres the deal, His blood covers the sins of those who got lost cause of Adams misstep, who died not knowin what God wanted from em, or who just sinned outta ignorance.
13. But oh boy, woe be to the one who knows hes shakin his fist at God! Cause there aint no salvation for them unless they turn their lives around and put their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. And the Lord Gods gone ahead and sent His holy prophets to every kinda folk, kindred, and tongue, to tell em that if they believe Christ is comin, they can have their sins wiped clean and be filled with happiness, like Hes already walked among em.

15. Yet, the Lord God saw his people were stubborn as mules, so He gave em a law, the law of Moses.

16. He showed em lots of signs, wonders, and shadows about His comin, and holy prophets spoke about it too; but they just couldnt take it, harden their hearts, and didnt get that the law of Moses dont mean a thing til ya get to the atonin blood.

17. And even if little ones could sin, they couldnt be lost; but Im tellin ya, theyre blessed; cause just like Adam, they fall by nature, but the blood of Christ covers their wrongs.

18. And let me tell ya this, there aint no other name or way for salvation for the kids of men, cept through the name of Christ, the Lord Almighty.

19. Cause listen here, He judges, and His judgements fair; and babies dont perish when they pass away young; but folks bring trouble to their own souls if they dont humble themselves and be like little children, believin that salvations been, is, and will be through the blood of Christ, the Lord Almighty.

20. The natural mans been in a fight with God ever since Adam fell, and he will be forever unless he lets the Holy Spirit draw him in, puts off that natural man, and becomes a saint through the atonement of Christ, bein like a child, gentle, meek, humble, patient, full of love, and ready to accept whatever the Lord sees fit to give him, like a kid listens to their father.

21. And Im tellin ya, therell come a time when everyonell know about a Savior across every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

22. And when that time rolls round, nobodys gonna stand blameless before God, cept little children; only through turnin their lives around and faith in the name of the Lord God Almighty.

23. And even right now, when youve told your people what the Lord told ya, they still aint blameless in Gods eyes, cept as far as the words Ive shared with ya.

24. Now, Ive gone and said what the Lord told me to say.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

25. And the Lord says this: Theyll be like a bright sign against this people on judgement day; and theyll get judged, every man by what hes done, whether its good or bad.

26. And if theyve done wrong, theyll be stuck face-to-face with their guilt and wrongs, whichll make 'em wanna hide away from the Lord in a state of misery and endless torment, where they cant ever come back; so theyve brought damnation on their own souls.

27. So theyve drunk deep from the cup of the wrath of God, which justice cant turn away from no more than it could say Adam didnt fall for munchin on that forbidden fruit; so mercy cant claim em no more, ever.

28. And their torments gonna be like a burning lake of fire and brimstone, with flames that cant be put out, and smoke thatll rise up forever and ever. Thats what the Lord commanded me. Amen.

### **Mosiah Chapter 4**

1. King Benjamin keeps on talkinSalvations all bout that Atonement, yallYall gotta believe in God to be savedStick to bein faithful and keepin' yourself free from sinShare what ya got with the needyDo everything with a bit of sense and order.

2. And sure enough, after King Benjamin finished up what the angel done told him, he looked around at the folks, and wouldnt ya know, they all fell flat to the ground outta fear of the Lord hittin em like a ton of bricks.

3. And they realized just how low they were, less than dirt, yknow? And they all yelled out together, sayin: Oh mercy! Please pour out that redeeming blood of Jesus so we can be forgiven and cleanse our hearts; cause we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who made the heavens and the earth and everything in it; whos gonna come down to hang out with folks like us.

4. So it happened that after they'd hollered those words, the Spirit of the Lord came over em, and they got filled with joy cause they had their sins wiped clean, feelin that peace in their hearts from the tremendous faith they had in Jesus Christ who was about to come, just like King Benjamin had told em.

5. And then King Benjamin opened his mouth again and started speakin: Hey there, my friends, my family, listen up now, I want yall to really catch what Im fixin to share with ya.

6. Cause if knowin how good God is has hit ya hard and made ya feel how small and worthless you really are

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. Im tellin ya, if yall have come to know just how good God is, his unmatched power, wisdom, his patience, and how he puts up with us folks; and also, that Atonement thats been in place since the world kicked off, so that salvation could be there for anyone who trusts in the Lord and sticks to followin his rules til the very end of this life

8. Im talkin about folks who will be saved through that Atonement thats been ready since the world began for all people since Adam fell, those who is and those whos still comin, til the very end.

9. And this heres the way salvation comes round. Aint no other way to be saved than what Ive been talkin bout; and there aint no conditions for bein saved other than what Ive already told ya.

10. You gotta believe in God; believe hes real, and that he made everythin, up in the heavens and down on earth; believe he holds all wisdom and power, both up in the sky and down here; believe that folks dont really grasp all the stuff the Lord knows.

11. And again, I say ya gotta repent of your sins and leave em behind, humble yourself fore God; ask from the bottom of your heart for him to forgive ya; and now, if you believe all this, you best make sure you act on it.

12. And I reckon Ive said it before, as yall come to know the glory of God, or if yave tasted of his goodness and felt his love, and received that clean slate for your sins that brings such a heap of joy into your souls, Id like for ya to always remember just how great God is, how small you are, and his kindness and patience towards yall who aint worthy, keepin' your heads bowed in real humility, callin on the Lord every day, and standin firm in the faith of whats to come, like the angel told.

13. And let me tell ya, if ya do all this, youll always be filled with joy, and the love of God will overflow in ya, and youll keep that clean slate for your sins; and youll grow in knowin just how glorious he is, or in knowin whats true and right.

14. And you wont be thinkin bout hurtin each other, but livin peacefully and giving each person whats fair and due.

15. You wont let your kids go hungry or runnin' round without clothes; you wont let em break Gods laws and fight like cats and dogs, servin that devil, whos all about sin, and whos been called out by our forefathers as

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the enemy to all that's good.

16. But you'll teach 'em to walk the path of truth and sense; you'll teach 'em to love each other and lend a hand when needed.

17. And you'll also help out those folks who need a hand; you'll share your stuff with folks in need; and you won't let a beggar come askin you for help in vain, sendin them off to suffer.

18. Maybe you'll think: Well, that feller brought this on himself; so I aint gonna share my grub or my stuff so he don't go hungry, cause hes gotta face the music for his mess

19. But I tell ya, if you act like that, you're gonna have a lot to feel sorry for; and unless you change your heart bout what you did, you'll be lost forever, and won't have a place in God's kingdom.

20. Cause let's face it, aint we all just beggars? Don't we all rely on the same good Lord for all our needs, food, clothes, gold, silver, and every bit of riches we've got?

21. And right now, you've been callin out his name, askin for a clean slate for your sins. Has he let you ask for nothin? Nope; he poured out his Spirit on ya, filled your hearts with joy, and left your mouths hangin shut cause you were so blasted happy.

22. Now, if God, the one who made ya, who you depend on for your lives and everything you've got, gives ya whatever you ask that's right, with faith that you're gonna receive it, well then, how should ya go bout sharing what you have with each other?

23. And if you judge the guy whos out there askin ya for help, puttin up his plea so he don't perish, and you're throwin him under the bus, how much more just will be your own judgement for holdin back your stuff, which don't rightly belong to you but belongs to God, the one your life belongs to too; and yet you don't even ask or repent for what you've done.

24. Im tellin ya, woe to that man, cause what he has is gonna go down with him; and Im sayin all this to those who're sittin on riches in this world.

25. And again, Im talkin to the poor, you folks who aint got much yet scrape by day to day; Im talkin to all you who turn down a beggar cause you aint got nothin; I wish in your hearts you'd think: Im not givin cause I

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

dont have it, but if I did, Id help.

26. If ya say that in your hearts, youll be golden; but if not, youre guilty, cause youre just covetin what you aint got.

27. And now, for the sake of all this Ive been yappin aboutthat is, for holdin on to that clean slate for your sins daily, so you can walk guilt-free before GodI wish yall would share your stuff with the poor, every single man givin according to what hes got, like feedin those hungry, clothin those without, visitin the sick, and helpin em out both spiritually and physically, according to what they need.

28. And make sure all this gets done with some sense and order; cause it aint right for a feller to run faster than he can handle. And again, its wise to put in the hard work so you can claim that prize; so everything needs to be done in the right way.

29. And dont forget that whoever borrows from their neighbor better give back what they borrowed, just like they agreed, or else theyll be sittin in sin; and you might even lead your neighbor into sin too.

30. And in the end, I cant spill all the ways you can mess up; theres so many ways itd take me forever to list em out.

31. But this much I know to be true, if you aint watchin yourself, your thoughts, your words, your actions, and stickin to Gods commandments, and keepin the faith in what youve heard bout Jesus comin, even til your last breath, youre gonna be lost. And now, hey you, remember this and dont go perishing.

## **Mosiah Chapter 5**

1. Well, let me tell ya how it went down when King Benjamin got to preachin' to his folks; he sent folks 'round to ask if they really believed all them words he just laid on 'em.

2. And all of 'em hollered back in unison, sayin: Heck yeah, we believe every word ya said; and we know it's all true cause the Spirit of the good Lord has done a mighty fine work in our hearts, makin' us want to do right instead of wrong all the time.

3. And we reckon that, thanks to God's endless goodness, and the way His Spirit's been revealin things to us, we sure got a mighty good idea of what's comin next; and if it were right, we could tell yer fortunes about it

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

all.

4. Its our faith in what our king has preached thats brought us this joy, and oh boy, do we feel happy as can be.

5. And were ready to make a promise to our God to do what He wants, bein real obedient to His commandments for as long as we draw breath, so we dont end up tortured forever like that angel warned, and avoid takin a sip from the cup of His wrath.

6. Now, these here are the words King Benjamin was hopin to hear from yall; so he said: You done spoke just what I was lookin for; the promise yall made is a good and right one.

7. Now, because of that promise, yall gonna be called the kids of Christ, His sons and His daughters; see here, today Hes spiritually made you His own, cause you say your hearts got flipped upside-down through faith in His name; so youre born of Him and belong to Him.

8. And under this name, youre set free, and ain't no other name out there that can set ya free. Ain't no other way to salvation, so I reckon its best if yall take on the name of Christ, all yall whove made that promise to God, bein good 'til the end of your days.

9. And I tell ya what, whoever does that is gonna be found sittin on the right side of God, cause Hell sure know that name you go by; youll be called by the name of Christ.

10. Now its a fact, if someone dont take on the name of Christ, they gotta be called somethin else; so theyll find themselves sittin on the left side of God.

11. And I really want yall to remember that this is the name I said Id give ya that shouldnt never be erased, unless yall mess up; so keep an eye on yourselves and dont go screwin up, or that name might just get wiped outta your hearts.

12. Im tellin you now, you better hold onto that name in your hearts so you aint on the left side of God, but so you can hear and know the voice thats gonna call ya, and also the name Hell call ya by.

13. Cause hows a fella supposed to know the master if he ain't never served him, and hes just a stranger to him, far from whats in his heart?

14. And Ill ask you this: would a man go and take his neighbors mule and keep it for himself? I tell ya, no

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

sirree; he wont even let it graze with his herd, but hell shoo it off and send it packin. I'm tellin ya, thats how itll be with yall if ya cant remember the name youre called by.

15. So Im askin you folks to be steadfast and unmovable, always doin good deeds, so that Christ, the Lord God Almighty, can seal ya as His own, helpin to bring ya to heaven, where everlasting salvation and eternal life await ya, through the wisdom, power, justice, and mercy of Him who made everything, in heaven and on earth, whos God over all. Amen.

### **Mosiah Chapter 6**

1. Well now, King Benjamin figured it was high time, after he finished yap-yappin' to the folks, to write down the names of all them who'd made a promise with God to follow His rules.

2. Yup, there wasn't a single soul in the crowd, 'cept for them little tykes, who hadn't joined that there covenant and taken on the good ol' name of Christ.

3. And then, when King Benjamin wrapped up all them business matters, he went ahead and set his son Mosiah up as the new boss man and king, givin' him all the lowdown about runnin' the kingdom. Plus, he brought on some priests to teach the folks so they could hear and remember God's commandments, along with the promises they made. After that, he told the crowd to disperse, and they all went on back home to their families.

4. So, Mosiah stepped in as king right after his daddy. He started reignin' when he hit thirty years old, which meant it had been around four hundred and seventy-six years since Lehi split from Jerusalem.

5. King Benjamin stuck around for three more years, then he kicked the bucket.

6. Then it came to pass that King Mosiah followed the good Lord's ways, kept an eye on His laws, and did his best to follow all the commandments.

7. Mosiah got his folks workin' the land, and he rolled up his sleeves to help out too, so he wouldn't be a burden on 'em. He wanted to do like his daddy did, you see. And for three whole years, there wasn't a single scrap or fuss among his people.

### **Mosiah Chapter 7**



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well now, it turns out that after King Mosiah had a nice stretch of peace for three whole years, he got mighty curious 'bout what happened to the folks that went up to live in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of it; 'cause his people hadnt heard a peep from em since they skedaddled from Zarahemla, and they were pestering him somethin fierce.
2. So, King Mosiah decided to let sixteen strong fellas go check in on their kinfolk up in Lehi-Nephi, to see whats been goin on.
3. Now, the next day, they hit the road, and taggin along was one big ol Ammon, a strong and hearty soul, and a grandchild of Zarahemla; and he was leadin the pack.
4. Well, they were a bit lost on how exactly to travel through that wilderness to get to Lehi-Nephi; consequently, they wandered about for many days forty days to be precise.
5. After wanderin' forty days, they spotted themselves a hill just north of Shilom, and thats where they decided to set up camp.
6. Ammon took three of his brothers, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they headed down into the land of Nephi.
7. Wouldnt ya know it, they ran smack dab into the king of the folks in Nephi and Shilom; they were just surrounded by the kings guards, got grabbed up, tied up, and tossed in jail.
8. After bein in the slammer for two whole days, they got called back in front of the king, their ropes were cut, and there they stood, ready to answer whatever questions he had.
9. He said to em: Look here, Im Limhi, son of Noah, who was son of Zeniff, who made his way outta Zarahemla to take this land, the land of our folks, and yall made me king cause the people said so.
10. Now, Im wonderin why in tarnation yall thought it was a good idea to waltz up close to the city walls while I was outside with my guards?
11. Well now, I let yall live so I could ask ya a few questions, 'cause if I hadnt, Ida had my guards do away with ya. So, speak up.
12. And when Ammon figured it was his turn to talk, he stepped up and bowed to the king; then standin tall

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

again, he said: O king, Im just so thankful to God that Im still breathin and gettin to chat with ya; I'm gonna do my best to speak right out.

13. 'Cause Im pretty sure that if yall had known me, you wouldnt have let me get all tied up like this. Im Ammon, a descendent of Zarahemla, and I came up here to check on our kinfolk that Zeniff brought out from that land.

14. So after Limhi heard what Ammon had to say, he was happier than a lark, and said: Well now, Im sure my folks from Zarahemla are still kickin. Im gonna celebrate, and tomorrow Ill make sure my people are celebratin too.

15. Cause were stuck in a mess with those Lamanites, and the taxes theyre layin on us are rougher than a cob. Our brothers are gonna rescue us from all this bondage, or well just be slaves; but we reckon bein slaves to the Nephites is better than givin half to the king of the Lamanites.

16. And so, King Limhi told his guards to quit cuffin Ammon and his brothers, and sent 'em to that hill north of Shilom to fetch their brothers to bring em into the city, so they could eat, drink, and rest after all their hard travels; cause theyve been through a whole heap, suffered hunger, thirst, and pure exhaustion.

17. So the next day, King Limhi sent a shout-out to all his people to come together at the temple to hear what he had to say.

18. And when they all gathered up, he told 'em: O my people, lift your heads and take heart; for the time's near or not far off when we aint gonna be under our enemies no more, despite all our struggles that didnt seem to help; yet I hold onto hope that we still got some fight left in us.

19. So lift your heads high and rejoice, put your trust in God, the one who was the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; the same God who brought the children of Israel outta Egypt, made em walk through the Red Sea on dry land, and fed em with manna so they wouldnt starve in that wilderness; He done a whole mess of things for em.

20. And lets not forget, that same God brought our folks outta Jerusalem, and kept em safe and sound til now; but its cause of our own sins that weve ended up in this mess.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. Yall can witness this day, that Zeniff, who got crowned king over these people, he was just too eager to claim the land of his forefathers, and got tricked by the crafty king Laman, who bargained a deal with him and ended up takin a piece of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and Shilom; and the land all around

22. And all that was just to make us slaves or bound up. And here we are, givin tribute to the king of the Lamanites, forked over half of our corn, barley, and any grain we got, and even half of what our herds and flocks produce; that kings takin half of everything we got or earnin.

23. Aint that a kick in the pants? And aint our troubles just enormous? Just look at how much reason we got to weep.

24. Shoot, I reckon Im tellin ya, we got plenty of reason to mourn; cause think about how many of our brothers have been cut down, and their bloods been spilled for nothin, all cause of sin.

25. If our folks hadnt gone and messed up, the Lord wouldnt have let such a terrible thing come down on 'em. But they didnt wanna listen to His words; oh no, there was fights breakin out among em, even goin so far as to shed blood right there.

26. And they went and killed a prophet of the Lord; yep, a chosen man of God, who called em out on their wrongdoings and prophesied about all kinds of things, even the coming of Christ.

27. And 'cause he told em that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said He would take on the image of man, just like man was made in the beginning; or to put it another way, he said man was made like God, and that God would come down to earth and take on flesh and blood, and walk among us

28. And because he spoke the truth, they went and did him in; and they done a whole lotta other things that brought down Gods wrath on top of em. So whos surprised theyre in bondage, and sufferin somethin awful?

29. Cause let me tell ya, the Lord's said: I aint gonna help my people when theyre actin up; Im gonna make their paths rocky, so they cant prosper; and their actions will be a real trip-up for em.

30. And once more He says: If my people keep sowin filthiness, theyll be takin' a ride on the whirlwind of troubles; and the results will be pure poison.

31. And again He says: If my folks sow filthiness, theyll be catchin' the east wind thats gonna bring quick

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

destruction.

32. And now, just looky here, the Lords promise is comin' true, and yall are hurtin and sufferin.

33. But if yall turn back to the Lord with all your heart and put your trust in Him, servin' Him with everything you got on your mind, if you do that, Hell, by His own will and delight, bring ya outta bondage.

### **Mosiah Chapter 8**

1. Well, let me tell ya, after King Limhi finished chattin' with his folks, he had a lot to say, but I only wrote down a little bitta what he said in this here book. He filled 'em in on everything goin on with their kin folks over in Zarahemla.

2. Then he told Ammon to stand up in front of the crowd and tell 'em all 'bout what happened to their kin since Zeniff picked up and left the land, all the way up to the time he got here himself.

3. Ammon also went ahead and shared the last words of King Benjamin, breakin 'em down for King Limhis folks so they could figure out what he was talkin about.

4. When he finished yammerin, King Limhi sent the crowd on their way, tellin' em to head back home.

5. Next thing ya know, he had 'em bring the plates that told the story of his people from the time they skedaddled outta Zarahemla, so Ammon could have a look-see.

6. As soon as Ammon finished readin' the record, the king wanted to know if he could make sense of different languages, and Ammon told him, "Nope, I cant do that."

7. The king then said, "Well, I'm mighty troubled bout what my folks are goin' through. I sent forty-three of em off on a trek into the wild, hopin' they'd find Zarahemla so we could plead with our kin to help us get outta this mess."

8. They got lost out there in the wilderness for quite a spell, but they didnt give up. They didn't find Zarahemla, but made it back here after wanderin 'round a bunch of water and discoverin a place piled high with boneshuman and animal alikeand ruins of all kinds, meetin' folks who were as plentiful as the stars.

9. Now, to prove they weren't blowin' smoke, they brought back twenty-four shiny plates full of engravings, all made of pure gold.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. And don't ya know, they also hauled back big ol breastplates made of brass and copper, and they were in pretty good shape too.

11. As for swords, well, their handles were shot, and the blades were rustier than a fence post; nobody 'round here can figure out what the engravin's mean. So I asked, "Can ya translate these?"

12. I asked him again, "You know anyone who can?" 'Cause I really wanna know what these records say; maybe they'll clue us in on what happened to those folks who got wiped out, or maybe even tell us 'bout the folks who did get wiped out; I'm just real curious bout why all that happened.

13. Now Ammon told him, "I know a fella who can translate those recordshe's got this special lookin tool and can handle all old records; its a gift from God. They call 'em interpreters, but only folks who are told to look through em can do it, or they might see somethin they ain't supposed to and get themselves in trouble. The ones who are told to look are called seers."

14. And let me tell ya, the king of the folks in Zarahemla is the one God told to do all this, and hes got that special gift.

15. The king then said that a seers got more clout than a prophet.

16. Ammon replied that a seer is both a revelator and a prophet, and ain't nobody got a greater gift unless he's got the power of God, which ain't too common; but folks can be trusted with great power from God.

17. A seer can know whats been and whats to come, makin all manner of secrets come to light, revealin' stuff that wouldnt be known otherwise.

18. So, God made it so folks could work real miracles if they just had faith; that makes em quite the help to each other.

19. And when Ammon wrapped up his talk, the king was happier than a pig in mud, thankin God and sayin, "No doubt there's a big ol mystery in these plates, and these interpreters were made to help folks figure it all out."

20. Oh, how amazing are the ways of the Lord, and how patient He is with His people; and man, how blind and thick-headed folks can be, 'cause they wont go lookin for wisdom, nor do they want her to take charge of

em!

21. Yep, theyre like a wild herd runnin from the shepherd, scatterin round, gettin driven away, and eaten up by beasts lurking in the woods.

## **Mosiah Chapter 9**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya 'bout the record of Zeniffit's 'bout his folks, from the time they skedaddled outta the land of Zarahemla till they was finally free from them Lamanites' grip.

2. That theres a whole bunch of chapters, up to 22.

3. So Zeniff, he took a crew from Zarahemla, lookin' to stake a claim in Lehi-Nephian' the king of them Lamanites was kind enough to let 'em have itthough there was some serious knockdown drag-out fights tween the Lamanites and Zeniffs folks, 'round 200 to 187 B.C.

4. I, Zeniff, learned all the Nephite lingo, ya know, an I knew the lay of the land in Nephi, that there land our folks first settled on. I was sent out like a little spy amongst them Lamanites so we could figure out how to sneak up on em an take em outbut I tell ya, when I spotted some good folks among em, I just couldnt stand the thought of them bein' wiped out.

5. So I got to arguin' with my brothers out there in the wilds, hopin' our leader would strike a deal with 'em. But he was a hard-headed, blood-hungry fella who ordered I should be taken out, but I escaped all that fuss; the blood ran thick, with fathers gainst fathers and brothers fightin brothers, till we lost a whole heap of folks in them woods. The ones who made it back to Zarahemla had to tell the sad story to the wives and kids.

6. Even then, I was so fired up to claim our old homestead, I gathered up every soul who wanted to come along, an we set off again through the wild to go up to the land; but we hit a rough patch with hunger and hard times cause we was slow to remember the Lord God Almighty.

7. But after wanderin round for what felt like ages, we finally plopped down our tents where our brothers met their end, which was real close to our folks' old land.

8. So there I went again, draggin along four of my fellas into the city, headed for the king, just tryin' to figure out what he was fixin' to do, and if I could bring my folks in there an take the land in peace.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

9. I walked in to see the king, an he made a deal with mesaid we could have Lehi-Nephi and the land o Shilom.

10. He also told his people to clear outta there, and me and my kin went right in to claim it for ourselves.

11. We got busy buildin us some structures and fixin up the city walls, yeah, even those walls over in Lehi-Nephi and Shilom.

12. Then we got to workin the land, plantin' all sorts of seeds: corn, wheat, barley, and an assortment of fruits; and wouldnt ya know it, we started to multiply and do real well.

13. But ole King Laman was crafty, lookin to keep my folks bound up, so he let us take the land for a spell.

14. But lo and behold, after wed been livin' there for twelve years, that King Laman started gettin jittery, worried that my people might get too strong and he couldnt keep em under his thumb no more.

15. Them folks were lazy, full of idols; all they wanted was to take us captive so they could soak up the fruits of our labor an' chow down on our livestock.

16. So, it turned out that King Laman stirred his folks up, lookin' to pick a fight with mine; an' before long, troubles and wars were brewin in our neck of the woods.

17. Well, in the thirteenth year of my reign in Nephi, when my folks was out waterin an feedin their flocks, a big ol' crew of Lamanites come pourin in on us, startin' to whack us down and run off with our animals and crops.

18. Yup, all them who could make a run for it darted towards the city of Nephi, cryin out to me for some protection.

19. So, I got em all armed up with bows, arrows, swords, and all kinds of weapons we could throw together, and me and my crew headed out to face them Lamanites in battle.

20. I tell ya, we went out there strong in the Lord, cryin' out like crazy for Him to save us from our enemies, 'cause we finally woke up to how He saved our ancestors.

21. And wouldn't ya know it, God heard our pleas an' answered our prayers; we went to face them Lamanites, and in just one day and night, we took out three thousand and forty-three of em; we fought em off till we had

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

driven em right outta our land.

22. An me? Well, I rolled up my sleeves and helped bury the fallen. And let me tell ya, it was a real heartbreaktwo hundred seventy-nine of our brothers were lost that day.

### **Mosiah Chapter 10**

1. Well, I'll tell ya, it was time for us to get ourselves together and start fixin' up that kingdom again, and we settled down on the land real nice-like. I went and had folks make all kinds of weapons so we'd be ready whenever them Lamanites decided to come mess with us again.

2. So, I got some good folks posted around the land so those sneaky Lamanites wouldn't catch us off guard and wipe us out; that way, I kept my people and our livestock safe from all them no-good enemies.

3. Then, wouldn't ya know it, we got to enjoy the land of our ancestors for a good long stretchabout twenty-two years or so.

4. I made sure the men were plowin' the fields and growin' all kinds of grains and fruits, bless their hearts.

5. And I got the women busy spinnin', workin' hard, makin' fine linens and all sorts of clothin' to keep us covered up; we were livin' the good life and had ourselves some peaceful times for twenty-two years straight.

6. But then old King Laman kicked the bucket and his boy took over. Now, that young'un started rilin' up his folks, gettin' 'em all worked up against us; so they got ready for war, lookin' to come at us with all they had.

7. But Id sent my scouts all 'round the Shemlon area to see what them Lamanites were up tojust tryin' to keep an eye out so they couldn't surprise us and do us harm.

8. And just like that, they came stormin' up from the north of Shilom, all armed to the teeth with bows, arrows, swords, and even those fancy curved blades. They were so wild, their heads were shaved clean and just about all they had on was a leather belt wrapped 'round their middle.

9. I made sure to tuck away the women and young 'uns in the wilderness. And all the old-timers who could still hold a weapon, along with the younger men able to fight, I had em gather together to face off against those Lamanites; lined 'em up according to their ages.

10. So we marched off to take on the Lamanites, and I, old as I was, didnt sit backI was right there with em.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

We charged into battle leanin' on the strength of the Lord.

11. Now, them Lamanites didnt know nothin' 'bout the Lord or His strength, so they were countin on their own muscle. And I reckon they were strong enough when it came to bein' men.

12. But let me tell ya, they were one wild and ferocious bunch, thirsty for blood, all 'cause they believed the tales passed down from their folkslike how they got booted out of Jerusalem 'cause of their forefathers wrongdoings, and how their brothers did 'em wrong in the desert, not to mention bein' mistreated while crossin' the ocean.

13. And they thought they were wronged in the land where they first settled after the big water splash, all 'cause Nephi was just keepin' the commandments better than them; that boy caught the Lord's favor, and the big guy listened to his prayin and led em on their journey in the wilderness.

14. Well, his brothers were hot under the collar 'cause they didn't get what the Lord was up to, and they were fussin' at him on the boat 'cause their hearts turned to stone against the Lord.

15. Then when they finally hit that promised land, they got mad again sayin' Nephi took control away from 'em, and they wanted him dead.

16. And Ill tell ya, they was furious when he took off into the wilderness like the Lord told him to, all while snatching up them brass platesthey said he was robbin 'em.

17. So them folks have been teachin' their younguns to hate Nephi and his kin, tellin em its okay to murder and plunder, doin' all they can to wipe em out; thats why they keep a fiery hate for the children of Nephi.

18. And you best believe that crafty ol' King Laman used his slick talk and empty promises to pull one over on me, lettin' me bring my people into this land just so they could be wiped out; its been rough on us for many years now.

19. Now here I am, Zeniff, after spillin all this to my people 'bout the Lamanites, I got 'em riled up to fight with everything they had, puttin' their faith in the Lord; and so we squared off with 'em, face-to-face.

20. We managed to push 'em clear outta our land again, and we took 'em down real good, enough that we couldn't even count 'em all.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. Eventually, we made our way back home and my folks got to tending their flocks and workin the fields again.

22. And now, bein' an old-timer, I handed over the kingdom to one of my boys; so Ill leave it at that. May the Lord look after my people. Amen.

### **Mosiah Chapter 11**

1. Well, let me tell ya, King Noahs a real piece of workhes livin it up with his wives and side gals, throwin wild parties and such. Abinadi steps up, sayin the folks are fixin to be taken captive, and now King Noah's lookin' to take him out.

2. So, heres how it went down: Zeniff handed over the kingdom to Noah, his boy, and Noah took over, but he sure didnt follow in his daddys footsteps.

3. Now, lemme tell ya, this fella didnt keep Gods commandments, instead, he just chased after what his heart wanted. Had himself a whole mess of wives and concubines, and led his folks right down the path of sin and all sorts of nasty stuff fore the Lord. Heck, they were gettin into all kinds of trouble and wickedness.

4. Then, he slapped a tax on 'em, takin' one-fifth of everything they hadmoney, silver, copper, brass, iron, and even the good ol livestock and grain.

5. He used all that cash to keep himself and all his womenfolk livin large, along with his priests and their women too; he really turned the whole kingdom upside down.

6. He kicked out all the priests his daddy had appointed, and put in some new ones who were puffed up with pride.

7. Yep, those new priests were just sittin back bein lazy, worshippin idols, and forcin the folks to pay all them taxes King Noah laid down; and the people were workin their tails off just to keep up that mess.

8. And wouldnt ya know it, they started worshippin idols cause the king and his priests were whisperin all them sweet nothings in their ears, makin' em feel good.

9. Now, King Noah went ahead and built himself some fancy buildings that were just huge and fancy; decked 'em out with all kinds of fine wood and glittery things like gold, silver, and all that precious junk.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. He didnt stop there, oh no, he had himself a mighty fine palace built, complete with a throne right in the middle, all made of the best wood and decked out in gold and silver and precious things too.

11. And he made sure his workers were doin all kinds of fancy designs within the temple walls, usin fine wood, copper, and brass.

12. The high priests had their own special seats, high above the rest, adorned with pure gold; he even had a railing put up so they could lean back while they spewed their lies to the folks.

13. Then he built a tall tower real close to the temple; so high that he could just climb up top and look out over Shilom and Shemlon, where the Lamanites were hangin out, and see all around like he was king of the world.

14. King Noah didnt stop there, he made more buildings in Shilom and even put up a giant tower on a hill just north of that land, where the kids of Nephi used to play before they took off; all this with the riches he got from taxin his people.

15. He got himself real attached to them riches, spendin all his time livin it up with his wives and concubines, same as his priests who spent their time with ladies of the night.

16. Then he started plantin vineyards all over the place and built wine presses, makin a whole lotta wine; turned into quite the drinker he did, along with his people.

17. But uh-oh, the Lamanites started comin in small groups, takin out folks in the fields and while they were tendin' their herds.

18. King Noah got all riled up and sent out guards to keep em away, but he didnt send enough, so the Lamanites came in and did some killin, stealin a whole bunch of their livestock too; those Lamanites were puttin the hurt on 'em, thats for sure.

19. King Noah sent his army after em, and they pushed em back this time, so they came back all happy with their spoils.

20. But because of that little victory, they got all puffed up with pride, braggin bout how their fifty could take down thousands of Lamanites; they were boastin and thrivin off the bloodshed, and thats the kinda king and priests they had leadin em.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. Then there was this fella named Abinadi, and he went among em, prophesyin and sayinlisten up, folks, the Lords not pleased, He sees all your wicked ways and if yall dont change your tune, youre gonna find out what His anger looks like.

22. And if yall aint repentin and turnin back to God, well, Im gonna hand you right over to your enemies; youll end up in bondage and sufferin at their hands.

23. But theyre gonna know real quick that Im the Lord, their God, a jealous kinda God, takin care of business with my peoples messes.

24. Yall better turn it around and got back to the Lord, or youre gonna be in bondage, and nobodys comin to save you cept the Almighty.

25. And let me tell ya, when they start cryin' out to me, I aint gonna be quick to hear em; I might just let 'em get themselves beat up by their enemies for a bit.

26. Unless they start repentin in sackcloth and ashes, shoutin out to the Lord, I wont be listenin to their prayers or gettin them out of their struggles; thats what the Lords givin me to say.

27. Now, after Abinadi laid it all out on em, they got real mad and tried to off him; but the Lord pulled him outta that mess.

28. When King Noah heard what Abinadi was sayin, he got mad too; he was all like, Whos this Abinadi think he is to judge me and my folks, or whos the Lord to bring some big ol trouble on my people?

29. Im tellin ya, get that Abinadi over here so I can take care of him, cause hes just stirrin up trouble and causin my people to fight among themselves; cant have that, Im gonna off him.

30. Now, the folks were so blinded by his words that they turned their hearts hard against what Abinadi said, and from that point on, they tried to catch him. King Noah, too, hardened his heart at the Lords word and didnt repent from all his evildoings.

## **Mosiah Chapter 12**

1. Well, after a couple o years, ol' Abinadi showed up among 'em wearin a disguise, and they didnt even recognize him. He started spoutin off about what the Lord told him, sayin: "Abinadi, go tell this hard-hearted

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

crowd what's up, cause they ain't listened to me none; they aint turned from their wicked ways; so Im fixin' to bring my wrath down on 'em, yep, real fierce-like bout their sins and all the nasty stuff they do."

2. Well, bless their hearts, this here generation's in for a world of hurt! The Lord told me: "Raise your hand an prophesy, sayin, 'Listen up, cause this bunch here is gonna end up in bondage cause of their wickedness, get slapped upside the head, driven by men, and killed; the buzzards and dogs, and even the wild critters are gonna feast on their flesh.

3. And let me tell ya, King Noahs lifes gonna be worth less than an ol rag in a hot furnace; hes gonna know Im the Lord.

4. Now, Im bout to lay some heavy stuff on this people, folks; Im talkin famine and disease, and theyre gonna be howlin all day long.

5. Yup, Im gonna strap em down with heavy burdens, and theyll be pushed around like a dumb mule.

6. Oh, and heres the kickerIm sendin hail down on em, and theyll get smacked from the east wind too. Bugs are gonna chew up their crops like they ain't got a chance.

7. And theyll be hit with a serious plagueand all this is comin cause of their wickedness and filth.

8. And if they dont turn their ways round, I swear Ill wipe em off the earth; but theyll leave behind a record, and Ill make sure its kept safe for other nations that take this land; yeah, Ill do that so folks can know just how bad this crowd has been. Abinadi had a lot to say against em.

9. So, sure enough, they got madder than a hornet at him; they tied him up and dragged him before the king, all like: Look here, we got a fella whos been prophesyin bad news bout your people, sayin Gods gonna wipe 'em out.

10. And hes talkin smack bout your life too, sayin its gonna be just like a garment in a furnace of fire.

11. And he also said youre gonna be like a dry stalk in a field, just trampled by animals and walked on, you see.

12. And again, he said youll be like a thistle blossom that gets blown away by the wind when its ripe, and hes actin like the Lord said all this. He says its all comin for ya unless you turn around cause of your sins.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

13. Now, O king, what kinda wickedness have ya done, or what kinda sins have your folks committed, that we gotta get judged by God or this man here?

14. And now, O king, listen here, we ain't done nothin wrong, and you, O king, havent sinned; so this fellas just lying about ya, and hes prophesyin for nothin.

15. Looky here, were strong, we aint gonna go into bondage or get caught by the enemy; and youve done real well in the land, and youll keep on doin good.

16. Heres the man, so were handin him over to you; do what ya think is right.

17. Well, next thing you know, King Noah had ol' Abinadi tossed in prison; and he called for his priests to gather round so he could figure out what to do with him.

18. Then they said to the king: Bring him here so we can grill him; and the king ordered him brought before em.

19. So they started grillin him, hopin to catch him off guard so they could accuse him; but he stood up to em right quick, answered back without flinchin, left em all shocked, cause he handled their questions just fine and really flustered em.

20. Then one of em piped up and asked him: What do them words mean that are written, ones our daddies taught us, sayin:

21. How lovely on the hills are the feet of the one bringin good news, shoutin peace, bringin tidings of joy, bringin salvation, sayin to Zion, Your Gods in charge?

22. Your lookout men are gonna raise their voices; theyll sing together, for theyll see eye to eye when the Lord brings Zion back.

23. Get ready to rejoice; sing out, you rundown spots in Jerusalem; cause the Lords comforted His folks, Hes redeemed Jerusalem.

24. The Lords flexed His holy arm in front of all the nations, and everybody on this earths gonna see our Gods salvation?

25. And Abinadi replied to 'em: Well, are yall the priests, actin like youre teachin this people and thinkin you

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

understand prophesyin, yet ya wanna know from me what all them things mean?

26. I tell ya, shame on you for twistin the Lords ways! If you really got this stuff, you sure ain't taught it; youve gone and muddled the Lords ways.

27. You aint put your hearts into understandin; so ya ain't wise. So whats your teaching for these folks?

28. And they replied: We teach the law of Moses.

29. And again he asked 'em: If youre all about the law of Moses, why ain't ya keepin it? Why yall settlin for money bags? Why yall over here messin with whores and spendin your energy on em, makin this people sin, givin the Lord a reason to send me to prophesy against em, heck, a big ol evil against em?

30. Don't yall know Im tellin the truth? Yeah, you know Im spittin facts; and you oughta be shakin in your boots fore God.

31. And its gonna happen that youll get hit for your sins, cause you said you teach the law of Moses. And what you know bout the law of Moses? Does salvation come from it? What do ya say?

32. And they answered, sayin that salvation did indeed come by the law of Moses.

33. But now Abinadi told em: I know if yall keep Gods commandments, youll be saved; yeah, if ya keep the commandments the Lord gave to Moses on Mount Sinai, sayin:

34. Im the Lord your God, who brought ya outta Egypt, outta that place of bondage.

35. You ain't gonna have no other gods before me.

36. Don't you be makin' any graven images, or likenesses of anythin' up in the heavens, or on the earth beneath.

37. Now Abinadi asked em, Yall done all this? I say to ya, Nope, you sure havent. And have ya taught this people to do all these things? I tell ya, Nope, you havent.

## **Mosiah Chapter 13**

1. Well now, when the king heard what Abinadi had to say, he called his priests and said, "Yall get this fella outta here and take care of him, 'cause we ain't got no business with a madman like him."

2. So them priests stepped on up, tryin to grab hold of him, but he stood his ground and said to em:

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

3. Dont you dare touch me, 'cause Gods gonna bring down some wrath on you if you do. I ain't shared nothin' cept what the Lord told me to say, and I aint told you the things you asked about; so God ain't gonna let you take me out right now.
4. I gotta do what the Lord said, and cause Ive told ya the truth, yall are fit to be mad at me. And once more, cause Ive shared the words of God, you've gone and judged me as if Im off my rocker.
5. Well, after Abinadi finished up with those words, the folks from king Noah were too scared to lay a finger on him, 'cause the Spirit of the Lord was all over him, and his face was glowin bright like Moses did while chattin with the Lord up on that mountain.
6. And he spoke with some serious power and authority from God; and he kept on talkin, sayin:
7. Yall see you ain't got what it takes to take me down, so Im gonna wrap up what I gotta say. Yup, I can tell my words are hittin' ya right in the feels 'cause Im just tellin ya straight about your wrongdoings.
8. Sure enough, my words are fillin ya up with wonder and anger.
9. But Im gonna finish what I started; after that, it dont matter where I end up, as long as Im saved.
10. But Ill tell you this much, how yall treat me from here on outs gonna be a sign of the things yet to come.
11. And now Im gonna read ya the rest of Gods commandments, cause I can see they ain't in your hearts; seems like yall been studyin and teachin' wickedness most of your lives.
12. So remember, I told ya, 'Thou shalt not make any graven images or likenesses of anything up in heaven, down here on earth, or under the water.
13. And again, 'Thou shalt not bow down to em nor serve em; cause I, the Lord your God, am a jealous God, visitin the iniquities of the fathers upon the kids, right down to the third and fourth generations of folks who hate me;
14. And I show mercy to thousands who love me and keep my commandments.
15. You aint supposed to take the Lords name in vain, 'cause He wont let that slide.
16. Remember the sabbath day and keep it holy.
17. You got six days to put your nose to the grindstone and do your work;



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. But on the seventh day, the sabbath for the Lord your God, you best not do a lick of work neither you, nor your kids, nor your servants, nor your critters, nor the strangers hangin around your place;

19. For in six days the Lord made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and everything in em; thats why the Lord blessed the sabbath and made it holy.

20. Show some respect for your momma and daddy, so you can live long in the land the Lord your Gods givin ya.

21. Dont go killin nobody.

22. Dont commit adultery. And for heavens sake, dont steal.

23. You aint supposed to bear false witness against your neighbor.

24. Dont be coveting your neighbors house, or his wife, or any of his servants or animals, or anything thats his.

25. And it came to pass that once Abinadi wrapped up these sayings, he asked em: Have yall taught this people to do all these things and keep these commandments?

26. I tell ya, Nope, you ain't; cause if you had, the Lord wouldnt have needed me to come say this kinda bad news about yall.

27. Now youre claimin that salvation comes from the law of Moses. But Im tellin ya its good for now, but therell come a time when keepin that law aint necessary no more.

28. Also, Im tellin ya that salvation dont come just from the law alone; if it werent for the atonement God Himselfs gonna make for His peoples sins, theyd be doomed, law or no law.

29. Now I reckon it was right and proper for there to be a law for the children of Israel, even a strict one; they were a stubborn bunch, quick to do wrong but slow to remember the Lord their God;

30. Thats why there was a law for em, you betchaa law of doin and ordinances, a law they were supposed to follow every single day to help 'em remember God and what they owed Him.

31. But listen here, Im sayin all this was just a foreshadowing of things to come.

32. And now, did they really get the law? I reckon not, 'cause their hearts were hard; they couldnt see that no

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

one could be saved cept through Gods redemption.

33. Sure enough, didnt Moses prophesy to em bout the Messiah comin, and how God would redeem His folks?

Yeah, and all the prophets since the world began they ain't spoken less or more about this stuff?

34. Didnt they say that God Himself would come down among us humans, take on the form of a man, and do mighty deeds across the earth?

35. Yeah, and didnt they say Hed also make the resurrection happen and that He, Himself, would be oppressed and afflicted?

### **Mosiah Chapter 14**

1. Well now, Isaiahs sayin' somethin real deep herebout that Messiah and all the hard times Hes gonna go through. Ain't no doubt, Hes gonna put Himself up as a sacrifice for sin and pray for em who done wrong ya might wanna check out Isaiah 53, if yare curious. This heres round 148 B.C. yall.

2. Yep, I reckon Isaiahs wonderin: Whos believed what we been sayin, huh? And whos gonna see the might of the Lord laid out for em?

3. Hes gonna sprout up like a lil plant, fresh outta dry dirt; aint nothin too fancy about Him, no good looks to speak of; and when we lay eyes on Him, we aint gonna see nothin' to make us wanna follow Him.

4. Folks just cant stand Him, turnin' their backs; Hes a fella filled with sorrow and knows grief real well; we just sorta pulled away from Him, not givin' Him the credit He deserves.

5. Hes bearin our sadness and hauln our heartaches; still, we thought He was just givin what He got to the Almighty, dealin with all kinds of troubles.

6. But He took the beatin for what weve done wrong, got bruised for our mess-ups; the pain we shoulda felt was on Him, and with them stripes, were brought back together.

7. We all like sheep wanderin off, doin our own thing; and the Lord laid all our mess-up on Him.

8. Hes been put through the wringer, but He didnt even complain; like a lamb headin to the butcher, He was quiet as a mouse, keepin His mouth shut.

9. They snatched Him up from jail and judgment; whos gonna tell His family story? 'Cause He was cut off

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

from all livin folks, stricken for what my people did wrong.

10. He ended up buried with the bad folks, and rich folks saw his grave too; but He didnt do nothin' wrong, and there was no trickery in His words.

11. Yet the Lord didnt mind givin' Him a hard time; made Him feel down when Hes offerin His soul for sin; Hell get to see His children, live long, and the Lords good pleasures gonna flourish in His hands.

12. Hell see the hard work of His soul and be satisfied; through His knowin, my righteous servants gonna set many straight; Hes gonna shoulder their wrongdoings.

13. So Im fixin to give Him His share with the mighty, and Hell split the rewards with the strong; cause He laid His life down; He was numbered with the wrongdoers, takin on the sins of so many, and prayin for the ones who strayed.

### **Mosiah Chapter 15**

1. Well now, Abinadis a-sayin to 'em: I reckon yall oughta understand that God himself is fixin to come down amongst folks and redeem his people.

2. And since Hes dweller in the flesh, He gonna be called the Son of God, and Hes puttin' that flesh under the Fathers will, bein the Father and the Son all at once

3. The Father 'cause he was brought into this world by the power of God; and the Son 'cause of that flesh; thus makin Him both Father and Son

4. And theys one God, yep, the very Eternal Father of heaven and earth.

5. So here it is, that flesh bein all subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, bein one God, He faces temptation, but dont give in, instead He lets Himself be laughed at, beaten, kicked out, and shunned by his own folks.

6. And after all that, after performin a heap of mighty miracles 'round them people, Hes gonna be led on, just like Isaiah said, like a sheep that dont say a word in front of them shearers, so He didnt open His mouth.

7. Yep, just so, He gonna be led, crucified, and killed, with the flesh givin in to death, the will of the Son drownin in the Fathers will.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

8. And so God breaks the chains of death, comin out on top of it; grantin the Son the power to step in for folks like us

9. After Hes gone up to heaven, full of mercy; bein' packed with compassion for the likes of us folks; standin between us and justice; breakin deaths grip, takin on our wrongs and our sins, savin us, and meetin justices demands.

10. And now Im a-askin yall, who gonna declare His lineage? Look here, Im tellin ya, that when He lays down His life for our sins, He gonna see His kin. Now, what yall reckon about that? And who gonna be His kin?

11. Im a-tellin ya, that anyone whos listened to the words of the prophets, yeah, all them holy ones talkin' bout the Lord cominIm sayin to ya, all them who listened and believed that the Lord would save His people, and who looked forward to that day for forgivin their sins, thems is His kin, or theyre the heirs of Gods kingdom.

12. Cause these are the ones whose sins He took on; these are the ones for whom He died to save em from their wrongs. Now then, aint they His kin?

13. Yeah, and aint the prophets, every last one who opened their mouth to prophesy, who didnt fall into sin, I mean all them holy prophets from the worlds got goin? Im a-tellin ya, they is His kin.

14. And these folks are the ones who spread peace, who brought good news bout good things, who spread salvation; and told Zion: Your Gods in charge!

15. Oh, how purty upon the mountains were their feet!

16. And again, how purty upon the mountains are the feet of them still spreadin peace!

17. And again, how purty upon them mountains are the feet of them who gonna spread peace from now on and forever more!

18. And looky here, Im sayin to ya, this aint all. Oh, how purty upon the mountains are the feet of him that brings good news, thats the founder of peace, yeah, even the Lord who has saved His folks; yeah, Him who has given salvation to His people;

19. Cause if it werent for the redemption Hes done for His people, which was set up from the very start, Im tellin ya, if it werent for that, all humanity would be done for.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

20. But look yonder, the chains of death gonna be broken, and the Son gonna reign, and He got power over the dead; so, He gonna make sure the resurrection happens.

21. And theres gonna be a resurrection, a first resurrection; yep, even a resurrection of them whove been, and who are, and whos gonna be, right up to the resurrection of Christ for thats what Hes gonna be called.

22. And now, all the prophets and all them who believed their words, or all them who kept Gods commandments, theys gonna rise in the first resurrection; so theys the first resurrection.

23. They gonna be raised to stay with God who saved em; thus they got eternal life through Christ, who broke the chains of death.

24. And these are them who gonna take part in that first resurrection; and these are them that passed on before Christ showed up, in their ignorance, not havin salvation told to 'em. And so the Lord brings about the restorin of these folks; and they gonna have a stake in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, bein saved by the Lord.

25. And little children too got eternal life.

26. But look here, and tremble, and shake in your boots before God, cause yall oughta tremble; for the Lord dont redeem none who rebel against Him and die in their sins; yeah, even all those thats perished in their sins since the world began, that went and rebelled against God, that knew Gods commandments, and just wouldnt keep em; these are the ones that dont get a piece in the first resurrection.

27. So yall reckon you oughtnt to tremble? Cause salvation aint comin to no such; for the Lord has redeemed none such; yeah, neither can the Lord redeem them; for He cant deny Himself; for He cant deny justice when its got its claim.

28. And now Im tellin ya, the time gonna come when the salvation of the Lord gonna be shouted out to every nation, kin, tongue, and people.

29. Yep, Lord, your watchmen gonna lift their voices; together they gonna sing; for they gonna see eye to eye, when the Lord brings Zion back.

30. Break out in joy, sing together, yall empty places of Jerusalem; for the Lord has comforted His people,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Hes redeemed Jerusalem.

31. The Lord has made bare His holy arm in front of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth gonna see the salvation of our God.

### **Mosiah Chapter 16**

1. God saves folks whove lost their way But for them that just live for the flesh, its like there aint no hope for em Jesus gives us life after this one, weather its eternal bliss or eternal misery. Bout 148 B.C.

2. Well, after Abinadi finished his piece, he raised his hand and said: Theres gonna come a time when everyones gonna see the salvation of the Good Lord; every nation, tribe, tongue, and people gonna be on the same page and confessin that Gods judgments are right.

3. Then all them wicked folks gonna be thrown out, and theyll be howlin, cryin, wailin, and grindin their teeth; and thats cause they wouldnt listen to the Lords call; so God aint gonna save em.

4. Theyre stuck in their wicked ways, and the devils got a grip on em; yeah, that old snake who led our first folks astray, thats what made em fall; thats what turned all humanity into folks who chase after sins, knowin the difference tween right and wrong, givin themselves over to devilish ways.

5. So there we all were, lost; and I tell ya, wed be downright lost forever if God hadnt swooped in and saved His people from their mess.

6. But ya best remember, if a person keeps on livin, doin what their flesh wants, and stays rebellious against God, theyre stuck in their fallen state with the devil holdin all the cards. So theyre like there aint no hope for em, bein an enemy to God; and you betcha the devil is on the same side against Him.

7. And now if Jesus hadnt come to earth, speakin bout whats yet to come like its already happened, there wouldnt be no chance for redemption.

8. And if Jesus hadnt come back to life, or broke the chains of death so the grave couldnt win, and death couldnt sting, there wouldnt be no resurrection.

9. But sure enough, theres a resurrection, so the grave dont win, and the sting of deaths been gobbled up by Christ.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. Hes the light and life for the world; yeah, a light that wont ever go out; and also a life that goes on forever, so theres no more death to worry bout.

11. This here mortal bodys gonna put on immortality, and this here corruptiblell dress up in incorruption, and stand before Gods judgement, bein judged for what they did, good or bad

12. If they did good, theyll get raised up to endless life and joy; and if they did bad, theyll get raised up to endless misery, servin the devil who had em under his thumb, which is pure damnation

13. They followed their own nasty desires; never called on the Lord when mercy was just sittin there waitin for em; cause mercy was reachin out to em, but they just ignored it; they were told to turn from their wicked ways but just wouldnt do it; even though they was told to repent, they turned their back on that too.

14. And now, dont yall think you oughta tremble and get right with your sins, and remember that only through Christ can you be saved?

15. So, if youre teachin the law of Moses, make sure to also tell em its just a shadow of whats to come

16. Tell em that redemptions comin through Jesus, the Lord, whos the one and only Eternal Father. Amen.

## **Mosiah Chapter 17**

1. Well, it happened that after Abinadi wrapped up all his talk, the king got real stubborn and told his priests to go ahead and take him outta there and put him to death.

2. Now there was this one fella named Alma, a kin to Nephi and quite a young whippersnapper, who actually believed what Abinadi had said. He knew all too well the bad stuff Abinadi was callin' out against 'em, so he started beggin' the king to just chill out and let Abinadi leave without all that ruckus.

3. But that king got even more fired up and had Alma tossed outta the pack, sendin' his henchmen after him to do him in.

4. Shoot, Alma hightailed it outta there and found himself a nice hidden spot so they couldn't catch him. He was layin' low for quite a spell, just writin' down everything Abinadi had shared.

5. Then the king had his guards go surround Abinadi and drag him back in; they tied him up and threw him in the slammer.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

6. After a few days, after chatin' with his priests a bit, the king called him back in again.
7. And the king said: "Abinadi, we got ourselves a charge against ya, and it looks like youre a goner."
8. "For youve said that Gods fixin' to come down to hang out with folks, and this here is why youre gonna bite the dust unless you take back everthing youve said that aint nice about me and my crew."
9. Now Abinadi didnt back down, sayin': "I aint takin' back a word! Everything I saids the honest truth, and Ive landed right in your clutches to prove it."
10. "Yeah, Im willin' to take it all the way to the end, and I wont take back my words; theyre gonna stand as proof against ya. And if you go ahead and kill me, youll be spillin' innocent blood, and thatll stand as your witness in the end times too."
11. Now that King Noah was gettin' a little twitchy 'cause he didnt like the idea of what Abinadi was sayin' might come back around on him.
12. But them priests hollered up against him, startin' to accuse him of talkin' smack about the king. So, the king got all riled up and handed him over to be offed.
13. Next thing ya know, they grabbed him, tied him up, and started beatin' on him with sticks and such, takin' it all the way to a fatal end.
14. And when them flames began to lick at him, he hollered at 'em, sayin':
15. "Look here, just like yall are doin to me, your kin are gonna suffer plenty tooendure the same fiery death cause they trust in the Lord their God."
16. "And believe me, youll be stricken down with all sorts of ailments cause of your wicked ways."
17. "Yep, youll be gettin hit from all directions and scattered around just like a wild herd runnin' from mean beasts."
18. "And on that day, youll be hunted down by your enemies and feel the flames just like I do."
19. So, Gods got a way of settlin' the score with folks who mess with His own. O God, take my soul.
20. And when Abinadi got to the end of that speech, he fell, meetin' his fiery fate; yep, he was done in cause he wouldnt back down from Gods commandments, sealing the truth of his words with his life.



## **Mosiah Chapter 18**

1. Now, it happened that Alma, who done run away from them folks servin King Noah, got real sorry 'bout his sins and all that mess, an he started sneakin' 'round among the folks, teachin 'em what Abinadi had to say
2. Yup, 'bout what was comin' down the pike, and also about folks comin' back to life, and how the good Lord would save the people, all that bein done through the might, the sufferin, and the death of Christ, plus his risin' up and headin on up to heaven.
3. And all them who wanted to listen, well, he taught 'em. He kept it on the down-low so the king wouldnt catch wind, and quite a few folks believed what he was sayin'.
4. Then it came to pass that all them who believed him made their way to a spot called Mormon, named after the king, sittin' right on the edge of this here land that had some wild critters lurkin' 'round now and then.
5. Now, over in Mormon, there was this nice clean water spring, and Alma made himself a home there, hidin' out in a patch of little trees come daytime to dodge the kings nosy eyes.
6. And it came to pass that all them who believed him made their way over there to soak up his words.
7. And after a spell, there was a whole mess of folks gathered up at the spot known as Mormon, just itchin to hear Alma speak. Yup, everyone who had faith in his message came together to listen. And he taught 'em, preachin bout repentance, redemption, and havin faith in the Lord.
8. And it came to pass that he said to em: Now lookie here, heres the waters o' Mormon (thats what folks is callin' it), and now, if yall wanna step into the fold of God, be counted as his people, and be willin' to help each other out, to lighten them burdens;
9. Yup, and be ready to mourn with them thats mournin; and comfortin them that need some comfort, and standin' as witnesses for God no matter where you're at, even 'til death, so you can be redeemed by God, and be part of that first resurrection, and have yourself eternal life
10. Now Im tellin ya, if this heres what your hearts hankerin for, whats holdin' ya back from bein' baptized in the name of the Lord, kinda like givin him a shout-out that youve made a deal with him, sayin you'll serve him and follow his commandments, so he can bless ya with his Spirit real good-like?

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

11. And when the folks heard this, they clapped their hands and hollered: This is what we been wantin'!
12. Well, it came to pass that Alma took Helam, who was one of the first ones, and went and stood in the water, hollerin: O Lord, pour out your Spirit on your servant, so he can do this work right and proper.
13. And when he said them words, the Spirit of the Lord come upon him, and he said: Helam, I dunk you, takin this authority from Almighty God, as proof that youre cotin' to this covenant to serve him til your mortal bodys done for; and may the Spirit of the Lord flow in your life, and may he bless you with eternal life through Christ, whos been ready since the world got started.
14. Once Alma finished sayin' that, both him and Helam went down into the water; then they popped back up, grinnin like a couple of possums, feelin all filled with the Spirit.
15. And again, Alma took another fella, and went for a second round in the water, and baptized him like the first time, only he didnt go under again.
16. And thats how he did it, baptizin' everyone who come to the waters of Mormon; and they numbered about two hundred and four folks; sure did get baptized in them waters, and they left feelin' just blessed by God.
17. And they was called the church of God, or the church of Christ, right from then on. And everybody who got baptized with Gods power and authority was added to that church.
18. Then Alma, with Gods green light, ordained some priests; one for every fifty folks did he set up to preach to 'em and teach 'em about the kingdom of God.
19. And he told em they shouldnt teach nothin 'cept what hed taught, and what the holy prophets had spoken.
20. Yup, he told em they ought to preach nothin but repentance and faith in the good Lord, who redeemed his people.
21. And he told em to keep the peace, no squabblin' with one another, but to look ahead with one eye, havin one faith and one baptism, keepin' their hearts knitted tight in unity and love for one another.
22. And thats how he sent em off preachin. And thats how they became the children of God.
23. He also told 'em to keep the Sabbath day special and holy, and every single day they oughta give thanks to the Lord their God.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

24. And he told 'em them priests he ordained should work with their own hands to take care of themselves.
25. And there was one day each week set aside for them to gather up, teachin' the people, and worshipin' the Lord their God, and as much as they could, comin together.
26. Now the priests werent to be countin on the folks to support 'em; nope, they were sposed to earn their keep with hard work, so they could get strong in the Spirit, knowin God well enough to teach with power and authority from him.
27. And again, Alma commanded the folks of the church to share what they had, each one givin according to their means; if a fella had a heap, he ought to give a heap; and if one had just a little, well, littles all he had to give; and to those who had nothin, they should step up and give.
28. And thats how they should be givin of their stuff, outta their own free will and good-heartedness towards God, and helpin them priests that were needin it, sure, and any poor, naked soul in sight.
29. And he said this to em, bein told by God; and they walked the solid road before God, helpin each other both for their everyday needs and their spiritual desires.
30. And it came to pass that all this was happenin in Mormon, right there by the waters of Mormon, in the woods nearby; oh, how pretty it all was to them who found out about their Redeemer there; and they surely felt blessed, for they would sing praises to him forever.
31. And all these things were done in the outskirts of the land so the king wouldnt get wind o it.
32. But wouldnt ya know it, the king caught wind of a stirrin' among the folks, so he sent his men to keep an eye on 'em. So on the day they was all gathered to hear the good word of the Lord, they was found out by the king.
33. And then the king said Alma was causin all sorts of trouble and stirrin up rebellion against him; so he sent his army to go put a stop to em.
34. And it came to pass that Alma and the Lord's people got warned bout the kings army comin'; so they packed up their tents and families and hightailed it into the wilderness.
35. And they numbered around four hundred and fifty souls.

## **Mosiah Chapter 19**

1. Well, it happened that the king's army came back, but they couldn't find no sign of the good folks.
2. Now, lemme tell ya, the king's forces were lookin pretty weak, and folks started pickin sides around there.
3. The smaller group started raisin all kinds of fuss against the king, and before long, there was a big ol fight brewin among em.
4. There was this fella named Gideon, strong as a bull and none too happy with the king, and he pulled out his sword, swearin in his rage he was gonna take that king down.
5. So he and the king got into it, and when the king saw he was about to get the short end of the stick, he high-tailed it and climbed up on a tower by the temple.
6. Gideon was right on his heels thinkin about taking the king out, but the king looked around and saw them Lamanites comin up on em, right on the borders.
7. In a real whimperin' moment, the king shouted out, beggin Gideon to take it easy on him, sayin' the Lamanites were fixin' to wipe em out, and he was worried 'bout his people.
8. But truth be told, the king was more worried bout his own skin than his folks; still, Gideon let him live.
9. Then the king ordered everyone to skedaddle before the Lamanites showed up, and he took off leadin the charge with all the women and younguns followin him into the wilderness.
10. Sure enough, the Lamanites were hot on their trail, caught up with em, and started takin' em out.
11. Next thing you know, the king was tellin all the fellas to leave their wives and kids and run from the Lamanites.
12. But there were plenty who stood their ground, sayin theyd rather stick around and face whatever came than abandon their loved ones, while others took off, leavin' their families behind.
13. Those that stayed put made their pretty daughters step up and plead with the Lamanites to spare em.
14. And lo and behold, the Lamanites felt a little sorry for em, all mesmerized by the beauty of them gals.
15. So the Lamanites decided to let em live and took em captive, draggin them back to Nephi, makin em agree to hand over the king and half of all their stuff, includin gold, silver, and all the good things they had, so they

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

would be payin tribute to the Lamanite king every year.

16. Well, one of the kings boys, Limhi was his name, got caught up with the rest of those prisoners.

17. Now, Limhi didnt want his daddy gettin himself in a heap of trouble; still, he wasnt blind to his fathers wicked ways, bein' a decent man himself.

18. So Gideon sent some men off into the wilderness quietly to look for the king and his crew, and they ran into folks out there, except for the king and his priests.

19. Those fellas had promised in their heart that they'd head back to Nephi, and if their wives and kids were dead, theyd get some payback and go down fightin together.

20. But the king told 'em not to go back, makin em real mad, and they made sure he paid, even to the point of lettin' him meet his end with fire.

21. And they were fixin' to take out the priests too, but them fellas ran off before they could get caught.

22. Then they were on their way back to Nephi and bumped right into Gideons men. Those fellows filled em in on the whole mess with their wives and kids, and how the Lamanites had allowed them to hold onto their land if they paid em half of all they had.

23. So, the people let Gideon's men know theyd taken care of the king, and his priests took off deeper into the wilderness to escape.

24. Once they wrapped up their little ceremony, they went back to Nephi all happy, 'cause their families were safe, and they filled Gideon in on what they did to the king.

25. And then the Lamanite king made em a promise that his folks wouldnt touch em.

26. And Limhi, bein the kings son, got the crown handed to him by the people and promised the Lamanite king his folks would pay tribute, half of all they had.

27. So, Limhi set to work makin the kingdom solid and bringin' some peace to his people.

28. And the Lamanite king put guards all over the land so Limhis folks wouldnt take off into the wilderness, supportin' his guards from the tribute that came from them Nephites.

29. For two whole years, King Limhi had himself some good, peaceful times in his kingdom, with the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Lamanites leaving em alone and not causin any trouble.

### **Mosiah Chapter 20**

1. Well, there sure was this spot in Shemlon where them Lamanite gals would come together to sing, dance, and just have a good ol' time.
2. One day, a small bunch of 'em got together, singin and dancin their hearts out.
3. Now them priests of King Noah, feelin all ashamed to go back to Nephi city, yknow, they was scared folks would wanna take their heads off, so they didnt dare go back to their wives and younguns.
4. So they hung around in the wilds and stumbled upon them Lamanite gals, just a-watchin' 'em.
5. And when there was only a few of 'em dancin', they snuck outta their hidey holes and grabbed em, takin 'em off into the wilds; reckon they took em twenty-four Lamanite daughters into the thicket.
6. Well, lo and behold, when the Lamanites noticed their daughters gone, they was furious with Limhis folks, thinkin them was the culprits.
7. So, they sent their armies a-marchin; even the king himself was leadin em on up to Nephi land, lookin to wipe out Limhis people.
8. Now Limhi, he spotted them from his tower, and saw all them war preps; so he gathered up his folks and set up a trap in the fields and woods.
9. And when the Lamanites rolled up, the people of Limhi jumped right outta their hidin spots and started takin em down.
10. The battle got mighty fierce, cause they fought like lions tryin to snatch up their dinner.
11. Next thing you know, the folks of Limhi was pushin' the Lamanites back; now they wasnt nearly as many, but they fought for their lives, their wives, and their kids, just like dragons in a fury.
12. They even stumbled on the Lamanite king amongst all the dead, but he wasnt dead yetgot himself a nasty wound and was just layin there since his folks took off real quick.
13. So they picked him up, tended to his wounds, and brought him to Limhi, sayin: Look here, we got the king of the Lamanites, hes hurt and got left behind, now lets put him outta his misery.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. But Limhi told em, Yall aint gonna kill him, just bring him over here so I can have a look. So they brought him forth, and Limhi asked, What in tarnation makes you wanna come to war against my folks? I kept my end of the deal with ya; why dont yall honor yours?

15. Then the king said, I broke the deal 'cause your folks took my daughters; I was mad as a hornet and made my people come to fight yall.

16. Now, Limhi didnt know nothin bout all this; so he said, Im gonna look into this matter, and whoever done its gonna pay, so lets search my people.

17. Well, Gideon, the kings captain, heard all this and stepped up, Hold on, dont be huntin down my folks; dont blame em for this mess.

18. Aint ya remember the priests of your daddy that this people wanted to take out? Theys the ones hiding out in the wilderness. Theyre the ones who stole them Lamanite gals!

19. So, now listen here, tell the king bout all this so he can let his people know to calm down; cause theys already gearin up to come for us, and we aint got many to stand against em.

20. And look, theyre comin with a whole heap of folks; unless the king smooths things over, were all gonna be toast.

21. Aint it the truth that Abinadis words are comin true against usall cause we wouldnt listen to the Lord and turn from our wrongdoings?

22. So now lets make peace with the king, keep our word to him; itd be better to be in chains than lose our lives; so lets stop spillin' all this blood.

23. Limhi laid it all out for the king about his daddy and them priests that took off into the wild, claimin the girls were on em.

24. Next thing ya know, the kings feelin better towards his people; he tells em, Lets go meet up with my folks, no weapons; I swear on my words, my folks aint gonna harm yours.

25. So they tagged along behind the king, headin out without weapons to face up to the Lamanites. Sure enough, they ran into em, and the Lamanite king bowed down before em, pleadin for Limhis people.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

26. And when the Lamanites saw Limhis folks without arms, they felt sorry for em and calmed down, goin back home with their king in peace.

### **Mosiah Chapter 21**

1. Well, it happened that Limhi and his folks made their way back to the city of Nephi, settlin down in the land once more, just enjoyin the peace.

2. Then after a spell, them Lamanites got all riled up again, lookin to stir trouble with them Nephites, and started wanderin into their lands all around.

3. Now they wasnt plannin' to kill em, seein as how their king had sworn to Limhi not to; but they sure felt like givin em a few whacks on the cheek, pushin em around, throwin heavy loads on their backs, just like herdin' cattle.

4. Yep, all that was happenin just so the Lords word could come true.

5. Now, them Nephites were sufferin something fierce, and there werent no way they could get outta that mess, 'cause the Lamanites had them surrounded on all sides.

6. So, it came to pass that the folks started grumblin to the king about their troubles; they were itchin to head into battle. They sure did bother the king somethin awful with their bellyachin, so he let em go about doin what they wanted.

7. They all huddled up again, strapped on their armor, and marched out to confront those Lamanites, hopin to chase 'em off their land.

8. But wouldnt ya know it, the Lamanites thrashed em good, pushin em back and takin down a whole mess of 'em.

9. Now there was a whole lot of wailin and cryin among the people of Limhi, with the widows weepin' for their husbands, and the kids cryin for their daddies, and brothers mournin for their kin.

10. And let me tell ya, there were a heap o widows in that land, and they cried out mightily all day long, cause fear of those Lamanites had hit em hard.

11. So, it turns out that their constant wails got the rest of Limhis folk all hot and bothered against the



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Lamanites; they went back to fightin but ended up gettin shoved back again, sufferin even more losses.

12. Yep, they took to battlin a third time, and it was the same ol story; those not killed made their way back to the city of Nephi.

13. They humbled themselves down to the ground, puttin up with the burdens and takin beatins, just like their enemies wanted.

14. And they really did humble themselves in a big way; they cried out to God like their lives depended on it, yeah, all day long they begged Him to save em from their troubles.

15. But ya know what? The Lord was takin' His sweet time to hear em, cause of all the wrongs theyd done; still, He heard em and started softenin them Lamanites hearts so they eased up on the Nephites a bit; but the Lord didnt think it was time to set em free from that bondage.

16. Then they started to prosper little by little, raisin' up more crops and gatherin' flocks and herds, so they wasnt starvin anymore.

17. Now, there sure were more women than men, so King Limhi told every man to chip in and help take care of the widows and their younguns, so they wouldnt go hungry; and they did this cause so many had been killed.

18. Limhis people stuck together as best they could, protectin their grain and their livestock;

19. And even the king didnt trust himself outside the city walls unless he had his guards along, worried he might fall into Lamanite hands.

20. He made sure his folks were keepin' an eye on the land all around, hopin' to catch those priests whod skedaddled into the wild and done all that damage by snatchin the Lamanite girls.

21. Cause they were all stirred up to grab those fellas to give 'em some payback; they slipped into Nephi at night and took their grain and other precious stuff, so they set a trap for 'em.

22. Then it happened that there wasnt no more ruckus tween the Lamanites and the people of Limhi until ol Ammon and his brothers showed up.

23. Well, the king was out by the city gates guardin things when he spotted Ammon and his crew; thinkin they

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

was them priests of Noah, he ordered them to be grabbed, tied up, and thrown in jail. If they really had been the priests, he would've had 'em put to death.

24. But when he found out they werent and that they were his own kin come from the land of Zarahemla, he was just overjoyed.

25. Now, before Ammon rolled in, King Limhi had sent a small group lookin' for the land of Zarahemla, but they got lost in the wilderness instead.

26. But they did come across this land that had folks in it once; it was covered in dry bones, mind you, a place that had seen better days; they thought it was the land of Zarahemla, then headed back to Nephi, not long before Ammon showed up.

27. They brought back a record with em, one that told about the people whose bones theyd found, all marked down on some plates made of ore.

28. Well, Limhis heart just swelled with joy when he learned from Ammon that King Mosiah had a God-given talent for interpretrin engravings; and Ammon was all happy too.

29. But ya see, Ammon and his brothers were feelin' pretty sad cause so many of their people had bit the dust;  
30. And they were also mournin cause King Noah and his priests led the folks into so many sins against God; they grieved for Abinadis death, too, and for Alma and his crew whod picked up and left, makin' a church through Gods might and through faith in Abinadi's words.

31. Yeah, they grieved for their departure, not knowin where theyd gone. They woulda been more than happy to join em, seein as how theyd made a promise to God to serve Him and keep His commandments.

32. And since Ammon showed up, King Limhi also made himself and a whole lot of his folks a promise with God to serve Him and follow His commandments.

33. Then it happened that Limhi and a bunch of his people wanted to get baptized; but there wasnt nobody around with the God-given authority. Ammon felt unworthy to do it, so he passed on the job.

34. So they didnt go ahead and form a church right then, but they were waitin on the Lords Spirit to guide em. They were hopin to be like Alma and his gang whod fled into the wilderness.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

35. They were keen on bein baptized as a sign that they were ready to serve God with all their hearts; but they kept puttin it off, and the story of their baptism will come later.

36. And now all Ammon and his folks, and King Limhi and his people, were focused on breakin free from the Lamanites and that old bondage.

### **Mosiah Chapter 22**

1. Well now, if it ain't true that Ammon and King Limhi sat down with the folks to figure out how to bust loose from their troubles; so they gathered everyone up, seein' they needed to get the community's thoughts on the whole deal.

2. Then, they realized the only way outta this mess was to haul off with their families, livestock, and all their tents, and skedaddle into the wild; 'cause the Lamanites were just too many, and there ain't no way Limhi's folks were gonna fight 'em head-on, hopin' to sword their way out.

3. Next thing ya know, Gideon stepped up and stood in front of the king, sayin', Hey there, King, you've listened to me yammer on a whole bunch of times when we was dealin' with our fellow countrymen, the Lamanites.

4. So, King, if you ain't reckon me as a useless helper, or if youve paid attention to my chatter at all, and its done ya any good, then I hope you'd give me a listen now, and I promise to help you get this bunch freed from their mess.

5. And the king said, Go on, talk away. And Gideon laid it out for him:

6. Now looky here, theres a back way through the rear wall, back there behind the town. The Lamanites and their guards are all lit up on moonshine at night; so lets spread the word for all our folks to round up their critters and head into the wild after dark.

7. Ill follow your lead and deliver the last batch of hooch to the Lamanites, and they'll be tipsy as can be; well sneak on through the secret route to the left of their camp while theyre all passed out.

8. That way, well hightail it with our women, kids, and livestock into the wild; and well go around the land of Shilom.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

9. So it turned out that the king took Gideons words to heart.

10. King Limhi got his folks to gather their livestock and sent off that tribute of wine to the Lamanites; he even threw in some extra as a gift for 'em, and those Lamanites, well, they drunk down that wine king Limhi sent real quick.

11. Well, as it played out, Limhi's people snuck out at night into the wilderness with their flocks and herds, makin their way 'round the land of Shilom, takin a turn towards Zarahemla, followin' Ammon and the gang.

12. They packed up all their gold, silver, and fancy stuff they could carry along with the food, and headed out into the wild; keepin their journey rollin.

13. After bein out there for a whole bunch of days, they finally made it to Zarahemla, joined up with Mosiahs crew, and became part of his lot.

14. Mosiah was mighty glad to see 'em and welcomed 'em with open arms; he took their records too, along with the ones the folks of Limhi had collected.

15. Now, when them Lamanites figured out Limhi's folks had made a break for it at night, they sent out a posse into the wilderness chasin' after 'em;

16. But after two days of runnin around, they lost track of their scentended up wanderin' 'round all lost in the wild.

## **Mosiah Chapter 23**

1. An account of Alma and the folks of the Lord, who got chased into the wild by them people of King Noah.

2. Comprising chapters and 24.

3. Now Alma, bein warned by the Lord that the armies of king Noah were comin for em, let his folks know, and so they rounded up their critters, grabbed their grain, and headed out into the wilderness before them armies could catch up to em.

4. And the Lord gave em strength, so that them folks of king Noah couldnt catch em to wipe em out.

5. And they hightailed it for eight days deep into the wilderness.

6. Then they stumbled onto a mighty fine and pretty place, a spot with clear, sweet water.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. So they set up their tents and got to workin the land, buildin stuff; they were busy bees and worked super hard.

8. Now the people were hankerin for Alma to be their king, cause they thought he was a good ol fella.

9. But he said to em: Listen here, it aint right for us to have a king; for the Lord says: Dont lift one person higher than another, or think one mans better than the rest; so Im tellin' ya, we dont need a king.

10. Yet, if yall could always have decent folks to be your kings, itd be just fine to have one.

11. But dont forget the wickedness of King Noah and his priests; I got caught up in a mess myself and did some things that made the Lord mighty upset, which led me to some serious regret;

12. Still, after goin through a whole heap of trouble, the Lord heard my cries and answered my prayers, makin me a tool in His hands to help many of yall find the truth.

13. But let me tell ya, I aint braggin on myself cause I aint worthy of no braggin.

14. And now Im sayin' to ya, yall been weighed down by King Noah, in chains to him and his wicked priests, led into sin by em; so yall were all tied up in sin.

15. And now that yall been freed by the power of God from them chains; yeah, outta the hands of King Noah and his crew, and also from the shackles of sin, I want you to stand strong in the freedom youve got, and dont put your trust in no man to be your king.

16. And also, dont trust anyone as your teacher or minister unless hes a man of God, walkin in His ways and keepin His commandments.

17. So Alma taught his folks that every man oughta love his neighbor like himself, and there shouldnt be no fussin among em.

18. And now, Alma was their high priest, bein the one who started their church.

19. And it came to pass that none got the authority to preach or teach unless it was from him by God. So he made sure all their priests and teachers were set apart; and none were set apart unless they were good folks.

20. So they kept a good eye on their people, makin sure to take care of em with what was right.

21. And it came to pass that they started to prosper a whole lot in the land; and they named that place Helam.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

22. And it came to pass that they multiplied and thrived a whole bunch in Helam, and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

23. But still, the Lord saw fit to chasten His people; yeah, He tests their patience and their faith.

24. But whosoever puts their trust in Him, well, theyll be lifted up come that final day. Yep, and thats how it was with these folks.

25. For take a look, Im gonna show you they got brought into bondage, and no one could save em cept the Lord their God, yep, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

26. And it came to pass that He did deliver em, and showed em His mighty power, and they rejoiced like crazy.

27. For behold, while they were in the land of Helam, in the city of Helam, tillin the land round about, an army of the Lamanites showed up at the borders.

28. Now it came to pass that Almas brothers ran from their fields and gathered in the city of Helam; and they were awful scared seein the Lamanites comin.

29. But Alma stepped forward and stood among em, tellin em not to be scared, but to remember the Lord their God and that He would save em.

30. So they calmed down their fears and started prayin to the Lord to soften the hearts of the Lamanites, hopin theyd spare em and their families.

31. And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brothers went out and surrendered themselves to em, and the Lamanites took over the land of Helam.

32. Now the armies of the Lamanites, who had chased after King Limhis people, had been wanderin lost in the wild for quite some time.

33. And behold, they found those priests of King Noah in a place they called Amulon; and they started settlin the land of Amulon and got to workin the ground there.

34. Now the head honcho of those priests was named Amulon.

35. And it came to pass that Amulon begged the Lamanites; and he sent their wives, who were Lamanite gals,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

to ask their brothers not to wipe out their husbands.

36. And the Lamanites felt sorry for Amulon and his brothers, and didnt destroy em, cause of their wives.

37. So Amulon and his brothers joined up with the Lamanites, and they were wanderin around in the wild lookin for the land of Nephi when they ran into the land of Helam, which was held by Alma and his brothers.

38. Then it came to pass that the Lamanites promised Alma and his bros that if they showed em the way to the land of Nephi, theyd let em keep their lives and their freedom.

39. But after Alma showed em the route to Nephi, the Lamanites didnt keep their word; instead, they set guards all around the land of Helam, over Alma and his bros.

40. The rest of em headed to the land of Nephi; and some of em came back to Helam, bringin along the wives and kids of the guards they left behind.

41. And the king of the Lamanites let Amulon be a king and a big man over his people in the land of Helam; but he didnt have no power to go against what the king of the Lamanites wanted.

## **Mosiah Chapter 24**

1. Well, it sure happened that ol' Amulon got on the king of the Lamanites' good side; so, the king let him and his buddies be teachers for his folks, yeah, over in the lands of Shemlon, Shilom, and Amulon.

2. Seein' as the Lamanites had moved into all those lands, the king went ahead and put kings in charge of every one of em.

3. Now, the king's name was Laman, named after his pap, so folks just called him King Laman. And boy, was he the head honcho over a big ol' crowd of folks.

4. He went and appointed them teachers from Amulon's crew in every land his people owned; and thats how Nephi's lingo started gettin taught to all the Lamanites.

5. Now they were a friendly bunch when it came to each other; but shoot, they didn't know a thing about God, and Amulons crew didn't teach 'em nuthin bout the Lord or Mosess law; and they sure didn't share the words of Abinadi neither.

6. But they did teach em how to keep track of their records and write to each other.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. So, the Lamanites started gettin' rich, tradin with each other and growin mighty fancy, turnin into a clever bunch, wise to the ways of the world, yknow, cunning folks who got into all sorts of trouble and takin' stuff, 'cept when it came to their own kin.

8. Now Amulon, he started settin' the rules for Alma and his buddies, givin' em a hard time and makin' sure their younguns harassed each other too.

9. Cause Amulon remembered Alma as one of them priests for the king, and he knew Alma was the one who believed in what Abinadi preached and got himself run outta there. So, he was mighty mad; he was under King Lamans thumb, but still acted like he was in charge, layin down heavy work and puttin taskmasters on em.

10. Well, they were sufferin so much that they cried out to God real fierce.

11. But Amulon, he told em to hush up, puttin' guards on em to make sure no one was callin on God lest they be put to death.

12. So Alma and his folks didn't shout to the Lord, but they sure poured out their hearts to Him, and He knew what they was thinkin'.

13. Then the Lord spoke to 'em through their suffering, sayin: "Hold your heads high and take heart, cause I know about the promise yall made to me; and Ill make a promise with my people and rescue 'em from bondage."

14. And He said Hed lighten all them burdens on their backs so they wouldnt even feel em, even while they was still trapped, cause He wanted em to be standin witnesses for Him down the line, and know for sure that He, the Lord God, visits His folks during tough times.

15. Now it happened that the burdens layin' on Alma and his boys got lighter; yep, the Lord gave em strength to carry on with ease, and they went about it cheerfully and patiently, doin all the Lords will.

16. And then it came to pass that their faith and patience were so strong that the Lord spoke to em again, sayin': "Be of good comfort, cause tomorrow Im gonna lift you outta bondage."

17. He told Alma: "Youre gonna lead this people, and Ill be right there with ya to get em outta bondage."



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. Well, come night, Alma and his crew gathered up all their livestock and grain; yep, they spent the whole night collectin em up.

19. And come mornin', the Lord put the Lamanites into a deep sleep, and their taskmasters were snoozin hard too.

20. So, Alma and his folks snuck off into the wilderness; after a long day of travelin, they set up camp in a valley, and they named that valley Alma, cause he was their guide in the wild.

21. And in that valley of Alma, they poured out their thanks to God for bein so good to em, easin their burdens and gettin em outta bondage; cause they were stuck, and nobody could rescue em but the Lord their God.

22. They gave thanks to Him, yknow, all them men, women, and kiddos that could speak raised their voices, singin praises to their God.

23. Then the Lord said to Alma: "Get a move on, you and your folks, outta this land, cause the Lamanites are awake and chasin you; so skedaddle, and Ill stop those Lamanites right here in this valley so they cant follow ya."

24. Well, they took off from that valley and journeyed into the wilderness.

25. After twelvedays out in the wild, they reached the land of Zarahemla; and ol King Mosiah welcomed 'em with open arms.

## **Mosiah Chapter 25**

1. Well now, King Mosiah gathered up all folks together, ya see.

2. Ain't as many of Nephis kin folks hangin' around, as there were folks from Zarahemla, who hailed from Mulek, and the ones that trailed on into the wilderness with him.

3. And lemme tell ya, there weren't nearly as many Nephites as there were Lamanites; nope, not even close, hardly half as many!

4. So there they all were, Nephites and folks from Zarahemla, gathered up in two big ol groups.

5. Mosiah took it upon himself to read the records of Zeniff to his folks; yep, he read em all the way from when they skedaddled outta Zarahemla until they made their way back.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

6. And he gave em the scoop on Alma and his buddies, and all the hard times they had, from when they left Zarahemla right until they got back home.

7. Now, when Mosiah finished readin those records, folks hangin around were just in awe and shock.

8. They was in a pickle tryin' to figure out what to make of it all; seein' them folks who got freed from their chains filled em with all sorts of joy.

9. But then again, when they remembered their brothers who got taken down by the Lamanites, well, that brought em down, and they cried a river.

10. And again, thinkin bout how good God was, and how He swooped in to save Alma and his buddies from those Lamanites, they couldnt help but lift their voices up, thankin the Lord.

11. And once more, when they thought bout the Lamanites, their own kin, and how sunk in sin they were, pain and worry filled their hearts for their souls.

12. Well, those kids of Amulon and his pals, who married them Lamanite gals, got real upset bout how their daddies was actin, so they didnt wanna be called after them anymore; they took on the name of Nephi, wanting to be known as Nephites too.

13. Now, all the folks in Zarahemla got counted among the Nephites, 'cause the kingdom was only passed on to them Nephi descendants.

14. Then Mosiah finished his speakin' and readin to the crowd, and he wanted Alma to step up and say a few words too.

15. So Alma did talk to em, as they all huddled in big groups, movin round preachin repentance and faith in the Lord.

16. He encouraged Limhis crowd and the rest whod been freed from bondage, tellin em to remember it was the Lord who saved em.

17. And after preachin' on a whole mess of stuff, when Alma was done, King Limhi was itchin for a baptism, and so was his whole crew.

18. So, Alma waded into the water and baptized em good; yep, just like he did with his buddies in the waters

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

of Mormon; and all those he baptized were part of Gods church cause they believed in the words of Alma.

19. Sure enough, King Mosiah gave Alma the green light to set up churches all over Zarahemla; and he had the authority to ordain priests and teachers to look after them.

20. This was necessary cause there were so many folks that one teacher just couldnt keep em all in check; couldnt have 'em all hearin the Lords word in one big meetin.

21. So they split up into different groups, callin themselves churches; every church had their own priests and teachers, with every priest preachin the word just like Alma taught em.

22. And even with all them many churches, they was all one church, yep, the church of God; 'cause there werent nothin preachin anywhere except repentance and faith in the Lord.

23. Now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla, and anyone who wanted to take on the name of Christ or God joined them churches.

24. And them folks was called the people of God. The Lord poured His Spirit all over 'em, and they were blessed and thrived in the land.

## **Mosiah Chapter 26**

1. Well now, there was a whole mess of folks who just couldnt wrap their heads around what King Benjamin was jawin' about, seein' as how they were just tiny tots when he was preachin' to his kin; and they didn't buy into all them old stories their folks told 'em.

2. They flat-out didnt believe anythin' bout folks risin up from the dead, nor did they think much of this fella comin' named Christ.

3. An' 'cause they lacked faith, they just couldn't get a grip on the Good Book; their hearts turned hard as a rock.

4. And they didnt wanna get dunked in the water; nope, they didn't wanna be part of the church either. They were a whole different breed when it came to faith, and they stuck to their guns till the cows came home, livin' in sin 'cause they wouldnt holler out to the Good Lord above.

5. And in Mosiahs time, they was even fewer in numbers than the good folks followin' the Lord; but due to

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

some fussin' among the brothers, they started growin in number.

6. What happened was they sweet-talked a whole bunch of church folks into doin wrong, gettin' em tangled up in all sorts of mischief; so it became clear that them sinners in the church needed talkin' to by the good folks runnin' the church.

7. Next thing you know, they were dragged up to the priests, passed along by the teachers; and them priests took em straight to Alma, who was the head honcho priest.

8. Now, King Mosiah had handed Alma the reins over the church.

9. But shoot, Alma had no idea what to do with 'em; still, there was a whole crowd comin up against em, and the people were standin tall, spillin' the beans bout their wrongdoings like it was nuthin'.

10. Aint nothin like this ever happened in the church before; so Alma was feelin' all kinds of troubled inside, and he sent for the king right quick.

11. He looked at the king and said, "Hey, we got a handful of folks we brought to ya, theyre bein' accused by their own brothers; theyve been caught up in all kinds of trouble. An' they ain't even feelin' sorry for what they done; so we brought 'em to ya so you can sort it out."

12. But King Mosiah said to Alma, "Well, I aint the one to judge 'em; Im passin the buck back to you."

13. Then Alma got even more rattled inside, so he went and asked the Lord what in the world he should do, 'cause he was shakin' in his boots thinkin' he might mess up in Gods eyes.

14. And wouldnt ya know it, after pourin out his heart to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, sayin':

15. "Bless your heart, Alma, and bless all them folks who got dunked in those waters of Mormon. Youre blessed cause you got tons of faith in just the words of my servant Abinadi.

16. And theyre blessed for havin' faith in just what you been tellin' em.

17. And youre blessed cause you gone and set up a church for this crowd; and they gonna be my folks.

18. Yep, bless this people willing to carry my name; in my name, theyre gonna be called, and they belong to me.

19. And cause you asked me about the sinner, youre blessed.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

20. Youre my worker; and Im makin a deal with you that youre gonna get eternal life; youre gonna do my work and gather up my sheep.
21. And if folks hear my voice, they gonna be my sheep; and youll bring em to the church, and Ill take 'em too.
22. 'Cause listen here, this is my church; anybody who gets dunked, its all bout repentin. And whoever ya take in, gonna believe in my name; 'nd Ill wipe their slate clean.
23. Its me who carries the weight of the worlds sins; its me who made em; and its me wholl give a spot right next to me for them that believe to the end.
24. For you see, in my name, theyre called; and if they knows me, theyll come forth and have a spot with me eternally.
25. And its gonna happen that when the second trumpet sounds, them who never knew me will come on out and stand before me.
26. And then theyll realize I'm the Lord their God, their Redeemer; but they just wouldnt let themselves be saved.
27. Then Ill have to tell em, I never knew em; and theyll be sent away to the everlasting fire made for the devil and his crew.
28. So Im sayin this here to ya, anyone who won't listen to my voice, they ain't gettin' in my church, 'cause I won't be takin' 'em in on the last day.
29. And Im tellin ya to go; and whoever messes up against me, you gonna judge em for their wrongs; and if they own up to their sins before you and me, and truly mean it in their hearts, youll forgive 'em, and I will too.
30. Yep, and as many times as my folks come back repentin, Ill forgive 'em for what they done.
31. And you gotta forgive each others wrongs too; 'cause I tell ya, if someone wont let go of what their neighbor done when they say theyre sorry, theys just puttin' themselves in the hot seat.
32. Now Im sayin to you, go; and anyone who wont turn from their mess, they ain't gonna get counted among my people; and this heres the rules movin on from now.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

33. Then Alma, after catchin wind of these words, wrote em down to keep em handy, so he could judge the church folks right by Gods commandments.

34. And wouldnt ya know, Alma went and judged all those who got caught up in trouble, just like the Lord said to do.

35. And whoever fessed up to their sins and admitted to em, he counted 'em in with the church folks;

36. And those who wouldnt admit their sins and repent of their wrongdoings, well, they didnt make the cut among the church folks, and their names got wiped clean.

37. Then Alma took charge of all the church business, and they managed to find peace again, prosperin' real good while walkin right before God, takin in many, and baptizin just as many.

38. And all this was done by Alma and his fellow workers who led the church, busy as bees in teachin Gods word, puttin up with all kinds of troubles, bein picked on by all them folks who didnt belong to the Lords church.

39. And they sure did keep admonishin' their brethren; and every single one got reminded by Gods word bout their sins, bein told to pray without ceasin', and to give thanks for everything.

## **Mosiah Chapter 27**

1. Well, yall, let me tell ya what happened next. Folks in the church were bein hurt real bad by them folks who just didnt believe, so they started grumblin and complainin to their leaders bout it all; and they went and told Alma their troubles. Alma, bein the good man he is, took it up with the king, Mosiah. So the king called his priests in for a lil' chat.

2. Now, King Mosiah decided to send out a big ol announcement all over the land sayin that no unbeliever was gonna mess with folks who belonged to Gods church.

3. They laid down some strict rules in all the churches, makin sure there was no fussin or fightin, and that everyone was treated equal-like.

4. No pride or snootiness allowed in the church; every man should treat his neighbor just like hed want to be treated, workin hard to take care of his own self.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

5. Yup, all them priests and teachers needed to be workin too for what they got, cept when they were sick or goin through some tough times. And you know what? When they did that, they really found favor with God.
6. Things started settlin down, and there was peace rollin back into the land; folks were havin babies left and right and spreadin out all over, buildin up cities and towns everywhere you looked.
7. And the Lord showed up among em, blessin em and makin em into a mighty and rich people.
8. Now, the sons of Mosiah, well, they were runnin' with the wrong crowd; they were counted among the unbelievers. One of Almas boys, also named Alma, fit in there too, but he turned out to be a real piece of workwicked as sin and into idol worship. He loved to talk sweet to folks, and that led a lotta good folks astray.
9. He was like a big ol rock in the road for the church, stealin folks hearts and causin all kinds of arguments and messjust givin the enemy a chance to mess with em.
10. So heres the deal: while he was out tryin to tear down Gods churchsneakin around with those sons of Mosiah, lookin to lead the good ones wrong, goin against Gods rules and the kings too
11. Outta nowhere, while they were kickin up trouble, wham! An angel from the Lord showed up, comin in like a storm cloud, and he spoke with a voice that shook the ground beneath their feet.
12. They was so shocked, they just plopped down flat on the ground, not understandin a word he said.
13. But the angel called out again, shoutin: Alma, get up and stand tall! Whyre ya messin with Gods church? The Lord says: This is my church, and I'm gonna build it up; aint nothin' gonna tear it down but if my folks turn against me.
14. Then the angel said: Listen here, the Lords heard the prayers of his people and your daddy, Alma, whos been prayin real hard about you, hopin youd find the truth; so I came down to show ya the power of God, cause those prayers need answerin!
15. Then he asked, Can you argue with Gods power? Dont my voice shake the whole earth? And cant you see me right here? I was sent straight from God.
16. Im tellin ya now, he went on: Dont you forget how your folks were stuck in Helam and Nephi, all chained up, but the Lord delivered em from that mess. Now, Im tellin you, Alma, quit tryin to destroy the church, or

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

their prayers wont be heard, and you might just get tossed aside yourself.

17. And that was the last thing the angel said to Alma before he took off.

18. Well, Alma and his buddies hit the dirt again, just mind-blown; they had seen a real angel, and his voice boomed like thunder, makin everything shake. They knew only Gods power could do somethin' that wild.

19. Alma was so shocked, he couldn't even talk; he got all weak-like and couldn't lift a finger, so his friends had to carry him till they laid him down in front of his dad.

20. They told his father all that went down, and his daddy was mighty relieved, knowin it was Gods power at work.

21. He called up a whole crowd of folks to witness the wonder the Lord had worked for his son and his friends.

22. He gathered the priests together, and they all started fastin and prayin hard, askin God to help Alma speak again and get his strength backwantin everybody to open their eyes to Gods goodness and glory.

23. After two days and nights of that prayin, Alma got his strength back and stood up, tellin em to find comfort.

24. He said, Ive turned my life around, and the Lord has saved me; Im reborn of the Spirit, yall!

25. Then the Lord told me not to be shocked that all folks, women and children, from every nation and tongue, gotta be born again; they need to be changed from their sinful ways into righteous ones, becomin His younguns.

26. And thats how they become brand new; and if they dont do that, they aint gonna inherit the kingdom of God.

27. Im tellin ya, if it aint like that, theyll get thrown away, and I know this cause I was almost cast off myself.

28. But after muddlin through a heap of troubles and repentin like nobodys business, the Lord in His mercy pulled me outta the flames, and Im born of God now.

29. Ive been saved from the bitter gall and the chains of sin. I was sittin in the darkest hole, but now I see the glorious light of God. My soul was tortured eternally, but now Im saved and feelin fine.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

30. I turned my back on my Savior and didnt believe what our folks had taught us; but now I see Hes gonna come, and He knows every critter He made, and Hell show Himself to everyone.

31. Yup, every knee is gonna bow, and every tongues gonna confess before Himeven on that final day when every soul stands before Him for judgment. Then folks who lived without Him will have to admit that the punishment is rightly theirs; theyll be scared and shakin in His presence.

32. And then, just like that, Alma started teachin the folks, him and his pals who saw the angel, trappin around the land, sharin what they witnessed and preachin Gods word despite all the troubles they faced, bein beat up by nonbelievers all the way.

33. But through all that mess, they gave a whole lotta comfort to the church, solidifyin their faith and encourage em to keep Gods commandments, even through thick and thin.

34. Four of em were the sons of Mosiah; their names were Ammon, Aaron, Omner, and Himnithose were King Mosiahs boys.

35. They hit the road all through Zarahemla, among all the folks under King Mosiah's rule, goin' all out to fix the wrongs theyd done to the church, spillin their sins and preachin all the wonder theyd seen, explainin the prophecies and scriptures to anyone whod listen.

36. And thats how they became instruments in Gods hands, bringin a bunch of folks to know the truth and to find their Redeemer.

37. Aint they lucky? They shared peace and good news, declarn to everyone that the Lord is king.

## **Mosiah Chapter 28**

1. Well, after the sons of Mosiah done got through with all that there stuff, they rounded up a few good folks and headed back to their daddy, the king. They asked him if he could let em take their little crew on up to Nephi so they could preach about what they heard and share the good word of God with their kinfolk, the Lamanites

2. They was hopin to get them folks to understand the Lord their God and maybe open their eyes bout how wrong their ancestors had been; and they wished to soothe that bitter hatred they had towards the Nephites, so

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

they could find some joy in the Lord their God, become pals, and no more fightin all over the land God gave em.

3. Now, they really wanted to shout salvation from the rooftops to every last livin soul cause they couldnt stand the thought of anyone bein' lost. Even the mere idea of some poor soul sufferin forever made em shake and quake in their boots.

4. The Lords spirit was workin on em hard, cause truth be told, they was downright terrible sinners. But the Lord, in his boundless mercy, decided to cut em some slack; still, they done suffered a heap of anguish bout their wrongdoings, worryin theyd be tossed aside forever.

5. So they went and begged their daddy for many days to let em head up to Nephi.

6. Then, King Mosiah went and asked the Lord if it was alright to send his sons among the Lamanites to spill the good word.

7. And the Lord told Mosiah: Let em go on up, cause many folks gonna believe what they say, and theyll get that sweet eternal life; and Ill snatch your boys right outta them Lamanites clutches.

8. So, it all came to pass that Mosiah said sure thing, and gave em the green light to go on their way.

9. They took off into the wilds to go preach to the Lamanites, and Ill get to tell yall all bout their adventures later on.

10. Now, ol King Mosiah didnt have nobody to hand the kingdom over to, cause none of his sons wanted any part of it.

11. So he grabbed the records carved onto them brass plates, along with the plates of Nephi, and all the stuff hed kept safe as per the Lords commands, after hed translated and written down the records found by Limhis people, which Limhi personally handed over to him;

12. He did this cause his folks was mighty anxious; they really wanted to know what happened to them poor folks who got wiped out.

13. And so, he translated em with them two stones he had fixed to the sides of a bow.

14. Now, these items were set up right from the start, passed down through the ages for helpin' folks

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

understand languages;

15. And the Lord kept a hold on em, so that every soul that laid claim to the land could know bout the sins and wickedness of their people;

16. And whoevers got these here records is called a seer, just like folks used to be back in the day.

17. Now once Mosiah wrapped up translating them records, it laid out the tale of the people who got destroyed, all the way from when they meet their doom back to when they built that big ol tower, when the Lord mixed up their languages and scattered em all over the earth, shoot, right back to the creation of Adam.

18. You see, this here account made the folks of Mosiah weep real hard, yeah, they was full of sorrow; but at the same time, it filled em with a heap of knowledge, and that brought em joy.

19. And this accounts gonna get written down later; cause its real important that all folks know the things in this story.

20. Now, as I told ya, when King Mosiah got done with all this, he took the brass plates and all his keep sakes, and handed em over to Alma, who was Almas boy; yep, all them records, along with the interpreters, he passed em to him, tellin him to keep and preserve em, and also keep track of the folks, passin em down through the generations just like they done from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

### **Mosiah Chapter 29**

1. Well now, when good ol' Mosiah got done with all that, he got himself to hollerin' 'round the land, tryin' to figure out what folks wanted when it came to pickin' a king.

2. Then, wouldn't ya know it, the people piped up sayin', "We sure would like Aaron, your boy, to be our king and run things for us."

3. But Aaron had already wandered off to Nephi, so the king couldn't hand him the crown, and you know what? Aaron didn't wanna take it anyway; his brothers weren't interstin' in bein' king neither.

4. So ol' King Mosiah went back to the people again, this time sendin' out a letter. And ya know what it said?

5. "Listen up, my folks, my brothers, I hold ya in high regard. I want yall to think 'bout this whole king business ya wantin' to have."

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

6. "Now, Im here to tell ya that the one who really oughta be king ain't interested; he don't want the job."
7. "And if we lay a new one down in his spot, well shoot, I reckon theres gonna be a mess of fightin'. Ain't no tellin' if my boy, who should be takin' the throne, might get all hot and bothered and lead some folks astray, causin all sorts of trouble and blood spillin', messin' with the good ol' ways of the Lord.
8. Lets think wisely 'bout this, and we ain't got no business takin' down my son, and we sure don't need to be chasin' down another if he ain't nothin' but a new face for the throne.
9. If my boy gets back to feelin all proud and gets to claimin' what's his, then were all gonna be knee-deep in sin.
10. So lets be smart and keep our eyes peeled on what's comin, doin what we gotta do to keep the peace.
11. Therefore, Ill be your king for as long as I breathe; but we oughta pick us some judges to handle the folks right, goin' by our laws. Were fixin to get our lives organized and pick wise folks to keep this thing steered straight according to Gods commands.
12. Now, its a whole lot better for a man to be judged by God than by just any man, cause Gods judgments are always fair, but mans sure aint always just.
13. So, if yall could find good folks to be your kings, makin' sure they put Gods laws first, kinda like my daddy Benjamin did for ya'll tell ya right now, if that could stay true, then havin kings wouldnt be a bad thing at all."
14. And let me tell ya, I worked real hard with all I got to teach yall Gods commandments and keepin peace round here, so we aint got any wars, no stealn, no plunderin, no killin, and none of that other nasty stuff.
15. And whoevers done wrong, Ive made sure to send em packin with a punishment that fits right, just like our folks taught us.
16. Now Im tellin ya, since not every single soul is good-hearted, it just dont make sense for yall to go havin' a king or kings to rule.
17. Just think how much mischief one bad king can start; shoot, the destruction that follows ain't pretty!
18. Yall remember King Noah and his wicked ways, and his people look at the trouble they got into; cause of

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

their misdeeds, they found themselves in chains.

19. If it weren't for the cleverness of their Creator and their heartfelt turnin back to Him, theyd still be stuck in those chains.

20. "But lo and behold, He did save 'em 'cause they bowed low before Him; and when they cried out hard enough, He set 'em free from their troubles. That's how the Lord works His magic with folks like us who put their faith in Him."

21. And listen here, Im tellin' ya, ya cant just toss out a crooked king without a heap of fuss and a whole lotta blood spilled.

22. 'Cause you see, hes got his wrongdoer buddies, and theyre keepin' close watch; hell just rip up the laws that came from the good folks who used to rule right, and hes gonna stomp on the commandments of God.

23. He goes and makes up laws, sendin em out like how he sees fit, makin folks pay if they dont toe the line, and if ya dare go against him, hell send his armies to do war, and you bet hell try to wipe em out; thats how a bad king twists the good ways.

24. Now, Im tellin ya, it ain't right for such nasty business to mess with yall.

25. So, ya better choose judges by what folks here are sayin', so yall can be judged as our fathers laid down the law, cause thats the right path, handed down by the Lord.

26. It aint often that the folks want somethin thats wrong, but its pretty common for a handful of them to want the bad stuff; so yall keep an eye on that and make it a law to run your ship by what the people say.

27. And if the day comes when the folks start choosin the bad path, well, thats when Gods judgment is gonna come down hard on ya; thats when Hell show up with some real destruction, just like He done before.

28. If you got judges, and they aint judgin ya right, yall can make a bid for a higher judge over em.

29. If them higher judges cant keep it straight, just gather up a few of the lower judges, and they can hold the higher judges accountable, goin by what the people say.

30. Im tellin ya, make sure to do this with respect for the Lord; I command ya to do these things, and that yall have no king; if the folks mess up, they gotta face the music themselves.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

31. Cause let me tell ya, many sins folks racked up came from their kings wrongdoings, and they gotta deal with the consequences from their kings.

32. Now I want this unfairness to stop in this land, especially with my people; I desire that we live in a land of freedom, where each man can enjoy his rights and privileges just the same for as long as the Lord lets us keep stayin on this land, yeah, as long as any of our kin are around.

33. Mosiah wrote a whole heap more to them, layin' out all the tough times and troubles that come from a good king, all the heartaches for their folks, and the gripin they did bout their king; he laid it all bare.

34. And he told em this aint how things should be; the load gotta be shared by all, so every man carries his weight.

35. He also laid out all the troubles they faced havin a bad king runnin things over em;

36. Yeah, all his misdeeds and bad behaviors, the wars, the fights, the bloodshed, the thievin, the plunderin, the whorin, and all sorts of other bad stuff that ain't even worth listin'told 'em this aint how it should be, it just aint right with Gods commandments.

37. Then it happened, after King Mosiah sent all that wisdom out there, folks was convinced he was speakin the truth.

38. So, they let go of their wishes for a king and got mighty eager that every man should have an equal shot all round the land; and every last one of em stood up ready to take responsibility for their own sins.

39. So, they got together in groups all over, and each one voted on who oughta be their judges, so theyd be judged fair-like by the laws that had been set down; and they was all real happy for the freedom that had come their way.

40. "They fell deeper in love with Mosiah; they held him higher than any other fella round; they didnt see him as a tyrant lookin to line his pocket, no sir, he didnt care for that dirty lucre that messes with the soul; he hadnt squeezed em for riches, nor did he take joy in spillin blood; he made peace here and granted his people freedom from all kinds of bondage; so they sure held him in the highest regard."

41. "So it happened that they appointed judges to run things over em according to the law, and they did that all

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

over the place."

42. "Then Alma got picked to be the first chief judge, and he was also the high priest, his old man had gave him the job and all the church duties."

43. "And Alma was walkin' in the ways of the Lord, keepin the commandments, makin right calls, and peace was flowin all over the land."

44. So began the era of judges all round the land of Zarahemla, among the folks known as the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

45. "And it came to be that his daddy passed on, livin to a ripe old age of eighty-two, havin' done what God told him."

46. "And it also happened that Mosiah passed away, in the thirty-third year of his reign, at sixty-three; addin up to a total of five hundred and nine years since Lehi booked it outta Jerusalem."

47. "And thats how the reign of kings over the Nephite people came to an end; and thats how the days of Alma wrapped up, who was the founder of their church."

## **Alma**

### **Alma Chapter 1**

1. The Book of Alma the Son of Alma

2. Well now, let me spin ya a tale bout Alma, the son of old Alma, he was the main judge and the high priest over the Nephiteskinda a big deal, ya know? This heres the story of the judges takin charge, all them fights and ruckus among the folks. Also, a tale of a scrap between the Nephites and them Lamanites, just like Alma scribbled down for us.

3. Now, Nehor was out there preachin all sorts of goofy stuff, settin up his own church, and actin all priestly-like, then he goes and takes out GideonNehor got what was comin to him for his sinspriestcraft and harassment spreadin like wildfire mongst the folkswhile the priests took care of themselves, the good folks were busy lookin after the poor, and the Church was flourishin. Were talkin bout 91 to 88 B.C., yall.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

4. Well, it turned out that in the first year of them judges takin over the Nephites, king Mosiah had kicked the bucket, after fightin the good fight and livin right by the Good Lord, leavin no one to take his throne; but he sure had set some laws in place that folks were expected to follow.
5. Then it came to be that in Alma's first year sittin in judgment, a big ol fella was brought up for some judgment, a dude known for bein strong as an ox.
6. This fella was runnin around, preachin his own idea of Gods word and takin shots at the Church; tellin everyone that every priest and teacher oughta be famous and shouldnt bother with regular jobs cause the folks oughta support em.
7. He was also yappin bout how everyone would be saved in the end, and folks didnt need to be scared or shakin in their boots, but could just lift their heads high and rejoicecause the Lord made everybody and saved em too, and in the end, everyone would get eternal life.
8. Now, he was so convincing with his ramblin that a whole heap of folks started believing him, and next thing ya know, they were puttin money in his pockets.
9. Well, that went to his head somethin fierce, and he started wearin fancy clothes, and even went to settin up a church like he preached.
10. As he was out there preachin to all them folks who bought what he was sellin, he ran into one of those God-followin folks, a teacher of the Church, and tried to argue with him real sharp-like, hopin to sway them folks; but the good man stood his ground, callin him out with the Good Word.
11. Now, the fellas name was Gideon, and he was doin Gods work helpin the folks of Limhi get outta their mess.
12. Cause Gideon wouldn't back down with his God-talk, Nehor got mad as a hornet and pulled his sword, startin to swing at him. Now Gideon wasnt a young buck anymore, so he couldnt defend hisself, and he ended up payin the ultimate price.
13. The folks from the church didnt take kindly to that, and they brought Nehor before Alma to get judged for his misdeeds.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. So there he stood in front of Alma, makin a case for himself, all bold-like.

15. But Alma told him, "Now hold up, this is the first time anythin like priestcraft has shown up around here. Not only are ya guilty of tryin to pull some priestcraft, but you tried to force it with a pointy sword; if that junk gets loose, its gonna ruin us all."

16. He went on, "You done shed the blood of a good man, one who was doin right by these folks; if we just let ya slide, his blood'll fall on us.

17. So listen here, youre gonna be put to death, just like the law from our last king Mosiah says, and everyone knows it; so ya best believe this crowds gonna stick by it.

18. And so they took him away; his name was Nehor; they hauled him up to the top of the hill Manti, and he had to own up, right there with the heavens and earth, that his preachin was all wrong according to Gods word; and there he faced a mighty shameful end.

19. But that didnt slow down the spread of priestcraft none; no sir, there were plenty folks who still fancied the shiny things in life, out preachin their falsehoods for gold and fame.

20. But they were too scared to tell a lie if folks found out, scared of the law, cause liars didnt get off easy; so they played pretend and claimed to preach what they believed, and the law had no grip on a man just for what he believed in.

21. They were also too scared to steal, worried about gettin in trouble, cause thieves didnt go free neither; they didnt go about robbin or killin folks, cause murderers got the harshest punishment.

22. But it wasnt long before those who didnt belong to Gods church started givin those who did a hard time, and those folks took upon themselves the name of Christ.

23. Yep, they were givin em a hard time, feelin free to toss around all kinds of mean words, cause they were humble and didnt think too highly of themselves; they shared Gods word kin to kin, without askin for a dime.

24. Now, there was a strict rule among the church folks that no one from the church was to go harassin anybody who didnt belong to em, and that they shouldnt be fightin amongst themselves.

25. Still, quite a few of em got a bit puffed up, started gettin into fights with their rivals, throwin punches; yep,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

they was layin their hands on each other.

26. Now this was in the second year of Almas reign, and it brought a whole mess of trouble for the church; it sure was a time of trials for them.

27. Many hearts grew tough, and their names got wiped out like they never existed among Gods people. Plus, a bunch just wandered off from the bunch.

28. Now this was a big ol test for those who held strong in the faith; but they stayed steadfast and wouldnt budge on Gods commandments, takin' the beatin they got with patience.

29. When the priests took a break to share the Good Word, folks set down their work to listen. And when them priests finished their speakin, everyone went back to workin hard; and the priests didnt think they were better than the listeners, cause the preacher aint no better than the hearer, and the teacher aint above the learner; so they were all equal, workin' hard, all doin what they could.

30. They shared what they had with the needyevery man givin what he could to the poor, the sick, and those in trouble; and they didnt deck themselves out in fancy gear, but they sure were tidy and presentable.

31. And just like that, they got their church affairs straightened out; and somehow, they found a way to have peace again, in spite of all the mess they faced.

32. And now, due to the firmness of the church, they started gettin real well-off, havin plenty of what they neededan abundance of critters and livestock, good eatin, and piles of grain, gold, silver, and all sorts of fine things, and even nice cloth to wear.

33. So, in their good fortune, they didnt turn away nobody who was naked, hungry, thirsty, sick, or went unfed; and none of em had their hearts set on gettin rich; so they were generous to all, young and old, bonded and free, male and female, whether they were church folks or not, showin no favoritism toward those in need.

34. And thats how they grew richer than the folks who werent part of their church.

35. Them folks who didnt belong to the church were off indulgin in all sorts of tomfoolery, idol-worship, and idleness, givin into empty chatter, jealousy, and strife; sportin fancy duds; thinkin a heap of themselves; dishin out persecution, lies, theft, robbery, commitin all sorts of sinsincluding murder; yet the law was hot on their

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

heels, comin' down hard on any who stepped outta line, as much as they could manage.

36. And it turned out, with the law bein enforced on em, every man payin for the mess he made, they quieted down, and didnt dare commit any more wrongdoing if folks found out; so, there was a heap of peace among the Nephite folks right up until the fifth year of them judges runnin things.

### **Alma Chapter 2**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, right at the start of this here fifth year they was some serious squabblin goin on amongst the folks. Now, there was this feller named Amlici, and let me tell ya, he was slicker than a greased pigsmart as a whip when it came to the ways of the world, kinda like that feller who took Gideon down real quick with a sword, and he paid for it, sure as shootin'.

2. So this Amlici, with his smooth talkin, he managed to wrangle up a whole passel of folks to follow him, so much so that they got pretty strong and started thinkin bout makin Amlici their king.

3. Now, this put a bee in the bonnet of the good folks at church and those who didnt fall for Amlicis charm. They knew good and well that according to their laws, any changes gotta come from the voice of the people.

4. So if Amlici was able to sweet-talk his way into the heart of the people, this no-good feller was fixin to take away their rights and privileges over at the church, cause his heart was set on bringin down the church of God.

5. Then all the folks huddled up across the land, each group pullin for or against Amlici, arguin and fussin' like a bunch of roosters in a barnyard.

6. So, they got together to figure out which way the wind was blowin and all em voices were brought before the judges.

7. It turned out that the good folks spoke out against Amlici, sayin he aint gonna be king round there.

8. Well now, that brought a whole heap of happiness to the folks who didnt want him, but Amlici stirred up his own crew to be mad at everyone else.

9. Eventually, they all gathered up and made ol Amlici their king.

10. Once Amlici had that fancy crown on his head, he told his followers to pick up their weapons and go against their own kin. The man just wanted to have em under his thumb.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

11. So the followers of Amlici went by the name Amlicites, while the rest stuck with Nephites, or Gods people.

12. Now them Nephites had a good idea what Amlici and his gang were up to, and they werent about to sit back. They got all armed up with swords, cimeters, bows and arrows, stones, slingsyou name itthey had it all ready for a fight.

13. So when them Amlicites finally came a-callin, the Nephites were all prepped and ready. They even set up captains and all them higher-ups, dependin on how many showed up.

14. And it came to pass that Amlici armed his fellas too, givin em all sorts of weapons and puttin leaders in charge to get them riled up for battle.

15. They marched right up to the hill Amnihu, east of the river Sidon, right by the land of Zarahemla, and let the war begin with the Nephites.

16. Alma, the head judge and governor of the Nephites, gathered his folks, including his captains and big chiefs, and went straight into battle against the Amlicites.

17. They started takin out the Amlicites on that hill east of Sidon. But those Amlicites werent goin down easy, they put up one heck of a fight, makin lots of Nephites fall like rain.

18. But bless their hearts, the Lord gave the Nephites some strength, and they began to take down the Amlicites somethin fierce, chasin em off like scared rabbits.

19. They kept after em all day long, takin em down til twelve thousand five hundred thirty-two Amlicites bit the dust, while the Nephites lost six thousand five hundred sixty-two souls.

20. Then, when Alma couldnt keep chasin the Amlicites no more, he had his folks set up camp in the valley of Gideon, named after that Gideon who got taken out by Nehor, and thats where the Nephites laid their heads for the night.

21. Alma sent some spies out to follow what was left of the Amlicites, tryin to figure out their plans so he could protect his folks from bein wiped out.

22. Now the ones he sent out to keep an eye on the Amlicites were named Zeram, Amnor, Manti, and Limher;

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

these folks went out with their crew to keep watch.

23. And it came to pass the next day they rushed back to camp, all wide-eyed and rattled, shoutin':

24. Yall aint gonna believe this! We tracked the Amlicites, and let me tell ya, up in the land of Minon, just over the land of Zarahemla, we spotted a whole heap of Lamanites; looks like the Amlicites joined up with em!

25. And they were after our kin in that land, chasin em off with their flocks, wives, and kiddos headin straight for our city. If we dont hurry, theyll take our city and our families will be in big trouble.

26. So the Nephites packed up their tents and headed out of the valley of Gideon toward their city, that fancy place called Zarahemla.

27. Now as they was crossin the river Sidon, the Lamanites and Amlicites swarmed them like ants at a picnic, lookin to wipe em out.

28. But those Nephites, with the Lord backin em up, prayin with all their might to be saved from their enemies, got their prayers answered strong, and those Lamanites and Amlicites started fallin before them.

29. And it came to pass that Alma faced off with Amlici swingin' swords, goin at it real hard, both of em givin it everything they got.

30. Alma, bein a man of God with plenty of faith, cried out, sayin, Oh Lord, have mercy and let me live! I wanna be an instrument in Your hands to save and protect these folks!

31. Now after sayin that, Alma got back into the fray with Amlici, and he felt that strength to take Amlici down with his sword.

32. Then Alma had to tussle with the king of the Lamanites; but that ol' king got scared and hightailed it outta there, sendin his guards to take on Alma instead.

33. But Alma and his crew went toe-to-toe with the king's guards till they drove em back and took em down.

34. And so he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, on the west side of the river Sidon, tossin the slain Lamanites into the river so his folks could cross and face off with the Lamanites and Amlicites on the other side.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

35. And when they all crossed that river Sidon, the Lamanites and Amlicites skedaddled before them, even with how many there were, tryin to get away.

36. They took off toward the wilderness west and north, far outside the lands borders, while the Nephites chased em down and took em out.

37. Yep, they met em on every side, takin em down till they scattered em out west and north, till they landed in a wild ol wilderness called Hermounts, infested with all sorts of beasts.

38. Many a soul died there in the wild from their wounds, and them beasts and vultures snatched em up; their bones piled high on the ground like forgotten memories.

### **Alma Chapter 3**

1. The Amlicites done marked themselves just like the prophets saidThe Lamanites were cursed for bein all rebelliousFolks sure do bring their own troubles down on themselvesThe Nephites took down another Lamanite crew. Round bout 8786 B.C.

2. So it happened that the Nephites who werent cut down by the battle didnt count the ones they buriednow the folks who got killed were too many to count, yallonce they wrapped up buryin their dead, they headed back to their lands, their homes, their wives, and their young'uns.

3. A whole lotta women and kids got whacked with the sword, and a bunch of their flocks and herds went down, too; plus plenty of their fields of grain got trampled down by all them folks.

4. Now many of the Lamanites and Amlicites who bit the dust by the river Sidon were tossed right into the water; and lemme tell ya, their bones are deep down in the sea, and there sure are a whole lot of em.

5. The Amlicites looked different from the Nephites, cause they marked their foreheads with red like them Lamanites; but they didnt shave their heads like the Lamanites did.

6. Now the Lamanites had shaved heads; they werent wearin much except for some skin wrapped round their waists, along with their armor, bows, arrows, stones, and slings, and all that.

7. And the Lamanites had dark skin, just like the mark their daddies got on account of their wrongdoing and rebellion against their brothers: Nephi, Jacob, Joseph, and Sam, who were good and righteous men.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

8. And their kinfolk tried to wipe em out, so they ended up cursed; and the Lord God slapped a mark on em, yes sir, on Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, plus Ishmaelitish women, too.
9. And this here was done so their kids wouldnt mix with their brethren, so the Lord God could keep His people safe, keepin em from mixin and believe in some downright wrong traditions thatd lead to their fall.
10. And it happened that whoever mixed their seed with the Lamanites ended up bringin the same curse on their own young'uns.
11. So, whosoever let themselves be led away by the Lamanites was tagged under that lot, and a mark was put on em.
12. And it came to pass that whoever didnt buy into the Lamanites traditions, but rather believed the records that came outta Jerusalem and the correct traditions from their folks, who believed in Gods commandments and kept em, were dubbed the Nephites, or the folks of Nephi, from then on
13. And its them who held onto the true records of their kinfolk, and also of the Lamanites folks.
14. Now lets talk bout the Amlicites again; they also done put a mark on themselves, sure enough, a right red mark on their foreheads.
15. So the Word of God got fulfilled, cause them were the words He told Nephi: Look here, the Lamanites Ive cursed, and Ill put a mark on em so they and their kids can be kept apart from you and your young'uns, from now on and forever, less they turn from their wicked ways and come back to me so I can have mercy on em.
16. And again: Ill put a mark on whoever mixes their seed with your brethren, so theyll be cursed too.
17. And again: Ill mark the fella who fights against you and your kin.
18. And once more, I say, whoever walks away from you wont be called your seed no more; and Ill bless you, and whomever called your seed from now on and forever; and these were the promises from the Lord to Nephi and his kin.
19. Now the Amlicites didnt know they were fulfillin Gods words when they started markin their foreheads; still, they came out in plain rebellion against God; so it made sense for em to catch the curse.
20. Now I want yall to see that they brought this curse on themselves; and just like that, every man whos

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

cursed brings his own condemnation on himself.

21. Well, it came to pass right after the battle in Zarahemla with the Lamanites and Amlicites, another army of Lamanites showed up to take on the Nephites, right in the same spot where the first army met the Amlicites.

22. And then there was an army sent out to kick em outta their land.

23. Now Alma, bein' hurt, didnt go up to fight against the Lamanites this time;

24. But he sent a whole heap of folks against em; they went up, took out a bunch of Lamanites, and sent the rest runnin off from their land.

25. Then they came back and started settlin things down in the land, not troubled no more for a spell by their enemies.

26. Now all these things happened, yep, all these fights and fussin got started and wrapped up in the fifth year of them judges reign.

27. And in just one year, thousands and tens of thousands of souls left this plain for the eternal world, so they could collect their rewards based on how they acted, whether good or bad, aim for eternal happiness or eternal misery, dependin on what spirit they chose to follow, whether it was a good spirit or a bad one.

28. Cause every man gets paid by the one he chooses to follow, and thats according to prophecy; so let it go by the truth. And thats how the fifth year of them judges came to a close.

### **Alma Chapter 4**

1. Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there werent no squabbles or wars goin on in the land of Zarahemla;

2. But the folks were sufferin, shoot, they were downright heartbroken over the loss of their kinfolk, and also their livestock, and their fields of grain that got all trampled and wrecked by those Lamanite rascals.

3. And their troubles were so profound that every single one had reason to mourn; they figured it was the Big Guy Upstairs, sendin down His judgment cause of the bad stuff they been up to; so they woke up to rememberin their responsibilities.

4. And they started gettin the church all set up proper-like; shoot, tons of folks got baptized in the waters of



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Sidon and joined up with the good Lords church; yep, they were baptized by Alma, who was the high priest over the people, put there by his daddy Almas own hand.

5. And it came to pass in the seventh year of the judges reign, about three thousand five hundred folks got together and joined the church of God and got baptized. And thus the seventh year of the judges' reign wrapped up, and there was peace all around during that time.

6. And it came to pass in the eighth year of the judges reign, that the church folks started gettin a bit too proud, what with all their riches, and fancy silks, and that nice linen, plus their big ol herds and flocks, gold and silver, and all kinds of shiny things theyd worked hard to get; and in all these things, they got all puffed up with pride, startin to flaunt their expensive clothes.

7. Now this was real tough on Alma, bless his heart, and a whole heap of them folks he had set up as teachers, priests, and elders in the church; many of em were really upset over the wickedness that was startin to creep in among their people.

8. Cause they saw with heavy hearts that the church folks were gettin all lofty and proud, settin their sights on riches and the silly things of the world, gettin snooty toward one another, and bein' mean to folks who didnt believe like they did.

9. And in this eighth year of the judges reign, there began to be some serious squabblin among the church folks; yep, there was envy, strife, malice, persecution, and pride, even worse than those who werent part of the church of God.

10. And so wrapped up the eighth year of the judges; the churchs wickedness was a big ol hurdle for those who werent in the church; and thus the church started fallin behind in its progress.

11. And it came to pass at the start of the ninth year, Alma saw the churchs sins, and he could tell that the church was leadin those nonbelievers from one bit of trouble to another, causin a whole lot of ruin for the people.

12. Yep, he saw a real mess among the folks, some of em struttin around proud as peacocks, lookin down their noses at others, turnin their backs on those in needthose who were cold, hungry, thirsty, and sick.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

13. Now this brought a whole lot of tears among the people, while some others were humblin themselves, helpin those who needed a hand, sharin what they had with the poor folks, feedin the hungry, and puttin up with all sorts of troubles, all for the sake of Christ, who was comin round one day, just like the prophets said;

14. Lookin forward to that day, holdin onto hope and forgiveness for their sins; feelin' all kinds of joy cause of the resurrection of the dead, thanks to the will and strength of Jesus Christ bustin them free from death's grip.

15. And now it came to pass that Alma, seein the troubles of the humble folks followin God, and the hard times bein thrown at em by the rest of his people, and lookin at all the inequality, started feelin real down; but bless his heart, the Spirit of the Lord didnt leave him hangin'.

16. So he picked out a wise fella from the elders of the church and gave him the go-ahead, just like the people wanted, to take charge and make laws, keepin an eye on the wrongdoings of 'em folks.

17. Now this fellas name was Nephihah, and he got himself appointed chief judge; he took his seat to judge and keep order among the folks.

18. Now Alma didnt hand over the high priest spot to him, but kept that job for himself; he passed the judgment seat to Nephihah.

19. And he did this so he could get out there with his people, or among the people of Nephi, to preach the good word of God to em, to get em thinkin about their duties, and to tear down all that pride, sneakiness, and squabblin among his folks, seein no way to bring em back cept by givin pure testimony against em.

20. And thus at the start of the ninth year of the judges reign over the people of Nephi, Alma handed over the judgment seat to Nephihah and focused on his high priest duties, stickin to the word of God, guided by the spirit of prophecy and revelation.

## **Alma Chapter 5**

1. Well, let me spin ya a tale 'bout the words that Alma, the High Priest in the good ol' order of God, passed on to the folks 'round their towns and villages all over the land.

2. Now, lets kick off with chapter five.

3. To get yourself saved, ya gotta turn away from yer sins, mind the commandments, be born anew, wash yer

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

clothes clean in the blood of Christ, be humble as a country mouse, toss that pride and jealousy aside, and do the good worksThe Good Shepherd's callin' His childrenBut those who do the bad works? Well, they're just minions of the devilAlma here, he's shoutin' bout his truth and givin' folks the straight talk to turn from their wrongdoingsThe names of the good folks are penned in that book of life, yknow. This all happened 'round 83 B.C.

4. So then, it happened that Alma started to share the word of God with the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and then spreadin' out across the whole territory.

5. And these are the very words he said to folks at the church in Zarahemla, just like he wrote down for himself:

6. I, Alma, bein' set apart by my dad, who's also named Alma, to be a high priest for God's church, havin' been given the power and authority from God to do all this, well, I'm here to tell ya, he started a church over in this land, over towards Nephi; yep, the land they called Mormon; and he went and baptized his brothers right there in those waters of Mormon.

7. And just so ya know, they got freed from King Noah's grip, all thanks to God's mercy and might.

8. Then, they found themselves all chained up by Lamanites out in the wilderness; yep, I tell ya, they were in captivity, but the Lord came back around and freed 'em again by the power of His word; and we came to this land and started spreadin' out God's church here too.

9. Now listen up, brothers and sisters, you who belong to this church, have y'all kept in mind how y'all's ancestors were trapped like rats? And do ya remember how kind and patient God was with 'em? And hey, do ya remember how He saved their souls from hellfire?

10. Y'all, He changed their hearts; He shook 'em awake from their deep slumber and they came alive for God. They were stuck in darkness; but lo and behold, their souls were lit up by the everlasting word; yes indeed, they were bound up by death and chains of hell, just waitin' on some everlasting destruction.

11. So let me ask ya, brethren, did they get wiped out? Nah, I tell ya, they did not.

12. And I gotta ask again, were those death chains broken, and the hell chains loosed around 'em? I'll tell ya

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

right now, Yes, they were loosed, and their souls stretched out, singing a tune of love that saves. And you betcha, they are saved.

13. Now Im wonderin, whats the deal on how they got saved? What gave em hope for salvation? What was the reason they were freed from deaths grip and the hell chains?

14. Well, let me tell yadidnt my daddy Alma believe the words that come straight from Abinadi's mouth? Aint he a holy prophet? Ain't he been spoutin' God's messages like its goin outta style, and didnt my daddy Alma believe em?

15. And 'cause of his faith, a big ol' change happened in his heart. Now Im tellin' ya, this is all as true as a blue sky.

16. And behold, he preached the good word to your daddies, and a mighty change happened in their hearts too, and they humbled themselves, puttin' their trust in the real, livin' God. And looky here, they stuck with it till the end; thats why they got saved.

17. Now, I ask yall, my church family, have ya been brought back to life in Gods way? Do ya see His image in your faces? Have ya felt that big change in your hearts?

18. Do ya have faith in the One who made ya? Do ya look ahead with faith, and seein' this earthly body raised to live forever, and this old corrupt body turned to incorruption, standin' before God for judgment based on all the things done in this flesh?

19. Im askin ya, can ya picture hearin' the Lords voice callin ya one day, sayin': Come on over, yall blessed ones, 'cause looky here, your works have been good and righteous on this here earth?

20. Or do you reckon you can stand there and lie to the Lord on that day, sayin'Lord, our works were good on this Earthand thinkin Hes gonna save ya?

21. Or is it possible youll find yourselves standin' before God, your hearts heavy with guilt and regret, rememberin every little sin, knowin you broke Gods commandments?

22. Im askin yall, can you look up to God on that day with a clean heart and pure hands? Can ya look up, carryin the image of God on your faces?

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

23. Can ya even imagine bein saved when yall have just given in to the devils ways?

24. Im tellin ya now, youll know on that day that savin yourselves ain't gonna happen; for nobody can be saved unless their clothes are made white; yep, those garments gotta be cleaned til they shine bright and pure from all stain, through the blood of the One who was said to come to redeem His people from their sins.

25. Now I wanna know, my brothers, how yall gonna feel when ya stand before God, wearin' stained clothes soaked in blood and all sorts of dirt? Whats that gonna say 'bout ya?

26. Let me tell ya, aint they gonna speak of you bein' a murderer, yeah, and guilty of all kinds of wickedness?

27. Now, my friends, do ya really think such a person can sit alongside Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and all those holy prophets with their clean and spotless garments?

28. Im tellin ya, No; unless yall are willin to call God a liar from day one, you cant say folks like that have any place in heaven; theyll just be thrown out cause theyre children of the kingdom of the devil.

29. Now hear me out, brothers, if you've felt a change of heart, and if ya feel like singin' that song of redeeming love, Im askin ya, yall feel that way now?

30. Have ya walked blameless before God? Could ya say, if your time was up right now, that you've been humble enough? That your clothes have been made white and clean through the blood of Christ, who is here to redeem His people from their sins?

31. Now tell me, are ya stripped of pride? Im here to say, if not, ya aint ready to face God. You gotta get ready quick; heavens door is swingin open, and those not ready wont have eternal life.

32. Now, let me ask, is there anyone among ya who aint stripped down of envy? Let me tell ya, if thats you, you just aint ready; and I sure hope you get that act together fast, cause the hours comin' and you never know when its gonna hit; cause folks like that aint gonna be found guilt-free.

33. And I gotta say again, is there anyone here thinkin its funny to mock his brother or throw some hurtin words at him?

34. Well shoot, woe to that person, cause they ain't ready, and time's flyin' fast, they better repent or they're gonna miss out!

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

35. Yes sir, woe to all you folks doin wrong; repent, repent, cause the Lord Gods spoken on it!
36. Look here, Hes throwin out an invite to all; the arms of mercy are stretched wide, and Hes sayin: Repent, and Ill welcome ya with open arms.
37. Yes, Hes sayin: Come on over, partake of the good stuff from the tree of life; ye shall eat and drink the bread and the waters of life without cost;
38. So, come on over and do those good works, and you wont be chopped down and tossed into the fire
39. 'Cause you see, the times rollin' near, and whoever dont produce good fruit, or doesnt do those righteous deeds, well, theyre gonna have themselves a reason to howl and moan.
40. Oh you folks doin wrong; you who think too highly of yourselves with all that fancy stuff, professin' to know the good ways yet wanderin off like sheep without a shepherd, even though a shepherds been callin out for ya and still is, but you aint listenin!
41. Listen here, the good shepherds callin you; and in His own name, which is Christs, Hes callin ya; and if you dont heed the good shepherds voice, the name youre known by, well, you aint part of His flock.
42. Now if you aint His sheep, what fold are ya belongin' to? Ill tell ya what, the devils your shepherd, and youre sittin' right in his fold; and now, who can deny that? Im tellin ya, whoever denies this is a flat-out liar and a child of the devil.
43. Cause everything good comes from God, and all evil? Well thats straight from the devil.
44. So if a mans doin good works, hes listenin to the good shepherd and followin right behind Him; but anyone doin evil works? Theyre followin' the devil, and his voice leads em, too.
45. And whoever goes that route's gonna get his dues from the devil; their pay is death, only dead to all good works.
46. Now, my brothers, I want ya to hear me loud and clear; Im spillin my heart out here; and listen, Ive told ya straight so ya cant get it wrong, just as Gods commandments say.
47. Cause Im called to share this way, in the holy order of God through Christ Jesus; and Im commanded to stand here and testify to yall about what our fathers spoke concerning whats comin down the pike.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

48. And that ain't all. Do ya really think I dont know these things myself? Oh, Im here to tell ya I know theyre true. And how do I know this, you ask?

49. Well, its been made clear to me by the Holy Spirit of God. Ive fasted and prayed for many days tryin to figure these things out for myself. And now I know for sure theyre true; cause the Lord God made it clear to me by His Holy Spirit; this heres the spirit of revelation runnin through me.

50. Plus, Im tellin you that its been revealed to me that the words our fathers spoke are true, just like the spirit of prophecy is in me, the same spirit of Gods revelation.

51. I say it loud and proud, I know for sure that anything I gotta share with you 'bout whats gonna happen is true; and I know Jesus Christ is comin, yessiree, the Son, Gods Only Begotten, packed with grace, mercy, and truth. And let me tell ya, Hes here to take away the worlds sins, yes, every last one of em who truly believes in His name.

52. And now Im tellin ya, this is the deal Im called to follow, preachin to my dear brothers and sisters, and everyone sittin in this land; to share the word with all, young and old, bond and free; Im shoutin at ya to repent and be brought back to life again.

53. Yep, the Spirits speaking, sayin, Repent, all you folks out there, 'cause heavens comin soon; the Son of God is comin' in His glory, might, majesty, power, and dominion. My dear ones, I tell ya, the Spirits sayin: Behold the King of all the earths glory; and also the King of heaven's gonna shine bright among all our kind.

54. And the Spirits hollerin at me, strong as can be, sayin: Get on out there and tell these folks to repent, cause if ya ain't repentin, ya aint gettin' in the kingdom of heaven.

55. And Ill say it again, be warned, the ax is hittin at that trees root; and any tree not bearin good fruit will be chopped down and thrown in the fire, a fire that cant be put out, even an unquenchable fire. Pay attention now, 'cause the Holy One's said it.

56. So listen here, my beloved brethren, can you stand up to what Im sayin; can ya really brush it aside, trample the Holy One underfoot; can ya stay puffed up with pride in your hearts; will ya still strut around in your fancy clothes and chase after the empty things of this world and your riches?

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

57. Will ya keep on thinkin you're better than others; will ya keep messin with your brothers who've humbled themselves and follow God's true path, the path that got em into this church, purified by the Holy Spirit, bringing forth good works worthy of repentance

58. And will you keep turning your back on the poor and needy, holdin back what you could be givin?

59. And finally, all you folks who keep on livin wickedly, Im tellin ya, those are the ones wholl get chopped down and thrown into the fire unless they wake up and repent.

60. And now Im tellin ya, all yall who are eager to follow the good shepherds voice, come out from among the wicked, be separate, and dont touch their unclean stuff; cause their names will be scratched off the list, and the wicked's names will not mix with the good folks, so God's word can come true, sayin': The names of the wicked wont mingle with His peoples names;

61. Cause the names of the righteous are written in that book of life, and Im gonna give them an inheritance right at my side. Now, brethren, what do you have to say about this? Im tellin ya, if ya speak against it, it dont matter none, cause God's words gonna come true, come what may.

62. For tell me, what good shepherd lettin his flock roam doesnt keep an eye out for the wolves tryin to sneak in and snack on his sheep? And if a wolf tries to sneak in, dont he run him off? Sure does, and if he can, hell put that wolf to an end.

63. And now, Im tellin ya, the good shepherds callin you; and if youll listen to his voice, hell bring ya into his fold, and yall will be His sheep; and Hes givin ya orders to make sure no mean ol' wolf gets in there and snatches ya away, so yall wont be destroyed.

64. So I, Alma, right here, am tellin you like the one who told me, to stick to what Ive said to ya.

65. Im speakin as a command to ya who belong to the church; and to those who aint part of the church, Im givin an invite, sayin: Come and get baptized, turnin to repentance, so yall can share in the good fruit from the tree of life.

## **Alma Chapter 6**

1. Well, after Alma finished chattin' with the folks at the church in Zarahemla, he went 'n ordained them some



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

priests and elders, layin' his hands on 'em just like God wanted, to keep an eye on things and run the church right.

2. Now, if someone didnt belong to the church but felt real sorry for their sins, they'd get baptized for that repentance and then be welcomed on in.

3. But let me tell ya, if folks did belong to the church and didnt bother to repent or humble themselves before the Big Guy upstairs those who were all puffed up with pride they got kicked out, and their names got scratched off the list of the righteous.

4. So, they started settin things straight with the order of the church over in Zarahemla.

5. I want yall to know that the good word of God was out there for everyone, and nobody was kept from joinin together to listen to it.

6. Still, the children of God were told they oughta gather up often and join in some fastin' and serious prayin' for the souls of those who hadnt met the Lord yet.

7. Now, it so happened that after Alma laid down these rules, he took off from the church over in Zarahemla, crossin the river Sidon and headin into the valley of Gideon. They had a little city built there, called just that, named after a fella who met an unfortunate end at the hands of Nehor's sword.

8. So, Alma went and started tellin' the good word of God to the church set up in the valley of Gideon, followin the truth passed down from his folks, along with the spirit of prophecy stirrin inside him, and the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who was fixin to save folks from their sins, along with the holy order he was called to. And that's how its written, yall. Amen.

### **Alma Chapter 7**

1. Well, let me tell ya 'bout them words of Alma, yknow, what he spoke to the folks down in Gideon, all scribbled down by his own hand.

2. Now, this here is chapter 7.

3. Now, Christ is fixin' to be born from Mary Hes gonna break them chains of death and carry the sins of His people If yall repent, get baptized, and keep the commandments, youll be livin the eternal life Ain't no dirtiness

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

gettin' into the kingdom of God Humility, faith, hope, and good ol' charity are what y'all need. We're talkin' bout way back in 83 B.C.

4. Well, listen here, my dear brothers, seein' as I got the chance to come on over and chat with ya, Im gonna try and speak to ya in my own lingo; yep, straight from my mouth, cause this heres the first time Im talkin' to ya with my words, seein' as Ive been stuck over yonder at the judgment-seat doin' a whole lotta business and couldn't make it to y'all.

5. And I swear, I wouldn't have made it now if it weren't for somebody else takin' over that judgment business; and the Lord, in His good ol' mercy, allowed me to come see yall.

6. And let me tell ya, I rolled in here hopin and prayin' that yall had humbled yourselves before God, and that you kept askin' for His grace, that Id find you blameless before Him, not in that awful mess our brethren got themselves into over at Zarahemla.

7. But bless the name of God, Hes let me know, shoot, Im just tickled pink knowin' theyve found their way back to His righteousness.

8. And I reckon, trustin' in the Spirit of God in me, Im hopin' Ill also get to feel joy bout yall; but I dont want my joy to come from all that heartache I been feelin for the folks at Zarahemla, cause, ya see, my joy comes after swimming through a whole lotta troubles and sorrow.

9. But I trust and hope that yall ain't caught up in so much doubt like your kin; I trust yall ain't puffed up with pride in your hearts; yep, I reckon yall aint settin' your sights on money and the shiny things of this world; I trust youre worshippin the real deal, the one true livin God, and that youre lookin' forward to havin your sins wiped clean, with an everlasting faith thats comin your way.

10. For listen here, Im tellin ya theres a heap of things comin'; but theres one thing more important than all emget ready, cause the time aint far off that the Redeemers gonna be livin' and walkin among His people.

11. Now I ain't sayin' He'll be among us while He's kickin' it in that mortal body; cause I ain't had the Spirit tell me thats how its gonna go down. Now, 'bout this here matter, I ain't sure; but I do know this much, the Lord Gods got the power to do anything that lines up with His word.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

12. But heres what the Spirit did tell me, sayin': Yall better cry out to this people, sayin' You gotta repent, prepare the way for the Lord, and walk straight in His paths; cause the kingdom of heaven is near, and the Son of Gods fixin to show His face on this here earth.

13. And lookie here, Hes gonna be born of Mary, down in Jerusalem, where our forefathers were, her bein a virgina real special and chosen lady, whos gonna be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and have herself a son, yep, even the Son of God.

14. Hes gonna step out sufferin all sorts of pains and trials and temptations; and this heres how the word's gonna be fulfilled that says Hes pickin' up the pains and sicknesses of His folks.

15. And Hes takin on death, to break the bonds of death that hold His people tight; and Hes gonna take on their weaknesses, so His insides can be filled with mercy, in the flesh, so Hell understand how to help His people with their troubles.

16. Now the Spirit knows all things; but the Son of Gods sufferin in the flesh so He can carry the sins of His people and wipe out their wrongdoings by the power of His rescue; and now, listen here, this is the testimony thats in me.

17. Now Im tellin ya, ya gotta repent and be born again; cause the Spirit says if you aint born again, you cant get into the kingdom of heaven; so come on and get baptized in repentance, so yall can wash those sins away, and have faith in the Lamb of God, who takes away the sins of the world, whos strong enough to save and cleanse from all them unrighteous deeds.

18. Yep, I'm sayin' come on now, dont be scared, lay aside every sin thats got ya stuck, the ones thatre draggin' ya down to destruction; so come on, step out, and show God youre ready to turn from your sins and make a promise to keep His commandments, and witness this to Him today by goin into the baptism waters.

19. And whoever does this, and keeps Gods commandments after this here, theyll remember what Im tellin' ya, yep, theyll remember I said theyll have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit that testifies in me.

20. And now, my dear brothers, do yall believe in these things? Im tellin ya, I know you do; and how I know

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

is by the Spirit thats inside me. And now, cause yall got strong faith about this, bout what Ive been sayin, it brings me so much joy.

21. Cause like I said from the start, I really wanted yall to not be in the same pickle your brothers were, and turns out my hopes got fulfilled.

22. I can see yall are walkin' the paths of righteousness; I can see youre on the way to the kingdom of God; yep, I can tell youre makin them paths straight.

23. I see that it's been shown to ya, by the word of His testimony, that He cant walk along crooked paths; He dont change from what Hes said; He dont even have a shadow of turning left to right, or right to wrong; His course is one eternal round.

24. And He can't be livin in unholy places; ain't no filthiness or anything unclean gonna make it into the kingdom of God; so Im tellin ya, the time's gonna come, yep, itll be at the last day, when the filthy folks gonna stay in their filthiness.

25. And now, my beloved brothers, Ive told yall these things to wake you up to your duty to God, so you can walk blameless before Him, and follow the holy path of God, the one youve been received into.

26. And now I reckon y'all should be humble, and all submissive-like, gentle; easy to talk to; full of patience and long-suffering; takin it easy in all things; bein diligent bout keepin Gods commandments all the time; askin' for whatever you need, both spiritual and temporal; always thankin God for everything you do receive.

27. And make sure youve got faith, hope, and charity, and then youll always overflow in good works.

28. And may the Lord bless ya, keep your clothes clean, so at the end of the day, yall can sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets whove been around since this world got started, with your garments clean just like theirs, in the kingdom of heaven, never to leave again.

29. And now, my dear brothers, Ive spoken these words to yall according to the Spirit that testifies in me; and my soul is just holdin back joy cause of all the hard work and attention yall been givin to my words.

30. And now, may Gods peace rest on you, and your homes and land, and all your critters, and everything you own, your women and your kiddos, according to your faith and good works, from now on and forever. And

there you have it. Amen.

## **Alma Chapter 8**

1. Well now, it all started when Alma made his way back from that land called Gideon, yknow, after teachin them folks a whole mess of stuff that ain't fit to be written down, settlin' up the church just like he done before over in Zarahemla. He finally made it back to his own place in Zarahemla to kick back and rest up after all that hard work.

2. And thats how the ninth year of them judges in charge of the Nephi folks wrapped up.

3. Then, as the tenth year rolled around with them judges still runnin' things round Nephi, Alma packed up and headed on over to the land of Melek, which is on the west side of the river Sidon, right by the wilderness.

4. He started teachin the people over in Melek, followin that holy order God had laid out for him, and he wasnt shy bout spreadin the word all over the land.

5. Next thing ya know, folks started showin up from all over the place, even out by the wilderness side. They were gettin' themselves baptized all around.

6. So, after he wrapped up his business in Melek, he took off and made a three-day trek up north, endin up in a town called Ammonihah.

7. Now, it was just the way them Nephites did things, naming all their lands, towns, and even little bitty villages after the first fella who owned 'em; thats how it was with Ammonihah too.

8. Then, when Alma got to Ammonihah, he started preachin' God's word to em.

9. But let me tell ya, ol' Satan had a mighty strong grip on the hearts of them Ammonihah folks; they just wouldn't listen to what Alma was sayin'.

10. Still, Alma put in a whole heap of effort in prayer, wrestlin' with God to pour His Spirit out on those people, hopin' to get a chance to baptize em and help em repent.

11. But nah, they just stiffened up their hearts, tellin him: Well, we know who you are, Alma. Youre the high priest of that church you set up all over the place, but we ain't part of your little church, and we aint buyin into them silly traditions.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

12. They went on to say, And since we ain't part of your church, we reckon you aint got no power over us; and you handed the judgment-seat over to Nephiah, so you aint the chief judge no more.

13. Well, once they finished spoutin all that, not listenin to his words, they went so far as to revile him and spit on him, bootin' him outta their town. He took off, headin toward the city called Aaron.

14. While he was on his way there, heavy-hearted and trudgin through loads of trouble cause of them wicked people in ol' Ammonihah, wouldn't you know it, an angel from the Lord popped right up and told him:

15. Bless your heart, Alma; you best lift your head and rejoice, 'cause you got every reason to be happy. You've been a goodn keepin Gods commandments since the first message you got from Him. Yep, Im the one who brought that message to ya.

16. And the angel went on, Now Im here to tell ya to head back to Ammonihah and preach to the folks there again. Tell em, if they dont repent, the Lord Gods gonna wipe em out.

17. See, theyre studyin up right now on how to take away your folks freedom, and that dont sit right with the Lords laws and commandments.

18. Well, after ol' Alma got that message from the angel, he skedaddled right back to Ammonihah quick-like. He snuck into the city from a different route, comin' in from the south side.

19. Now, when he got into town, he was feelin a might hungry, so he asked a feller, Hey there, could ya spare a bite for a humble servant of God?

20. The man replied, Well shoot, Im a Nephite, and I reckon youre a holy prophet cause an angel told me in a vision that youd come. So, come on over to my house, and Ill share my grub with ya; I know youll be a blessing to me and my kin.

21. So the man took Alma home, and this fellers name was Amulek; he laid out some bread and meat for Alma.

22. And wouldn't ya know it, Alma ate that bread and was filled up, blessin Amulek and his family, givin thanks to God.

23. After he had eaten and was satisfied, Alma says to Amulek, Well now, Im Alma, the high priest over Gods

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

church all round these parts.

24. And he continued, Ive been called to share Gods word with all these people, reflectin' the spirit of revelation and prophecy; but I got kicked out while I was here last time and was fixin to turn my back on this land forever.

25. But lo and behold, I got the word to turn back around and prophesy to these people, callin em out for their sins.

26. And Amulek, cause ya took me in and fed me, youre mighty blessed; I was starvin, havin fasted for many days.

27. Alma hung around with Amulek for quite a spell before he hit the ground preachin to the folks.

28. And while he was at it, them people kept sinkin deeper into their wickedness.

29. Then the word came to Alma sayin, Go on, and tell my buddy Amulek to prophesy to this people, sayin Repent now, cause Im tellin ya, if ya dont, Im comin for yall in anger; I ain't holdin' back my fierce wrath.

30. So Alma went out, and Amulek too, spreadin the words of God among the folks, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

31. They were given power, so much so that they couldnt be locked up in no dungeons, nor could anyone take them down; but they didnt use their power until they was all tied up and tossed into prison. Now, that was all done so the Lord could show off His strength through em.

32. Then they took off, preachin and prophesyin' to the folks, propelled by the spirit and power the Lord had given em.

### **Alma Chapter 9**

1. The words of Alma, and also the words of Amulek, that they told to the folks livin in the land of Ammonihah. And, shoot, they got thrown in jail, but Gods miraculous power pulled em out, just like it says in Almas record.

2. Alma tells them folks in Ammonihah to straighten upThe Lords gonna show some mercy to them Lamanites in the last daysIf the Nephites turn their backs on the light, the Lamanitesll bring em downThe Son of Gods

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

comin soon Hell save those who repent, get baptized, and trust in His name. This heres round 82 B.C.

3. And again, I, Alma, got the word from God that I oughta grab Amulek and head on out to preach again to them folks in Ammonihah. So, when I started preachin, they didnt take too kindly to it, sayin:

4. Who you think you are? Ya think we gonna believe just one fellas word, even if he says the whole worlds gonna end?

5. Well, they didnt get the point of their own words; they didnt even know the world was fixin to pass away.

6. And they also said: We aint gonna believe you if you prophesy that this big ol citys gonna be wiped off the map in a single day.

7. Now, they sure didnt realize that God could pull off such amazin things, cause they were hard-headed and set in their ways.

8. And they tossed this out there: Whos God, that hed send just one man to tell us the truth bout all these big, fancy things?

9. And they stepped up to grab hold of me, but guess what? They didnt. I stood tall and told em, yeah, I boldly declared:

10. Look here, you wicked and twisted folks, how could ya forget what your daddies taught? I mean, how quick yall done forgotten the commandments of God?

11. Dont you remember when our pap, Lehi, was yanked outta Jerusalem by Gods own hand? Dont you remember how he led his people through the wilderness?

12. And have yall forgot so dang soon how many times he saved our folks from their enemies, kept em from bein wiped out, even by their own kin?

13. Yeah, if it hadnt been for His incredible power, mercy, and patience with us, wed have been wiped off this here earth long ago, maybe even sent to a never-endin misery.

14. Look, now Im tellin ya, He tells ya to repent; and if ya dont, you aint gettin into the kingdom of God. But hold on, that aint all Hes commanded ya to repent, or Hell completely wipe ya off the face of the earth; yep, Hell come at ya in His wrath, and He aint gonna hold back.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

15. Hey, yall dont remember what He told Lehi, sayin: As long as ya keep my commandments, youll be doin alright in the land? And again He said: If ya dont keep my commandments, you gonna be cut off from the Lords presence.

16. Now I want ya to remember, cause the Lamanites havent kept Gods commandments, theyre cut off from Him. Now we can see the Lords word is true, and the Lamanites have been cut off since they started messin up in the land.

17. Still, Im sayin its gonna be easier for them when the judgment day rolls around than for yall, if you stay in your sins, and even easier for them in this life than you, unless ya repent.

18. Theres a whole lotta promises for the Lamanites, cause its their daddys traditions that kept them in the dark; so the Lords gonna be kind to em and give em some extra time here.

19. And one of these days, they gonna come to believe in His word and see how wrong their daddies ways were; and many of em will be saved, cause the Lords merciful to everyone who calls on His name.

20. But listen here, if you keep up with your wickedness, your days gonna be numbered here, cause the Lamanites are gonna come for ya; and if ya dont turn around, theyll show up when you least expect it, and you gonna see total destruction, all thanks to the fierce anger of the Lord.

21. He aint gonna let ya keep livin in your sins, to wipe out His people. Im tellin ya, No; Hed rather let the Lamanites wipe out all His folks, the Nephites, if it means they fall into sins after gettin so much light and knowledge from Him;

22. Yup, after bein' the most favored folks of the Lord; after havin more blessings than any other nation, tribe, tongue, or people; after knowin everything they asked for, based on their faith and prayers, bout whats been, what is, and whats comin;

23. After bein visited by Gods Spirit; talkin to angels, hearin the Lords voice; and havin the spirit of prophecy, revelation, and lots of gifts, like speakin in tongues, preachin, the Holy Ghost, and translation;

24. Yeah, and after bein saved by God outta Jerusalem by the Lords own hand; keepin em safe from famine, sickness, and all kinds of diseases; makin em strong in battle so they wouldnt be wiped out; keepin em from

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

bondage time and time again, and theyve prospered till theyre just rich in every way

25. And now Im tellin you, if this here people, whove been blessed so much by the Lords hand, mess up and go against the light and knowledge they got, Im sayin itd be way easier for the Lamanites than for them.

26. Cause lets be real, the Lords promises go out to the Lamanites, but if you rebel, they aint for you; cause hasnt the Lord made it clear that if ya turn against Him, youll be totally wiped out from the earth?

27. So listen up, so you dont get destroyed, the Lord sent His angel to visit many of His people, tellin em they gotta go shout loudly to this crowd, sayin: Repent, cause the kingdom of heavens right around the corner;

28. And it wont be long till the Son of God comes in His glory; and His glory will be just like the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, fairness, and truth, quick to listen to the cries of His people and to answer their prayers.

29. And look, Hes comin to save those who get baptized with a change of heart, through faith in His name.

30. So, prep the way for the Lord, cause the time is near that all folksll reap what theyve sown, based on what theyve beenif theyve been good, theyll reap the salvation of their souls, thanks to Jesus Christ; and if theyve been bad, theyll pay the price for their souls, cause of the devils hold on em.

31. Now looky here, this is the angels voice, callin out to the people.

32. And now, my dear brethren, cause youre my brethren, and you oughta be loved, you gotta show some fruits fit for repentance, seein as your hearts have grown real hard against Gods word, and seein as youre a lost and fallen people.

33. Well, it came to pass that when I, Alma, spoke these words, wouldnt ya know the people got mad at me cause I called em hard-hearted and stiff-necked.

34. And they were right riled up cause I told em they were lost and fallen, and they went lookin to lay their hands on me and throw me in jail.

35. But the Lord wouldnt let em take me that time and throw me in prison.

36. Then Amulek stepped up and started preachin to em too. Now, I reckon not all of Amuleks words got written down, but some of what he said is found in this here book.

## **Alma Chapter 10**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya, Lehi come down from ManassehAmulek was 'bout to share how the angel told him to look after AlmaThem prayers from the good folks sure do keep the people safeBut those no-good lawyers and judges? They're the ones settin' up the whole mess that leads to destruction, y'know? This is all goin' on 'round '82 B.C.
2. So here's what Amulek had to say to the folks gathered 'round in Ammonihah:
3. Well, Im Amulek; my daddy was Giddonah, who got that from Ishmael, who was kin to Aminadi; and lemme tell ya, that very Aminadis the fella who could read what was writ on the temple wall by the finger of God Himself.
4. And Aminadi came from Nephi, who was Lehis boy, who made his way outta Jerusalem, comin' down from Manasseh, who was Josephs son, you know, the one who got sold off to Egypt by his brothers.
5. So, I reckon yall oughta know, Im no stranger 'round these parts; folks know me real well; I got plenty of kin and friends, and Ive wrangled up a good bit of wealth through hard work.
6. But I gotta admit, even with all that, I didnt really know much 'bout the Lord's ways or His amazing power. I thought I didnt know all that much, but shoot, I was wrong, cause I done seen plenty of His wonders, especially how He saved our lives.
7. Still, I closed off my heart, 'cause I been called many a time and just turned a deaf ear; I knew all 'bout these things, but I just wouldnt pay no mind, so I kept on fightin against God, with a hard heart, right up till the fourth day of this seventh month in the tenth year the judges were runnin things.
8. Well, as I was headin to visit some close kin, wouldnt ya know it, an angel appeared and said: Amulek, you need to head back home, 'cause you're gonna take care of a prophet of the Lord; a holy man, chosen by God; hes been fastin for days 'cause of this peoples sins, and hes hungry, so you best take him in and feed him, and hes gonna bless you and your home; the Lords blessings gonna rest on you and yours.
9. So I did what the angel said and turned back home. Lo and behold, I ran into that very man the angel told me 'boutyep, the same one whos been talkin to yall 'bout Gods stuff.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. And the angel told me hes a holy man; no doubt in my mind, 'cause thats what the angel of God said.
11. And I know for a fact, the things hes lyin on are true; so help me, as the Lord lives, He sent that angel to show me the truth; and this here Alma has been at my place while all this was goin on.
12. Cause listen here, hes blessed my home, blessed me and my women and my younguns, and my daddy and the rest of my kin; sure as shootin, the Lords blessings have been upon us just like he said they'd be.
13. Now when Amulek finished up his speech, folks started lookin surprised, seein that there wasnt just one person testifying 'bout all the stuff they was accused of, but a whole bunch who were prophesying the future.
14. Still, some of them twisted folks thought theyd trip him up and catch him sayin something wrong so they could turn him over to them judges and get em punished however they could make it stick.
15. You see, them lawyers was the ones tryin to drag em down; they was paid by the people to play judge and jury when it come time for trials.
16. Now these here lawyers were all slick in their words and actions; they knew their way around the law just enough to make it work for 'em.
17. So they started grillin Amulek, tryin to catch him out on his words, make him contradict himself.
18. But they didnt reckon that Amulek could see right through their plans. When they started up with their questions, he figured out what they was thinkin and said to 'em: Oh, yall wicked folks, yous lawyers and hypocrites, layin down the devils groundwork; yall been settin them traps to catch Gods holy ones.
19. Youre schemin to twist the righteous folks paths, bringin' Gods wrath on yourselves, leadin to the complete ruin of this people.
20. Shoot, like Mosiah our last king said when he was passin off the crown, wantin' folks to run things by their own sayin'he knew if the people chose wickedness, they'd be ripe for destruction.
21. Now Im tellin yall, the Lord knows every last bit of your wrongdoings; He aint shy in callin this people to repentHes shoutin, repent, 'cause the kingdom of heavens right at ya!
22. And yeah, Hes shoutin through His angels that: Im comin down to my people, bringin fairness and justice along with me.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

23. And listen here, if it werent for the righteous folks prayin around here, youd likely be lookin at total destruction real soon; but it wouldnt be by a flood like in Noahs time, nah, itd be by hunger, sickness, and sword fights.

24. But its them prayers from the good folks thats keepin yall safe; so if you go and kick the righteous outta your midst, the Lord aint gonna hold back, and His fierce angers gonna come down on yall; youll be hit by famine, sickness, and sword, and it wont be long if you dont turn around.

25. Now the people got real mad at Amulek, and they hollered out, sayin: This fellas dissing our laws that are right, and our smart lawyers we picked.

26. But Amulek raised his hand and called out even louder, sayin: Oh, yall wicked folks, hows Satan got such a grip on ya? Why yall lettin him blind yall to the truth in whats bein said?

27. Have I said one word against your law? Yall aint gettin it; you claimin Im against your law, but I havent spoken against it, Ive been speakin in its favor, really.

28. And now let me tell ya, the way this peoples bein brought down is through the wickedness of your lawyers and judges.

29. And when Amulek said all this, folks cried out against him, sayin: Now we know this mans a son of the devil, hes been lyin to us; hes said stuff against our law, and now hes sayin he hasnt.

30. And here he is talkin trash bout our lawyers and judges.

31. Then them lawyers decided theyd remember all this against him.

32. And there was one in the crowd named Zeezrom. He was the main one jumpin to accuse Amulek and Alma, bein one of the slickest folks of the bunch, always havin dealings with the people.

33. Now these lawyers ain't in it for nothin but to line their pockets; and they sure made sure to get a good haul for their troubles.

## **Alma Chapter 11**

1. Now, in the good ol law of Mosiah, every feller wadin in the judge business, or any who got themselves thrown into that role, was supposed to pocket some coin based on how long they worked fixin to judge folks

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

brought up before em.

2. Now if a man owed his buddy some cash, and he just up and refused to pay, well, folks went runnin to the judge complainin. Then that judge would get right to work, sendin folks out to drag that man up before him, and hed sort it out based on the law and the evidence laid out against him. So, that man had no choice but to pay up what he owed, or risk gettin' laid bare or tossed outta the community like a common thief or somethin.

3. And the judge, bless his heart, earned his pay based on his time workinthatd be a senine of gold per day, or a senum of silver, which is worth the same as a senine. And this is what the law called for.

4. Now heres the scoop on the different coins of gold and silver they had, based on what they was worth. The Nephites had their own names for it, cause they didnt go addin and measurin like them Jews down in Jerusalem; instead, they changed it up to fit their own folks brains and needs as times changed, right up until them judges took charge neath King Mosiah.

5. Now the reckonin goes like thisa senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

6. Then you got a senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

7. Now a senum of silver was worth a senine of gold, workin just fine for a measure of barley, and for any other grain too.

8. Now that seon of gold? Well, it was worth double a senine.

9. And if you ask bout a shum of gold? That one was twice what a seons worth.

10. That limnah of gold? It was worth the whole shootin' match.

11. And an amnor of silver? That one counted as two senums.

12. An ezrom of silver was worth four senums.

13. And then theres an ontiwell, it was worth more than all em put together.

14. Now heres how the little numbers shook out

15. A shiblon is half a senum; so, youd call that a shiblon for half a measure of barley.

16. And a shiblum? Thats half a shiblon.

17. Then a Leah is half of a shiblum.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. Now thats how they kept count.

19. And an antion of gold, well, that was tallied as three shiblons.

20. Now, folks was all workin just to line their pockets, since they got paid based on what they did, they stirred up a ruckus, trouble, and all kinds of wickedness, just so they could get more work and pull in that sweet, sweet cash off the cases brought to 'em; thats when they got folks riled up against Alma and Amulek.

21. And this here Zeezrom started to poke at Amulek, askin: "Can you answer me a few questions I got for ya?" Zeezrom was a slick fella, knowin all the tricks to lead folks astray, so he went on to say to Amulek: "Will ya answer the questions I throw your way?"

22. And Amulek replied: "Sure will, if it jives with the Spirit of the Lord in me; aint gonna say nothin' that goes against the Lords Spirit." Zeezrom then said: Well, lookee here, I got six onties of silver, and Ill hand em over if you deny that theres a Supreme Being.

23. Now Amulek shot back: "Oh, you child of hell, why you temptin me? Dont you know the righteous dont fall for such tricks?"

24. "Do you really think there aint no God? Im here to tell ya, no way, you know theres a God, but you love that money more than him."

25. "And youve lied before God about me. You said, Look at these six onties, theyre worth a heap, Ill give em to yabut all along you wanted me to deny my true livin God just so you could take me down. Now, for that nasty trickery, youll get whats comin to ya."

26. And Zeezrom asked him: "Youre sayin theres a true and livin God?"

27. And Amulek replied: "Yep, theres a true and livin God."

28. Then Zeezrom asked: "Is there more than one God?"

29. And Amulek said, "Nope."

30. Zeezrom tried again: "How you know all this?"

31. And Amulek answered: "An angel told me."

32. Then Zeezrom asked again: "Whos the one comin? Is it the Son of God?"

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

33. And Amulek replied, "Yep."

34. Then Zeezrom pushed further: "Is he gonna save folks while theyre still stuck in their sins?" And Amulek told him: "I declare to you, he wont, cause it just cant be that he goes back on his own word."

35. Then Zeezrom turned to the crowd: "Yall remember this here, 'cause he said theres only one God; theres talk of the Son of God comin, but he wont save folkslike hes got any right to tell God what to do."

36. And Amulek shot back at him: "Now, hold up, youve lied, cause youre sayin I spoke like I had the right to boss God around just cause I said he cant save people while theyre sittin in their sins."

37. "And Im tellin you again, he cant save em in their sins; I cant deny his word, and he says no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; so how in the world can yall expect to be saved, if you dont inherit that kingdom of heaven? Cant get saved if you stay stuck in your sins."

38. Then Zeezrom pushed him once more: "Is the Son of God the real deal, the Eternal Father?"

39. And Amulek answered him: "Yep, he sure is the very Eternal Father of heaven and earth, and everythin in em; hes the start and the finish, the first and the last;

40. And hes comin to the earth to save his people, takin on the wrongdoings of them who believe in his name; those folks are the ones wholl see eternal life, and salvation aint comin' to nobody else.

41. So the wicked are gonna stay like folks who didnt get no redemption made, except for the breakin of deaths hold; cause look here, the days comin when all folks will rise from the dead and stand before God, gettin judged on what theyve done.

42. Now, theres this kind of death we call temporal death, and the death of Christll break the hold of this here temporal death, and everybodyll stand up again from it.

43. The spirit and body gonna be put back together in their good, old form; all the limbs and joints gonna be fixed up right just like we are now; and were gonna stand before God, knowin just like we know now, and have a clear memory of all our sins.

44. Now, this here restoration is gonna come to everyone, old n young, bond n free, men n women, even the wicked and the righteous; and aint even a hair on their heads gonna get lost; everythin gonna get restored to its



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

perfect form, just like it is now, or in the body, and theyll be brought to stand for judgment before Christ the Son, God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged on what they've done, whether it was good or bad.

45. So listen close, Ive been yappin at ya bout the death of this here mortal body, and the resurrection of it too. Im tellin ya this mortal bodys gonna get raised to an immortal body, from death, right from the first death into life, so they cant die no more; spirits gonna join up with their bodies, never to be separated; makin the whole mess spiritual and immortal, so they dont see no decay.

46. Now, when Amulek wrapped up these words, folks started feelin all kinds of astonished, and Zeezrom? He was shakin in his boots. And that was the end of Amuleks words, or at least, thats all I been keepin' track of.

### **Alma Chapter 12**

1. Well now, folks, listen up. Alma's chattin it up with Zeezrom, and lemme tell ya, you gotta be faithful to get the good stuff from Godaint no other way 'round it. Were all judged by our thinkin, what we believe, the words we spit out, and the stuff we do. Folks who get all wicked-like are gonna have a rough time, and I reckon that'll hurt their spirits real bad. This life were livin? Its just a test run. Gods got a plan to get us back to where we belong, and if we got faith, we can wipe our slates clean through the Only Begotten Son. And this was back 'round 82 B.C.

2. So Alma, seein that Amulek done shut Zeezrom up tight, like a cat that ate the canary, noticed Zeezrom was shakin in his boots, guilty as a dog with two tails. Alma opened his mouth, lettin' 'er rip to back up Amulek's words and dig into the good book even deeper.

3. Now, everybody around was listenin close; the crowd was thick as molasses, and Alma said it plain as day:

4. "Now Zeezrom, looks like you got caught red-handed in your fibbin' and trickery. You ain't just lied to folks, but you've been tellin' tales to God too! And lemme tell ya, He knows every single thought you got hidin in that noggin of yours, and we got a good ol notion of what you're thinkin' cause His Spirits been lettin us in on the secret.

5. We can see you had yourself a sneaky little scheme, slicker than a greased pig, tryin' to twist up this crowd

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

against us and get em all riled up.

6. That there was a plan straight from your adversary, hes been workin' through you. Now I hope you remember this heres for everyone, not just you.

7. And I say, this here was a trap set by the adversary, tryin to catch this good ol people so he could drag you down and tie you up in chains that lead to a heap of trouble, all the way to destruction, based on how he controls folks.

8. Well, as soon as Alma laid all that out, Zeezrom was tremblin even more, realizin just how powerful God really is. He knew Alma and Amulek had a read on him, knew what he was thinkin deep down. They were given the power to see all this 'cause the Spirit sure knows how to prophesy.

9. So Zeezrom started askin' em tons of questions, wantin' to learn all he could bout the kingdom of God. He asked Alma, What in tarnation does Amulek mean when he talks bout everybody risin from the dead, the good and the bad, showin' up to be judged by God based on their actions?

10. Then Alma started explainin it all to him, clarifying: Now, a whole bunch of folks get to know the secrets of God, but there's a strict rule that says they can't spill it allonly what God chooses to share based on how much folks pay attention and hustle to understand Him.

11. So, if you harden your heart, you only get the least bit of His word; but if you keep your heart open, youll get a whole lot more, until you really get to know Gods mysteries like its the back of your hand.

12. And them folks who shut themselves off? Theyll only get a little slice of the truth til theyre blind to all the mysteries; then theyll end up bein' caught by the devil, doin' his bidding straight to ruin. Thats the chains of hell Im talkin bout.

13. Amulek laid it out clear bout death, bein raised from this livin to a whole new way of bein, standin before God to be judged by what we've done.

14. If our hearts are hard as a rock, if weve resisted the word so much that it aint in us, our states gonna be horrible, and were gonna be condemned, nothin' but a mess.

15. Every word we say's gonna turn round and bite us; our actions will bring us down; and even our thoughts

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

will stick us in the mud; in that awful condition, we wont be able to look God in the eye, wishin we could just dive into a rock pile to hide from Him.

16. But there ain't no escapin it; we gotta come out and face Him in all His glory, power, might, majesty, and dominion, and, to our everlasting shame, acknowledge that all of His judgments are right. Hes fair in all He does, full of mercy for us folks, and He can save anyone who believes on His name and shows fruit worthy of repentance.

17. And let me tell ya, theres a second death comin, a spiritual one, and if anyone dies in their sins, like in a physical death, theyre gonna find themselves spiritually dead too; theyll be lost when it comes to righteousness.

18. Then, theyll be tormented like theyre tossed in a lake of fire, flames gettin higher and higher, and theyll end up chained to everlasting destruction, cause Satans got em under his thumb.

19. Then, I reckon theyll feel like no redemption ever happened, cause Gods justice wont let em be redeemed, even if there ain't no more death.

20. Now when Alma wrapped up his speech, folks were lookin more and more stunned;

21. But there was this one feller, Antionah, a big shot among em, who popped up and asked Alma: What in the world does this mean when you say folks will rise from the dead and get changed from mortal to immortal, like the soul cant ever die?

22. Whats the deal with that scripture that says God put cherubim and a flaming sword at the east of the garden of Eden, keepin our first folks from grabbin' that fruit from the tree of life and livin forever? Seems to me that was a sure sign they couldn't live forever after all.

23. Now Alma told him: Heres what I was fixin to explain. Adam fell when he took that forbidden fruit; thats what God said, and thats why we all ended up lost and fallen.

24. Now listen here, if Adam couldve had that tree of life back then, thered be no death comin, and Gods word wouldnt count for nothin, make Him a liar'cause He said, If you eat, you surely gonna die.

25. And we see that death hits all folks, that temporal death Amulek was talkin' about; but there was a window

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

granted for man to repent; thats why this lifes a time to get ready to meet God; its our chance to prepare for that endless life after the resurrection of the dead.

26. Now, if it werent for the plan of redemption, which was set since the world was new, there wouldnt be no resurrection for the dead; but there was a plan laid down thatll make resurrection happen, just like we been talkin about.

27. And ya know, if our first parents had just gone ahead and gotten that fruit from the tree of life, theydve been miserable forever cause they wouldnt have anything to get ready for; that plan woulda gone right out the window, and Gods word wouldve been just a bunch of hot air.

28. But thank the good Lord, it aint like that; it was meant that man should die; and after that, they gotta stand before judgment, the same one we been jawin about, the end of all things.

29. And after God decided these things were gonna happen to man, He thought it was right that man oughta know what all was goin on;

30. Thats why He sent angels to talk to em, lettin 'em see His glory.

31. And from that time on, they started callin on His name; thats when God started conversin' with people and made known the plan of redemption that was set since way back when; and that was shared based on their faith and their efforts to do good.

32. So, God handed out commandments to folks, after they first messed up with the first set of rules, tryin to be like gods, knowin good from evil, puttin' themselves in a place to do what they want, whether it be good or bad

33. Thats why God laid down the law after makin known His plan for redemption, tellin em not to do bad stuff, cause the penalty for thats a second death, an everlasting death when it comes to righteousness; 'cause on such, that plan of redemption wouldnt hold any power, not with God's goodness bein supreme.

34. But God called out to folks in the name of His Soncause that was the plan of redemption, sayin: if ya repent and dont harden your hearts, Ill have mercy on ya through my Only Begotten Son;

35. So, whoever repents and doesnt stick to stubbornness, theyll lay claim to mercy through my Only Begotten

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Son, and their sinsll be wiped clean; theyll get to rest with me.

36. But whoever hardens their heart and goes down that crooked road, I swear in my fury, they aint gonna find rest with me.

37. Now, brethren, let me lay it out straight: if you harden your hearts, you aint gonna find the Lords rest; its your wrongdoing thatll tick Him off, makin Him unleash His wrath on ya just like in the first time of provocation, and itll all lead to your everlasting destruction; thats what His word says, all the way to the last death, just like the first.

38. And now, my brothers, since we know these things and theyre true, lets repent and keep our hearts soft as butter; we dont wanna make the Lord mad, bringin down His wrath on us with these second commandments He handed down; lets jump into Gods rest, which He prepared for us based on His word.

### **Alma Chapter 13**

1. Folks get called as high priests cause they got a heap of faith and doin good worksTheyre fixin to teach the commandmentsThrough livin right, they get all cleaned up and can rest easy in the LordMelchizedek was one of themAngels are spreadin good news all over the placeTheyll shout out bout the real comin of Christ. Bout 82 B.C.

2. Now, Id like yall to think back to when the Good Lord handed out them commandments to His kin; and I want ya to remember that the Lord set up priests, after His holy way, which was the way of His Son, to share these truths with the folks.

3. And those priests were set apart just like His Son, so folks would know how to look ahead to Him for their salvation.

4. And heres how it went downthey were called and ready from the very start of the world cause the Lord knew em ahead of time, cause of their great faith and good deeds; first off, they could pick good or bad; and since they picked good, showin a heap of faith, they got a holy callin, sure enough, that holy callin was part of a plan for redemption.

5. So, they got this holy callin cause of their faith, while others turned their backs on the Spirit of God cause

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

their hearts were hard and their minds were blind. If it werent for that, they coulda had the same chance as the rest.

6. In short, at first, they was on equal ground with their kin; so this holy callin was laid out from the very start for folks who wouldnt harden their hearts, thankin to the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was all set

7. And so, bein called by this holy callin, and ordained to the high priesthood of Gods holy order, theyre to teach His commandments to the children of men, so they too can find some rest

8. This high priesthood is of the same order as His Son, which has no start nor end, bein made ready from eternity to eternity, knowin all things from the get-go

9. Now they were set apart like this called with a holy callin, and ordained with a holy ordinance, takin on the high priesthood of the holy order, this callin, ordinance, and high priesthood aint got no start nor finish

10. So theyre high priests forever, just like the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who ain't got no start nor end, whos full of grace, fairness, and truth. And thats how it is. Amen.

11. Now, like I said bout the holy order or this high priesthood, there were plenty who got ordained and became high priests of God; and it was cause of their strong faith and turnin back to God, choosin to live right instead of goin to waste;

12. So they were called after this holy order, and made holy, and their clothes were washed clean in the blood of the Lamb.

13. Now, after bein made holy by the Holy Ghost, with their clothes all clean, pure as a whistle before God, they couldnt even look at sin less it made em sick; and there were a whole lot, a truly great many, who got made pure and found their peace with the Lord their God.

14. And now, my brothers, I sure hope yall humble yourselves before God, bringin forth good fruit fit for repentance, so you can enter into that peace, too.

15. Yep, humble yourselves just like the folks back in Melchizedeks day, who was also a high priest after this same order I been talkin bout, who took on the high priesthood forever.

16. And it was this same Melchizedek that Abraham forked over some tithes to; yep, even our father Abraham

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

paid one-tenth of all he had.

17. Now these ordinances were laid out like this, so people could look forward to the Son of God, bein a model of His order, so they could find forgiveness for their sins and enter into the rest of the Lord.

18. Now this Melchizedek was the king over the land of Salem; and his folks had gotten real bad, full of sin and wickedness; yep, they had all gone astray; they were knee-deep in all kinds of wrongdoing;

19. But Melchizedek, with mighty faith, took on the high priesthood according to Gods holy order, preached repentance to his folks. And guess what, they did repent; and Melchizedek brought peace to the land back in his day; thats why they called him the prince of peace, cause he was the king of Salem; and he was reignin under his daddy.

20. Now, there were others before him, and plenty after, but none shined brighter; thats why folks talk about him more than the rest.

21. Now I ain't gotta go on and on; what Ive shared is enough. Look, the scriptures are right there for ya; if you mess with em, itll be your own downfall.

22. And so it happened that when Alma had said these words to em, he reached out his hand and shouted loud, sayin: Nows the time to repent cause salvations on its way;

23. Yep, the Lords voice, through angels, is tellin it to all nations; sure nuff declares it, so they can hear some good news thatll make em joyful; yep, and Hes shoutin these glad tidings to all His folks, even to those scattered round the earth; thats how we got em comin to us.

24. And theyre bein made clear to us, plain as day, so we can get it right, specially since were wanderers in a strange land; so were mighty blessed to get these good tidings spread to us in all corners of our vineyard.

25. Cause look, angels are shoutin it to many folks right now in our land; and thats to get the hearts of the children of men ready to take in His word when He comes in glory.

26. And now were just waitin to hear the wonderful news from angels bout His comin'; cause the times comin, and we dont know how soon. I wish itd be in my time; but whether its soon or later, Ill be glad for it.

27. And itll be told to just and holy men, by angels, when He comes, so the words of our fathers can come

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

true, just as they spoke bout Him, according to the spirit of prophecy that was in em.

28. And now, my brothers, Im wishin from the bottom of my heart, with all kinds of concern even to the point of pain, that yall would listen to my words, and throw off your sins, and not put off the day of your repentance;

29. But that youd humble yourselves before the Lord, callin on His holy name, watchin and prayin all the time, so you wont be tempted more than you can handle, and bein led by the Holy Spirit, bein humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love, and long-sufferin;

30. Keepin faith in the Lord; hopin to get that eternal life; havin Gods love in your hearts always, so you can be lifted up at the end and find rest in Him.

31. And may the Lord grant you repentance, so you dont draw His wrath on yourselves, so yall wont be chained down by hell, or face the second death.

32. And Alma had plenty more to say to the folks, but it aint written in this here book.

### **Alma Chapter 14**

1. Well, it all went down like thisafter Alma finished talkin to the crowd, a bunch of em started feelin what he was sayin, turned their hearts around, and started diggin into them scriptures.

2. But most folks, they had other ideas, all fired up to get rid of Alma and Amulek; they were mad at Alma for bein so blunt with Zeezrom, and they said Amulek was just spoutin' lies against their law and the folks who ran it.

3. They were riled up at Alma and Amulek and wanted to sneak em outta the picture just 'cause those two called out their wicked ways.

4. But turns out they didnt get away with it; they tied em up good and proper and dragged em before the top judge in town.

5. The crowd went and started accusin em, claimin theyd talked smack bout the law and the lawyers and judges around there, and shouted that there was only one God, and that He was sendin His Son, though He ain't gonna save emnot that they stopped there. Folks kept blabbin all sorts of things against Alma and Amulek



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

right there in front of the chief judge.

6. Then Zeezrom was taken aback by what he heard and realized the folks had been blind to the truth cause of the lies hed been spreadin. His heart got heavy with guilt he was feelin them fires of hell creep up on him.

7. Next thing ya know, Zeezrom starts shoutin to the crowd, confessin he was guilty while those two were good as gold in Gods eyes. He began to beg for Alma and Amulek right then, but folks just scoffed and asked if hed gone and lost his mind. They spat on him and kicked him out with all the other believers who listened to Alma and Amulek, sendin' them off with rocks flyin at em.

8. They gathered up their wives, kids, and anyone who believed in the good Word and tossed em into the fire, along with their sacred scriptures, just to see em burn up.

9. Then they dragged Alma and Amulek to the place where they were gonna witness the fires burnin up those folks.

10. When Amulek caught sight of all them women and kids sufferin' in the flames, he felt torn up inside and asked Alma, How can we just stand by and watch this? So he suggested they reach out and use their God-given power to save 'em from the flames.

11. Alma put the brakes on that, sayin', I cant do it, the Spirit's holdin me back; the Lord's takin em to glory, lettin them face this fire cause their hearts are hardened. Hes gonna have a fair judgment come the end of days, and the blood of the innocent will stand up and shout against them.

12. Amulek then piped up, Hold up now, what if they decide to burn us too?

13. And Alma replied, Well, if its in the Lords plan, then thats what itll be. But look here, our work aint done yet, so I dont reckon theyll be burnin us just yet.

14. Now as all those who got thrown in the fire was reduced to ashes along with the scriptures, the chief judge came struttin in to have a word with Alma and Amulek, who were still tied up tight. He slapped em on the cheeks and asked, "Well, after seein all this, yall still think you can preach to these folks about bein tossed into a lake of fire?

15. Dontcha see? You aint got the power to save those folks from the flames, and neither does God save em

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

for followin' you. Then the judge smacked em again and demanded, What you gotta say for yourselves?

16. Now this judge was one of them Nehor types, the same crowd that took Gideon out.

17. Alma and Amulek didnt say a word, so the judge slapped em again, handin em over to the guards to be tossed in prison.

18. Three days tied up in that cell, then a whole buncha lawyers, judges, priests, and teachers from the Nehor camp came by to see em, throwin all sorts of questions at em, but they kept their lips shut.

19. The judge stood back up and declared, Why yall ain't answerin' what these people are sayin? Dont ya know I can throw you into the flames? Speak up! But he got nothin in return.

20. Then the judge left only to return the next day, smacking them again. Plenty other folks showed up too to slap em and yell, "You gonna judge us again and throw our law under the bus? If youre so powerful, why can't ya rescue yourselves?

21. They kept up their yammerin, gnashin their teeth and spittin on em, askin, How we gonna look when we get thrown into hell?

22. And they kept throwin' all sorts of insults at em for days on end, holdin out food and keepin em thirsty, takin away their clothes til they was bare-naked. There they were, all tied up tight and stuck in that prison.

23. It went on like that for a while, until the twelfth day rolled around in the tenth month of the judges reign over Nephi, when the chief judge and a host of Nehors crew strutted back into the prison to where Alma and Amulek were all bound up.

24. The judge stood right smack in front of em and slapped em again, sayin, If you got God's power, untie yourselves, and maybe then we'll believe what youre preachin about this people bein destroyed.

25. So the whole bunch laid hands on em, kept sayin' the same ol' thing till the last one said his piece. But at that point, the power of God kicked in for Alma and Amulek, and they stood up strong.

26. Alma hollered, Lord, how long we gotta take this kinda punishment? Give us the strength we need cordin to our faith in Christ, and get us outta here! They broke the ropes, and when folks saw that, they took off runnin in a panic cause they knew doom was closin in on em.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

27. Well, them folks were so scared they hit the dirt, forgettin about that prison door; the ground shook like a bull, and the prison walls came crashin down, takin the chief judge and all those lawyers, priests, and teachers whod been givin Alma and Amulek a hard time.

28. Alma and Amulek walked right outta that prison, unscathed; the Lord had given em power cause of their faith in Christ. They stepped outta that prison, the ropes gone, and the whole prison crumbled down, leavin no soul alive in there but em two, and they made their way back into the city.

29. Once the crowd heard that ruckus, they came runnin in all directions to figure out what was goin on. When they laid eyes on Alma and Amulek comin outta the prison, with the walls all fallen, they were struck with a fear so great they ran off like a scared goat with her kids from two hungry lions; so thats how they fled from Alma and Amulek.

### **Alma Chapter 15**

1. Well, it so happened that Alma and Amulek was told to skedaddle outta that city; so they packed up and made their way over to Sidom; and lo and behold, they found all them folks that had split from Ammonihah, who'd been thrown out and stoned, 'cause they had faith in what Alma was spoutin'.

2. They started tellin' those folks all about what had gone down with their wives and kiddos, and the troubles they faced, all about how they got outta those pickle jars.

3. Now, Zeezrom was laid up sick in Sidom, burnin' up with a fever that came from the heavy load on his mind 'bout his bad deeds, cause he thought Alma and Amulek were gone for good; figured they'd been taken out 'cause of his own misdeeds. And boy oh boy, that guilt and all his other sins was eatin' away at him till he was feelin mighty low, with no way to ease that burn.

4. When Zeezrom got wind that Alma and Amulek were in Sidom, his heart started feelin a bit braver; he sent a message real quick, askin for 'em to come see him.

5. So they took off right away, heedin' that call, and hit the road straight to Zeezrom's place; they found him laid out on his bed, feelin real rough with that nasty fever; and his mind was just as beat up from all those wicked ways; when he spotted them, he reached out his hand and begged 'em to heal him.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

6. Alma looked at him, took his hand, and asked: "Do ya believe in the power of Christ to save ya?"
7. Zeezrom replied with a Yup, I believe all them teachings you've been givin.
8. Then Alma said: "Well, if ya believe in Christs redemption, ya can be healed."
9. Zeezrom answered: "Yep, Im all in with what you said."
10. Then Alma lifted his voice up to the Lord, sayin': "Oh Lord our God, show some mercy on this fella, and heal him cordin to his faith in Christ."
11. Just as Alma got them words out, Zeezrom jumped up on his feet and started walkin; folks couldnt believe their eyes; news of this miracle spread all over Sidom quicker than a wildfire.
12. Then Alma dunked Zeezrom in the water for the Lord; from that moment on, Zeezrom started preachin to the good people.
13. Alma set up a church right there in Sidom, ordained some priests and teachers, so they could baptize anyone hankerin to join in.
14. And let me tell ya, folks came a-flockin' in from all around Sidom, eager to get baptized.
15. But over in Ammonihah, those folks were still hard-headed and stubborn as mules; they just wouldnt fess up to their sins, givin' all the credit for Alma and Amuleks power to the devil, cause they followed Nehor's ways, not buyin' into the whole repentin' thing.
16. Then Alma and Amulek made their way back, with Amulek leavin behind all his gold, silver, and fancy stuff in Ammonihah, choosin the word of God over it, gettin shunned by all his old pals, his daddy, and kinfolk.
17. So, after Alma set up shop with the church at Sidom and saw a big ol shift in folks hearts, seein' them startin to humble themselves before God, gatherin up to worship at their altars, prayin' hard to be saved from the devil, death, and all that ruin
18. Alma saw all this unfold, and he took Amulek with him to Zarahemla, took him right into his own home, helped him through his troubles, and gave him strength from the Lord.
19. And that, my friends, was the end of the tenth year of them judges callin the shots over the Nephite folks.

## **Alma Chapter 16**

1. Well, it happened that in the eleventh year of them judges runnin' things for the folks of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there was just a whole lotta peace in good ol' Zarahemla. Ain't been no wars or fussin for quite a spell, till, on that same fifth day, a ruckus of war was hollered all over the land.
2. Now, lemme tell ya, the armies o' them Lamanites come sneakin' in from the wilderness side, headin' right for Ammonihah, and they started takin' folks out and messin' up the city good.
3. Well, before the Nephites could whip up a decent army to push them Lamanites right on out, they done wrecked the poor folks in Ammonihah and grabbed some more folks 'round Noah too, takin' 'em off into the wild.
4. Now, the Nephites were fixin' to rescue those who got carried away into the wilderness, you see.
5. So the chief captain of the Nephite armyhis name was Zoram, and he had two younguns, Lehi and Ahawell, Zoram and his boys, knowin' that Alma was the priest in charge of the church, and hearin he had the spirit of prophecy, went to him to ask where the good Lord wanted em to go lookin' for their kinfolk snatched by them Lamanites.
6. And sure enough, Alma asked the Lord about it. Then he come back and said: "Listen here, them Lamanites are gonna cross the river Sidon down south, way beyond Manti. Yall gonna meet em on the east side of that river, and thats where the Lordll hand over your kin who got took by them Lamanites."
7. So Zoram and his boys packed it up and crossed that river Sidon with their army, marchin on out beyond Manti into the southern wilderness, which was on the east side of that river.
8. Then they stumbled on them Lamanites, who was scatterin and runnin off into the wild; they wrangled their captured kin back, and bless your heart, not a single one had been lost in all that mess. They brought em back to their own lands.
9. And thats how the eleventh year of those judges wrapped up, with them Lamanites kicked outta the land, and the folks in Ammonihah all wiped out; yep, every last one of them Ammonihahites was gone, and so was their mighty city they thought couldnt be put to ruin by no one.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. But lo and behold, in just one day it was left lookin sad and empty; and the scavengers, like dogs and wild critters, were havin a feast on the remains.

11. But after many days, their bodies piled up on the ground, covered up just a little. And it smelled so bad that folks didnt wanna go movin into Ammonihah for many years. They started callin it the Desolation of Nehors, 'cause thats who got killed there, and their lands was left in ruin.

12. And those Lamanites didnt come back to stir up any trouble for the Nephites till the fourteenth year of them judges bein in charge. So for three whole years, the Nephites enjoyed some real good peace across the land.

13. Alma and Amulek hit the road preachin repentance in their temples, sanctuaries, and synagogues, just like them Jews doin it.

14. And all who wanted to listen to em, well, they got the good word of God shared with em, no favorites played, just keepin at it all the time.

15. So Alma, Amulek, and a whole lotta others who were picked for the job went out preachin the good word all over the place. The church spread out, takin root all 'round the lands and among the people of Nephi.

16. Now there wasnt any rich or poor among em; the Lord poured out His Spirit all over, settin up the minds and hearts of folks to be ready to take in the word theyd be taught when He showed up

17. So they wouldn't harden their hearts to it, be all doubtful, and end up in a heap of trouble, but instead take the word with gladness, just like a branch bein grafted into the true vine, and find some rest in the Lord their God.

18. Now them priests that went out among the folks were preachin against all them lies and deceits, envies, fights, and mean things like robbin, murderin, cheatin on their spouses, and all sorts of wickedness, shoutin that these shenanigans just ain't right

19. Talkin about stuff that was comin soon; yep, preachin about the Son of God and His sufferin, death, and the resurrection of the dead.

20. Lots of folks was curious bout where the Son of God was gonna show up, and they was taught hed come to

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

em after he rose from the grave; and boy howdy, they heard that with joyful hearts.

21. And after the church got settlin down nicely all over the land beatin the devil and preachin the pure word of God everywhere, with the Lord showerin' blessings on the people thus wrapped up the fourteenth year of them judges runnin the folks of Nephi.

### **Alma Chapter 17**

1. Well, lemme tell ya 'bout the sons of Mosiah, who figured they didn't need no kingdom cause they had somethin better the good word of God. So, they packed their bags and headed on up to Nephi to preach to them Lamanites, goin' through a heap of troubles but gettin' delivered, all according to the records of Alma.

2. Now, them sons of Mosiah were filled with the spirit of prophecy and all that fancy revelation stuff. They all split up to spread the good word to the Lamanites. Ammon took off to the land of Ishmael and started servin' King Lamoni. And let me tell ya, Ammon did more than just serve he saved that king's sheep and took care of them bad guys by the water there at Sebus. This was around 77 B.C., y'all; the years keep shiftin' about like a tumbleweed in the wind, goin back to 91ish.

3. Now, heres the deal: as Alma was headin' on down south from Gideon to Manti, he stumbled right onto the sons of Mosiah makin' their way to Zarahemla, and boy, was he surprised.

4. Turns out, he knew them boys from the first time the angel showed up and scared him silly. Seeing his brothers again brought him so much joy, and on top of that, they was still his brothers in the Lord! They were strong in the truth, understandin' the holy scriptures like nobody's business.

5. But wait, theres more they spent a lotta time prayin and fastin. 'Cause of that, they got the spirit of prophecy and revelation, and when they preached, they preached with real power and Gods authority.

6. For 14 long years, they was preachin' the good word to those Lamanites, and lemme tell ya, they had some success in bringin' folks to the truth. Many souls were called before Gods altar to confess their sins, all because of the power of their words.

7. Now, heres how it went while they was travelin': they had their share of trials, sufferin through hunger, thirst, weariness, and a heap of spiritual labor.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

8. They set out on their journeys after tellin their dad, Mosiah, goodbye in the first year of the judges. They passed up the whole kingdom business their dad wanted to give em, and thats how the folks thought too.
9. So, they took off from Zarahemla, packin' their swords, spears, bows, arrows, and slingshots, all so they could gather up grub while wanderin' in the wild.
10. And off they went into the wilderness with the folks they had picked, headin to Nephi to preach the good word of God to the Lamanites.
11. They spent many a day wanderin' in the wild, prayin' and fastin' hard, hopin the Lord would share some of His spirit with em so they could help bring their Lamanite brothers back to the truth and show 'em how wrong those old traditions of theirs had been.
12. Then the Lord showed up and comforted em, lettin 'em know everything was gonna be alright.
13. He told em, "Go on now, spread my word to yer brethren, but you gotta be patient through all the hard times. Show em good examples of me, and Ill use ya to save many souls."
14. And hot dang, them sons of Mosiah got the courage to go tell them Lamanites what God had to say.
15. When they rolled up to the edges of Lamanite land, they split up, hopin to meet again when the harvest was done, thinkin the work they was up to was mighty important.
16. And goodness, it was a big ol' task! They was fixin to preach to a wild, rough bunch who loved nothin' more than to kill those Nephites and take their stuff. These folks had their hearts set on riches more than hard work, always hopin' to get it by plunderin' and murderin'.
17. In fact, they were a lazy bunch, many of 'em worshippin' idols, and Gods curse had come down on em 'cause of their folks traditions, yet the Lord was still willin' to extend His promises to em if theyd just repent.
18. Thats why the sons of Mosiah took on the job hopin they could lead em to repentance and show em the plan for redemption.
19. So, they split up, one by one, each man goin out solo, with the word and power of God givin em strength.
20. Now Ammon was the top dog of the group, givin' em all a blessin before he took off to do his own thing, and thus they went their own ways across the land.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. Ammon found himself in the land of Ishmael, named after Ishmaels kids, who turned out to be Lamanites too.
22. Well, when Ammon stepped into Ishmael, those Lamanites grabbed him up and tied him, just like they did with all the Nephites who fell into their hands, takin em to the king. The king had all the say-so to do whatever he wanted with 'em kill em, keep em captive, toss em in jail, or kick em outta his land.
23. So, there he was, brought before King Lamoni, who ruled over Ishmael; he was a descendant of Ishmael too.
24. The king asked Ammon if he wanted to stick around in Lamanite land with em or not.
25. Ammon replied, You bet I wanna hang out with this people for a spell; maybe even til I take my last breath.
26. Well, the king was mighty pleased and had Ammons ropes cut loose. He even offered him one of his daughters for a wife!
27. But Ammon turned him down, sayin', No way, Im just gonna be your servant. So, Ammon became a straight-up servant to the king and was put in charge of mindin Lamoni's flocks, just like the other Lamanites.
28. After Ammon had been servin the king for three days, he was with the Lamanites takin the flocks for a drink at the water of Sebus, where all the Lamanites brought their flocks.
29. Well, while they was there, a pack of Lamanites who had already watered their sheep came over and started scatterin Ammons and the kings flocks, causin 'em to skedaddle off in all directions.
30. The kings servants started mumblin, Uh oh, the king is gonna be real mad at us for losin the sheep he entrusted us with! They cried, Our flocks are already scattered!
31. Now they was scared, shakin in their boots! But Ammon, he saw their panic and felt a swell of joy in his heart. He thought, Im gonna show these fellas the power I've got in bringin those flocks back to the king and win their trust.
32. And then Ammon had a good thinkin session, watchin his brethren sufferin through their troubles.
33. He perked em up with some sweet talk, sayin, Fellows, dont lose hope! Lets go hunt down them flocks and

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

bring em back to the water! Well save 'em for the king, and he won't take our heads!

34. So they took off chasin after the scattered flocks, followin Ammon, runnin fast as they could to round em up and bring 'em back to the water.

35. Now them Lamanites were poised to scatter the flocks again, but Ammon hollered at his companions, Circle the flocks so they dont run away, and Ill go wrestle with these fellas causin' the trouble!

36. And they did just that, followin Ammons lead, while he squared up to the ones who were messin around by the waters of Sebus, and there were a whole heap of em.

37. They didnt think twice about goin' after Ammon, reckonin one of their own could take him down, not realizin the Lord had told Mosiah He was gonna deliver his sons from harm. They didnt know nothin' 'bout the Lord, so they just reveled in makin' mischief against their brethren, scatterin the kings sheep like it was a Saturday mornin picnic.

38. But Ammon wasnt havin none of it. He took his sling and started flingin them stones, hittin a good many of em. They soon got astonished by his strength, yet anger boiled in their hearts for their fallen companions, and they were determined to take him down, comin at him with clubs when they couldnt hit him.

39. Well, every time one of 'em swung a club at Ammon, he just cut their arms right off with his sword! He took their hits, knockin their arms clean off, causin em to be so startled they started backin off like roaches when the lights come on. They was thick in number, but he sent em runnin with the strength he had.

40. Now, out of six that he hit with his sling, he only ended up slayin their leader with his sword, but he hacked off a good many arms that came after him, and it sure was a sight to see.

41. After he chased em off far enough, he went back to water the kings flocks and brought em safely back to pasture. Then he headed into the kings presence, showin' off the arms he had smitten off those who tried to take him out, servin as proof of what he had done.

## **Alma Chapter 18**

1. Well, it all went down that King Lamoni got his folks together to stand up and tell 'em all the wild stuff they had seen 'bout what had been goin on.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. And once they all shared their tales bout what theyd seen, the king learned how faithful Ammon was in keepin his flocks safe, and how tough he was when folks tried to take him down. The king was just amazed and said, "Goodness gracious, this ain't just any ol man. Aint this the Great Spirit causin a ruckus with all these punishments 'round here 'cause of them murders?"

3. Well, his folks piped up and said, "King, we ain't sure if hes the Great Spirit or just a fella, but what we know is that he cant be killed by your enemies, and they cant scatter your sheep when hes around, cause hes got skills and strength. So we reckon hes a friend of yours. And shoot, we dont think no human can pack that much power, cause he sure aint easy to take down."

4. Now when the king heard all that, he was like, "Well, I reckon that must be the Great Spirit; Hes here right now to keep yall safe, cause I ain't about to go after you like I did your kin. This is that Great Spirit our ancestors talked about."

5. Now, this whole deal about the Great Spirit was somethin King Lamoni got from his daddy. Even though they believed in him, they thought everything they did was hunky-dory; but still, Lamoni started to get real nervous, thinkin maybe he messed up by killin his servants.

6. Cause, see, he had took out a whole bunch of em cause their kin had scattered the sheep by the water hole; and so, since the sheep went all over the place, he went ahead and killed em.

7. Now, them Lamanites had a habit of hangin by the waters of Sebus, scatterin sheep around, tryin to drive em away to their own land, it was just what they did when they was plunderin.

8. And so King Lamoni asked his folks, "Hey, where's that fella with the crazy power?"

9. And they told him, "Well, hes tendin to your horses. Now, before all this sheep-watering stuff, the king had told his crew to get the horses and chariots ready, 'cause they was supposed to take him to Nephi for a big ol feast set by Lamonis daddy, who ruled over the whole place."

10. So when King Lamoni found out Ammon was gettin his horses and chariots ready, he was just floored by how faithful Ammon was, sayin, "I tell ya, I ain't seen a single one of my servants as loyal as him; he even remembers all my orders and gets em done."

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

11. "I just know this must be the Great Spirit, and I really want him to come see me, but I ain't got the guts to ask."

12. Then Ammon had everything ready for the horses and chariots for the king and his crew, and he walked in to see the king lookin different, so he kinda thought he might wanna step back out again.

13. But one of the king's guys said to him, "Rabbanah," which means mighty king, thinkin kings oughta be powerful; and he told Ammon, "Rabbanah, the king wants you to stick around."

14. So Ammon turned back to the king and asked, "What can I do for ya, O king?" But the king sat there all quiet for an hour cause he wasnt sure what to say back.

15. Then Ammon tried again, sayin, "What is it you want from me?" But the king still didnt say a peep.

16. Ammon, filled with the Spirit of God, figured out what was on the king's mind. He said, "Is it cause you heard I defended your servants and flocks, and took down seven of your foes with my sling and sword, and chopped off the arms of some others to keep your sheep and folks safe? Is that whats got you all wonderin'?"

17. "Im askin ya, whats got ya so curious? Look here, Im just a man and your servant; whatever you need thats right, Ill do it for ya."

18. Now when the king heard this, his jaw dropped again, how Ammon could read his mind and all; but still, he managed to ask, "Who are ya? Are ya that Great Spirit who knows everything?"

19. Ammon replied, "Nah, that ain't me."

20. And the king said, "How do you know whats rollin around in my heart? Speak up, tell me the truth about all this; and while youre at it, spill how you took out my folks who scattered the sheep

21. And look, if you can tell me how you did all this, whatever you want, Ill give ya; and if ya need it, Ill protect ya with my army; but I know youre stronger than every last one of em, still, you just holler what you want from me, and its yours."

22. Now, Ammon, real smart but gentle, said to Lamoni, "Now listen here, if I tell ya how I do what I do, you gonna pay attention to my words? Thats what Im hopin for."

23. The king shot back, "Sure enough, Ill believe everthing you say." And just like that, he was walkin' right

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

into Ammons trap.

24. Then Ammon got bold and asked him, "Do you believe theres a God?"

25. The king replied, "I ain't got a clue what that means."

26. Then Ammon pressed on, "Do ya reckon there's a Great Spirit?"

27. And the king said, "Yup."

28. And Ammon shared, "Well, thats God. Now let me ask ya again, do you believe that this Great Spirit, who is God, made all the stuff in heaven and earth?"

29. And he said, "Yeah, I reckon He created everything here on earth, but I dont know bout the heavens."

30. Ammon told him, "The heavens is where God hangs out with all His holy angels."

31. And King Lamoni asked, "Is that up above the earth?"

32. Ammon responded, "Yep, and He looks down at all of us down here; He knows all the thoughts and whats in our hearts cause He made us all from the get-go."

33. Then King Lamoni said, "I believe every word you just said. You been sent from God, aint ya?"

34. Ammon said, "Im just a man; and man was made in Gods image, and Im called by His Holy Spirit to teach yall whats right and true;

35. And part of that Spirit lives in me, givin me knowledge and power cordin' to my faith and what I want from God."

36. So after Ammon splained all this to him, he started way back at the beginning of the world, talkin bout Adam and all that stuff, and laid out everything bout the fall of man, plus shared all the records and holy scriptures from their folks, right up to the time when Lehi split Jerusalem.

37. And he went on to tell 'em (it was for the king and his crew) all the travels of their fathers in the wilderness, and all the hard times they had with hunger and thirst, and the struggles and whatnot.

38. He also talked about Laman and Lemuel and those Ishmael boys, yeah, he spilled all the drama about their rebellions, and explained all the records and scriptures desde Lehis departure to now.

39. But hang on, this aint all; he also laid out the whole plan of redemption prepared from the worlds

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

foundation; plus, he mentioned Christs coming, and shared all the work the Lords done with em.

40. And it turns out after he laid all that on the king, the king just believed everything he said.

41. And he started callin' out to the Lord, "O Lord, be merciful; according to all that love youve shown to the Nephites, show some on me and my people!"

42. And right after sayin that, he just fell flat on the ground, lookin' dead as a doornail.

43. And then his servants picked him up and carried him to his wife, layin him on the bed; and he looked dead for two days and two nights, and his wife and kids were all beside themselves, mournin like the Lamanites do, really grievin for him.

### **Alma Chapter 19**

1. Well now, it happened that after two long days and nights, they were fixin' to take his body and lay it down in a grave they had made up for buryin' their dead folks.

2. Now the queen had caught wind of Ammon's fame, so she sent out a call for him to come on over.

3. So, Ammon did what he was told and went on in to see the queen, askin' her what she needed him to do.

4. She told him: "My husbands folks have let me know youre a prophet of the good Lord, an' you got the power to do some mighty works in His name;

5. So if it's all true, I reckon you oughta go check on my husband, 'cause hes been laid up in bed for two days and nights now; some folks say he ain't dead, but others say he is and hes startin to stink, and should be put in the grave; but as for me, well, he dont smell like nothin' to me."

6. Well, this was just what Ammon was itchin' to do, 'cause he knew King Lamoni was under God's power; the dark fog of disbelief was lifted from his mind, and that glorious light of Gods goodness was shinin in thereyep, that light had filled him with so much joy, pushin' away all that darkness, and the light of everlasting life was burnin' bright in his soul, bless his heart; he knew it had overwhelmed his natural self, and he was caught up in God

7. So, what the queen wanted from him was all he desired. He went on in to see the king just like the queen wanted him to; and he saw the king, knowin' right then he wasnt dead.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

8. He told the queen: "He ain't dead, just sleepin' in God, and come tomorrow, hell be back up again; so dont go buryin' him."

9. Then Ammon asked her: "Do ya believe this?" She replied: "I aint had no proof except your word and what our folks say; still, I reckon itll be just like you said."

10. And Ammon said to her: "Youre mighty blessed cause you got such a strong faith; I tell ya, lady, there ain't been faith like yours among all the Nephites."

11. Well, it came to pass that she kept a watch over her husbands bed, from that time until the next mornin' when Ammon had said he'd rise up.

12. Sure enough, he got up, just like Ammon said; and as he rose, he reached out his hand to the woman, sayin': "Blessed be the name of God, and youre blessed too."

13. For as sure as youre breathin, look here, I seen my Redeemer; and Hes gonna come out, born of a woman, an Hell save all folks who believe in His name. Now, when he said that, his heart felt like it was about to burst, and then he sunk back down with joy; and the queen fell down too, overtaken by the Spirit.

14. Now Ammon, seein' the Spirit of the Lord all poured out cause of his prayers over the Lamanites, his kinfolk whod caused so much heartache among the Nephites, he dropped to his knees, pourin' out his heart in prayer and thanks to God for what He'd done for his folks; he was feelin overjoyed too, and all three of em just ended up fallin' to the ground.

15. Then, when the king's servants noticed they had all fell down, they started cryin' out to God, cause the fear of the Lord hit em too, since they was the ones who had stood before the king and told him about Ammon's great power.

16. So, they started shoutin' on the name of the Lord with all their might, until they all fell to the ground, except for one woman from the Lamanites named Abish, who had been converted to the Lord for many years, thanks to a wild vision her daddy had

17. Having been turned to the Lord and never told nobody, she saw all them servants of Lamoni had tumbled to the ground, and her queen and the king, and poor Ammon layin' flat out, she knew it was the power of God;

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

and thinkin' this was her chance to let folks know what was goin' on, she figured that showin em this scene would make em believe in Gods power, so she took off runnin' from house to house spreadin the word.

18. They started gatherin at the king's house. A whole crowd showed up, and much to their shock, they seen the king, the queen, and their servants all laid out like they was dead; and they clocked Ammon too and realized, he was a Nephite.

19. Now folks started gettin all mixed up talkin among themselves; some complained it was some terrible trouble that had come upon em, or on the king and his folks, since he let the Nephite stay in the land.

20. But others scolded em, sayin': "The king done brought this trouble on himself, cause he killed his servants who had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus."

21. And them men who had been at Sebus, scatterin' the king's flocks, was mad at Ammon for all the kin hed taken down over there while protectin the kings sheep.

22. Now, one of 'em, whose brother had been taken down by Ammon, was fit to be tied with anger, pulled out his sword, and went after Ammon tryin to take him out; but as he lifted his sword up to strike him, down he went, dead as a doornail.

23. Now, we can see Ammon just couldnt be harmed, cause the Lord had said to Mosiah, his daddy: Ill protect him, just like youve got faith. So Mosiah put his trust in God for Ammon.

24. And it came to pass that when the crowd saw that fella drop dead whod tried to take out Ammon, fear swept over 'em, and they didnt dare touch Ammon or any of the ones who had fallen; they started marvelin again at what in the world could be the cause of this great power, and what all this commotion could mean.

25. Well, there was plenty among em sayin Ammon was the Great Spirit, while others said he was sent by that same Great Spirit;

26. But others rebuked all that, claimin he was just a monster sent by the Nephites to torment em.

27. Then some said Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to mess with em cause they was bein sinful; that the Great Spirit had always been lookin out for the Nephites, deliverin' them from all their troubles; and they said it was that Great Spirit who had wiped out so many of their own kin, the Lamanites.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

28. And so, the arguments got real heated-like among em. While they was all fussin', that woman servant who got the crowd together came back, and when she saw the fussin goin on, she felt awful sad, startin' to tear up.

29. Then she went over and took the queen by the hand, hopin' to lift her up from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand, she popped right up and stood on her feet, cryin out loud: "O blessed Jesus, who saved me from a terrible hell! O blessed God, have mercy on these folks!"

30. When she said that, she clasped her hands with joy, chattin a whole lot of words nobody could make heads or tails of; and when she was done, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and lo and behold, he got right up and stood on his feet.

31. And he, seein' the ruckus among his folks, stepped on out and started scoldin' them, teachin' em the words hed heard from Ammon; and all who listened believed and turned to the Lord.

32. But there were plenty who wouldnt hear a word he said; so they just wandered off.

33. And it came to pass that when Ammon got up, he also went to minister to em, just like all the servants of Lamoni did; and they all told the people the same ol' thingthat their hearts had been changed; that they didnt want to do no more wrong.

34. And lots declared to the folks that they had seen angels and had talked to em; and so they was tellin 'em the stuff about God and His goodness.

35. Then it came to pass that many believed what they said; and just as many who believed got baptized; and they turned into a righteous people, set up a church among em.

36. And thats how the Lords work got rollin among the Lamanites; thus the Lord started pourin out His Spirit on em; and we see His hand reachin out to all wholl repent and believe in His name.

## **Alma Chapter 20**

1. Well, it all started when them folks got themselves a church in that part of the world, and King Lamoni was hopin Ammon would tag along with him to Nephi to introduce him to his daddy.

2. Then the good Lord spoke to Ammon, sayin: "You best steer clear of Nephi, 'cause that kings fixin to hunt you down; youre better off headin to Middoni, cause your brother Aaron, along with Muloki and Ammah, are

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

sittin in the pokey."

3. When Ammon heard this news, he turned to Lamoni and said: "Hey now, my brother and the others are stuck in Middoni, and Im fixin to go free em."

4. Lamoni looked at Ammon and said: "Well, shoot, I reckon with the Lords strength, you can do anything. But hey, Im comin with you to Middoni, 'cause the king there, name of Antiomno, is a pal of mine; Ill sweet-talk him into lettin your brothers out of jail. Now, tell me, who clued you in on your brothers bein in prison?"

5. Ammon replied, "Aint nobody told me but God; He said to meGet on over there and free your brothers, cause theyre stuck in the slammer over in Middoni."

6. Well, Lamoni heard that and got his helpin hands busy gettin' the horses and chariots ready.

7. Then he told Ammon: "Lets hit the road to Middoni together, and Ill have a word with the king to get your brothers sprung."

8. So as Ammon and Lamoni were makin their way, they crossed paths with Lamonis daddy, the big cheese over the whole shebang.

9. And Ole King Lamoni asked him: "What in tarnation made yall miss the feast when I threw a big ol party for my sons and folks?"

10. He went on to say: "Where ya headin' with this Nephite fella, huh? Hes one of them children of a liar, aint he?"

11. Lamoni, not wantin to ruffle any feathers, told his daddy all bout where they were off to and why he didnt show up to that feast.

12. When Lamoni finished spillin the beans, surprise, surprisehis daddy was hotter than a pepper sprout, and he said: "Lamoni, you goin to rescue them Nephites, children of a liar? Look, that fella robbed our kin, and now them younguns are back messin with us, trying to snow us and swipe our stuff again."

13. Then King Lamoni ordered: "You best take Ammon out back and take care of him with a sword. And dont you dare go to Middoni; you get your rear back to Ishmael with me."

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. But Lamoni replied, "No way, I aint takin out Ammon, and Im not goin back to Ishmael; Im headin to Middoni to free Ammons brothers, cause I know theyre stand-up guys and true prophets of the Almighty."

15. When Lamonis daddy heard that, he was hotter than a two-dollar pistol and pulled his sword, lookin' to take his son out himself.

16. But Ammon stepped up and said: "Now hold on there, you cant be layin a hand on your son; but truth be told, itd be better he take a fall than you, since hes turned his heart around. If you throw a fit and fall right now, ain't nothin gonna save your soul."

17. He continued, "You really oughta hold back; if you take out your innocent son, his bloodll be callin for vengeance from the good Lord, and who knows, you might just lose your own soul in the process."

18. When Ammon shared that, the king answered back, "I know if I go takin my son out, its innocent blood Im spillin; youre the one whos lookin to end him."

19. So he reached out to take care of Ammon. But Ammon held his ground, deflectin the blows and knockin the kings arm so he couldnt hardly lift it.

20. When the king realized Ammon couldve laid him low, he started beggin Ammon to spare his own life.

21. But Ammon raised his sword and told him: "Listen here, Ill take you down unless you agree to let my brothers outta prison."

22. The king, scared stiff for his own hide, said: "If you let me live, I swear Ill give ya whatever you ask, even half the kingdom, you hear?"

23. When Ammon spotted that the old king was givin in, he said: "Alright, if youll let my brothers outta jail, and let Lamoni keep his kingdom, and none of y'all fuss about it, then I wont take your life; but otherwise, Im fixin to bring you down."

24. Once Ammon said that, the king started to feel mighty relieved bout still bein alive.

25. Then when he realized Ammon wasnt out for blood, and saw the good heart he had for Lamoni, he was flabbergasted and said: "Since this is all you wantedto let your brothers go and keep my son Lamoni in chargewhy, Ill agree to that! He can keep his throne for as long as time lasts, and I wont get in his way no

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

more."

26. And he added, "Ill also agree to let your brothers outta the slammer, and I want you and your brothers to come on over to my kingdom; Id sure love to see you, what with me bein so amazed at what yall are sayin and what my boy Lamonis been spillin too."

27. Then Ammon and Lamoni kept movin towards Middoni, and Lamoni caught the kings fancy, so they brought Ammons brothers right outta prison.

28. When Ammon met up with them, his heart was heavy, seein they were bare and beaten up real bad from bein tied up. And theyd been through all sorts of hard times hungry, thirsty, and a world of hurt; but bless their hearts, they kept their spirits up.

29. Now, turns out, theyd landed in the clutches of a rougher crowd, so them folks wouldnt listen to a lick of sense; theyd kicked em out and whipped em and drove em from place to place till they ended up in Middoni. Thats where they finally got locked up good and tight for days on end, and thanks to Lamoni and Ammon, they got free at last.

## **Alma Chapter 21**

1. An account of the preachin' of Aaron, and Muloki, and their buddies, to the Lamanites.

2. Comprises them chapters through 25.

3. Well, now when Ammon and his buddies split ways at the edge of the Lamanite land, old Aaron took off towards the spot the Lamanites called Jerusalem, named after the land where their folks were born; it was over yonder near the borders of Mormon.

4. Now them Lamanites and Amalekites and the folks from Amulon done built up a big ol city, and they called it Jerusalem.

5. Now, them Lamanites was tough as nails, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were even rougher; they was makin' the Lamanites harden their hearts, gettin' real strong in their wicked ways and nasty deeds.

6. And it came to pass that Aaron rolled into the city of Jerusalem and started preachin to them Amalekites first. He got to talkin to 'em in their synagogues, since they went and built 'em up all fancy-like after the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Nehors; turns out a whole bunch of 'em were followin that Nehor way.

7. So, as Aaron strolled into one of them synagogues to share the good word, while he was yappin', an Amalekite popped up and started arguin' with him, sayin': "What the heck are ya praisin' about? You seen an angel? Why aint no angels comin to see us? Ain't us folks just as good as you?"

8. And he also said, "You keep sayin' if we don't change our ways, we're gonna go down in flames. How do you know what's goin' on in our hearts? You got proof we gotta repent? How do you know we're not righteous folks? Look at us, we built ourselves places to worship, and we all get together to honor God. We reckon God'll save everyone.

9. Aaron looked at him and asked, You really think the Son of Gods comin to save folks from their sins?

10. And the fella shot back, We dont reckon you know nothin about that. We ain't buyin into them silly traditions. Folks around here dont believe youre privy to whats comin, nor do we think your daddies knew what they was talkin bout either.

11. Then Aaron got to crackin' open them scriptures for 'em, talkin 'bout Christ comin' and the resurrection, lettin' 'em know that no one could get redeemed 'less it was through the sufferin and death of Christ, and that blood atonement deal.

12. Well, as he was layin it all out, they got plenty mad at him, started makin fun, and they just wouldn't listen to a word that came outta his mouth.

13. So, seein they wouldnt lend an ear, he hightailed it outta their synagogue and made his way over to a little spot called Ani-Anti, where he found Muloki preachin to the folks; and Ammah and the rest of his buddies was there too. They were wranglin with a bunch of folks 'bout the word.

14. And it came to pass they noticed them folks were hardenin their hearts, so they moved along and headed over to the land of Middoni. They preached to a whole lot of folks, but not many took to what they was sayin.

15. Yet and still, ol' Aaron and some of his buddies got grabbed and tossed in the pokey, and the rest of 'em skedaddled outta Middoni to parts nearby.

16. Them that got thrown in the clink sure suffered a heap, but they got freed thanks to Lamoni and Ammon,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

and they were fed and got some clothes.

17. Then they took off again to spread the word, and that was their first taste of freedom from prison; and they sure went through it.

18. They wandered wherever the Spirit led 'em, preachin' Gods word in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every get-together of the Lamanites they was welcome in.

19. As time went on, the Lord started blessin them, and before long, they was bringin a bunch to the truth; yep, they convinced many folks of their wrongdoings and the not-so-right traditions of their daddies.

20. Then Ammon and Lamoni headed back from Middoni to the land of Ishmael, the land they called home.

21. Now king Lamoni wouldnt allow Ammon to be his servant or work for him.

22. But he made sure they had them synagogues built in Ishmael, and he had his people, all those under his rule, gather together.

23. He was mighty pleased with em, taught em a whole heap of things, and he let em know they was under him, but they was free folks, free from his daddys oppressive ways; his daddy had given him the chance to rule over the folks in Ishmael and all around it.

24. And he also let em know they could worship the Lord their God however they liked, no matter where they were, as long as they was in the land ruled by king Lamoni.

25. And Ammon preached to king Lamoni's folks, teachin 'em all about livin righteously. He was on em daily, puttin in the work, and they listened up to what he said, gettin' real eager to keep Gods commandments.

## **Alma Chapter 22**

1. Well now, while Ammon was chattin' up the folks in Lamoni, lets head back to Aaron and his buddies; after he split from Middoni, he felt that ol' Spirit leadin' him down to Nephi, goin' right to the king's house, the big cheese over the land, cept for Ishmael's turf; he was Lamoni's daddy, ya know?

2. So Aaron waltzed into the king's palace with his pals, gave a nod to the king, and said: Hey there, King, were the brothers of Ammon, the fella you busted outta jail."

3. Then Aaron added, "Now, if ya dont mind savin our necks, well be your humble servants. But the king shot

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

back, Get up now, I aint gonna have you two as my servants; Id rather you help me out. Ive been sittin here scratchin' my head cause of the fancy talk from your brother Ammon, and Im itchin' to know why he didnt tag along from Middoni with ya.

4. Aaron told the king, Well, the Spirit of the Lord nudged him in a different direction; he headed off to Ishmael to teach Lamonis folks.

5. The king frowned and asked, Whats all this about the Spirit of the Lord? It's got my mind all twisted up.

6. He also wanted to know about Ammons sayin'"If yall repent, youll be saved, but if ya dont, youll be booted at the end of days?"

7. Aaron looked right at him and asked, Do ya believe theres a God? The king replied, Well, I reckon the Amalekites think theres a God, and I let 'em build some places to worship. If youre sayin' theres a God, then count me in, Ill believe.

8. Upon hearin this, Aarons heart began to sing, and he said, Well, I swear as youre livin, O king, there surely is a God.

9. The king asked, Is He that Great Spirit that led our forefathers outta Jerusalem?

10. Aaron answered, Yup, thats Him! He made everything, both up in the heavens and down here on earth. You believe that?

11. The king nodded and said, Sure do, I reckon the Great Spirit created it all. Now Id love it if you told me bout everything, and Ill believe ya.

12. So, when Aaron saw the king was ready to believe, he kicked off talkin bout the creation of Adam, readin' them scriptures to the king how God made man in His image and handed down commandments, then 'cause of their choices, man ended up fallin.

13. Aaron laid it out for the king from Adams creation, explainin how folks fell and were stuck in their earthly nature, plus the whole redemption plan that God set up from the very start for anyone who believes on Christs name.

14. And since man had taken a tumble, he couldnt earn nothin on his own; it was Christs sufferin and death

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

that forgave sins, through faith and changin ways, and thats how He breaks the chains of deathdeath's defeat wouldnt hold sway, not with the promise of glory; and Aaron shared all this good news with the king.

15. Once Aaron wrapped up his talk, the king asked, What do I gotta do to grab hold of this eternal life you mentioned? How can I be born of God, kick this wicked spirit outta my heart, and fill up with His Spirit so I can be happy and not get left behind at the end? Id be ready to give up everythin, even my crown, to know this great joy.

16. Aaron replied, Well, if ya really want this, then ya gotta bow down before God, repent of all your mess, and call on His name with faith, believein' youll receive it, then youll find the hope youre lookin' for.

17. And when Aaron finished sayin all that, the king got down on his knees; that fella laid himself flat on the ground, cryin out strong like:

18. O God, Aaron just told me theres a God; and if thats true, will ya show yourself to me? Ill lay down all my sins just to know you and get up from the dead, be saved at the end of days. And once the king said all that, it was like he was hit with a bolt, just dropped there like a sack of potatoes.

19. Next thing ya know, his servants ran to tell the queen what went down with the king. She rushed in to see him layin' there like he was a goner, and when she spotted Aaron and his crew lookin like theyd caused his collapse, her temper flared up, and she ordered her folks to take them out back and finish em off.

20. But them servants figured out what was really behind the king takin a spill, so they werent about to lay a finger on Aaron and his pals. They pleaded with her, Why you wanna off these fellas when one of ems tougher than a grizzly? Wed be lunch meat if we tried!

21. Once the queen caught on to how spooked her crew was, she started getting all jittery herself, worried some bad stuff might fall right on her. So, she told her folks to round up the crowd so they could go take care of Aaron and his buddies.

22. When Aaron caught wind of the queens plan, knowin folks could get real rowdy, he got worried a big ol' crowd might gather and things could get outta hand, so he stepped forward and lifted the king up from the ground, tellin him: Stand up now. And just like that, he was back on his feet, feelin stronger than a bull.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

23. This all went down right in front of the queen and a bunch of her servants. They were left wide-eyed and shaken, and then the king stepped up and started attendin to em. He took care of em so well that soon enough, his whole family turned their hearts to the Lord.

24. Now, a whole crowd started showin up cause of what the queen ordered, and soon there was a whole lot of grumblin bout Aaron and his mates.

25. But the king stepped in and soothed em; he calmed em down towards Aaron and his crew.

26. When the king saw that things were settlin, he had Aaron and his brothers get up front in the midst of the crowd to preach the word to em.

27. And then, the king sent out word across the whole land, callin' all his folks who lived everywherefrom one ocean to the other, even the bits right next to the water on the east and west, all around the edges of the sea and the wild land, which was just separated from Zarahemla by a narrow stretch of wilderness, runnin from the east sea to the west seathis is how the Lamanites and Nephites ended up spilt apart.

28. Now, the loafin Lamanites were kickin' it in the wilderness, livin in tents; they were spread out westward in Nephis land, and even to the west of Zarahemla, close to the ocean and all that.

29. And there was a bunch of Lamanites sittin pretty on the east by the sea where the Nephites pushed em. So the Nephites were almost completely surrounded by those Lamanites; but they held onto all the northern parts by the wilderness that runs alongside Sidons river, stretchin' from the east all the way to the west, goin' round the wild area; on the north, they reached up to the land they called Bountiful.

30. Now, that territory bordered on a place they named Desolation, so far north it led into a land folks used to live in that got wiped out, which was found by them from Zarahemla, where they first landed.

31. Then they made their way down into the south wilderness. So, that land up north was called Desolation, and the land down south got tagged as Bountiful, filled with all sorts of wild critters, some of which journeyed down from the north for grub.

32. And ya see, it was just a day and a halves walk for a Nephite between Bountiful and Desolation, from the east to the west sea; so, the lands of Nephi and Zarahemla were pretty much surrounded by water, only a little

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

neck of land separated the north from the south.

33. And it came to pass the Nephites made their home in Bountiful, stretchin' from the east to the west sea, and in their cleverness, they set up guards and armies to keep the Lamanites from movin' north so they wouldnt take over that land.

34. So, the Lamanites were left with only Nephis land and the wilds around it. And this was some smart thinkin' on the Nephites partsince the Lamanites were their enemies, they werent about to let em get a grip on em, and they needed a place to retreat if things got sticky.

35. Now, just to tie things up, Im headin' back to Ammon, Aaron, Omner, Himni, and their other brothers story.

### **Alma Chapter 23**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, the king of them Lamanites done sent a word out to all his folks, sayin they best not lay a finger on Ammon, Aaron, Omner, or Himni, or none of their kin who was out there preachin the Good Word, no matter where they roamed in their neck of the woods.

2. Yessiree, he sent em a decree, tellin em they couldnt lay hands on em to tie em up, or toss em in jail; no spittin on em, hittin em, tossin em outta their churches, or givin em a whippin; and they surely couldnt chuck no stones either, but that them preachers could waltz right into their homes, temples, and sacred spaces without a hitch.

3. So, they could go on and preach to their hearts content, seein as the king had found his way to the Lord, along with his whole family; thats why he sent out the word all across the land, so the Good Word wouldnt hit no roadblocks, but could spread far and wide, helpin his folks figure out all them bad ways taught by their daddies, and knowin theyre all kinfolk, meanin they shouldn't be murderin, plunderin, stealin, cheatin on their spouses, or indulgin in any sort of wrongdoings.

4. Well, after the king got that proclamation out, Aaron and his pals took off from town to town, hittin up one church after another, settin up congregations, and ordainin priests and teachers all round among them Lamanites, preachin and teachin the Good Word to em; and let me tell ya, they started seein' some real good

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

results.

5. And thousands found their way to knowin the Lord, I reckon; yep, thousands came to believe in all them Nephite ways, bein taught the records and prophecies that been passed down to this very day.

6. And as sure as the Lords alive, I tell ya, all them who believed in what Ammon and his brothers were preachin, and who got to knowin the truth through the spirit of revelation and prophecy, plus the Lord doin miracles in their livesyep, Ill say it again, as the Lords got breath in His lungs, all them Lamanites who believed what they heard and turned to the Lord, they never turned back.

7. Cause they became good folks; they put down them weapons of rebellion, and they didnt go fightin against God no more, nor against any of their kinfolk.

8. Now, these here are the ones who turned to the Lord:

9. Folks from the Lamanites livin' in the land of Ishmael;

10. And folks from the Lamanites in the land of Middoni;

11. And also, them folks from the Lamanites in the city of Nephi;

12. And those Lamanites in the land of Shilom, as well as them in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and Shimnilom too.

13. And heres the names of the Lamanite towns that turned to the Lord; they all laid down them weapons of rebellion, yessir, all their war togs; and every last one of em was Lamanites.

14. But as for the Amalekites, they didnt come round, cept for one; and them Amulonites, they didnt budge neither; they just hardened their hearts, and got them Lamanites riled up in that part of the land where they hung out, yes, all their little villages and towns.

15. So, we went ahead and named all them towns of the Lamanites where they repented and came to know the truth, and turned their lives around.

16. Now, it came to pass that the king and his newly-converted folks were itchin to have a name for themselves, so they wouldnt be confused with their kin; so the king went and jawed with Aaron and a whole bunch of their priests, bout what name they oughta take to set themselves apart.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

17. And sure enough, they ended up callin themselves Anti-Nephi-Lehies; from then on out, they werent called Lamanites no more.

18. And then they went on to be a real hard-workin bunch; yep, they made friendly with the Nephites, and they even opened up a line of communication with em, and the Lords curse didnt trail after em no more.

### **Alma Chapter 24**

1. Well, it all happened that them Amalekites, Amulonites, and Lamanites who were hangin' around down in Amulon, Helam, and Jerusalem, and pretty much all them places nearby, who hadnt joined up with the folks goin by Anti-Nephi-Lehi, got all riled up by the Amalekites and the Amulonites and started gettin mad at their own kin.

2. And their hatred got real strong, so much so that they started rebel yellin against their king, sayin' they ain't want him callin the shots no more; so they picked up their guns and aimed em at the Anti-Nephi-Lehi folks.

3. Well, the king handed over his crown to his boy, and he named him Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

4. And that king kicked the bucket that same year when them Lamanites started gearin up for a showdown with the good people of God.

5. Now, when Ammon and his bros, along with all them who came with him, spotted the Lamanites gettin' ready to stomp their kin out, they made their way to the land of Midian, and there Ammon ran into all his brothers; from there, they headed over to the land of Ishmael to have a chin-wag with Lamoni and his bro Anti-Nephi-Lehi about how they oughta defend themselves against those Lamanites.

6. Now, there aint a soul among them who had turned their life around for the Lord whod even think about pickin' up arms against their kin; nope, they wouldnt even think about gettin' ready for a fight; and their king told em not to either.

7. Now, these are the words he laid out to his folks 'bout the whole deal: Im mighty grateful to my God, my cherished folks, that our great God has been kind enough to send our brothers, the Nephites, over here to preach to us and show us the mess we got from our wicked daddies.

8. And let me tell ya, I thank my great God for givin us a little taste of His Spirit to smooth down our hearts so

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

we could start chatin with these fine brothers, the Nephites.

9. And check it out, Im also thankful to my God that by startin this chatter, we figured out just how deep in sin weve been, and all the awful things we've done.

10. And Im real thankful to my God, yeah, my great God, that Hes let us have a chance to turn over a new leaf and forgave us for all them sins and murders weve committed, takin that guilt off our hearts cause of His Sons goodness.

11. And now, my brothers, since we were the most lost folks around and it took all our might just to repent of all our sins and those many murderin weve done, and gettin God to wipe 'em off our hearts, cause thats all we could do to make things right

12. Now, my most beloved brothers, since Gods washed our stains away and our swords are shinin bright, lets not be dirtyin em up again with our kins blood.

13. Listen here, I tell ya, naw, lets keep holdin on to our swords so they stay clean, cause if we start makin em dirty again, they wont shine bright again through the blood of our great Gods Son, which is shed for settlin our wrongdoings.

14. And our great God has been merciful to us, showin us these truths so we don't go down the wrong road; yeah, Hes let us know ahead of time, cause He loves our souls just as much as He loves our little ones; thats why He sends His angels our way, so we can know the plan of salvation, both now and for them who come after us.

15. Oh, how merciful is our God! And look here, since its been a struggle just to get washed clean, and our swords are bright now, lets stash 'em away so theyll stay bright as a witness to our God on Judgement Day, or the day we gotta stand before Him to be judged, that we havent let our swords be stained with our own kins blood since He blessed us with His word and made us pure.

16. And now, my brothers, if our brethren are plannin on takin us out, well tuck our swords away, yeah, well bury em deep in the dirt to keep em shiny, as proof that we never lifted 'em against anybody, come that big ol day; and if our kin take us down, well, well head to our God and be saved.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

17. And it came to pass that when the king wrapped up his words, and all the folks were gathered up, they took their swords and all the other weapons used to spill blood and went and buried em deep in the ground.

18. And they did this thinkin it was a testimony to God, and also to folks, that they werent gonna use any weapons for spillin blood anymore; and they did this swearin a promise to God, that rather than spill their brethrens blood, theyd give up their own lives; and instead of robbin' a brother, theyd lend a hand; and rather than be lazy, theyd work hard with their hands.

19. And so we see that when them Lamanites finally came to see the light and knowin the truth, they stood firm, even willin to take a hit rather than do wrong; and so we see they buried their peace-keepin weapons or they buried the war stuff for peace.

20. And it came to pass that them Lamanites got all riled up for war and came up to the land of Nephi to knock off the king and put another in his place, and to wipe out the Anti-Nephi-Lehi folks from the land.

21. Now when the people saw 'em comin at em, they went out to greet 'em, throwin' themselves down to the ground, callin on the name of the Lord; and thats how they were when the Lamanites started crashing down on em, sword in hand.

22. And without any fight back, they took out a thousand and five of 'em; and we know theyre blessed, cause theyve gone off to be with their God.

23. Now when the Lamanites saw their brothers wouldn't run from the fight, nor would they step aside, but were willin to lay down and die, shoutin praises to God while takin the hit

24. Now when the Lamanites saw this, they chilled on the killin'; and plenty of em felt sorrow in their hearts for their brethren who had fallen, regrettin what theyd done.

25. And it came to pass that they tossed down their weapons of war and refused to pick em back up, cause they felt real bad for all the murders they had done; and they came down just like their brothers, dependin on the mercy of them whose hands were raised to strike em down.

26. And it came to pass that the good folks of God gained more numbers that day than those who had been killed; and those who had been slain were good people, so we got no reason to doubt they went to a better

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

place.

27. Not one wicked soul was taken down among em; but more than a thousand of em found out the truth; thus we see that the Lord sure does work in all kinds of ways to save His people.

28. Now the biggest bunch of those Lamanites who wiped out so many of their brethren were the Amalekites and Amulonites, most of 'em followin' the ways of the Nehors.

29. Now, hangin with those who decided to join Gods crew, there werent no Amalekites or Amulonites, nor any of them Nehor kinds, but rather they were straight-up descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

30. And so we can see clear as day, that once folks have had the light of Gods Spirit shinin on 'em, and knowin' good things about bein right, and then slip up into sin and mischief, they get hard as a rock, and their state turns worse than if they had never known nothin at all.

### **Alma Chapter 25**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, them Lamanites got real mad, 'cause they done killed their own kin. They swore to get even with the Nephites, but they didnt bother messin' with the folks from Anti-Nephi-Lehi right then.

2. So, they gathered up their army and crossed over into them Zarahemla parts, pouncin' on the folks livin' in Ammonihah and wiped 'em out.

3. After that, they fought a whole lotta skirmishes with the Nephites, but they just kept gettin' pushed back and took a heap of losses.

4. Among those they lost was most of Amulons kids and his pals, them priests of Noah, all done in by the Nephites' hand.

5. The ones that managed to skedaddle took off into the eastern wilds, and somehow ended up takin' charge over the other Lamanites, causin' a whole mess of 'em to perish by fire 'cause of what they believed.

6. See, lots of 'em, after sufferin so many losses and troubles, started to remember what Aaron and his buddies had preached in their neck of the woods; so they began doubting their family traditions and puttin' their faith in the Good Lord, thinkin' that he sure gave a lotta power to the Nephites, and a bunch of 'em got converted out in the wilderness.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. But, lemme tell ya, those rulers left of Amulon's kids had 'em put to death, you bet, anyone who believed that stuff.
8. Well, all this martyr stuff got a whole bunch of their kin riled up, and there was a big ol fuss in the wilderness; the Lamanites started huntin' down Amulons kin and took to killin' 'em, so they ran off into the east wilds.
9. And wouldn't ya know it, they still bein' hunted by them Lamanites today. Ain't that just what Abinadi prophesied 'bout the priests' kids causin' him to burn at the stake?
10. He told 'em straight-up what they did to him would be a sign of things to come.
11. Now, Abinadi, he was the first to get burned 'cause he believed in God; what he meant was that many folks would face the same fate he did.
12. He warned them priests of Noah that their children would cause all sorts of folks to get knocked off just like he did, and they'd be scattered and slain, much like a sheep without a shepherd is hunted down by wild critters. And lo and behold, thats how it went down: they were driven, hunted, and struck down by them Lamanites.
13. Then, when the Lamanites figured they couldn't overpower the Nephites, they went back home; lots of 'em even moved into the land of Ishmael and Nephi, joinin' up with the people of God, who were the Anti-Nephi-Lehi folks.
14. They buried their weapons like their pals did, started bein a righteous bunch, walkin' in the Lord's ways and keepin' his commandments and rules.
15. Yep, they even held onto the law of Moses, 'cause they figured they needed it still since it wasnt all fulfilled yet. But even with that law, they looked forward to Christ comin, seein Moses law as just hintin at what was to come, knowin they needed to keep up those outward practices 'til He showed up.
16. They weren't thinkin' salvation came from the law of Moses, but the law sure helped 'em have faith in Christ; and so they held onto hope through faith, aiming for eternal life, leanin' on the spirit of prophecy that talked about the future.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

17. And now, looky here, Ammon, Aaron, Omner, Himni, and their buddies were just over the moon happy for the success they had with them Lamanites, seein that the Lord answered their prayers and backed up His word to em at every turn.

### **Alma Chapter 26**

1. Ammon's got some pride in the LordThe faithful, they're gettin' their strength from Him and gainin' wisdomBy puttin' their faith in Him, folks can save a whole bunch of soulsGod's got all the power and understands everything. Round about 9077 B.C.

2. Now, let me tell ya what Ammon said to his brothers: My brothers, Im tellin ya, we got all kinds of reasons to be happy; could we have thought back when we left Zarahemla that God would shower us with such big ol blessings?

3. So I'm askin', what kinda blessings has He given us? Yall got an idea?

4. Well, let me just say it for ya; our buddies, the Lamanites, they were sittin' in darkness, yep, right in the deepest hole, but looky here, how many of 'em are now seein' the amazin' light of God! That theres the blessing we got, bein tools in Gods hands to do this big ol' job.

5. Yall see, thousands of em are rejoicin, and they've found their place in God's fold.

6. Looky here, the harvest was ripe, and bless your hearts, cause yall put the sickle to it and worked hard all day long; yall see how many sheaves you got! And theyre gonna be gathered up so nothin' goes to waste.

7. Yep, they ain't gonna get knocked down by the storm when the end comes; nope, they ain't gonna get all tossed around by the whirlwinds; when the storm rolls in, theyll be gathered in the right spot so that storm cant touch em; and they sure ain't gonna be blown where the enemy wants to take 'em.

8. But listen, they're in the Lord's hands, the Lord of the harvest, and they belong to Him; and He'll lift 'em up at the last day.

9. Praise the name of our God; lets sing us a song of thanks, yes indeed, lets be grateful for His holy name, cause Hes doin right by us forever.

10. 'Cause if we hadnt left Zarahemla, our dearly beloved brothers, who cherish us so much, would still be

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

filled with hate towards us, and theyd be strangers to God too.

11. Well, when Ammon said all this, his brother Aaron had a word for him, sayin: Ammon, I reckon your happiness is makin' you a bit too proud.

12. But Ammon said: I ain't braggin' 'bout my own strength or smarts; no sir, my joy's overflowing, and my hearts just full of happiness, and Im gonna be happy in my God.

13. Yeah, I know I ain't nothin; Im weak when it comes to my own strength; so I ain't gonna boast about myself, but I'll surely brag on my God, 'cause in His strength, I can do just about anything; you better believe weve done some mighty miracles in this land, and were gonna praise His name forevermore.

14. Look here, how many thousands of our brothers has He freed from the pains of hell; and now theyre singin' songs of love and redemption, all thanks to the power of His word thats in us, so don't we have a big ol reason to celebrate?

15. Yes sir, we got all the reasons to give Him thanks forever, cause Hes the Most High God, and Hes freed our brothers from the chains of hell.

16. Sure nuff, they were stuck in endless darkness and destruction; but looky here, Hes brought em into His never-endin light, into everlasting salvation; and theyre wrapped up in the incredible bounty of His love; and here we are, bein His instruments in doin this great work.

17. So lets boast, yeah, well boast in the Lord; lets celebrate, cause our joy is full; well shout praises to our God for all time. Who can ever boast too much in the Lord? Who can say too much about His might, His mercy, and His patience with all of us humans? I tell you, I can't even begin to express what I feel inside.

18. Who wouldve ever thought that our God would be so kind as to pull us outta our awful, sinful state?

19. Look here, we went out there all full of rage, makin' big threats to wipe out His church.

20. So then, why didnt He just send us to a terrible end, why didnt He let His sword fall on us and condemn us to never-endin despair?

21. Oh, my soul almost flies away at just the thought. But seein as He didnt exercise His justice on us, but in His great mercy, Hes carried us over that everlasting pit of death and misery, right to the salvation of our

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

souls.

22. Now, look here, my brothers, what ordinary man knows these things? I tell ya, there's no one who knows 'em unless theyve truly repented.

23. Yes, he who turns away from his wrongdoings and has faith, doin' good works, and prayin all the timethose folks get to know the mysteries of God; and itll be given to em to reveal things thatve never been revealed before; and theyll be able to bring thousands of souls to repentance, just like we've been able to do.

24. Now, yall remember when we told our brothers back in Zarahemla that we were headin up to Nephi to preach to the Lamanites, and they just laughed at us?

25. 'Cause they said to us: You really think you can bring the Lamanites to know the truth? Do you really think you can change their minds about the crazy ideas their folks have passed down, bein' as stubborn as they are; whose hearts are all about spillin blood; whove spent their days in the deepest iniquity; and whose ways have been wrong since forever? Now my brothers, you remember how they talked.

26. They even said: Lets take up arms against em, lets wipe em out and rid the land of their sins, or theyll overrun us and take us down.

27. But look, my dear brothers, we didnt come into the wilderness with plans to destroy our brothers, but to see if we could save even a few of their souls.

28. Now when our spirits were low, and we were fixin to turn round, behold, the Lord comforted us and said: Go on mongst your brothers, the Lamanites, and bear your afflictions patiently, and Ill give you success.

29. And look at us now, we went and mingled with em; weve been patient through our troubles and have suffered every hardship; yeah, weve traveled from house to house, relying on the worlds kindnessand not just that but on Gods kindness too.

30. Weve walked right into their homes and taught 'em, weve stood in the streets teachin em; yes, weve climbed their hills to share the good word; weve even been in their temples and synagogues teachin; weve been kicked out, ridiculed, spat on, slapped in the face; chain-bound and tossed in jail; and by the power and wisdom of God, weve been set free.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

31. Weve undergone all manner of hardships, and all this just to see if maybe we could save one soul; we thought our joy would be complete if we could save even just a few.

32. Well, now we can look and see the fruit of our labor; and are there only a few? I say no, theres plenty; and we can see their true hearts, cause they love their brothers and also us.

33. Cause see, theyd rather give up their lives than lay a hand on their enemy; and theyve buried their weapons way down deep in the earth, all cause they love their brothers.

34. Now I ask ya, has there ever been such great love in all the land? I say no, not even among the Nephites.

35. Cause you see, theyd take up arms against their brothers; they wouldnt let themselves be killed. But look how many of these folks have laid down their lives for the cause; and we know theyre off to their God, all cause of their love and their hatred for sin.

36. Aint we got reason to celebrate? I say, aint nobody had as much reason to rejoice as we have, since the world dawned; and my joy is just floatin, even to braggin on my God; cause Hes got all the power, all the wisdom, and all the understanding; He knows it all, and Hes a merciful Being, savin folks who will repent and believe in His name.

37. Now if this is braggin, then Ill be braggin'; cause this is my life and my light, my joy and salvation, my redemptive escape from everlasting woe. Yes, bless the name of my God, whos keepin an eye on this people, a branch from the tree of Israel, who got lost from its roots in a strange land; yes, bless the name of my God, whos thinkin of us, wanderers in a foreign place.

38. Now my brothers, we see that Gods mindful of every people, no matter where they are; yep, He knows His people, and His mercy covers all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thankfulness; and Im gonna give thanks to my God forever. Amen.

## **Alma Chapter 27**

1. Well now, the good Lord told Ammon to get them folks of Anti-Nephi-Lehi movin to safetyOnce he met up with Alma, Ammon was so dang happy it nearly wore him outThe Nephites handed over the land of Jershon to them Anti-Nephi-LehiesSo they went on to be known as the people of Ammon. 'Bout 9077 B.C.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. So it happened, those Lamanites who went to tussle with the Nephites found out after tryin real hard to wipe 'em out, that it was all for nothin, so they turned right back around to Nephi.
3. Well, them Amalekites, they got their feathers ruffled somethin fierce 'cause of their losses. And when they realized they couldnt get back at the Nephites, they got to stirrin' up their folks to get real mad at their brothers, the Anti-Nephi-Lehies, and started tryin to take em down again.
4. But this here bunch just refused to pick up arms again, lettin themselves be killed just like their enemies wanted.
5. Now, Ammon and his buddies seen this terrible sight among those they loved dearly, and those who loved them right backfor folks treated 'em like angels sent from the good Lord to save em from hellfireso when Ammon and his crew saw all this destruction, they felt a mighty compassion, and spoke to the king:
6. "Alright, lets gather up the Lords people and skedaddle down to Zarahemla where our Nephite brothers are, and get outta reach of these enemies, so we aint wiped out."
7. But the king piped up, "Now hold on, the Nephites will do us dirty cause of all the awful things we done to em."
8. Ammon replied, "Ill go ask the Lord, and if He tells us to go down to our kin, will yall be ready?"
9. The king said, "Sure thing, if the Lord says to go, then well head on down and be their slaves til we pay back all the wrongs we done em.
10. But Ammon reminded him, "Now, it ain't right cordin' to our kins law my daddy set up that there be any slaves among 'em; so lets go trust in our brothers kindness."
11. The king still insisted, "Ask the Lord, and if He says go, then well go; otherwise, well just die right here."
12. So, Ammon went and asked the Lord, and the Lord told him:
13. "Get these folks outta this land, or they gon' be destroyed; for Satan got a mighty grip on the Amalekites' hearts, stirrin up the Lamanites to take a swing at their own brothers; so skedaddle outta here; and blessed are these folks in this time, 'cause Ill keep 'em safe."
14. Then Ammon did just that and told the king everything the Lord said.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

15. They got all their people together yep, all the good folks and rounded up all their livestock, then hit the road outta the land, makin their way through the wilderness that split Nephi from Zarahemla, gettin close to the borderlands.

16. And Ammon told em, Look here, me and my buddies are gonna head on over to Zarahemla, and yall stay right here till we get back; well see how our kin feel about you comin into their land.

17. As Ammon was headin over, he ran into Alma in the spot folks been talkin about, and let me tell ya, that was one happy reunion.

18. Now, Ammons joy was so over the top he felt like he might burst; he got all wrapped up in the happiness of his God, till it just wore him out, and he fell right back down on the ground.

19. Wasnt that just pure joy? Folks only feel that kinda joy if theyre truly sorry and lowly seekers of happiness.

20. Alma was mighty glad to see his buddies too, and so were Aaron, Omner, and Himni; but their joy didnt knock em flat like Ammon's did.

21. Then Alma led his pals back to Zarahemla, right to his own place. They told the chief judge all that gone down in Nephi with the Lamanites.

22. Next thing you know, the chief judge sent out a call across the land, lookin for what the people thought bout lettin their brothers, the Anti-Nephi-Lehies, join em.

23. And sure enough, the people spoke up: Look, well give up the land of Jershon, which sits on the east by the sea, connectin with the land Bountiful down south; and this here Jershon is the land were passin on to our brothers as their share.

24. And they said, Well set our armies up 'tween Jershon and Nephi, so we can keep our brothers safe in Jershon; we do this for em cause theyre scared to pick up arms against kin, worryin they might sin; and this fear of theirs comes from all the bad they done done before.

25. Now, heres the deal, were givin this land to our brothers so they can have Jershon; and well protect em from their enemies with our armies, on the condition they help us out some so we can keep our armies goin.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

26. Well, once Ammon caught wind of all this, he went back to the folks of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, with Alma right there beside him, into the wilderness where they had camped, and laid all this info on em. And Alma shared his story about how he turned things around with Ammon and Aaron, and the rest of the crew.

27. This here news brought em plenty of joy. They made their way down to Jershon and took over that piece of land; the Nephites named em the people of Ammon, so from then on, thats what they were known for.

28. They rolled right in with the Nephites, and also listed among the good folks of God's church. And they stood out for their zeal for the Lord and others; they were truly honest and straight shooters in everything; and they held rock-solid faith in Christ all the way to the end.

29. Them lot looked at spillin their brothers' blood with the highest disgust; they just couldnt be convinced to pick up arms against their kin; and they never saw death with a speck of fear, what with their hope and thoughts on Christ and the resurrection; so death didnt scare em none, thanks to Christ winnin over death.

30. So, theyd take death in the most awful, distressin ways their brothers could dish out, fore theyd take up the sword to strike back.

31. And thats how they werezealous and loved, a special people of the Lord.

## **Alma Chapter 28**

1. Well, lemme tell ya how it all went down. The Lamanites got their butts kicked in one humdinger of a fightlosin tens of thousands. The bad folks got sent off to a never-endin pit of misery; meanwhile, the good folks found themselves in a bliss that just dont quit. 'Bout 7776 B.C.

2. Now, after them Ammon folks settled down all nice and cozy in Jershon, and they got themselves a church and all, the Nephite armies was sittin tight 'round Jershon, all the way out to the borders of Zarahemla; and wouldnt you know it, the Lamanites traipsed right after their kin into the wild.

3. So you best believe there was one colossal fight happenin, yall; it was somethin that nobody had ever seen since Lehi skedaddled outta Jerusalem. Tens of thousands of those Lamanites bit the dust, scatterin like leaves in a storm.

4. Now, dont get it twisted; there was some heavy losses on the Nephite side too, but they managed to chase

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

off them Lamanites, and the Nephites made their way back home.

5. And let me tell ya, it was a time of deep sadness, yknow, folks wailin and grievin all over the place, among the Nephites

6. With widows yellin for their husbands, dads cryin for their boys, and daughters weepin for their brothers, yeah, and brothers lamentin their fathers; the heart-wrenchin wails of sorrow filled the air for all them who lost their loved ones.

7. And Ill tell ya for sure, it was a real sad day; a time for folks to get serious, to do a whole lot of fastin and prayin.

8. And thats how we bid farewell to the fifteenth year of them judges bein in charge of the Nephites;

9. Now, this here is the tale of Ammon and his bros, their travels through Nephi, all their sufferin, heartaches, and then the joy thats hard to understand, and how they welcomed and kept their kin safe in Jershon. And we all hope the Lord, that good ol Redeemer, blesses their souls forever.

10. This heres also the story of the fights and bickerin among the Nephites, and the scuffles between em and the Lamanites; and that fifteenth year of the judges has come to a close.

11. From year one to year fifteen, weve seen a whole heap of folks meet their end; its been a downright bloody mess.

12. So many bodies layin in the ground, and just as many rottin away in heaps on top of the earth; meanwhile, a lotta others are mournin like crazy for their kin cause they reckon, based on what the Lord promised, that them folks are stuck in a never-ending state of sorrow.

13. But theres also thousands whore truly grievin for their loved ones, and yet theyre a-hollerin with joyknowin, cause of the Lords promises, that their kin are sittin up there with God, enjoyin a happiness that dont ever run out.

14. And that shows us just how unfair life can be cause of sin and all that mess, plus the devils trickery with plans cooked up to trap the hearts of folks.

15. So we see the mighty call for folks to get to work in the Lord's fields; and we also see plenty of reasons for



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

both sorrow and joysorrow due to death and destruction, but joy from the light of Christ bringin life.

### **Alma Chapter 29**

1. Well, if I could just sprout some wings like an angel, I'd love to go out yellin God's words, makin the very ground shake, shoutin for folks to turn their lives round!
2. Sure enough, Id holler at every single soul, like thunder rollin across the sky, urging folks to repent and find their way back to the good Lord, so we ain't got more heartache hangin over this ol world.
3. But shoot, Im just a man, and I aint no better than my desires; I reckon I oughta be happy with what the Good Lords given me.
4. I ain't lookin to stir up nothin against what Gods got planned, 'cause I know He gives to folks what they truly want, whether that leads em to live or to kick the bucket; yeah, He makes up His mind and that dont change based on what folks wish for, be it salvation or just plain ol chaos.
5. Yep, I know good and evil's laid out for all us folks; if ya dont know right from wrong, you ain't in trouble; but if you do know the score, then you get what you ask for, whether its good, bad, or somethin in between.
6. So, knowin all that, why should I want more than to just do the work I been called to do?
7. Why should I even think bout bein an angel, spreadin the word to every corner of the earth?
8. Cause look here, the Lord blesses all kinds of folks, from all walks of life, to share His word in ways that make sense for them; Hes full of wisdom, handin out what folks need, and its all real just and true.
9. I reckon I know what the Lords asked me to do, and Im proud of it. Aint about me, no sir, its all bout what God commands; my prides in bein a tool in His toolbox, tryin to help bring folks back to Him, and that fills my heart with joy.
10. And when I see my brothers truly turnin their lives around, coming back to the Lord, oh man, that fills me right up with happiness; I cant help but think bout all the good stuff the Lord's done for me, even hearin my prayers, and I remember how kind He was to reach out to me.
11. Yeah, I remember my folks bein all tied up in captivity; I know for a fact the Lord got em outta that mess and set up His church; the Lord Gods been there for em, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and He

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

brought em through.

12. I ain't ever forgot how my ancestors were freed; the same God who rescued em from the Egyptians is the same one who pulled em from their troubles.

13. And that same God went ahead and set up His church with em; and guess what? That same Gods called me to share the word with this here crowd, and Im havin a heap of success that just fills my heart to the brim.

14. But it aint just my own success that makes me happy, no way; my joy grows even more cause of my brothers who ventured over to the land of Nephi.

15. Look, theyve worked their tails off and have done so much good; just think of how big their rewards gonna be!

16. When I ponder on what theyve achieve, it literally lifts my soul right up, like its floatin outta my body, its that strong of joy.

17. And I pray God lets these brothers of mine take their seats in His heavenly kingdom; and all those whove benefited from their hard work, I hope they dont ever leave but get to sing His praises forever. And I pray that it all goes down just like Ive said, amen.

### **Alma Chapter 30**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, it all started when them folks from Ammon got settled in Jershon, and also after them Lamanites were kicked outta the land, and their dead were buried right there by the good folks who lived there

2. Their dead didn't even get counted 'cause there was just too darn many; neither did the Nephites dead get countedbut once they buried their dead, and after all the fasting, mournin, and prayin, (and it was 'round the sixteenth year of the judges over Nephis folks) things started to calm down real good-like all over the land.

3. Yup, and the folks kept on following the Lord's commandments; and they was mighty strict bout doin Gods stuff, according to Moses law; cause they were taught to stick to Moses law till it got fulfilled.

4. So, round the sixteenth year of them judges reign, ain't nobody stirred up no trouble.

5. Then, come the start of the seventeenth year of them judges, peace just kept on rollin.

6. But then, as the seventeenth year wore on, a fella showed up in Zarahemla, and he was an Anti-Christ,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

startin' to preach against all them prophecies 'bout Christ coming.

7. Now there ain't no law that says folks cant believe what they want; seein' as its against God's commands to make a law that'd put folks on unequal ground.

8. The Good Book says it plain as day: Pick this day who ya gonna serve.

9. If a fella wants to serve God, that's his right; or if he just believes in God, he can serve Him too; but if he dont believe, well, there ain't no law to make him pay for it.

10. But if he goes 'round killin', he sure's gonna face the death penalty; and if hes robbin, hes gonna get punished too; got caught stealin, same deal, and if hes cheatin on his wife, hes gonna pay for that too; yessir, they got punished for all that bad stuff.

11. 'Cause there's laws sayin folks should be judged for their wrongdoings. But there sure ain't no law against a man's own beliefs; so folks only get punished for their actual wrongs, and everyone ends up on equal footing.

12. Now this Anti-Christ fella, Korihor was his name, (and law ain't got no grip on him) started preachin to the folks that there ain't gonna be no Christ. And heres what he had to say:

13. Hey yall bound to this silly hope, why yall hitchin yerself to such foolish stuff? Why you lookin for a Christ? Ain't no one can know what's gonna happen next.

14. Look at them prophecies you call holy, handed down by them prophets they're just foolish traditions from your folks.

15. How you know for sure theyre right? I tell ya, you can't know what's comin if ya can't see it; so you can't claim there'll be a Christ.

16. You lookin forward, claimin you see your sins bein wiped away. But shoot, thats just the ramblins of a messed-up mind; all that craziness come from your granddaddy's traditions, leadin ya to believe in things that ain't real.

17. And he kept goin on like that, tellin folks there ain't no way for anyone to atone for their sins, sayin every man just gets by in this life dependin on how he handles his business; so every man does well cause of his

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

smarts, and every man gets by cause of his strength; and whatever a fella does ain't no crime.

18. Thats how he preached it, leadin many astray, liftin em up in their sin, yeah, leadin both men and women to all kinds of debaucherytellin' em when a guy dies, thats just the end of the road.

19. This fella even took it over to Jershon, preachin to them Ammonites, who used to be them Lamanites.

20. But they was smarter than a lot of the Nephites; they caught him, tied him up, and dragged him over to Ammon, who was a high priest of their people.

21. And it went down that he got booted outta the land. He scooted over into Gideon, startin to preach to them too; but shoot, he didnt have much luck, cause they caught him too and took him before the high priest, and the chief judge of the land.

22. Then the high priest says to him: Why you shakin up the Lords ways? Why you teachin these folks there aint gonna be no Christ, messin with their good times? Why you talkin smack against all them prophecies from the holy prophets?

23. Now, that high priest, his name was Giddonah. And Korihor says back to him: 'Cause I aint preachin your folks silly traditions, and I aint teachin this crowd to tie themselves up with them foolish rules laid down by old priests whore just tryin to keep power and keep yall in the dark, so you cant lift your heads and have a thought of your own, just like you said.

24. You say this crowd is free. Well, I say, theys in chains. You go on sayin them ancient prophecies are true. But I say you dont know jack about that.

25. You claim this crowd is guilty and fallen cause of their folks. But I say a kid aint guilty cause of its mama or daddy.

26. And you say Christ is gonna come. But I say you dont know nuttin about that. And you also yammer on about him bein slain for everybody's sins

27. And so you lead this crowd after the foolish paths of your ancestors and your own wants; keepin em tied down like its bondage, so yall can take advantage of their labor, so they dont have the guts to lift their eyes up and enjoy their rights and freedoms.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

28. Yeah, they dont even dare to use whats theirs cause theyre scared of offendin their priests, who just keep pullin em under with their whims, makin em believe through their dreams, visions, and all that mystery garbage, that if they dont do what you say, theyll offend some unknown being, callin it Gods some being nobody ever seen or known, who aint never existed and wont ever exist.

29. So when the high priest and chief judge caught wind of his hard-heartedness, yeah, when they saw how he'd even talk trash against God, they didnt give him no answer; they just had him tied up and sent to the officers, to get him to Zarahemla, so he could be brought before Alma and the chief judge whos over all the land.

30. And when they brought him in front of Alma and the chief judge, he went on just like he did in Gideon; yep, he started blaspheming.

31. He stood up tall, all puffed up, talkin big fore Alma, revilin the priests and teachers, accusin em of leadin folks astray for the sake of gettin rich off the labor of the people.

32. Now Alma says to him: You know we aint leechin off this crowds hard work; cause Ive been workin since day one of the judges reign, with my own hands to keep eatin, specially after all my travels to spread Gods word to my people.

33. And even after all the stuff Ive done in church, I ain't never seen a single coin for my work; neither has any of my buddies, outside of the judgment-seat; and even then, we only got paid right for our time.

34. Now tell me, if we aint makin a dime for the work we do at church, whats it worth to labor there, 'cept to share the truth, so we can get happy for our fellow folks?

35. Then why in the world would you say we preachin for money, when you know good and well we ain't gainin' a thing? And now, you really think were foolin these people who find such joy in their hearts?

36. Korihor answered him, Yup.

37. Then Alma asked him: You really think theres a God?

38. And Korihor said, Nope.

39. Now Alma said: You gonna deny again theres a God, and also deny Christ? Cause Im tellin ya, I know

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

theres a God, and that Christ is gonna come.

40. So, what proof you got there ain't no God, or that Christ ain't comin? Im tellin ya, you ain't got none, cept your own word.

41. But listen here, I got everythin' to prove that these things is true; and you got all the evidence to prove they's true too; you gonna deny that? Do you believe these things are true?

42. I know you do believe, but you got a lying spirit in ya, and youve pushed away the Spirit of God, makin it have no spot in ya; and now the devil's got power over ya, leadin ya round, tryin to mess up the children of God.

43. Then Korihor told Alma: If you can show me a sign, so I can be sure theres a God, just show me that Hes got power, and then Ill believe your words.

44. But Alma shot back: Youve seen enough signs already; why you want to tempt God? You gonna say, Show me a sign when you got the word of all your brethren, and all the holy prophets? The scriptures is laid out for ya, and all things shout theres a God; yep, even this Earth and everything on it, and its movements, and all the planets movin in their way are proof theres a Supreme Creator.

45. And yet you go around, leadin these folks astray, tellin em theres no God? And you still deny all this proof? And he said: Yup, Ill deny, unless you show me a sign.

46. Then Alma said to him: Im bothered by the hardness of your heart, that you just keep pushin' against the spirit of truth, tryin to throw your soul away.

47. But lemme tell ya, it's better that your soul be lost than you drag a whole bunch of souls down with you, with your lies and flattery; so, if you deny one more time, Gods gonna smack you down so you cant ever talk again and aint foolin anybody no more.

48. Now Korihor said to him: I aint denying that theres a God, but I dont believe that theres a God; and Im sayin, you dont know theres a God; and unless you show me a sign, I aint gonna believe.

49. Alma told him: Heres what Ill give you for a sign, youre gonna be struck dumb, just like I said; and I say, in Gods name, you shall be dumb, and wont have nothin to say no more.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

50. And once Alma said that, Korihor was struck dumb, couldnt say a word, just like Alma said.

51. And when the chief judge saw what happened, he reached out and wrote to Korihor, sayin: You see now the power of God? Who did you think Alma was supposed to show his sign to? You think he should hurt others just to prove it? Look, he showed you a sign; ya gonna keep on disputin?

52. So Korihor wrote back, sayin: I know Im dumb, can't make a sound; and I know its only the power of God could do this to me; yeah, I always knew there was a God.

53. But I gotta admit, the devil tricked me; he showed up like an angel, told me: Go get this crowd, cause theys all lost followin some unknown God. He said there ain't no God; and taught me what to say. I taught his words cause they sounded good to my flesh, and I taught 'em till I got on a roll, thinkin they was true; and for that reason, I fought against the truth, till I ended up with this big ol curse on me.

54. Once he finished sayin that, he begged Alma to pray to God, hopin the curse might get lifted.

55. But Alma said to him: If this curse gets taken off ya, youd just go back to leadin these folks astray; so, whatever happens is up to the Lord.

56. And it went down that the curse didnt get lifted from Korihor; he was kicked out, wanderin round from house to house just beggin for food.

57. Now word got around quick about what happened to Korihor; yep, the chief judge sent out a proclamation to everybody in the land, lettin' those who believed Korihors words know they oughta repent pronto, or they might face the same fate.

58. It went down that everybody got convinced of Korihors wickedness; so they all came back to the Lord, and that put an end to the mess that was Korihor. And Korihor went round from house to house, beggin for food to stay alive.

59. And as he was wanderin among the people, yeah, around a crowd that split from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, led by a fella named Zoramand as he was out among em, wouldnt ya know, he got run over and trampled, right up until he was dead.

60. And thats how we see the end of that fella who twisted up the Lords ways; and thats how we see that the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

devil ain't gonna back his kids when it's all said and done, but instead drags em straight down to hell.

### **Alma Chapter 31**

1. Well, it so happened that after all that fuss with Korihor, Alma got word that the Zoramites were messin up the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, their big chief, was leadin folks to bow down to some ol stone idols. This made Almas heart just ache somethin fierce, thinkin' bout all the folks bein' so wayward.
2. It sure bothered Alma somethin awful to see his people all caught up in sin, so his heart was heavy with sorrow over how the Zoramites turned their backs on the Nephites.
3. Now them Zoramites got themselves gathered up in a place they called Antionum, over yonder east of the land of Zarahemla, close enough to the beach, south of Jershon, which was right there next to the wild lands full of Lamanites.
4. Them Nephites were worried sick that the Zoramites would start talkin with the Lamanites, and that would mean real trouble and loss for the Nephites.
5. And since preachin the good word had a knack for gettin folks to do whats rightheck, it worked better on the peoples minds than any sword fight ever couldAlma figured it was high time to show em the power of Gods word.
6. So he rounded up Ammon, Aaron, and Omner; left Himni back at the church in Zarahemla; but took them other three along with Amulek and Zeezrom, who were hangin out in Melek; and he also brought along two of his boys.
7. Now, he didnt take his oldest boy, Helaman, but he took Shiblon and Corianton with him to preach to those Zoramites.
8. See, the Zoramites had walked away from the Nephites, so theyd heard Gods word preached before.
9. But boy, did they get it all twisted; they weren't keepin Gods commandments or botherin with Moses' laws at all.
10. They also didnt keep up with the church sittin down to pray and ask God for help every day so they wouldnt get tempted.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

11. Yep, they messed up the Lords ways in a whole heap of ways; so, thats why Alma and his pals went to tell em the word.

12. When they got into town, wouldnt you know it, they were shocked to find the Zoramites had built them synagogues. They gathered up on just one day of the week, which they called the day of the Lord, and they worshipped in a way Alma and his boys had never seen before.

13. Theyd got a spot built right in the middle of their synagogue, a raised platform all tall and fancy, just big enough for one fella to stand there.

14. So, anyone who wanted to worship had to climb up there, throw their hands to the sky, and holler out loud:

15. Holy, holy God! We believe youre the real deal, and we reckon youre holy, and we know you used to be a spirit, still are, and always will be.

16. Holy God, we think youve separated us from our own kinfolk; we aint buyin their old traditions passed down by their foolish daddies; instead, were believein you chose us to be your holy kids, and you told us there ain't gonna be no Christ.

17. But youre the same yesterday, today, and always; you picked us to be saved, while everyone else around us is chosen to drop into hellfire; for that holiness, we thank you, God! And we also thank you for not lettin us get led astray by those silly traditions of our brethren that tie em down to believe in Christ, which leads em away from you, our God.

18. And once more, we thank ya, O God, for makin us a chosen and holy crowd. Amen.

19. Next thing ya know, after Alma and his crew listened to all them prayers, they were just blown away.

20. Every single fella went up there and said the same ol prayers.

21. Now, the folks called that spot Rameumptom, which means the holy stand, ysee.

22. From that stand, every man gave the same thanks to God, expressin gratitude that they were handpicked by Him, and that He didnt lead em astray by their folks traditions, and their hearts werent off chasin' things to come they didnt understand.

23. After all the folks got done with their thanks like that, they headed back home, not sayin another peep bout

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

their God until they gathered up again at that holy stand, to give thanks their own way.

24. When Alma saw all this, his heart was just torn apart; he knew they were bein wicked and downright perverse; their hearts, he saw, were set on gold, silver, and all sorts of fancy stuff.

25. He noticed too that they were puffin up with pride like a rooster on a fence.

26. So he raised his voice to heaven, cryin out: Oh Lord, how long you gonna let your servants stick around down here in the flesh, watchin all this awful wickedness among folks?

27. Look here, God, they holler out to you, but their hearts are wrapped up in pride. They shout to you while bein all puffed up with frivolous fancy stuff.

28. Look at their expensive clothes and their fancy hairdos, their shiny bracelets and gold ornaments; theyre all decked out in precious things and still cryin out to you sayin We thank you, oh God, for bein a chosen people while others are doomed.

29. And they say you told em there wont be no Christ.

30. Oh Lord God, how long you gonna let this craziness and lack of faith run wild among these folks? Give me strength, Lord, so I can handle my own frailties. I am weak, and seein such wickedness among these folks hurts my heart.

31. Oh Lord, my heart's achin' real bad; please comfort my soul in Christ. Lord, grant me strength to endure with patience all these troubles comin my way cause of these people's iniquities.

32. Oh Lord, bring comfort to my soul, help me and my fellow laborers Ammon, Aaron, Omner, and Amulek and Zeezrom, too, and my two sonsyes, please comfort all of em, Lord. Comfort their souls in Christ, too.

33. Can you give em strength to bear the troubles coming their way cause of this sorry mess?

34. Oh Lord, were askin that we may have success in bringin em back to you in Christ.

35. Look, Lord, those souls are precious, many of em our kin; so we ask for power and wisdom to help our brethren find their way back to you.

36. Well, after Alma finished sayin all this, he clapped his hands on everyone with him. And yall wouldnt believe itwhen he clapped them hands, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

37. Then they split up, not worryin bout what to eat or drink, or what clothes to wear.

38. And the Lord took care of em, so they wouldnt go hungry or thirsty; and He gave em strength, so they wouldnt suffer no troubles, except for bein swallowed up in the joy of Christ. And thats how it went, all on account of Almas prayer, since he prayed in faith.

### **Alma Chapter 32**

1. Well, it happened that they decided to get out there and start preachin' the good Lord's word to folks, hittin' up the synagogues, homes, yknow, even preachin out in the streets.

2. Then after puttin in a whole lotta hard work, they started seein' some luck with the folks who didnt have much; seein' as how theyd been thrown outta the synagogues 'cause their clothes weren't exactly fancy

3. So they couldn't go into them synagogues to worship God, folks thought they were dirty; thats why they were poor; heck, their own people saw 'em as worthless; so yeah, they were poor in the ways of the world, and their hearts felt the weight of that, too.

4. Now, whilst Alma was up on that hill called Onidah talkin' to the people, a big ol crowd showed up, and it was the ones we been chattin' about, the ones whose hearts were feelin low 'cause they didn't have much in this world.

5. They approached Alma, and the biggest fella among em said: Listen here, what in the tarnation should we do, 'cause folks look down on us 'cause we aint got a dime to our name, especially them priests; they kicked us outta the synagogues we worked our tails off to build; they threw us out 'cause we're so dang poor; we ain't got nowhere to worship our God; so what're we supposed to do now?

6. And when Alma heard all this, he turned right around, his face shinin' with joy; he saw that them folks had really been humbled by their struggles, and they were ready to soak in the good word.

7. So he didn't say a whole lot to the other crowd; he just reached out his hand and called out to those who truly repented, sayin:

8. I see yall got humble hearts; and that's a blessin', let me tell ya.

9. Now your brother over there is wonderin, what we gonna do?cause weve been kicked outta our synagogues,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

and we can't worship our God anywhere.

10. Now let me ask ya, do ya really think you can only worship God in your synagogues?

11. And also, do yall reckon you gotta worship God just once a week?

12. Listen here, being tossed outta your synagogues is a good thing, keeps you humble, and helps you learn some wisdom; 'cause you gotta learn that wisdom, bein' booted out, folks look down on ya 'cause you're broke, its what brings you low in your heart; you gotta be humble like that.

13. And now, since you ain't got no choice but to be humble, thats a blessin! 'Cause sometimes a man whos made to be humble will seek repentance; and I guarantee ya, whosoever repents is gonna find mercy; and whoever finds mercy and hangs in there till the end, theyre the ones wholl be saved.

14. And just like I told you, since bein' humbled is a blessin, dont ya think them who truly humble themselves 'cause of the word are even more blessed?

15. Yep, the one who humbles himself for real, repents, and holds on to the faith till the end, hes gonna be blessedheck, way more blessed than them folks who just get made humble cause theyre flat broke.

16. So, blessed are those who humble themselves without bein' forced to; or in other words, blessed is the one who believes in God's word, and gets baptized without bein' stubborn, yeah, without needin to be pushed to know the word before theyll believe.

17. Now, you got a bunch who say: If you show us a sign from heaven, then well know for sure; then well believe.

18. Now let me ask ya, is that really faith? Im tellin you, no way; 'cause if a man knows something, there ain't no reason to believe, he already knows it.

19. And how much more twisted is the one who knows what God wants him to do and doesnt do it, than the one who just believes or thinks hes got a reason to believe but falls into sin?

20. Now you gotta judge this for yourselves. Its just like this, one ways the same as the other; and it's gonna be for every man based on what he does.

21. And just like I told ya about faithfaith aint about havin' perfect knowledge; so if ya got faith, youre hopin

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

for things ya cant see, but theyre real.

22. And listen up, God is merciful to all who believe in His name; so first and foremost, He wants you to believe, yeah, even in His word.

23. Now, Hes passin that word along by angels to folks, not just men, but women too. And dont forget, little kids also get words given to 'em that confuse the wise and learned folks.

24. And now, my dear brothers, since yall wanna know what to do cause you're feelin down and cast out just know I ain't judge you solely based on what's true

25. 'Cause I don't mean to say that all yall have been forced to humble yourselves; I truly believe there's some of ya who would do it no matter what your circumstances are.

26. Now, when I talked about faith not bein' perfect knowledge it's the same way with these words Im speakin'. You can't know for sure right off the bat any more than faith is perfect knowledge.

27. But look, if you wake up and get your mind workin to experiment with my words, even if it's just a tiny bit of faith, even if you can only wish to believe, let that desire grow in ya until you're really believe in a way you can accept a piece of my words.

28. Now, we're gonna compare the word to a seed. Now, if you give it a chance to be planted in your heart, if it's a true seed, and you don't throw it out with your disbelief, it'll start to swell up inside ya; and when you feel that swellin, you'll think to yourself This here's gotta be a good seed, or the word must be good, cause it's makin' my soul feel big; it's lightin up my understanding, and it's even startin to taste real good.

29. Now tell me, wouldn't that boost your faith? Im tellin ya, yeah; but it ain't grown into perfect knowledge yet.

30. But look here, as that seed swells and sprouts and starts growin', you'll be sayin for sure that the seeds good; 'cause, see, it swells, sprouts, and really starts growin. And now, you think that won't boost your faith? Yeah, it's gonna firm up your faith: you'll say I know this here's a good seed; cause look, it's sproutin up and takin' off.

31. And now, let me ask ya, are you sure this is a good seed? Im tellin ya, yeah; cause every seed brings forth

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

what its meant to be.

32. So, if a seeds growin, its good, but if it aint growin, well, it aint good, so toss it aside.

33. And now, since youve tried this experiment, planted the seed, and its swellin and sproutin and startin to grow, you gotta know that seeds a good one.

34. And now, is your knowledge perfect? Yeah, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is sittin there kinda dormant; and thats 'cause you know, cause ya know that the words made your souls swell, and its sprouted up, and your understanding is startin to brighten, makin your mind stretch out.

35. So tell me, ain't this real? Im sayin yeah, cause its light; and anything thats light is good, cause it's somethin you can see, so ya gotta know its good; now after you've tasted this light, is your knowledge perfect?

36. Well, I say to ya, no; and you can't just put your faith aside, 'cause youve only used your faith to plant that seed, tryin' to see if that seed's good.

37. And look, as that tree starts growin', youll say: Lets take good care of it, make sure it gets roots, so it can grow tall and bear fruit for us. And now, looky here, if you nourish it with care, itll root down, grow tall, and bear fruit.

38. But if you just ignore that tree and dont think about what it needs, it aint gonna take root; when that hot sun comes beatin down on it, with no roots, itll wither up, and youll pull it out and throw it away.

39. Now, this ain't cause the seed's no good, or that fruit wouldnt be tasty; its just cause your grounds barren, and you wouldnt tend to the tree, so you cant have that fruit.

40. And thats how it is, if you wont care for the word, lookin' ahead with faith for its fruit, you aint ever gonna get a taste from the tree of life.

41. But if yall will take care of that word, yeah, nourish that tree while it's growin, with your faith and a heap of patience, lookin forward to the fruit itll bring, itll take root; and behold, itll be a tree shootin' up to everlasting life.

42. And because youre bein diligent with your faith and patience in nourishin that word so it can take root in you, before you know it youll be pickin that fruit, which is the most precious, sweeter than sweet, whiter than

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

white, purer than pure; and you'll feast on that fruit til you're full, never hungering or thirstin' again.

43. Then, my brothers, you'll reap the rewards of your faith, diligence, patience, and all that long-sufferin while waitin for the tree to bear its fruit for ya.

### **Alma Chapter 33**

1. Well now, Zenos was sayin that folks oughta pray and worship all over the place, and judgments get switched up cause of the SonZenock was claimin that mercy comes round cause of the SonMoses lifted up some kind of sign in the desert pointin to the Son of God. Bout 74 B.C.

2. So after Alma finished yappin, they sent word back to him, wantin to know if they oughta believe in just one God to get that good stuff he was talkin about, or how in the heck they were supposed to plant that seed, or that word he mentioned, which he said needed to be put in their hearts; or how they should start workin on their faith.

3. Alma told em: Now listen here, y'all said you couldnt worship your God cause you got kicked outta your synagogues. But lemme tell ya, if you think you cant worship God, you're mighty wrong, and you oughta go lookin in them scriptures; if you reckon they taught you that, well, you just dont get it.

4. Y'all remember readin what that old prophet Zenos had to say bout prayer or worship?

5. He said: You sure are merciful, O God, cause you heard my prayer even when I was out in the wilderness; yeah, you was merciful when I prayed for them folks who were my enemies, and you turned em 'round for me.

6. Yeah, O God, you were merciful to me when I cried out to you in my field; when I hollered to you in my prayer, you heard me.

7. And again, O God, when I went back to my house, you heard me in my prayer.

8. And when I turned to my little room, O Lord, and prayed to you, you listened to me.

9. Yep, you're merciful to your younguns when they cry out to you, wantin to be heard by you and not folks, and you are gonna hear em.

10. O God, you've been merciful to me, and you heard my cries in the middle of your crowd.

11. And you also heard me when folks kicked me out and looked down on me; yeah, you heard my cries, got

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

real mad at my enemies, and you showed up on em in a hurry with some serious trouble.

12. You listened to me cause of my sufferin and my honest heart; and its cause of your Son that youve been so good to me, so Ill keep cryin out to you in all my troubles, for my joys in you; for youve turned away your judgments from me, cause of your Son.

13. Now Alma asked em: Do yall believe them scriptures that folks wrote long ago?

14. Well now, if you do, you gotta believe what Zenos said; for he said: You turned away your judgments because of your Son.

15. Now listen here, my brothers, I wanna know if youve read them scriptures? If you have, how in tarnation can you doubt the Son of God?

16. Cause it aint just Zenos who spoke of this stuff, but Zenock had some words bout it too

17. For he said: Youre real mad, O Lord, with these folks cause they dont get the mercies youve shown em cause of your Son.

18. And now, my brothers, you see another prophet from way back testified bout the Son of God, and cause the people wouldnt listen, they ended up stonin him to death.

19. But this aint all; theres plenty more whove talked bout the Son of God.

20. He was even mentioned by Moses; yep, and out in the wilderness, a sign was raised up, that whoever looked at it would live. And many did look and lived.

21. But few really understood what that meant, and that was cause their hearts were hard as a rock. But there were some who were so tough they wouldnt look, so they perished. The reason they wouldnt look is cause they didnt believe itd heal em.

22. Oh my brothers, if yall could be healed just by lookin round, would you not look quick like, or would you rather harden your hearts in doubt, bein lazy, and not even glance around, that you might perish?

23. If thats the case, woeful times are comin for you; but if you dont, then look around and start believin in the Son of God, that hes gonna come save his folks, and that hell suffer and die to take care of their sins; and that hell rise up from the dead, and thats gonna lead to the resurrection, that all folks will stand before him, to be



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

judged on that last day, according to their works.

24. And now, my brothers, I wanna see yall plant this word in your hearts, and as it starts to grow, you better feed it with your faith. And believe me, itll turn into a tree, shootin up in you to everlasting life. And may God help lighten your load, through the joy of his Son. And you can do all this if you really want to. Amen.

### **Alma Chapter 34**

1. Well now, it just so happened that after Alma finished sayin all that, he plopped down on the ground, and Amulek stood up and started teachin em, sayin:

2. Listen up, yall, I reckon its downright impossible for yall not to know about all that talk about the comin of Christ, who we been sayin' is the Son of God; yep, I know folks been preachin this to yall nice and clear before yall split from us.

3. Now, I hear ya asked my good buddy to clue you in on what to do cause youve been havin a tough time; and hes already said a few things to get ya thinkin; yep, and hes been pushin ya toward faith and hangin in there

4. Yall gotta have enough faith to just plant that word right in your hearts, and then you can see what good itll do ya.

5. And we can see that whats really got ya wonderin is whether the words in the Son of God or if there aint gonna be no Christ at all.

6. And yall also noticed my brother done showed yall plenty of times that the word is right there in Christ for salvation.

7. My brothers called on the wise words of Zenos, that redemption comes through the Son of God, and hes called on Zenock too; and hes even brought Moses into the mix to back up what were sayin'.

8. Now, let me just tell you, Im givin' you my own testimony that all this here is true. I know that Christ is gonna come to the folks down here, takin on the sins of the people, and Hes gonna make things right for the world; thats what the Lord God said.

9. Its just plain necessary for an atonement to happen; you see, according to the big plan laid out by the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Eternal God, there sure as shootin' has to be an atonement made, or else the whole human race is gonna be in a heap of trouble; yep, everyones hard-headed, and were all fallen and lost, and were gonna perish unless its through that atonement which needs to happen.

10. So it's crucial theres one big ol sacrifice, not one from a mere man or an animal, or anything like that; no sir, it needs to be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

11. There aint a single fella out there who can shed his own blood thatll cover someone elses sins. Now, if a fella goes and murders someone, is our fair law gonna take the life of the one who got killed? Ill tell ya, no way.

12. But the law says that the life of the murderer must go; so nothin short of a big ol infinite atonement is gonna cut it for the sins of this world.

13. So, like I said, its essential for there to be a grand sacrifice, and its gonna be time to stop all this bloodshed; thats when the law of Moses will be completed; everythings gonna get fulfilled, no little detail left out, and nothin will slip by.

14. And heres the whole gist of the law, every bit of it pointin' to that great final sacrifice; and that big ol sacrifice is gonna be the Son of God, eternally infinite.

15. And Hes gonna bring salvation to everyone who believes in His name; thats the purpose of this last sacrificeto bring the mercy that overcomes justice, makin a way for folks to have faith that leads to repentance.

16. So mercy can meet justice right where it needs to, holdin folks in safety, while those who aint got faith for repentance are out there just exposed to justices full wrath; only those with faith for repentance can grab hold of that great and eternal plan of redemption.

17. So I pray the good Lord helps ya, my brothers, to start usin your faith for some repentance, and callin on His holy name, hopin for His mercy on yall;

18. Yeah, shout out to Him for some mercy; cause Hes mighty to save.

19. Yall humble yourselves, and keep prayin to Him.

20. Call out to Him when youre out in your fields, over all your flocks.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. Call out to Him in your homes, over all your household mornin, noon, and night.
22. Yeah, call out to Him gainst your enemies.
23. Sure, call out to Him against the devil, whos up to no good for all thats righteous.
24. Cry out to Him bout the crops in your fields, so you can prosper.
25. Wail over the flocks of your fields so they can grow.
26. But hold on, that aint all; you gotta let your souls pour out in your closets, and your secret spots, and in the great outdoors.
27. And when you ain't cryin' out to the Lord, keep your hearts full, always liftin up prayers for your well-being, and for those all round you.
28. And now listen up, my dear brothers, dont go thinkin this is all there is; cause after youve done all this, if ya turn away from the needy, and the naked, and dont check on the sick and troubled, and dont share from what ya got with those in needif you dont do any of that, well, Ill tell ya, your prayers wont amount to a hill of beans, and youre just bein' hypocrites denying the faith.
29. So if you forget to be generous, youre just like scrap metal, which the refiners toss aside (aint worth nothin) and gets stomped on by folks.
30. And now, my brothers, I hope after seein all these witnesses, what with the holy scriptures testifyin bout these truths, you come forward and bring forth some fruit that shows repentance.
31. Yeah, I wish youd step up and stop hardenin your hearts any longer; cause nows the time, the day for your salvation; and so, if youll repent and not harden your hearts, right away the great plan of redemption will come to you.
32. Cause this here life is the time for folks to get ready to meet God; sure enough, this day here is for folks to do their work.
33. And as I mentioned before, now that youve had so many witnesses, Im beggin ya to not put off the day of your repentance until the very end; cause after this life weve been given to prepare for eternity, if we dont make the most of our time while were livin, then comes the darkness where there wont be any workin done.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

34. You cant say, when you get to that awful moment, that youll repent, that youll head back to your God. No sir, you cant say that; cause the same spirit thats holdin onto ya when you leave this life, that same spirit will have the power to hold onto you in that eternal existence.

35. Cause if youve put off your repentance even til your death, youve given over to the spirit of the devil, and hes sealed you as his; that's why the Spirit of the Lords pulled away from you, and dont have a place in you, and the devils got all the power over ya; and thats where the wicked end up.

36. And I know this, cause the Lord done said He dont hang around in unholy places, but He lives in the hearts of those who are righteous; yep, and He also said that the righteous will rest in His kingdom, never goin out again; but their clothes will be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

37. And now, my beloved brothers, I pray yall remember these truths, and that you work out your salvation with a healthy dose of fear before God, and that you quit denyin Christs return;

38. That you quit fightin against the Holy Ghost, and that you receive it, takin on the name of Christ; that yall humble yourselves down to the ground, and worship God wherever you find yourselves, in spirit and in truth; and that you keep bein thankful every day for all the mercies and blessings He gives you.

39. And right on, I also urge you, my brothers, to stay alert with your prayers all the time, so you dont get pulled away by the devils temptations, that he aint able to take hold of ya, that you aint gonna end up his subjects in the last day; cause mark my words, he dont give you nothin good.

40. And now my dear brothers, Im pushin you to have some patience, and that you bear up under all kinds of troubles; dont go revilin against those who throw you out cause youre down on your luck, less you turn into sinners just like them;

41. But keep bein' patient and bearin with those hard times, holdin onto the hope that one day youll get to rest from all your troubles.

## **Alma Chapter 35**

1. Well, it all got started when Amulek wrapped up his talk, and them fellas kinda drifted off from the crowd and made their way over to the land of Jershon.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. Yup, and the rest of the crew, after spreadin' the good word to them Zoramites, they too hightailed it over to Jershon.
3. So it happened that after the more popular Zoramites got together for a little chit-chat about what had been said, they got all mad-like 'cause the word was messin' with their little scheme; so they just ignored what was preached.
4. Then they went and rounded up folks all over the land, consultin' 'em 'bout them words that was spoken.
5. But now, their big shots and spin doctors didnt let the people in on their secret plans; they just snooped around to figure out what everybody was thinkin'.
6. Then lo and behold, after they figured out what folks thought, them who sided with Alma and his buddies got kicked out from the land; and there were a whole heap of em; they scooted on over to Jershon too.
7. And then, Alma and his pals went ahead and took care of them.
8. Now the Zoramites were plum furious with the Ammon folks livin in Jershon, and their top dog, bein a real nasty piece of work, hollered over at the Ammonites, tellin' em to kick all them strays from their land.
9. And he let out all sorts of threats against em. But the good folks of Ammon didnt bat an eye at his words; they stayed put and welcomed all the down-and-out Zoramites who came knockin' on their door; they fed em, clothed em, and gave em land to call their own; they made sure to help em with whatever they needed.
10. This here got the Zoramites all riled up against the Ammonites, and they started buddying up with the Lamanites and stirring em up, too.
11. So the Zoramites and Lamanites started gettin all geared up for a showdown against the Ammonites and the Nephites.
12. And thats how the seventeenth year of them judges over the Nephites wrapped up.
13. Then the Ammonites packed up and left Jershon, settlin over in the land of Melek, makin' room in Jershon for the Nephite armies to go head-to-head with the Lamanites and the Zoramites; hence, a war kicked off between the Lamanites and Nephites in the eighteenth year of them judges; and well get to the stories of their battles later.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. Alma, Ammon, and their crew, along with Alma's two sons, returned to Zarahemla after doin' Gods work and helpin a whole bunch of Zoramites find their way back; the ones who repented got booted outta their land, but they scored some land in Jershon, and they grabbed their weapons to protect themselves, their families, and their land.

15. Now Alma, feelin all kinds of hurt for the sins of his people, what with the wars, the bloodshed, and all the fuss amongst em; and he had been out there preachin to everyone in every town, seein how hard-hearted folks were gettin, and how they were gettin all bent outta shape cause of the strict word, his heart was heavy as a rock.

16. So, he gathered up his boys, wanna make sure each one got his own piece of advice about doin' whats right. And we got a record of his instructions that he laid down for em.

### **Alma Chapter 36**

1. Well now, listen up, son, Im fixin to tell ya somethin mighty important; I swear, as long as ya keep them commandments from God, youll have good fortune in these here parts.

2. I reckon you oughta remember what happened to our folks back in the day; they were trapped in bondage, and nobody could pull 'em outta there 'cept for the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and you betcha, He sure did rescue 'em when times got tough.

3. Now, Helaman, youre still a youngin, and I'm askin ya real nice to pay close attention to what Im sayin and to learn from me; cause I swear if folks put their faith in God, theyll get through their trials and troubles, and they'll be lifted up when alls said and done.

4. And dont go thinkin I figured all this out on my ownno sir, its not about the here and now, but more about the spiritual side of things, not from a mortal mind but from God above.

5. Now listen here, if I hadnt been born of God, I wouldnt be in the know 'bout all these things; but God, through His holy angel, told me things I didnt earn or deserve.

6. I used to run around with them Mosiah boys, tryin to put a stop to the church; but hold on, God sent His angel to set us straight along the way.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. And let me tell ya, that voice came at us like thunder, and the ground shook right under our feet; we all dropped to the ground, scared outta our wits.
8. But then the voice told me, Get up! And I popped up and saw that angel standin there.
9. He said, If youre lookin to ruin yourself, then stop messin with the church of God.
10. I ain't lyin, I fell right down to the ground; for three days and three nights, my mouth was shut tight, and I couldnt move a muscle.
11. That angel had more to say, my brothers heard it, but me? I was too scared when I heard him say, If you keep tryin to destroy the church, youre gonna be your own worst enemy, and that fear hit me like a ton of bricks and I passed out cold.
12. I was tormented like you wouldnt believe, feelin' all my sins weighin down on me real heavy.
13. Yep, I recalled every single one of my mess-ups, and it felt like my soul was bein crushed under the weight of hells fires; I realized I was rebelling against my God, and I hadn't been keepin His holy commandments worth a lick.
14. I even thought about how Id led many of His children to their ruin; my iniquities were so bad that just the idea of standin before God made my heart freeze in fear.
15. Oh, how I wished I could just be goneboth soul and bodyso I wouldnt have to face Him and answer for my deeds.
16. For three long days and nights, I was tormented like a soul damned to hell.
17. And in the midst of all that, while I was trapped in memories of my sins, I remembered my daddy told the folks about Jesus Christ, Gods Son, comin to make things right for the world.
18. While my mind was stuck on that thought, I cried out deep inside: O Jesus, Son of God, have mercy on me, 'cause I'm in a world of hurt and surrounded by chains of death.
19. And wouldnt ya know, as soon as I thought that, my pain just up and vanished; I couldnt remember my troubles anymore.
20. Oh, what joy filled my heart, just like a blazing light; my soul felt happier than I ever knew was possible!

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. Ill tell ya, kid, there ain't nothin so rich and sweet as the joy I found compared to the bitterness of all them pains I had before.
22. You see, I thought I caught a glimpse, just like our father Lehi did, of God sittin on His throne with a whole heap of angels singin praises to Him; and boy, did my heart long to be there.
23. But then, my strength came back, and I stood right up, lettin folks know Id been born of God.
24. From that moment till now, I been workin non-stop tryin to help souls repent; I wanna show 'em the joy I tasted, so they too can be born of God and filled with the Holy Ghost.
25. And now I gotta tell ya, son, the Lord has givin' me so much joy from the fruits of my labors;
26. Cause thanks to the words He shared with me, Ive seen many folks be born of God and taste the same sweet joy I have, and they know the truth just like I do; what I know comes straight from God.
27. Ive been held up through all kinds of trials and troubles; yep, God has saved me time and time again from chains and death; I trust Him, and I know Hell keep deliverin me.
28. And Im sure that when the day comes, Hell raise me up to be with Him in glory; Ill praise Him forever, for Hes led our folks outta Egypt, and took care of them Egyptians in that Red Sea; He guided em by His power right into the promised land; Hes been rescuin em from bondage time and time again.
29. And lets not forget, Hes also brought our folks outta Jerusalem; and through His never-endin power, Hes freed 'em from captivity, all the way to today; and I always remember their struggles; you should too, just like me, keepin their captivity close to your heart.
30. But son, hold on, thats not all; you oughta know what I know, that if you keep the commandments of God, you'll do just fine in this land; but if you ignore em, well, you wont be able to be around Him anymore. Thats just the way it is, according to His word.

## **Alma Chapter 37**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya, the brass plates and them other scriptures are kept safe-like to help folks get to that good ol salvationThem Jaredites got wiped out 'cause they was real wickedTheir sneaky oaths and promises need to stay hidden from the folksYou best be talkin' with the Lord 'bout all you doin'sJust like the



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Liahona led the Nephites, the word of Christ guides folks to everlasting life. 'Bout 74 B.C.

2. And now, my boy Helaman, I'm tellin ya to take them records that's been handed to me;

3. And Im also askin you to keep a record of this here people, just like I done with the plates of Nephi, and keep all this stuff sacred as I have, 'cause theres a reason why its all preserved.

4. And these brass plates, they got some mighty important engravings on 'em, with holy scriptures and our ancestors' family lines, straight from the start

5. Well now, its been prophesied by our kin that theyd be kept and passed down from one generation to the next, kept safe by the Lord until they reach all nations, kinds, tongues, and peoples, so they can know the mysteries on em.

6. And now listen, if theyre kept right, they gotta shine bright; yep, theyll keep their brightness, and all them plates that hold the holy word will too.

7. Now, you might think Im bein foolish here; but I tell ya, small and simple things can lead to big ol miracles; sometimes small means can stump the wise folks.

8. And the Lord God works through these small means to bring 'bout His big and eternal plans; little things can sure confuse those wise ones and save lots of souls.

9. And right now, its been wise in Gods eyes to keep these things safe; theyve got folks thinkin better, makin' em realize their missteps and bringin' em to find out about their God for their soul's salvation.

10. Sure as shootin, I tell ya, if it weren't for them records on these plates, Ammon and his buddies wouldnt have been able to turn so many Lamanites around on the wrong traditions of their folks; yep, them records and their words led em to repent; brought 'em to know the Lord their God, and to find joy in Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

11. And who knows, they might just be the reason many thousands, and even our stubborn Nephite brothers who are hardenin' their hearts with all that sin, come to know their Redeemer?

12. Now I dont fully grasp these mysteries yet, so I reckon Ill hold my horses.

13. But itll do to say they're preserved for a smart reason, known only to God; Hes wise over all His doin's,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

His ways are right, and His course keeps goin round and round.

14. Oh, remember, remember, my boy Helaman, how strict Gods commandments are. And He said: If ya keep my commandments, youll prosper in the landbut if ya dont, yall gonna be cut off from His presence.

15. And remember now, my son, God has trusted you with these sacred things Hes kept safe for a wise purpose, so that He can show His power to the folks who come after us.

16. And listen here, Im tellin ya by the spirit of prophecy, if ya go messin' with Gods commandments, then those sacred things gonna be taken away from ya by Gods power, and youll be turned over to Satan to get tossed round like chaff in the wind.

17. But if you keep Gods commandments and deal with those sacred things like the Lord wants ya to, (gotta ask the Lord for help in all things you do with em) then no power from this earth or hell can take em away from you, cause God is strong enough to keep His word.

18. Hell fulfill all the promises He made to you, cause He done fulfilled promises to our fathers before us.

19. He promised them Hed preserve these things with a wise purpose, to show His might to the future generations.

20. And now look, Hes done fulfilled one purpose already, bringin' a whole bunch of Lamanites back to knowin the truth; Hes shown His might with 'em, and Hell keep showin His power to them down the line; thats why theyll be kept.

21. So I command you, my boy Helaman, to be diligent in followin all my words, and to keep Gods commandments as theyre laid out.

22. Now, I got some words for ya bout them twenty-four plates; keep em safe, so the secrets and dark works of them folks that got wiped out can be revealed to this here people; yep, all their murders and robbings, and all their wickedness and horrid actions, need to be known; and make sure you hold on to them interpreters.

23. Cause the Lord saw His people was messin round in darkness, doin' secret murders and awful things; so He said if they didnt shape up, theyd be wiped off the face of the earth.

24. And the Lord said: Ill get my servant Gazelem a stone that shines in the dark to show my folks who serve

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

me the works of their brothers yep, their secret doin's, their dark works, and all their wicked deeds.

25. And now, my boy, these interpreters were fixed up so the word of God could come to pass, just like He said:

26. Ill bring out all their secret doins and horrid acts from the dark to the light; and if they dont repent, Ill wipe 'em off the face of the earth; and Ill reveal all their secrets to every nation that ends up livin on this land.

27. And now, my boy, we see they didnt repent; so they got themselves destroyed, and the word of Gods been fulfilled; yep, their secret sins got dragged outta the dark and laid bare for us.

28. And now, my boy, I command you to hold tight to all their oaths, their promises, and those shady agreements in their secret bad doin's; yep, keep all their signs and wonders from this people, so they dont know em, or they might end up in the dark too and get wiped out.

29. Cause theres a curse on all this land, destructions comin for all those dark-doers, according to Gods power, when theyre all ripe for it; so I sure hope this people dont get wiped out.

30. So, keep them secret ploys of their oaths and promises from this people, and only let 'em know about their wickedness and murders; teach 'em to hate that wrong-doing and awful things, and remind 'em these folks got destroyed on account of their sins and wickedness.

31. Cause, believe it or not, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came around tellin 'em bout their wrongs; and the blood of them they killed cried out to the Lord their God for revenge on their murderers; and thats how Gods judgments fell on those dark-doers and secret groups.

32. Yep, cursed be this land forever to those dark-doers and secret schemers, cept they repent before its too late.

33. And now, my boy, remember what I told ya; dont trust those secret plans with this people, but teach em a lasting hatred for sin and wrong-doing.

34. Preach repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach em to stay humble and meek in their hearts; teach em to resist every temptation from the devil, leanin' on their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

35. Teach em to never tire of doin good, but to be humble and lowly in heart; for them will find rest for their

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

souls.

36. Oh, remember, my boy, and get yourself wise while you're young; learn in your youth to follow Gods commandments.

37. And sure enough, cry out to God for all your needs; let all you do be for the Lord, wherever you go, let it be in the Lord; and keep your thoughts on the Lord, and let your heart's affections be on the Lord for good.

38. Talk to the Lord in all you do, and Hell guide ya good; when you hit the hay at night, just lay down to the Lord, so He can keep watch over ya while you sleep; and when you get up in the mornin, make sure your heart's full of thanks to God; and if you do all that, youll be lifted up come the last day.

39. And now, my boy, I got somethin to say bout that thing our fathers called a ball, or a directoror they called it Liahona, which means compass; and the Lord put it together.

40. And look, no man can do the likes of that fancy work. It was made to show our fathers the way they should go in the wild.

41. And it worked for em according to their faith in God; so if they believed God could make them spindles point the way, well, it happened just like that; they got that miracle, and a whole bunch more miracles by the hand of God, day after day.

42. Even still, cause them miracles came from small means, they saw mighty works. They got lazy and forgot to exercise their faith and hustle, and then them mighty works stopped, and they didnt move along in their journey;

43. So, they stayed in the wilderness, not goin the right way, and they suffered from hunger and thirst cause of their mess ups.

44. And now, my boy, I want you to understand these things aint without a shadow; cause just like our fathers got lazy with this compass (now them things was temporal), they didnt prosper; and its the same with spiritual things.

45. For its as easy to heed the word of Christ, whichll show ya the straight path to eternal happiness, as it was for our fathers to listen to this compass, which pointed to the promised land.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

46. And now I ask, aint there a type of this thing? For just as sure as this director guided our fathers to the promised land by followin its path, the words of Christ will carry us across this vale of pain into a much better promised land.

47. Oh my son, lets not be lazy just cause the way is easy; cause it was the same with our fathers; it was laid out for them, that if they looked, they might live; and its set up for us too. The way is ready, and if we look, we can live forever.

48. And now, my son, make sure you take good care of these holy things, look to God and live. Go to this people and share the word, and be serious. My son, I bid you farewell.

### **Alma Chapter 38**

1. My boy, now listen up to what I gotta say, just like I told Helaman, if yall keep Gods commandments, you gonna do mighty fine in the land; but if you dont, well, you might find yourself cut off from His presence.

2. And now, my boy, I reckon Ill have a heap of joy in you, 'cause of how steady and faithful youve been to God; now that youve started lookin to the Lord in your youth, I sure hope you keep on keepin His commandments; blessed is the one who hangs in there till the end.

3. Im tellin you, son, Ive already had a whole lotta joy in ya, 'cause of your faithfulness and hard work, and your patience and long-sufferin' with them Zoramites.

4. 'Cause I know you been in shackles; yeah, and I also know you took some stones for speakin the word; and you put up with all that 'cause the Lord was right there with ya; and now you know the Lord done delivered you.

5. And now, my boy Shiblon, remember this: as much as you trust in God, thats how much Hell pull you through your trials, troubles, and sufferins, and you gonna be lifted up on that last day.

6. Now, son, I dont want you thinkin I know all this on my own, 'cause its the Spirit of God in me whats lettin me know all these things; if I hadnt been born of God, I wouldnt know none of this.

7. But just look, the Lord, in His great mercy, sent His angel to tell me I had to stop all the destruction amongst His folks; yeah, I saw an angel face to face, and he spoke to me, and His voice was like thunder,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

shakin the whole earth.

8. Then it happened that I was three days and three nights in the worst kinda pain and heartache; and never, till I cried out to the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I get a break from my sins. But, let me tell ya, I did cry to Him, and I found peace in my soul.

9. Now, son, I told you this so you can learn some wisdom, and know there aint no other way for folks to be saved, 'cept through Christ. Look here, Hes the life and the light of the world. Hes the word of truth and righteousness.

10. And now that youve started teachin the word, I want you to keep at it; and be diligent and temperate in everything you do.

11. Dont go gettin all full of pride now; dont be boastin bout your own smarts or your strength.

12. Be bold, but dont go overboard; and make sure you keep all your passions in check, so you can be filled with love; also, dont be lazy.

13. Dont pray like them Zoramites do, 'cause you saw they pray just to be heard by folks and to get praised for bein' wise.

14. Dont be sayin: O God, I thank you were better than our brothers; instead, say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and keep my brothers in Your mercyalways acknowledge your faults before God.

15. And may the Lord bless your soul and welcome you into His kingdom on that last day, so you can sit in peace. Now go on, my boy, and teach this folks the word. Keep your wits about ya. Son, Ill see ya later.

### **Alma Chapter 39**

1. Well now, listen here, my boy, I got somethin to say to ya thats a bit more than what I told your brother. Ain't you noticed how steady your brother is? Hes been faithful and works real hard at keepin Gods commandments, ain't he? He sure set a good example for ya, thats a fact.

2. Now, I reckon you werent payin as much attention to my words like your brother was, not in front of them Zoramites, no siree. And heres whats irkin meyll got a little too full of yourself, thinkin you were mighty clever and strong.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

3. But hold up, son, theres more to it. You done went and did somethin that really upset me; you turned your back on the ministry and traipsed off into that land of Siron chasin' after that harlot Isabel.
4. Well now, she sure did steal away the hearts of a whole mess of folks, but that ain't no pass for ya, son. You shouldve stuck to the ministry you were given, plain and simple.
5. Aint you aware, my son, that all that mess is downright abominable to the Lord? Yep, its about the worst kinda sin, only exception bein the spillin of innocent blood or flat-out denyin the Holy Ghost.
6. Cause lemme tell ya, if you go denyin the Holy Ghost after hes been in ya, and you know it, that theres a sin that ain't got no forgiveness. And whoever goes and murders in the light of God ain't gonna find it easy to get that forgiveness either; Im tellin ya, son, its a tough road to hoe.
7. Now, I really wish to God you hadnt been mixed up in such a big ol mess. I wouldnt keep bringin it up if it werent for your own good.
8. But ya cant hide from God, let me tell ya; unless ya repent, them crimes are gonna stand against ya on that last day.
9. Now, son, I really want you to repent and leave behind those sins, and quit chasin after every pretty thing you see; you gotta get right with all that, cause if ya dont, there aint no way youre gettin into the kingdom of God. Oh, remember it, and take it to heart, you gotta make things right.
10. And Im tellin ya, ya better start talkin with your older brothers bout what youre doin; youre still young, and you need their guidance. So listen up to what they say.
11. Dont let yourself get swept away by somethin silly or foolish; dont let the devil pull your heart back into those wicked ways. Just look at the trouble you caused for the Zoramites; your actions made em doubt my words.
12. Now, the Spirit of the Lords tellin me: you gotta instruct your younguns to do good, else they might lead a whole lotta folks to ruin; so Im tellin you, my boy, fear God and put a stop to your sins.
13. Turn to the Lord with all your heart, strength, and spirit; dont lead others astray no more, but go back to em, admit your wrongs and the trouble you stirred up.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. Dont go chasin after riches or all them shiny things of this world; cause lets be honest, you aint takin any of that with ya.

15. And now, son, I want to chat a bit bout the comin of Christ. Im here to tell ya that hes surely gonna come and take away the worlds sins; yep, hes comin to share the good news of salvation with his folks.

16. Now, listen up, boy, this is the ministry you were called togonna spread those good tidings to this here people, to get their minds ready; or really so that salvation can come to em, helpin em prepare their kiddos to hear the word when he shows up.

17. And now Im gonna ease your mind a bit on this topic. Youre wonderin why folks gotta know about all this way ahead of time, right? Well, Ill tell ya, aint every soul just as precious to God now as itll be when he shows up?

18. Aint it just as important for this people to know about the redemption plan as it is for their younguns?

19. Aint it as easy right now for the Lord to send his angel to share these good tidings with us just as it would be for our children after his coming?

### **Alma Chapter 40**

1. Well now, my boy, I gotta tell ya a little more bout this here resurrection business, cause I can see its weighin heavy on your mind about what happens to folks after they kick the bucket.

2. Now listen here, Im tellin ya, there aint no resurrectionlet me put it this way, this ol mortal body aint gonna get all immortal and uncorrupted til after Christ makes His grand entrance.

3. See here, Hes the one wholl get us all back up again. But let me remind ya, my son, that resurrection aint happenin yet. Im about to share a little mystery with ya; but truth be told, theres a heap of mysteries out there that only God knows. But I got one thing Ive been askin God bout real hard, and its all bout the resurrection.

4. Now, theres a set time when every last one of us is gonna rise up from the dead. When that time rolls around, nobody knows, cept God, whos got it all marked on His calendar.

5. Now it dont reckon if its gonna happen one time, or maybe two or three; it aint none of my business, cause Gods got it all figured out, and its just enough for me to know were all gonna rise up when the time is right.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

6. Now theres a little gap between when we kick the bucket and when we get back up again.
7. So Im wonderin, what in tarnation happens to folks souls from the moment they draw their last breath till they rise again?
8. Now whether theres more than one time for folks to rise dont really matter to me; cause everybody dont up and die at the same time, and thats how it is; everythings like one day for God, and times just a thing we measure for us humans.
9. So theres a time set for people to rise from the dead, and theres a gap between death and resurrection. Now, Im real curious bout what happens to folks during that gap, and Ive been askin the Lord real hard to figure it out; and this is what I do know.
10. And when that time comes when we all get up, then well see that God knows all the times Hes set for mankind.
11. Now, bout what happens to the soul between death and when you rise againwell, I got some news from an angel: as soon as folks leave this ol body, they all go home to God who gave em life.
12. Then, all them righteous folks? Theyre gonna be welcomed into a happy place we call paradisea nice little spot to rest, full of peace, where they can lay down all their troubles and worries.
13. But then theres the wicked ones, yeah, them who chose the wrong path; they dont get no part of the Lords spirit. They picked their misdeeds over good, and the devil took em right over. Theyll be thrown into outer darkness; itll be a cryin and a moanin, and a gnashin of teeth, all cause of their own dang wickedness, lettin the devil lead em round.
14. Now thats the state of those wicked souls, sittin in darkness, all afraid and lookin to feel Gods fierce anger comin down on em; and they stay there, just like the good folks in paradise, til its time for em to rise.
15. Now some folks think this happy state and this miserable state before the resurrection is some kinda early resurrection. I reckon you could maybe call it that, raisin the spirit or soul and sendin em off to happiness or misery, based on whats been said.
16. And Ive heard folks talk about a first resurrection, the rising up of everyone who ever was or ever will be,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

right to when Christ rose from the dead.

17. Now, we cant be thinkin this first resurrection means thats when the souls get sent off to happiness or misery. You best not be thinkin thats what its all about.

18. Listen here, Im tellin ya, it aint that; its all bout reunitin that soul with its body, stretchin all the way back to Adam and right up to Christs resurrection.

19. Now, as to whether those souls and bodies were talkin bout all reunite at the same time, the wicked and the righteous alike, I aint got an answer for ya; but I can say they all gonna rise up before the folks who pass after Christs resurrection.

20. Now, son, Im not sayin their rise happens right when Christ rises; but I think its my opinion that the righteous folks souls and bodies get back together at Christs resurrection and His climbin up to heaven.

21. But whether its right then or later, I cant say; but I know for sure theres a gap between death and the body risin, and a soul stayin happy or in misery til Gods got the time set for the dead to rise and get back together, body and soul, standin before God to be judged cordin to what they done.

22. Yeah, thats what brings round the restoring of everythin the prophets been preachin bout.

23. The soul gets back in the body, and the body reunites with the soul; every last limb and joint is gonna be put back right; even a single hair on the head wont be missin; everythin is gonna come back to its perfect state.

24. And now, son, this is what them prophets been talkin boutthe restoring.

25. And then the righteous folks will shine like stars in Gods kingdom.

26. But dont you be fooled, cause a terrible death is comin for them wicked; theyre gonna be dead to all things that are good and righteous; theyre unclean, and the Lord aint lettin no unclean thing in His kingdom, so theyll be tossed out, gettin the fruits of their bad deeds, and drinkin the bitter dregs of a rough ol cup.

## **Alma Chapter 41**

1. In the Resurrection, folks come back to either a never-ending joy or a heap of miseryaint no way wickedness ever brought happinessCarnal folks are just wanderin without God in this worldEvery single person gets back what they gained when they were livin. 'Bout 74 B.C.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. Now listen here, son, I got a thing or two to say 'bout that restoration we been jawin about; some folks done twisted the good book, and theyre way off track 'cause of it. And I can tell your mind's been a bit troubled too, thinkin' on it. But dont worry, I'm gonna break it down for ya.

3. I reckon, son, that the whole restoration plan fits right in with Gods justice; it's mighty important that everything gets put back in its rightful place. Now look, its just and necessary, 'cause of the power and resurrection of Christ, that a persons soul gets reunited with its body, and every piece of that body gets back together like it should.

4. And its only fair with Gods justice that folks get judged by their actions; if their good deeds were good in this life, and their hearts were pointed in the right direction, then they oughta be brought back to whats good come the last day.

5. But if their deeds were bad, theyll get brought back to that bad. So, everythings gonna be put back right, all things to their natural statemortality turned to immortality, corruption to incorruptionyanked up to endless happiness to enjoy the kingdom of God, or dragged down to endless misery to hang out in the devils kingdom, one on this side, the other on that side

6. Ones lifted up to happiness 'cause they were after that happiness, and the others sent to evil 'cause they chased after that bad stuff; for just like they wanted to do evil all day long, thats exactly what theyll get when the night rolls around.

7. Now, the same goes for the other fella. If hes truly turned away from his sins, and wanted whats right to the very end, then hell get rewarded for his righteousness.

8. These are the folks that Gods brought back; yep, them's the ones who've been pulled outta that never-ending dark night; and so they stand or fall on their own; for there they are, their own judges, choosin between good and evil.

9. Now, Gods decrees cant be changed; so the paths wide open for anyone who wants to stroll down it and get saved.

10. And now listen here, my son, dont go throwin in your lot with sin no more on these doctrines youve

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

already dabbled in.

11. Dont go thinkin 'cause we talk about restoration that you can go from sin to happiness. Listen close, wickedness aint never brought happiness.

12. And now, son, all folks stuck in their carnal ways are filled with bitterness and shackled in sin; theyre wanderin without God in this world, and they done walked away from the nature of God; so they ain't in a place that feels like happiness at all.

13. And now, take heeddoes restoration mean takin somethin thats natural and shovin it into an unnatural state, or turnin it upside down from what its meant to be?

14. Oh, son, that ain't it; the word restoration means bringin back evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilishgood for good; righteous for righteous; just for just; merciful for merciful.

15. So, son, be sure you show mercy to your brothers; be fair, judge right, and keep doin good; and if you follow this advice, youll reap your reward; yep, youll get mercy back; youll see justice come back around; youll have right judgment comin back to ya; and youll be rewarded for the good you did.

16. 'Cause what you send out will come back to you, and get restored; so that there word restoration shows up the sinner real well, and dont justify 'em one bit.

### **Alma Chapter 42**

1. Well now, let me tell ya, this here life were livin is just a test to give folks a chance to turn it around and do right by Godcause that Fall business brought death, both kinda deaths, on all of us folksRedemptions all about turnin your life aroundGod Himself pays the price for the worlds mess-upsNow mercys for them who truly wanna changeAll them other folks gotta face the music of Gods justiceMercy comes cause of the AtonementOnly the real sorry ones get saved. Bout 74 B.C.

2. Now listen here, my boy, I can tell somethins weighin on your mind, and it aint sittin well with yaya wonderin bout Gods justice when it comes to punishing the sinners; ya reckon its unfair for a sinner to end up in a heap of trouble.

3. Now, just hold on a second, my son, Im gonna lay this out for ya. Ya see, when the Good Lord sent our first

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

parents on outta that Eden garden to work the land they came fromyep, He pulled the man out, put him over yonder on the east side of the garden, guarded by cherubim, and wieldin' a flaming sword twistin' every which way, keepin folks from that tree of life

4. Now, look here, we see that the man learned all Gods knowledge, knowin good from bad; and so he wouldnt get to grab hold of that tree of life, eat up, and live forever, the Lord put them cherubim and the sword there, keepin him from munchin on that fruit

5. So we can see, there was a time given to folks to turn around, yeah, a testin time, a chance to get right with God.

6. Cause look here, if Adam had just reached out and grabbed that tree of life right off the bat, hed a lived forever, like God said, not that hed have much room for repentin; and that would mean Gods word woulda been all for nothin, messin up the whole plan of salvation.

7. But lo and behold, it was set up for man to take a dirt napso when they got cut off from that tree of life, they got cut off from this ole earth tooand man ended up lost forever, sure enough, they fell pretty hard.

8. Now yall see, with this here knowledge, our first parents got cut off both in this life and in spirit from the Lord; and that's how they ended up followin their own whims.

9. Now listen, it just didnt make sense for man to be brought back from this here physical death, cause thatd mess up the whole plan of happiness.

10. So, since a soul dont ever really die, and that Fall made all of mankind suffer both spiritually and temporally, bein cut off from the Lords presence, it made sense that folks oughta be brought back from that spiritual death.

11. Thats why they turned all carnal and devilish in naturethis here temporary state became a chance for em to get ready; it was a prep time.

12. And now dont forget, my son, if it werent for that good plan of redemption, (settin it aside) right when folks kick the bucket, their souls are in a real pickle, bein cut off from the Lord.

13. And now, there just wasn't a way to bring folks back from this fallen state, which they got themselves into

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

cause they just wouldnt listen;

14. So, cordin to justice, that plan of redemption couldnt take shape, only if folks repented in this here testin time, yeah, this preparatory state; cause if it werent for them conditions, mercy couldnt kick in without messin up justice. Now, justice aint gonna be short-changed; if it was, Godd stop being God.

15. So there ya have it, all mankinds fallen, and theyre caught in justices grip; yeah, Gods justice that sentenced em to be cut off forever from His presence.

16. Now, that plan of mercy couldn't go through til an atonement was made; so Gods the one who pays for the worlds sins, makin way for mercy, fulfillin justice so He can be both a fair God and a merciful one.

17. Now, folks cant repent unless theres a punishment tagged along, one thats as eternal as the soul, sittin right up against the plan of happiness, which also lasts as long as the soul does.

18. Now, how in the world can a man repent without hittin that bottom line of doing wrong? How could ya even do wrong if there werent no law? How could there even be a law if there wasnt some kind of punishment?

19. Now, they surely set up a punishment, and a just laws been laid down that brings a real painful conscience to folks.

20. Now, if there wasnt no law writ down if a man offed someone, he oughta die would he even worry about dyin if he was fixin to kill?

21. And also, without no laws against sin, folks wouldnt fret bout doin wrong.

22. And if the law aint gonna be there, if folks sinned what could justice or mercy do, cause they wouldnt have any right to make claims on the sinner?

23. But theres a law set in stone, and a punishment quickened up, and repentance in the mix; which mercys layin claim to; otherwise justice would be claimin that sinner and makin em pay up, punishin em; if it aint that way, justice would get all messed up, and God wouldnt be God no more.

24. But God aint gonna stop bein God, and mercys lookin out for the folks that repent, and mercy comes round cause of that atonement; and that atonement gets them dead folks back up again; and the resurrection of the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

dead brings folks back into Gods presence; and thats how they get restored to Him, to be judged by their works, according to law and justice.

25. Cause looky here, justices takin care of all its claims, and mercys layin hold of all thats hers; so only the truly repentant are gonna make it.

26. What, ya think mercy can just swoop in and steal from justice? I tell ya, nope; not a bit. If thats the case, Godd just stop bein God.

27. And thats how God works out His big ol eternal plans that were set up way back when the world was just a thought. And thats how salvation and redemption for folks happens, along with the slipperiness and mess that follows.

28. So listen here, my son, anyone who wants to come can come on down and dive into those waters of life without a penny to their name; and anyone who dont want to come ain't gotta but come the last day, they gonna get back what they put into it.

29. If they wished to do wrong, and never turned things round in time, reckon evils gonna come right back round on em, just like God said.

30. And now, my son, I hope yall let these thoughts roll off your back and just let your sins remind ya of whats gotta change, nothin heavier than that bringin ya down to repentance.

31. Oh my son, Im hopin you let go of doubtin Gods justice now. Dont you try to make excuses for your sins in any way by denyin' whats just; but let Gods justice, mercy, and patience have their way in your heart; let it bring you down low in humility.

32. Now, listen here, my son, youve been called by God to share the good word with these folks. So, go on now, spread that truth with sincerity and a clear head, that you might lead folks to turn their hearts around, so this grand plan of mercy can take hold of em. And may God bless you just like I asked Him to, Amen.

## **Alma Chapter 43**

1. Well, let me tell ya, the boys of Alma went out amongst the folks to spread the good word. And Alma, bless his heart, couldnt sit still neither, so he hopped on out there too.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. Now, I aint gonna spend too much time talkin bout their preachin, cept to say they was preachin the truth, guided by the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they was doin it in that holy order God called em to.
3. Now Im fixin' to get back to tellin ya bout the tussles between the Nephites and Lamanites, right in the eighteenth year of the judges rule.
4. See, the Zoramites done turned into Lamanites; so when the eighteenth year kicked off, the Nephites caught wind that the Lamanites was comin for em, so they got their act together for war; shoot, they rounded up their armies in Jershon.
5. Well, those Lamanites showed up with their thousands, rollin' right into Antionum, the land of the Zoramites, led by a fella named Zerahemnah.
6. Now, lemme tell ya, them Amalekites were even meaner and more bloodthirsty than them Lamanites, so Zerahemnah put them Amalekites and Zoramites in charge of the Lamanite troops.
7. He did that to keep up the hate towards the Nephites, hopin to use em to carry out his nasty plans.
8. Cause, you see, his plan was to rile up the Lamanites to get mad at the Nephites so he could try to grab up all the power for himself, bringin' em into bondage.
9. Now, the Nephites plan was to protect their homes, their land, their wives, and their kids, keepin' em safe from any harm; they also wanted to hold onto their rights and freedoms, so they could worship God how they saw fit.
10. They knew that if they got caught by the Lamanites, anyone who dared to worship the real God would be toast.
11. And they was also aware of how much the Lamanites despised their folks, the Anti-Nephi-Lehi group, who was known as the people of Ammon those folks wouldnt lift a finger to fight, seein as they had made a promise and staunchly stuck to it so if they fell to the Lamanites, theyd be done for.
12. And the Nephites werent gonna let that happen; they made sure to gift em some of their land to call home.
13. Them folks of Ammon even pitched in a good hefty sum to help support the Nephite armies; so with that, the Nephites were left all on their lonesome to face the Lamanites, who was a mixed bunch of Lamanites,



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Lemuelites, and folks led by Ishmael, plus all those who split from the Nephites, like the Amalekites, Zoramites, and the priests descendants from good ol Noah.

14. Now, those descendants were almost as many as the Nephites; so ya see, the Nephites had to battle their brothers, right down to spillin blood.

15. Well, it so happened that when the Lamanite armies gathered up in Antionum, the Nephites were poised and ready to meet em in Jershon.

16. Now the head honcho of the Nephites, whod been picked to be chief captainhe was in charge of all the Nephite armiesand his name was Moroni;

17. And Moroni took full control, runnin the show hard. He was just a spry twenty-five years old when he got the boss title over those Nephite armies.

18. Then he crossed paths with the Lamanites right there at Jershon, and his folks were armed to the teeth with swords, cimeters, and all sorts of weapons.

19. Well, when the Lamanites laid eyes on the Nephites, or Moronis crew, with their breastplates, arm shields, and those fancy head shields, along with thick clothes to boot

20. Those Lamanites werent in no shape like that; all they had was swords and cimeters, bows and arrows, stones and slings; they was bare, just a small piece of skin wrapped round their waists; shoot, most of em were naked, skip those Zoramites and Amalekites;

21. But they didnt even have no breastplates or shieldsso you bet they were quakin in their boots at the sight of the Nephites armor, even if they outnumbered em.

22. Would ya believe it? They didnt even have the guts to face the Nephites at Jershon; they hightailed it out of Antionum, wanderin through the wilderness, skirtin around the river Sidon, tryin to sneak into Manti to take over the land; they figured Moroni and his boys wouldnt catch on to their little scheme.

23. But as soon as they high-tailed it into the wild, Moroni sent out some spies to keep an eye on em; and knowing what Alma had prophesized, he sent some men to ask him to check in with the Lord about where the Nephite armies oughta go to defend against those Lamanites.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

24. Well, the Lord spoke to Alma, and Alma relayed the message back to Moroni that those Lamanites were prowlin round in the wild, tryin to sneak over to Manti to pounce on the weaker folks. And those messengers delivered that message crystal clear to Moroni.

25. Now Moroni, leavin some of his army in Jershon, hopin no Lamanite stragglers would make it in to steal the city, he took the rest of his crew and marched over to Manti.

26. He rallied all the folks in that part of the land to unite and fight against them Lamanites, defending their homes and their country, their rights, and their freedoms; so they was ready when the Lamanites showed up.

27. Then Moroni had his army get all sneaky like, tucked away in a valley close to the bank of the Sidon, which was on the west side of the river in the wild.

28. He set up spies all round, keepin tabs on when them Lamanite camps would show up.

29. And bless his heart, Moroni knew them Lamanites had a wicked plan to wipe out their brothers, or to subjugate em, so they could build their own kingdom all over the land;

30. And he also knew the Nephites only wish was to keep their land, freedom, and church safe, so he figured it werent no sin to defend em smart; so he found out through his spies which way the Lamanites was headin.

31. So he split his forces and moved part of em into the valley, hidin some on the east and south sides of hill Riplah;

32. And the rest he kept hidden in the west valley, on the river Sidons west side, stretchin down to the borders of Manti.

33. With that, he set up his army just how he wanted, prepped for a lil showdown.

34. Next thing you know, the Lamanites were comin up from the north side of that hill where some of Moronis army was tucked away.

35. As the Lamanites passed Riplah and moved into the valley, headin to cross the Sidon, the bunch hidin on the south led by a fella named Lehi popped out, surroundin em from behind.

36. Well, when them Lamanites noticed the Nephites creepin up behind em, they spun around and started throwin down with Lehis crew.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

37. And boy, oh boy, the grim work started on both sides, but it was worse for the Lamanites, since they was bare and catchin those nasty blows from them Nephite swords and cimeters, which brought them to their knees right quick.

38. On the flip side, the Nephites had a few takedowns here and there, but they had some protection, what with their breastplates and shields keepin them from too much harm; so, they usin their own weapons, they went to town on them Lamanites.

39. Then the Lamanites started to freak out, seein how bad things were goin for em, and they began to skedaddle towards the river Sidon.

40. Lehi and his boys chased after em, herding em right into the waters of Sidon, but Lehi kept his folks on the banks to keep em from crossin.

41. Soon enough, Moroni and his crew caught up with the Lamanites in the valley, just on the other side of the Sidon, and started layin the smackdown.

42. Them Lamanites pulled another fast one, tryin' to get away towards Manti but found themselves face-to-face with Moronis boys again.

43. In this round, them Lamanites fought harder than ever; Im tellin ya, never before had they put up such a fierce fight, no sir, not from the very start.

44. They was spurred on by them Zoramites and Amalekites, who was their top captains and leaders, and that Zerahemnah, who was leadin em; they fought like wild beasts, and many a Nephite felt their sting, since they smashed right through a whole mess of their headplates, pierced many a breastplate, and chopped off a heap of arms; those Lamanites was madder than a hornet.

45. Still, the Nephites were spurred on by a good cause, cause they werent fightin for a throne or power but for their homesteads, freedoms, wives, kids, and everything they held dear, yes sir, for their right to worship and their church.

46. They was just doin what they thought was their duty to God; since the Lord had told em and their forefathers that: As long as they werent guilty of messin up first, they shouldnt let themselves get squashed by

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

their enemies.

47. And besides, the Lord said: Ya gotta defend yer families even if it means spillin blood. So, thats why the Nephites were throwin down with the Lamanites, tryin to save their kin, their lands, their country, rights, and religion.

48. And when Moronis men caught sight of how fierce them Lamanites were, they were fixin to run, but Moroni, seein that, riled em up with these thoughtsthinkin bout their home, their freedom, and gettin out from under that yoke.

49. Then they turned back on them Lamanites, cryin out to the Lord for their liberty and their freedom from that bondage.

50. They started standin tall against the Lamanites, and in that very moment they hollered out to the Lord for their freedom, those Lamanites started to bounce out, runnin straight for the Sidon.

51. Now, them Lamanites had em outnumbered by more than double; still, they got driven back til they was all huddled up in one spot, the valley by the river Sidon.

52. So, Moronis forces surrounded em good, comin at em from both sides of the river, while Lehis men was set up on the east side.

53. So, when Zerahemnah laid eyes on Lehis gang over on the river's east and Moronis army on the other side, he was struck with a mighty fear.

54. And once Moroni caught wind of their fright, he ordered his crew to ease up on the bloodshed.

### **Alma Chapter 44**

1. Well, it happened that they stopped and backed off a bit. And Moroni said to Zerahemnah: Now listen here, Zerahemnah, we ain't lookin' to be bloodthirsty folks. You know we're holdin all the cards, but we ain't fixin to take you out.

2. Listen here, we didn't come to this fight just to spill your blood for power; we sure don't wanna put nobody under our thumb. But that's exactly why yall are comin at us, ain't it? Y'all are mad at us 'cause of our beliefs.

3. But you see now that the Good Lords on our side; Hes handed ya right over to us. And I want you to get this

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

clear: whats happenin' here is 'cause of our faith and belief in Christ. You can tell we ain't gonna let this faith of ours go down easy.

4. Now you see, this right here is the real deal, the true faith in God; you can see that Godll back us up, keep us safe, and look after us as long as we keep our faith strong; He sure wont let us be wiped out unless we start messin up and turn our backs on what we believe.

5. And now, Zerahemnah, Im tellin you, in the name of that mighty God whos given us the strength to take you on, by our faith, by the way we worship, by the church we call our own, and by the love we hold for our families and this land we call home; and by that sacred word of God, which gives us real happiness

6. Now listen here, I aint done yet; I'm commandin you by all them things you hold dear about livin, to hand over your weapons to us, and we aint lookin for your blood, well let you live if you just skedaddle and dont come back lookin' for trouble.

7. But now, if you dont do this, well, youre in our grip, and Ill tell my boys to come down on you hard, and put a hurtin on ya that you wont come back from; well see whos really in charge here; well see whos gonna end up shackled.

8. And when Zerahemnah heard all this, he stepped up, handed over his sword and his bow to Moroni, and said: Alright, here are our weapons; well give em to ya, but we ain't takin no oath 'cause we know we ain't keepin' it, and neither will our kids; so just take our weapons and let us head out into the wild; otherwise, were keepin our swords, and we'll either die fightin or win.

9. Now listen, we ain't part of your faith; we dont reckon it was God who put us in your grip; we think its your slick ways thats kept ya safe from our blades. Its your breastplates and shields thatve kept ya goin.

10. And when Zerahemnah finished up his speech, Moroni handed back the sword and weapons hed been given, sayin': Alright now, were callin' this fight off.

11. I cant recall my words, so as sure as the Lord lives, yall ain't leavin' here unless you swear you won't come at us again with war. Now that you're in our grip, we can spill your blood, or you can agree to what Im settin forth.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

12. And after Moroni said this, Zerahemnah kept hold of his sword, madder than a hornet, and rushed to kill Moroni; but just as he swung that sword, one of Moronis lads knocked it right outta his hands, broke it at the hilt, and also got Zerahemnah, takin off his scalp, which tumbled to the ground. And Zerahemnah hightailed it back to his men.

13. Now, that soldier who got Zerahemnahs scalp, he picked it up by the hair and put it on the tip of his sword, and stretched that sword out toward 'em, yellin loud:

14. Just like this here scalps dropped on the ground, which belongs to your chief, so yall gonna go down too, unless you hand over your weapons and skedaddle with a promise of peace.

15. Now, a whole bunch of folks, when they heard this and saw that scalp on the sword, got scared stiff; and many stepped up, dropped their weapons at Moronis feet, and agreed to a peace deal. And all who made the deal were allowed to leave for the wild.

16. But Zerahemnah was fit to be tied, gettin all riled up, and he got the rest of his crew fired up to fight harder against the Nephites.

17. Moroni was mad too, seein how stubborn the Lamanites were; so he told his folks to go after 'em and take 'em out. And lo and behold, they started takin 'em down; yep, the Lamanites were swingin their swords and givin it their best shot.

18. But bless their hearts, they didnt stand a chance, their bare skins and heads were wide open to the sharp swords of the Nephites; they were gettin cut down left and right, and fell down real quick under the Nephite swords; just like Moronis soldier had said would happen.

19. Now Zerahemnah, seein that his folks were about to be wiped out, cried out to Moroni real loud, sayin hed make a peace deal along with his people if theyd spare what was left of their lives, promise they wouldnt come at em again with war.

20. Well, Moroni made it so the killing stopped for a spell among the folks. He took the weapons away from the Lamanites; and once they agreed to a peace deal, they were allowed to head out into the wild.

21. Now they didnt even bother countin how many were dead, 'cause there were just too many; both the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Nephites and the Lamanites had suffered great losses.

22. So they tossed their dead into the waters of Sidon, and them folks floated down and got buried in the deep blue sea.

23. The Nephites, or Moronis crew, they went back home to their houses and lands.

24. And thats how the eighteenth year of bein' judged over the people of Nephi came to a close. And thats how the record of Alma wrapped up, written down on the plates of Nephi.

### **Alma Chapter 45**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya 'bout the folks of Nephi and all the ruckus they went through back in the days when Helaman was keepin' track of things.

2. This here story starts up at chapter 62.

3. So Helaman, that smart fella, hes got faith in ol AlmaAlma's spoutin off bout how the Nephites gonna get their comeuppanceHes blessin and cussin the landThey say Alma mighta been taken up by the Spirit, kinda like how ol' Moses wasThings was gettin' real heated in the Church. This all went down round 73 B.C.

4. Well, looky here, the Nephites were happier than a hog in mud, 'cause the Lord done saved their bacon from the bad guys again; so they was givin thanks to their God; shoot, they fasted and prayed a heap, and worshipped God with some downright jubilance.

5. And it so happened in the nineteen years since them judges been runnin things over the Nephites, that Alma came up to his boy Helaman and asked him: "Do ya believe what I told ya bout them records we been keepin?"

6. And Helaman said back: "Sure do, Pa."

7. Then Alma asked again: "Do ya got faith in Jesus Christ, the one who's fixin to come?"

8. And Helaman replied: "You bet, I believe every word you laid on me."

9. Then Alma comes back round again: "Are ya gonna stick to my commandments?"

10. And Helaman said: "I will, with all my heart, no doubt."

11. Then Alma told him: "Youre a blessed one; the Lords gonna see you through in this here land."

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

12. But hold up, I got a bit o prophecy to share with ya, but dont go spillin' it till it all shakes out; write down what Im fixin to say.

13. These are the words: "Now listen here, I can sense that this very crowd, the Nephites, as I feel it in my bones, in four hundred years after Jesus makes his appearance to 'em, they gonna fade away from faith."

14. "Yessiree, they gonna be lookin at wars and sickness, famines and bloodshed, till the Nephites all but disappear"

15. "Yup, and its cause theyre gonna slip away from the faith and start dabblin in all kinds of darkness and wickedness. I tell you, 'cause they gonna turn their backs on such a bright light and smart knowledge, I say to you, that by the time the fourth generation rolls round, they aint all gonna make it before this big ol mess hits em."

16. "And when that great day rolls in, you best believe real soon them folks who are now, or the kin of them folks thats reckonin up the Nephites, they wont count no more among em."

17. "But whosoever sticks around and dont meet their end on that dreadful day, they gonna be lumped in with the Lamanites and be just like em, except for a few wholl be called the Lord's disciples, and them Lamanites gonna chase em down til they aint left.

18. "And now, cause of all this sinning, that prophecy will surely come to pass."

19. Then, after Alma got done spillin all this to Helaman, he blessed him and his other boys; and blessed the earth cause of the good folks.

20. He said: "Heres what the Lord God saysThis land, its gonna be cursed, yessir, this land here, for every nation, family, tribe, and tongue that does wrong and gets ripe for destruction; and Im tellin you, thats how its gonna be; thats the owin' and the blessin' from God on this land, cause the Lord cant look at sin even a smidge.

21. Then Alma, after all this, blessed the church folks, anyone who was gonna stand strong in their faith from that point on.

22. And once he was through with all that, he took off from Zarahemla, headin' out like he was bound for the land of Melek. But shoot, after that, he just kinda dropped off the map; wouldnt know nothin' 'bout his death



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

or burial.

23. But one thing's for sure, this we know he was as righteous as they come; folks started sayin around the church that he got whisked up by the Spirit, or buried by the Lords own hand, kinda like Moses did. But the scriptures do say the Lord took Moses up to Him, so we reckon Alma mighta got the same treatment; so we ain't got a clue bout his end and where he was laid to rest.

24. And then it happened that in the start of that nineteenth year of judge reigning over the Nephites, Helaman set out to spread the Good Word.

25. Cause see, with all them tussles with the Lamanites and the little squabbles and messes that popped up among the folks, it was high time for the word of God to get spread around, and for some rules to get set in the church.

26. So, Helaman and his brothers got busy tryin to get the church back on track all over the land, in every town where the Nephites was livin. They went ahead and picked out priests and teachers to set things straight in all the churches.

27. And wouldnt ya know it, after Helaman and his brothers had put them priests and teachers in place, they started squabblin among themselves, and wouldnt pay no mind to what Helaman and his brothers had to say;

28. Instead, their heads got too big for their britches, all puffed up cause of their riches; so they thought they was all that, and wouldnt listen to em, forgettin to walk right with God.

### **Alma Chapter 46**

1. Well, let me tell ya, some folks just ain't listenin' to the words of Helaman and his buddies, so they all kind of gathered up to go against their own kin.

2. And I reckon they got plenty mad, so mad they aimed to take 'em out.

3. Now, the big fella leading the angry crowd was a strong one, goin by the name of Amalickiah.

4. And Amalickiah wanted that throne real bad; and those folks who was fumin wanted him to be their king tooturns out most of 'em were the lower judges lookin' for a bit of power.

5. They fell for all those sweet-talkin lies from Amalickiah, thinkin that if they backed him up and made him

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

king, he'd let 'em rule over everybody.

6. So, even though Helaman and his crew were preachin' with great care for the church, those folks got led astray by Amalickiah into all sorts of arguments.

7. And plenty in the church fell for his smooth talk, and they ended up pullin away from the church; things were lookin real shaky for the folks in Nephi, despite the big ol win they had over the Lamanites and all the joy from bein saved by the Lord.

8. Y'all can see how quick folks forget their God, huh? They sure do fall into trouble quick when the devils whisperin in their ears.

9. And boy, do we see just how much trouble one bad apple can stir up among people.

10. Sure as shootin, Amalickiah, with his sly ways and smooth words, swayed a whole lotta folks to do wrong; he was lookin to tear apart Gods church and ruin the freedom God blessed em with on that good ol land.

11. Now, Moroni, who was the big boss of the Nephite armies, he got wind of all this fuss, and man, he was madder than a hornet at Amalickiah.

12. So, he ripped his coat, wrote on a pieceIn memory of our God, our religion, our freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our childrenand stuck it on a pole.

13. He put on his headgear, buckled on his armor, and took that pole with his torn coat (called it the title of liberty), then he knelt down and prayed real hard to God for liberty to bless his people as long as there were any good Christians left on that land.

14. Now, that's how all the real believers in Christ, ya see, who were part of Gods church, were referred to by them that werent part of it.

15. And those who were in the church? They stayed true; all the folks who really believed in Christ wore that name proudly, calling themselves Christians cause they believed in the Lord who was to come.

16. So, Moroni prayed that the Christians and freedom of the land would have the Lords favor.

17. When he had bared his heart to God, he shouted out the whole stretch of land south of Desolation, callin' it a chosen land and the land of liberty.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. And he declared: God aint goin to let us, who are mocked for takin' on the name of Christ, be stomped down and wiped off, unless we really do it to ourselves.

19. Once he spoke those words, he went out among the folks, waving his torn garment so everyone could see what he had written, yellin' loud:

20. Listen up, anyone willin to stand up for this title on our land, come on out with the strength of the Lord and make a promise to protect our rights and our faith so God can bless ya.

21. After Moroni yelled this, folks came runnin', all armored up, rippin their clothes to show their commitment, sayin' they wouldnt abandon the Lord their God. They knew if they messed up and felt ashamed to wear the name of Christ, the Lord would tear em apart just like they tore their clothes.

22. That right there was their promise, and they tossed their garments at Moronis feet, sayin': We promise with our God if we fall into sin, we gon be treated just like our northern kin; He can toss us at the feet of our enemies just like we threw our clothes at you.

23. Moroni told em: Lookie here, were a part of Jacob's seed; were a piece of Josephs kin who got his coat tore by his own brothers; so let's remember to stick to Gods commandments, or our clothes might end up torn too, and we could end up in prison or worse, just like what happens when we stray.

24. Yeah, lets hold on to our freedom as Josephs folks; we gotta remember what Jacob said before he passed away, cause he foresaw that some of Josephs coat would be saved and wouldnt rot away. He declared just like my sons coat got saved, so shall a piece of my boys seed be taken care of by God, while the rest of Joseph's kin might fade away, just like that coat.

25. Now, that brings a tear to my eye; still, my heart swells with joy for my son, cause part of his kin is comin back to God.

26. Now, this was what Jacob had to say.

27. And who knows if those who fall away from us, just like that coat of Joseph, ain't that very remnant? And if we dont stand strong in our faith, it could just as well be us.

28. Now, it came to pass that after Moroni said all that, he went out, sending word all over the place where

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

there was fuss, gathering folks who wanted to protect their freedom, to stand up against Amalickiah and them traitors known as Amalickiahites.

29. Once Amalickiah saw Moroni's folks outnumbered his crew and noticed that his own folks were iffy about the ruckus they got into, he was worried he might lose the fight, so he took off with whoever was willing and headed for the land of Nephi.

30. Moroni figured it wouldn't do for the Lamanites to get any stronger; he planned to cut off Amalickiah's folks or bring 'em back and put an end to Amalickiah; he knew that rascal would rile the Lamanites up to come at 'em, and that's exactly what Amalickiah was up to for his own gain.

31. So, Moroni thought it wise to gather his troops who were ready for war and all armed up, they agreed to keep things peaceful and he took 'em off into the wilderness to cut off Amalickiah's path.

32. And sure enough, he did what he set out to do, marched right into the wild and met the armies of Amalickiah head-on.

33. Well, it didn't end well for Amalickiah; he bolted with just a handful of his men, while the rest fell right into Moroni's hands and were dragged back to Zarahemla.

34. Moroni, being a man backed by the top judges and the voice of the people, had the power to lead the Nephite armies and keep 'em in line.

35. Turns out he made sure anyone among the Amalickiahites who didn't want to pledge to support freedom got put to death; there weren't too many who turned down that promise of freedom.

36. And he raised the title of liberty high up on every tower across the Nephite lands; that's how Moroni set the standard of liberty for the Nephites.

37. Folks started to see peace again in the land; they kept it up 'til nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the judges' reign.

38. Helaman and the high priests kept the church in order too; for four whole years, they saw a lot of peace and joy in the church.

39. Now, there were many who passed on, firmly believing in their souls were saved by Jesus Christ; they left

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

this world with smiles on their faces.

40. Some shuffled off this mortal coil from fevers, which happened plenty during certain times of the year but it wasn't too bad, cause there were lots of good plants and roots God set up to cure what ails ya, keepin' folks from gettin sick all due to the climate.

41. But some folks did pass on from good ol age; and those who died in Christ's faith sure are happy with Him, as I reckon we all can suppose.

### **Alma Chapter 47**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, Amalickiah, that fella was up to some real shady stuff, using deceit, murder, and all sorts of tricky business to snag the crown from them Lamanites those Nephite turncoats, lemme tell ya, they were wilder and meaner than the Lamanites themselves, way back round 72 B.C.

2. Now, were gonna spin back to Amalickiah and the folks who skedaddled off with him into the wild; see, he took his crew up into the land of Nephi among them Lamanites, and you best believe he stirred em up fierce and got em mad at the Nephites. The Lamanite king was all riled up and sent out a call to arms to all his peeps to come together and get ready to fight the Nephites.

3. So, when that proclamation spread round, you can bet they were scairt to death; yes sir, they didn't wanna make the king mad, and they didn't wanna take on the Nephites neither because they were worried bout losin' their lives. A whole heap of em just plain refused to follow the king's orders.

4. Now, that king got real riled up by their defiance; so, he gave Amalickiah the reins of the part of his army that was still listenin to him, tellin him to go out and whip em into shape for battle.

5. Well, you see, this was just what Amalickiah wanted, cause he was slicker than a greased pig when it come to bein evil, layin' out schemes to unseat the king of the Lamanites right in his noggin.

6. Now Amalickiah had taken command of those Lamanites who still backed the king; and he was workin to win over those who weren't playin' along, so he headed on over to a spot called Onidah, cause all the Lamanites had skedaddled there, thinkin that the army was about to wipe em out.

7. And they even picked a fella to be king and lead em; they were all fired up, resolute that they wasn't gonna

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

budge when it came to fightin them Nephites.

8. Well, they all huddled together on top of this here mountain called Antipas, gettin ready for a showdown.

9. Now, Amalickiah wasnt fixin to engage em like the king commanded; nah, his plan was to cozy up to the Lamanite armies so he could slide right in as their leader, kick the king to the curb, and take over the kingdom for himself.

10. So, he set his army to pitchin tents down in the valley near mount Antipas.

11. As night rolled in, he sent a sneaky message up to the mountain, askin that the leader of them up there, a fella named Lehonti, come down so they could talk things over.

12. Well, when Lehonti got the word, he wasnt havin none of it and wouldnt go down. Amalickiah sent another request, and when Lehonti still wouldnt budge, well, he sent a third ask.

13. So, when Amalickiah couldnt get Lehonti to come down, he decided to go up the mountain himself, dang near to Lehontis camp; he sent his fourth message, beggin him to drop down and bring his guards along too.

14. Eventually, Lehonti came down with his guards to meet Amalickiah, who then pitched a plan to come back down with his whole army at night and surround the kings men while Amalickiah would hand em over to Lehonti, if hed make him a second-in-command.

15. Lehonti took his men down and surrounded Amalickiahs lot, and before them fellas even woke up at first light, they found themselves boxed in by Lehonti's army.

16. Once they saw they were trapped, they pleaded with Amalickiah to let em join their buddies; didnt wanna end up all wiped out. Now, that was exactly what Amalickiah had been hopin for.

17. So, he turned over his men, goin against the king's orders. That was just the ticket for Amalickiah to move ahead with his plan to send the king packin.

18. Now, the custom mongst the Lamanites was if their main leader got himself killed, theyd just put the second-in-command in charge.

19. Next thing you know, Amalickiah had one of his servants slip some poison to Lehonti, slow and steady, until the poor guy kicked the bucket.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

20. Once Lehonti was dead, them Lamanites wasted no time in crowning Amalickiah as their leader and chief honcho.

21. Amalickiah rolled into the land of Nephi, strutting into the city with his troops (figured hed hit the jackpot) and took over the town.

22. Then the king came out to greet him with his guards, thinkin Amalickiah had done his duty and gathered up a big ol army to take on them Nephites.

23. But listen here, as the king approached, Amalickiah set his servants up to meet the king and they all bowed down like they was payin their respects.

24. So the king reached out his hand to raise em up, just like Lamanites do, showin' peace, which is somethin they picked up from the Nephites.

25. When he raised the first fella off the ground, wham, Amalickiah stabbed the king right in the heart, and down he went.

26. Now, the kings servants took off runnin, and Amalickiahs crew raised a ruckus, hollerin:

27. Hey now, the kings servants done stabbed him, hes down and they skedaddled; cmon, ya gotta see this!

28. Well, Amalickiah ordered his army to march on out and check on the king, and when they got there and found him layin' in his own blood, Amalickiah faked a big ol' fit, shoutin: Whoever loved the king, get out there and chase them servants down so we can make em pay!

29. Once the kings loyal folks caught wind of that, they rushed out and started chasin after the kings servants.

30. Now, when them servants saw an army hot on their trail, they were scared stiff and took off into the wild, makin' their way over to Zarahemla to join up with Ammons people.

31. And the army that chased after em turned back, havin come up empty-handed; and just like that, Amalickiah, through his sneaky ways, won over the hearts of the folks.

32. Next day, he marched right on into the city of Nephi with his armies and took the place over.

33. Now the queen, when she got wind that the king had been done incause Amalickiah had sent a messenger to let her know that her man had been slain by his own crew, and that theyd chased after em but it was all for

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

naught, and they got away

34. So when the queen got that message, she sent word to Amalickiah, askin him to cut the people of the city some slack and also wanted him to come on over to see her; and she wanted him to bring some witnesses to back up what he said bout the kings death.

35. Amalickiah took that same servant who done killed the king, along with all his crew, and marched right over to the queen where she was sittin, and they all testified, tellin her that the king had been slain by his own servants, and they mentioned: Theyve all taken off; dont that say somethin?

36. And just like that, they satisfied the queen bout the king's death.

37. Then Amalickiah went smooth talkin' the queen, took her for his wife, and through his schemin and with his crafty servants, he snagged the kingdom; shoot, he was named king all over the land, with all the Lamanites, Lemuelites, Ishmaelites, and every one of them Nephite dissenters in tow, all from the reign of Nephi right on down.

38. Now, these dissenters, they had all the same knowin' and teachings from the Nephites, sure did, but wouldnt ya know it, not long after they split, they turned into even wilder and meaner than the Lamanitessoakin up all their traditions, slacking off, and indulgin in all sorts of wickedness; they just downright forgot bout the Lord their God.

### **Alma Chapter 48**

1. Well, it all started when Amalickiah got himself the crown, and boy, did he start rilin' up the Lamanites against them Nephite folks. Sure as shootin', he got some fellas to holler down at the Lamanites from their high towers, talkin all sorts of nonsense bout the Nephites.

2. So there he was, stirrin up them Lamanites somethin fierce, and by the end of the nineteenth year of the judges, hed done accomplished a whole mess of his tricky schemes. You see, he was king of the Lamanites, but ol' Amalickiah wanted to rule the whole shebang, over all the folks livin' in the land, Nephites and Lamanites alike.

3. Hed done pulled it offhardened them Lamanite hearts and fogged up their minds, gettin' them all riled up so



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

theyd gather an army ready to rumble with the Nephites.

4. He was dead set, cause he had a mighty big bunch of folks behind him, lookin' to take down the Nephites and put 'em in chains.

5. So he started pickin out the top dogs among the Zoramites, cause they knew just how strong the Nephites were and where they liked to hang out, and they knew the soft spots in their towns too; so he made them the big bosses over his troops.

6. Then they packed up their camp and headed right on over toward the land of Zarahemla, trippin' through the wilds.

7. Now while Amalickiah was busy playin his sneaky games and snaggin power, Moroni, on the other hand, was gettin the folks ready to stay true to their God.

8. Yep, he was beefin up the Nephite armies and puttin up little forts all over the place; stackin' dirt up high around his soldiers and buildin stone walls to keep 'em safe, all snug-like, round their towns and lands.

9. He put the most folks in the spots where they were weakest, so he fortified the land for the Nephites real good.

10. He was gettin ready to defend their freedom, their homes, their families, and their peace, wantin' them to live for the Lord and keep upholdin' what their enemies called the cause of the Christians.

11. And let me tell ya, Moroni was one strong fella; smart as a whip too, didn't take any pleasure in spillin' blood; his heart sang for his country and his kin, keepin 'em from bein slaves.

12. He was a man who filled up with gratitude toward God for all the blessings his people got; always workin his fingers to the bone to keep em safe and sound.

13. And by the way, he was rock solid in his faith in Christ, swore on a stack of bibles to protect his people, their rights, their homeland, and their beliefs, even if it meant spillin' his own blood.

14. Now them Nephites were taught to stand up for themselves against their foes, ready to shed blood if it came to it; but they also learned not to go lookin for trouble, only raisin the sword if it was to save their own necks.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

15. Their belief was that if they did that, God would bless them in their land and if they stayed faithful with His commandments, He'd make sure they prospered. Yep, He'd signal em when to run or prepare for a scrap, dependin on the danger they faced.

16. And also, God would show em where to go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by doin all that, the Lord would save em; that was Moroni's belief, and his heart swelled with pride for it cause he wasn't about spillin blood but about doin right, keepin his kin safe, followin the Lord's commandments, and fightin off wickedness.

17. Now listen here, I tell ya, if all folks were like Moroni, the very gates of hell woulda been rattlin forever; the devil wouldn't have had a lick of power over the hearts of folks.

18. He was just like Ammon, son of Mosiah, and all them other boys from Mosiah, and Alma too, all em were strong men of God.

19. And don't forget Helaman and his crew didn't fall short in servin the folks just like Moroni; they preached God's word and baptized folks wanting to repent who would listen to em.

20. So they went out there, and folks started humblin themselves cause of what they said, and the Lord favored em real good, so they didn't have no squabbles or fights amongst themselves for four whole years.

21. But like I said, by the end of the nineteenth year, even with all that peace, they felt kinda forced to take on their fellow folks, the Lamanites.

22. Yep, and to sum it up, the war just didn't stop for years against the Lamanites, even though they sure were reluctant to get into it.

23. Now, they hated pickin up arms against the Lamanites, cause they weren't fans of spillin blood; and on top of that, they felt terrible sendin so many of their brothers off into the next world, not ready to meet God.

24. But they just couldn't sit back and let their wives and kids get treated like dirt by them who used to be their brothers, who turned their backs on their faith and joined with the Lamanites to destroy em.

25. No way they could stand by while their kinfolks celebrated over the blood of the Nephites, not while there were folks still tryin to keep God's commandments, cause the Lord promised that if they did, they'd thrive in

the land.

## **Alma Chapter 49**

1. Well, it was the eleventh month of that nineteen year, on the tenth day, when folks spied them Lamanites rollin' up toward the land of Ammonihah.
2. Now lemme tell ya, that city was all refurbished and spick-and-span, and ol' Moroni had himself an army sittin' round the edges, settin' up dirt barriers to keep 'em safe from the stones and arrows that them Lamanites tossin' about.
3. Yep, I mentioned it before, the city of Ammonihah was all rebuilt up again. Im tellin ya, it wasnt fully fixed yet, neither; them Lamanites had wrecked it once before cause folks were actin all kinds of wrong, so they figured itd be an easy target again.
4. But boy, were they in for a surprise; cause the Nephites had piled a mighty big ridge of dirt round em, tall enough that the Lamanites couldnt throw their stones or arrows without it bein a wasted effort, and to get at em, theyd have to come through the front gate.
5. At this point, the big wigs of the Lamanites were just plain flabbergasted, astonished at the Nephites' smart way of settin' up their defenses.
6. Them leaders thought, cause they had a whole heap of folks, theyd just walk right on in like they done before; and theyd gotten all geared up with shields and breastplates, wearin' thick skins to cover their bare self.
7. Thinkin they was all set, they figured they could just stomp on their brothers and hog-tie 'em or just outright take 'em out, doin' whatever they pleased.
8. But wouldnt ya know it, they got the shock of a lifetime; cause the Nephites were geared up to meet em, fightin like theyd listen to ol Moronis battle instructions like never before.
9. Sure enough, those Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites as folks called 'em, were mighty surprised at how the Nephites prepped themselves for war.
10. If that King Amalickiah had just shown up from Nephi with his crew, maybe he couldve gotten them Lamanites to take a swing at the Nephites over in Ammonihah; 'cause he didnt give a lick about his folks'

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

blood bein' shed.

11. But as luck would have it, Amalickiah didn't come down to join the fray. His top dogs were way too chicken to go at the Nephites in the city of Ammonihah, 'cause Moroni had shuffled things around so much that the Lamanites couldnt pull off any sneaky moves.

12. So, they turned tail into the wild, packin up and headin toward the land of Noah, thinkin itd be the next best spot to jump on the Nephites.

13. They had no clue that Moroni had fortified every blessed city around there; so they marched on over to Noah, full of determination, swearing an oath that theyd wipe them folks out.

14. But lo and behold, to their surprise, the city of Noah, which used to be weak as a kitten, had turned into a fortress by Moronis handiwork, even stronger than Ammonihah itself.

15. Now, you see, Moroni was wise bout this, cause he figured theyd get all spooked over Ammonihah, and since Noah was once the weakest spot, theyd head that way to fight; it all turned out just like he thought it would.

16. So, Moroni put Lehi in charge over the men in that city; and would ya believe it, that same Lehi was the one who tussled with the Lamanites down in the valley by the Sidon River.

17. And sure enough, when them Lamanites found out Lehi was in charge, they were mighty let down, cause they were downright scared of that fella; still, their captains had promised to attack, so they went ahead and brought their troops up.

18. Now, you see, them Lamanites couldn't wiggle into the Nephite fortifications any which way cept through the front entrance, thanks to that high bank they piled up and the deep ditch they dug all around it, there just was no other way in.

19. So the Nephites were prepped to take out anyone tryin' to scale up and sneak into their fort any other way, throwin stones and arrows at em to keep em at bay.

20. They had a bunch of the strongest men, swords and slings in hand, ready to knock down anyone tryin to invade their little safe haven through the entrance; and they were all set to defend themselves against the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Lamanites.

21. Then it happened the captains of the Lamanites brought their folks up to the front, and tried to crash into the Nephites safe spot; but every time they charged, they got pushed back, sufferin a whole lotta losses.

22. When they realized they couldnt get the upper hand on the Nephites through that entrance, they started diggin down those banks to try and find a new way for their army to get through, hopin for a fair fight; but instead, they were just met with a hailstorm of stones and arrows, and filled up the ditches with their own dead and wounded.

23. And just like that, the Nephites had all the power over them foes; the Lamanites kept trying to wipe out the Nephites till all their main commanders were knocked off, with over a thousand Lamanites bite the dust, and not a single Nephite goin' down.

24. Course there were bout fifty who got banged up while catchin arrows through the entrance, but thanks to their shields and breastplates and helmets, most of the damage was just on their legs, some pretty bad too.

25. Then when the Lamanites figured out all their top dogs had bit the dust, they hightailed it into the wild. And wouldnt ya know it, they skedaddled back to Nephi to spill the beans to their King Amalickiah, who was a Nephite born and bred, about how badly they fared.

26. You bet he was real hot under the collar with his folks, cause he didnt get what he wanted outta the Nephites; no yoke of bondage for him to put on em.

27. Lordy, he was madder than a hornet, cussin God and Moroni, swearing up and down hed drink Moronis blood; all cause Moroni had followed Gods commands to keep his people safe.

28. But on the flip side, the Nephites was givin thanks to their Lord God, grateful for his unmatched power that saved em from the hands of their enemies.

29. And thats how the nineteenth year of the judges reign over the Nephites came to a close.

30. Sure enough, peace was flowin amongst em, and the church was doin' better than ever cause they paid heed and worked hard at the word of God, preached to em by Helaman, Shiblon, Corianton, and Ammon and his buddies, yeah, by all them ordained by Gods holy order who were baptized and sent to share the good

word.

## **Alma Chapter 50**

1. Well, lemme spin ya a tale 'bout Moroni who wasnt gonna sit on his hands waitin fer trouble, no sir! He got his folks ready to take on them Lamanites, makin sure his armies jumped right into action at the start of the twentieth year of them judges, diggin up dirt all round every city the Nephites called home.
2. So up on them dirt piles, he made sure they put up some timber, not just any ol planks, but sturdy beams built up high nuff for a fella to stand on, all around them cities.
3. And right on top of them timbers, he had em build a frame of pickets, strong and tall like a ole fence that aint gonna blow over in a storm.
4. He even had em put up towers lookin' over all them pickets, settin' up safe spots up there so them Lamanites stones and arrows wouldn't do no harm to his crew.
5. They were set to throw stones down on any poor soul that dared to come too close to them city walls, I tell ya, they had the upper hand!
6. Thats how Moroni set up them strongholds 'gainst any enemies comin their way, all round every town in that whole land.
7. Then it happened that Moroni sent his armies out into that east wilderness, chasin off all them Lamanites back to where they belonged, which was down south from Zarahemla.
8. Now the land of Nephi stretched straight all the way from the east sea to the west, kinda like a long ol' ribbon.
9. Once Moroni had run all those Lamanites outta the east wilds, which were sittin' north of their own lands, he told the folks in Zarahemla to head out to that east wilderness, right by the seaside, and take up the land.
10. And he didnt stop there, no maam! He got more armies down south, guardin their own land, makin sure to build up them fortifications to keep their people safe from those pesky enemies.
11. So he cut off all them Lamanite strongholds in that east wilderness, and also in the west, makin a fortified line tween the Nephites and Lamanites, from Zarahemla to Nephi, from the west sea, up near the head of

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Sidon River the Nephites holdin onto all land northward, all the way up past Bountiful, just like they wanted.

12. And so, with his armies growin day by day thanks to the shieldin his works provided, Moroni sought to zap the strength and power of the Lamanites off their land, hopin they wouldnt have no hold on it no more.

13. Sure 'nuff, the Nephites began buildin a city and called it Moroni, sittin right by the east sea and on the south side by the Lamanites land.

14. They also started buildin another city tween Moroni and Aaron, joinin the two, callin' it Nephihah.

15. And in that very same year, they got busy buildin a whole mess of cities up north, and there was one in particular they named Lehi, right up by the seashore.

16. And just like that, the twentieth year came to a close.

17. Now in that fine and happy state, the Nephite folks kicked off the twenty-first year'a judges over them.

18. And boy howdy did they thrive! They got rich faster than a dog chasin a rabbit, and they multiplied like bunnies in spring.

19. You see, it shows how merciful and fair the Lord is with all his dealings, fulfillin every last word Hes ever said to folks; why, we can see right now how true His words are, just like He told Lehi way back when:

20. Blessed are you and your kin; theyre gonna be blessed, as long as they keep my commandments. But dont forget, if they dont keep em, theyre gonna be cut off from my presence.

21. Well, we see it for sure, them promises held true for the Nephites; they had loads of fussin and fightin, and their wicked ways of murd'rin, plunderin, idol-worshippin, and all them abominations brought em nothin but wars and woes.

22. But the folks who stuck with the Lord and His commandments got saved at all times, while thousands of their nasty kinfolk got stuck in bondage or perished by the sword, or faded away in doubt, endin' up with them Lamanites.

23. Now I tell ya, there aint been a happier time for the Nephites since Nephi himself, especially back in the days of Moroni, even in that twenty-first year of judges.

24. And it all rolled round that the twenty-second year of judges ended up peaceful too, long with the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

twenty-third.

25. Then at the start of the twenty-fourth year of judges, there surely coulda been peace among the Nephites, cept for a quarrel bout the land of Lehi and Morianton, which was right by the seashore.

26. See, them folks over in Morianton was claimin a slice of Lehi, which sparked a good ol heated argument, so much so that the Morianton folks grabbed their guns to fight back against their own kin.

27. But the Lehi folks, bless their hearts, they skedaddled over to Moronis camp, askin for his help, cause they werent the bad guys here.

28. Well, when those Morianton folks, led by a fella named Morianton, found out that the Lehi clan had run off to Moroni's camp, they got all kinds of scared thinkin Moronis army was gonna come stomp em down.

29. So, Morianton put it in their heads that they oughta skedaddle up north, where there was a whole mess of water, and take over that land.

30. Honestly, they coulda pulled this stunt off (which woulda been a shame), but seein as Morianton had a bit of a temper, he went and took it out on one of his maids, beatin' on her real good.

31. Next thing ya know, she skedaddled on over to Moronis camp and spilled the beans, tellin him all bout what was up and their plans to flee north.

32. Now Moroni, bless him, heard that and was worried the folks in Bountiful, or really Moroni, might just listen to Morianton and team up with him, which could lead to big trouble for the Nephites, a big ol' messin with their freedom.

33. So Moroni sent out an army, camp and all, to catch them Morianton folks before they could escape to the north.

34. Sure enough, they didnt catch em until they got near the borders of the land Desolation; there they caught up with 'em at a narrow pass by the sea headin north, you know, by water both on the west and east sides.

35. And wouldnt ya know it, that army sent by Moroni, led by a fella named Teancum, met up with Moriantons crew. Now, the Morianton folks, bein' all stubborn from their wickedness and sweet talkin, started a ruckus, and wouldnt you know it, Teancum took em down, slayin Morianton and capturing the rest of em,



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

then headed back to camp with his prize. That there wrapped up the twenty-fourth year of judges over the Nephites.

36. So, there ya have itthose Morianton folks were brought back home. And as soon as they promised to play nice, they got restored to their land, makin amends with the Lehi folks, and everybody got back what was theirs.

37. That same year, the Nephites finally got their peace back, but then Nephihah, the fella sittin as their chief judge, passed away, holdin that seat upright fore God.

38. But he wouldnt let Alma take them records he thought were super sacred, so Alma handed em over to his boy, Helaman.

39. Now, lo and behold, Nephihahs son was picked to take over that judgment seat in his daddys place; yep, he was the new chief judge and governor, takin an oath to do right by the people, keepin peace and freedom, and grantin em their rights to worship their God, doin his best to support Gods work all his days, and bringin the wicked to justice as they deserved.

40. And wouldnt ya know his name was Pahoran? He stepped right into his fathers shoes and kicked off his reign at the end o' the twenty-fourth year, takin charge of the Nephite folks.

### **Alma Chapter 51**

1. Well, it happened that right at the start of the twenty-fifth year of them judges bein' in charge of the folks in Nephi, they done settled things down real nice-like 'tween the Lehi folks and the Morianton crew about their land, and kicked off that year in a pretty peaceful way.

2. But hold on now, it didnt take long before them folks stirred up a ruckus, cause they was fussin bout the chief judge Pahoran. You see, some folks was hopin to change a few little laws around.

3. But heres the thing, ol Pahoran wasnt havin' none of thathe wasnt gonna budge on the law one bit; he didnt listen to them folks who sent in their petitions tryin to get things changed.

4. So them folks who wanted to see some changes got hotter than a pepper sprout with him, and they figured they didnt want him as their chief judge anymore. This led to a big ol' debate, but thank the Lord, nobody

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

ended up hurtin each other.

5. Eventually, them folks who wanted Pahoran kicked outta his judges seat got themselves called king-men, seein as how they wanted to change the laws just enough to knock that free government down a peg and put a king in charge.

6. Now, the ones who was standin by Pahoran and wanted him to keep on judgin took up the name freemen; and that's how they divided up, cause the freemen had promised to keep hangin on to their rights and their way of worship through that free government.

7. Well, it all came to a head when the people had their say. And wouldnt ya know, the folks rallied behind the freemen, so Pahoran kept his judge seat, which led to quite a bit of hoopin' and hollerin from his supporters and the liberty-loving crowd, who quieted down the king-men so much that they didnt dare speak up against freedom.

8. Now, round them parts, the ones who favored them kings was folks from the upper crust, and they were fixin to become kings themselves; they had a whole bunch backin' em up who wanted power over the rest.

9. But heres the kicker, it was a real rough time for them arguments to be flyin around in Nephi, cause that rascal Amalickiah had gone and stirred up trouble with the Lamanites against the Nephites again, gatherin soldiers from all over his land and gettin em all strapped up for a fight; he was dead set on spillin Moroni's blood.

10. Now, whether he made that promise or not, it was a foolish one; still, the man was gettin ready for a brawl with the Nephites.

11. Now, his army werent as big as it had been before, seein as many had been dropped by Nephite hands; but dont let that fool ya, Amalickiah still wrangled together a mighty big bunch, enough that he didnt fear comin into Zarahemla.

12. He even strutted down himself, leading the Lamanite bunch. This was all in the twenty-fifth year of them judges sittin', right when they was still tryin to figure out what to do bout them disputes over Pahoran.

13. So it was that when them king-men caught wind that the Lamanites were fixin to battle, they was happier

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

than a pig in mud; and they didnt wanna take up arms, 'cause they was just too mad at Pahoran and them freedom-lovin folks to defend their own land.

14. When Moroni caught on to this and saw them Lamanites movin into their borders, he was hotter than a two-dollar pistol, cause hed worked his tail off to keep them folks safe, and here they were bein' so stubborn; his heart was filled with rage.

15. So he sent a petition, representin the people, to the governor, askin him to give him (thats Moroni) the power to make those naysayers defend their country or else face the hangman's noose.

16. His main concern was to put a stop to all that fussin and feudin between folks, 'cause that had been messin up everything so far. And lo and behold, it got approved just like the people wanted.

17. Then Moroni made it clear to his troops to march against them king-men, to knock em down a peg or two and wipe out their big ol' pride, or else they better grab their weapons and join the freedom fight.

18. So they marched right up against em, and boy howdy, they sure did humble them king-men; as soon as they raised their weapons against Moronis men, they got cut down and brought low.

19. There were four thousand of those dissenters who met their maker by the sword; and the ones that didnt get crushed in battle were locked up, cause there just wasnt time for trials right then.

20. And the rest of 'em, well, they figured it was better to raise the banner of liberty than meet their end with a sword, so they went ahead and hoisted that liberty flag up high on their towers and in their towns, and took up arms to defend what was theirs.

21. And thats how Moroni ended them king-men, so there was no longer anyone called by that name; he made em get humble like the others and fight bravely for their freedom from bondage.

22. While Moroni was busy settlin down the wars and fussin in his own camp, bringin em back to peace and civilization, gettin ready for a scrap with the Lamanites, you better believe them Lamanites had come in spooking around Moronis land, which was right there by the seashore.

23. And the Nephites just didnt have the manpower in Moroni, so Amalickiah pushed em back, takin out a whole lot of em. And lo and behold, Amalickiah took the city, lock, stock, and barrel, right along with all their

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

defenses.

24. The folks who got away from Moroni ran on over to Nephihah, while them Lehi folks gathered round, readying themselves to stand up against the Lamanites.

25. But then Amalickiah wouldnt let them Lamanites march right into Nephihah, keepin em down low by the shores, leavin some men in every town to guard it.

26. And so, he kept on keepin on, takin over a heap of cities, like Nephihah, Lehi, Morianton, Omner, Gid, and Mulekevery last one right there on the eastern waterfront.

27. With Amalickiah and his slick ways, the Lamanites cuffed a whole lotta cities with their countless troops, and they was all fortified just like Moronis strongholds, settin up some mighty fine defenses for the Lamanites.

28. Next thing you know, they was marchin to the border of the land of Bountiful, pushin the Nephites ahead of em and takin out a whole slew.

29. But then Teancum showed up, the same fella who had taken Moriantons head and led his people on a speedy escape.

30. And wouldnt ya know, he crossed paths with Amalickiah too, as he was marchin on with his big ol' army to claim Bountiful and those northern lands.

31. However, ol Teancum wasnt gonna let that slide, and he sent em packin, 'cause they was fierce fighters; every last warrior of Teancum was stronger and more skilled in battle than them Lamanites.

32. So they went to work on em, takin em down til it was all dark. Then Teancum and his men set up camp at the edge of Bountiful; and Amalickiah laid his camp down on the beach.

33. When night rolled in, Teancum and his buddy snuck out and crept into Amalickiahs camp, and boy, them fellas was so tuckered out from all the days work, they couldn't even keep their eyes open.

34. Teancum slipped right into that there kings tent and jabbed him in the heart with a javelin, takin him out before his men even knew what hit em.

35. Then he quietly made his way back to his own camp, and when he arrived, his men was still sleepin. He

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

woke em up and told em about his little adventure.

36. And he got his troops all lined up just in case them Lamanites woke up and tried to come for them.

37. And thats how the twenty-fifth year of them judges over the Nephites wrapped up; and with that, the days of Amalickiah came to an end.

### **Alma Chapter 52**

1. Well now, in the twenty-sixth year of them judges runnin things for the folks of Nephi, lemme tell ya, the Lamanites woke up bright n early on the first mornin of the first month, and wouldnt ya know it, they found that Amalickiah had kicked the bucket right there in his own tent; n Teancum was just itchin for a fight that day.

2. So when them Lamanites caught wind of this, they got all spooked like a cat in a room full of rockin chairs; they said, Naw, we aint marchin' north no more! and hightailed it with their whole army back to Mulek, lookin to hide behind their walls.

3. Then it turns out Amalickiahs brother got the crown, name of Ammoron; so King Ammoron, ya see, he was tagged to take charge just like his brother did before.

4. Ain't it a trip that he ordered his folks to hold on to them cities they snatched up by spillin' blood; cause lets be real, they hadnt taken a single city without payin the price with a heap of blood.

5. Now Teancum, he noticed the Lamanites werent budgin on givin up them cities they had grabbed, n with the sheer number of them, he thought best not to go charging into their strongholds.

6. But he kept his crew all gathered round like they were plannin for a show down; absolutely, he was just settin up to protect his own self, buildin walls, and makin spots for his boys to retreat to.

7. It was like this for a while, till Moroni sent a big ol bunch of reinforcements to beef up his crew.

8. And Moroni told him straight up that he better hang onto every prisoner he caught; since the Lamanites had snagged a fair few, he was gonna need them to trade for the folks the Lamanites had taken.

9. Not only that, Moroni ordered him to shore up the land Bountiful and lock down that skinny path leadin' north, cause he didnt want the Lamanites slippin through there and causin em trouble from both sides.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. Moroni also had a word for him, tellin him to stay on the job protectin that part of the land and look for any chance to put the hurt on the Lamanites; maybe he could sneak back them towns that had slipped away from em, and also, make sure the towns they still had werent givin in.

11. He said, Id sure love to come see ya, but the Lamanites are comin' down on us by the west sea, and Im headin straight for em, so I cant swing by.

12. Well, King Ammoron was outta the land of Zarahemla, lettin the queen in on his brothers sad news, gatherin up a ruck of folks, and marchin against the Nephites over by that west sea.

13. And so he was tryin to mess with the Nephites, drawin off some of their folks to one side, while he told his crew back where he left em to keep messin with the Nephites on the east sea, tryin to swipe whatever land they could get their hands on with the might they had.

14. And thats how the Nephites found themselves in a heap of trouble at the end of the twenty-sixth year of them judges settlin things for the folks of Nephi.

15. But then, in the twenty-seventh year of the judges' reign, Teancum, with Moronis orderswho had put together armies to stand guard over the southern and western edges of the land, was fixin to head toward Bountiful to help Teancum take back what was lost

16. Teancum got the go-ahead to strike at Mulek, hopin to take it back if it was at all possible.

17. So Teancum was gearin' up to attack Mulek, and he was lookin to march out with his army against the Lamanites; but he figured, with them all holed up tight in their fort, there was no way he could get the upper hand, so he scrapped that plan and headed back to Bountiful to wait on Moronis help.

18. Finally, Moroni showed up with his army at Bountifuls doorstep right round the end of the twenty-seventh year of judges rulin Nephi people.

19. As the twenty-eighth year kicked off, Moroni, Teancum, and a slew of top commanders got together to chew the fat about how to lure them Lamanites out for a fight; or maybe sweet-talk em outta their hidey holes to give themselves an edge to take back Mulek.

20. They sent some fellers to the Lamanite camp guardin Mulek, gettin' a hold of their head honcho, named

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Jacob, askin' him if hed send his boys out to meet em on the plains tween the two towns. But Jacob, bein' a Zoramite and all, just flat out refused to come down.

21. Then Moroni, seein he wasnt gonna get a fair fight, thought up a plan to coax the Lamanites out of their hideout.

22. So he had Teancum take a handful of men marchin towards the shore; while Moroni and his army snuck through the brush on the west side of Mulek; and come the next mornin, when the Lamanite guards spotted Teancum, they bolted off to tell Jacob.

23. Well, wouldnt ya know it, the Lamanite armies came marchin' hard against Teancum, thinkin theyd wipe the floor with him since he had so few men. But as Teancum saw em comin, he started backin up towards the shore, headin' north.

24. Once the Lamanites saw him make a break for it, they got all fired up and chased after him with a vengeance. And while Teancum was leadin em away on a wild goose chase, there was Moroni givin the nod for some of his boys to march right into the city and take it back.

25. And sure enough, they did just that, takin' out all the fellers left behind to guard the place, yep, everyone who wouldnt hand over their weapons.

26. So there was Moroni, takin over Mulek with some of his crew, while he sent the rest off to confront the Lamanites when they were done chasin Teancum.

27. The Lamanites kept at it till they neared Bountiful, where they ran right into Lehi and a small band hed left to protect the city.

28. Now when the top brass of the Lamanites laid eyes on Lehi and his folks comin for 'em, they skedaddled off in a hurry, afraid they wouldnt reach Mulek before Lehi caught wind of their tails; tired from their trek, and Lehis men were full of beans.

29. Now, the Lamanites were just clueless that Moroni was right behind em with his army; all they knew to fear was Lehi and his men.

30. Lehi wasnt too keen on catchin' em before they ran into Moroni and his folks.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

31. Before long, though, the Lamanites werent gettin too far before they found themselves boxed in by the Nephites, with Moronis boys on one side and Lehis crew on the other, all bright-eyed and full of energy; while the Lamanites were already worn out from their long journey.

32. And Moroni hollered at his men to pounce on em till they surrendered their weapons.

33. And right then, Jacob, bein their big cheese, a Zoramite with a fire in his belly, he led the Lamanites into battle with a fury that could heat up the kettle.

34. Moroni was standin right in their path, and Jacob was hell-bent on takin em down to clear a way to Mulek. But what do ya know, Moroni and his boys had the grit to hold their ground; they werent givin in to them Lamanites.

35. They fought tooth and nail with sheer wrath; there were bodies droppin left and right, no doubt, n Moroni got dinged up while Jacob met his end.

36. Lehi pressed hard on em from the back with such strength that the ones in the rear surrendered their weapons; and the rest, all flustered, didnt know where to run or fight.

37. Seein all that chaos, Moroni called out, If yall bring out your weapons n hand em over, we aint gonna spill your blood.

38. And when the Lamanites heard those words, their captains, the ones still breathin, stepped up and threw down their weapons in front of Moroni, tellin their men to do the same.

39. But bless their hearts, a heap wouldnt do it; and the stubborn ones who kept their swords drawn got tied up, their weapons took from em, and they were forced to shuffle along with the others back to the land of Bountiful.

40. And wouldnt ya know, they ended up with more prisoners than folks that had been taken down, yeah, more than the ones lost on both sides.

## **Alma Chapter 53**

1. Well, it happened that they set some guards over them Lamanite prisoners, and made 'em go on and bury their dead, ya know, and also the Nephites that got themselves killed; and Moroni went ahead and put some



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

folks in charge of keepin' an eye on 'em while they did their work.

2. Then Moroni headed over to the town of Mulek with his buddy Lehi, took charge of the city, and handed it off to Lehi. Now, lemme tell ya, this Lehi was a fella who'd been through most of the battles with Moroni; he was cut from the same cloth, and they sure were happy about each others safety; they were fond of one another, along with all the folks of Nephi.

3. It came to pass that after the Lamanites got done buryin' their folks, and the Nephites, they marched back into Bountiful; and Teancum, under Moroni's orders, got 'em to start diggin a big ol ditch all around Bountiful.

4. Then he had 'em build a sturdy wall of timber on the inside of that ditch, and they piled up dirt from the ditch against that timber wall; and sure enough, it made them Lamanites work til they had fenced in the whole city of Bountiful with a solid wall of wood and dirt, taller than a mules back.

5. And from then on, that city turned into a mighty fortress; and they kept them Lamanite prisoners in there, all behind that wall they built with their own hands. Now Moroni had to make those Lamanites work, 'cause it was a whole lot easier to keep em in check while they were busy; and he wanted all his troops ready whenever he decided to charge at the Lamanites.

6. Well, wouldnt ya know it, Moroni pulled off a victory over one of the biggest armies of the Lamanites, and he took control of the city of Mulek, which was one of the Lamanites strongest holdouts in Nephi; and he also built a strong spot to keep his prisoners safe.

7. Then it came to pass that he didnt try to fight the Lamanites again that year, but instead kept his folks busy gettin ready for war, makin fortifications to stay safe from the Lamanites, and helpin out their women and kids who were sufferin, puttin food on the table for their armies.

8. Now, it came to pass that the Lamanites on the western sea, down south, took advantage while Moroni was busy dealin' with some folks stirrin' up trouble 'mongst the Nephites, which caused a whole mess of fighting among 'em, and they started taking over a handful o' Nephite cities in that part of the land.

9. And all this happened 'cause of the wickedness among themselves, yeah, 'cause of their squabblin' and schemin', they found themselves in a real risky spot.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. Now, I gotta say somethin' 'bout the folks of Ammon, who once were Lamanites; but thanks to Ammon and his crew, or better yet, through the power of God, theyd been converted to follow the Lord; and they got brought down into the land of Zarahemla, where the Nephites kept em safe ever since.

11. Because of their swearin, they stayed clear of fightin against their own kin; seein as they promised they wouldnt spill blood anymore; and stickin to that promise could have cost 'em their lives, like theyd rather have given up than hurt their own, if it weren't for the empathy and deep love Ammon and his brothers had for em.

12. So, thats why they came down to the land of Zarahemla; and them Nephites always had their backs.

13. But then, when they saw the real danger and the troubles and struggles the Nephites faced for their sakes, their hearts were broken, and they were itching to take up arms to defend their land.

14. But hold on now, just as they were fixin to grab their weapons, they got persuaded not to by Helaman and his boys, cause they were close to breakin' the oath they had taken.

15. And Helaman was worried that theyd lose their souls doin so; so all those whod made that promise had to watch their kin go through their sufferin in such tough times.

16. But wouldnt ya know it, they had a heap of sons who hadnt made no promise to not fight to protect themselves against enemies; so they gathered up all the ones who could grab a weapon right then, and called themselves Nephites.

17. They made a promise to fight for the freedom of the Nephites, yeah, to hold up the land even if it meant givin' their lives; they vowed they'd never give up their liberty and would fight in every case to keep the Nephites and themselves from bein' bound.

18. Now, there was a goodly two thousand of these youngins who made that promise and took up arms to defend their homeland.

19. And now, let me tell ya, they aint never been a burden to the Nephites before, and now they were a mighty help; they got their weapons ready and wanted Helaman to lead 'em.

20. All of em were young fellas, brave as could be, strong and quick on their feet; but that ain't allthey were straight shooters who could be trusted no matter what task they were handed.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. Yep, they were honest and serious, cause theyd been raised to obey Gods commandments and walk right by Him.

22. And it came to pass that Helaman took the lead with his two thousand young soldiers, headin' out to support the folks at the southern borders by the west sea.

23. And thats how the twenty-eighth year of judges over the Nephites wrapped up.

### **Alma Chapter 54**

1. Ammoron and Moroni chattin' 'bout swappin' prisonersMoroni's insistin' that them Lamanites better skedaddle and stop all this murderin'Ammorons all like, Yall gotta lay down yer weapons an' become our subjects. 'Bout 63 B.C.

2. Well, it was the start of the twenty-ninth year of them judges, and Ammoron sent a message to Moroni hopin for a little prisoner swap.

3. Moroni, he was downright tickled pink at this request, 'cause he was wishin' for food for them Lamanite prisoners to help feed his folks; and he was also hopin' to get some of his own back to beef up his army.

4. Now them Lamanites had grabbed up lots of women and little ones, and there wasnt a single woman or child in all the prisoners Moroni had nabbed; so Moroni hatched a clever plan to snag as many Nephite prisoners as he could from the Lamanites.

5. So, he jotted down a letter and sent it along with Ammorons servant, the same feller who brought a letter to Moroni. These are the words he penned to Ammoron, sayin':

6. Now listen here, Ammoron, Im writin to ya 'bout this here war yer folks started up against my people, or really what yer brother kicked off, which yall are still dead set on carryin out even after hes pushed up daisies.

7. Now, I gotta say a few things 'bout Gods justice and that sword of His mighty wrath hangin' 'round yer neck, unless yall repent and pack yer armies back to yer own land, or what yall claim is yer land, which is Nephi territory.

8. Sure, Id tell ya all this if you could actually listen; Id talk about that terrible hell waitin' to welcome fellas like you an yer brother, unless you smarten up and drop them murderous plans, headin back with your lot to

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

yer own grounds.

9. But since yall have already turned yer backs on this once and fought against Gods people, I reckon youll just keep doin it.

10. And let me tell ya, were ready to take ya on; if ya dont change yer mind, youre gonna bring down the wrath of the God youve turned away from right down on ya, bringin about your own doom.

11. But as sure as the Lord lives, our armies are comin for ya unlessn you back off, and youre gonna be feelin' that death visitin ya mighty soon, cause were not givin up our towns and lands; yessir, were standin firm for our faith and the cause of our God.

12. But heck, I reckon Im wastin my breath talkin' to you like this; or maybe youre just a child of hell; so Ill wrap this up by sayin I aint swappin' prisoners unless yall give me a man, his wife, and his kiddos for just one of yours; if youre willin, Ill trade.

13. And listen here, if you dont do this, Im comin for ya with my armies; Ill even arm my women and kiddos, and Ill follow you right back to yer own neck of the woods, the land where we first settled; itll be blood for blood, life for life, and Ill fight ya till youre wiped off the face of this earth.

14. Im fired up, and my folks are too; yall been lookin to kill us, and weve just been tryin to protect ourselves. But I swear, if you keep tryin to wipe us out, well sure as heck try to wipe you out; we're comin for our land, the land of our ancestors.

15. Now Im done with this letter. Im Moroni; Im leadin the Nephite folks.

16. So then Ammoron, once he got this letter, was hotter than a goat in a pepper patch; he wrote back to Moroni, and heres what he had to say:

17. Im Ammoron, king of the Lamanites; Im the brother of that Amalickiah fella yall done murdered. Mark my words, Im gonna avenge his blood on ya, and Ill come at ya with my armies cause I ain't scared of your threats.

18. See, your folks done wronged their brothers so bad that they snatched the government right from under em when it rightfully belonged to em.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

19. Now listen here, if yall lay down yer arms, let yerselves be ruled by the folks who should rightly have the power, Ill make sure my people put down their weapons and we wont go to war no more.

20. Now, I see you been blowin a lot of hot air bout threatenin me and my people; but we aint scared of what you sayin.

21. Still, Ill gladly swap prisoners just to keep my food stocked up for my soldiers; and well fight a war that could go on forever, either makin the Nephites bow to our power or seein them snuffed out for good.

22. And bout that God you say weve turned our backs on, well, we dont know nothin bout that; an neither do you; but if theres a God, maybe He made us just like He made you.

23. And if theres a devil and a hell, wont He send you there to hang out with my brother you went and killed, you hinted that hes gone to that kind of place? But honestly, it dont matter none.

24. Im Ammoron, and Im kin to Zoram, the one your folks pressed and brought outta Jerusalem.

25. And listen, Im a bold Lamanite; this wars been goin on to right them wrongs and to keep hold of our rights to the government; and now Im closin' this letter to Moroni.

## **Alma Chapter 55**

1. Well, when Moroni got that letter, it just boiled his blood somethin fierce, cause he knew good an well that Ammoron was fully aware of his sneaky ways; shoot, he realized that Ammoron knew this whole war thing wasnt justified gainst the Nephites.

2. And he declared, Listen here, I ain't swappin' prisoners with Ammoron unless he backs off his plans, like I said in my letter; I wont give him no more power than what he already has.

3. Now, I know where them Lamanite guards are keepin my folks they caught; and since Ammoron ain't respondin to my letter, well, Im gonna make sure Im bringin the heat til they beg for peace.

4. And it wasn't long after Moroni said that, he sent his men out searchin for someone who belonged to the Lamanite family tree.

5. Sure enough, they found one fella named Laman, who happened to be a servant of that poor king that Amalickiah had knocked off.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

6. So Moroni sent Laman and a few of his buddies off toward the guards who were watchin over them Nephites.

7. Now them Nephites were holed up in the city of Gid; so Moroni picked Laman and had a handful of men tag along with him.

8. Evenin rolled around, and Laman went up to them guards watchin' the Nephites, and lo and behold, they saw him comin and gave him a big ol shout; but he told em, Dont you worry now; Im a Lamanite. We made our getaway from the Nephites while they was snoozin, and we brought some of their wine with us.

9. When the Lamanites heard him sayin that, they were hollerin with joy; they said, Hand us some of that wine so we can wet our whistles; were mighty glad you brought some along cause wes plum tuckered out.

10. But Laman told 'em, Lets hold back on the wine til we can go give them Nephites a good tussle. Well, that just made em crave it all the more.

11. For they declared, Were wore out, so lets drink up this wine; well get more for rations later to bolster our strength for fightin those Nephites.

12. And Laman just shrugged and said, Yall do what you wanna do.

13. Next thing ya know, they were downin' that wine like it was sweet tea; it tasted real good, so they kept at it, and boy, oh boy, it was strong stuff they had prepped.

14. And wouldnt ya know, they drank til they was livin it up, and soon enough, they were all flat-out drunk.

15. Now when Laman and his crew saw that the guards was all passed out, they buzzed back to Moroni and told him ever'thin that went down.

16. And this was all part of Moronis plan. He had his men ready to roll with their weapons and headed to the city of Gid while them Lamanites was lost in their drunken stupor, and he slipped some weapons over to the prisoners, so they was all strapped up;

17. Even the women and them little younguns who could wield a weapon got armed up, all done in absolute hush-hush.

18. But if them Lamanites had woken up, shoot, they was so drunk, them Nephites could've wiped em out.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

19. But let me tell ya, Moroni wasnt lookin for that; he didnt take no pleasure in spillin blood, but instead wanted to save his people from bein wiped out; so, out of fairness, he refused to attack the Lamanites while they was inebriated.

20. But shoot, he got what he wanted; he armed those Nephite prisoners sittin inside them city walls, givin em the chance to take back what was theirs.

21. Then he told his men to step back a bit and circle round em Lamanite folks.

22. Now just picture this: it all went down at nighttime, so when them Lamanites finally woke up in the mornin, they saw they was surrounded by Nephites on the outside, and their prisoners was all armed up on the inside.

23. And just like that, the Lamanites realized the Nephites had the upper hand; so, they figured it wouldnt be smart to fight, which led their top brass to toss down their weapons and beg for mercy.

24. Now that was exactly what Moroni wanted. He took em as prisoners of war, seized the city, and made sure all them Nephite prisoners got set free, joinin Moronis army and givin it a real boost.

25. Then he had those Lamanites he caught start workin on beefin up the fortifications around Gid.

26. And after he got that city all fortified just how he wanted it, he sent his prisoners off to Bountiful, makin sure that place was guarded real tight.

27. Even with all them Lamanite schemes goin' on, they held on tight to all them prisoners they snatched up, makin sure to keep their ground and the advantage they took back.

28. And next thing ya know, the Nephites were back in the swing of things, claimin their rights and freedoms.

29. Them Lamanites tried time and again to sneak round em at night, but they ended up losin a whole bunch of prisoners in the process.

30. And they kept tryin to serve their wine to the Nephites to knock 'em outta commission, hopin to poison em or make 'em drunk.

31. But hear this, the Nephites werent no dummies; they remembered their Lord during these tough times. They wasnt gonna fall for their traps; no sir, they wouldnt touch that wine unless they first shared it with some

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

of the Lamanite prisoners.

32. So they were real careful not to let any poison slip into their midst, cause if it could knock out a Lamanite, itd do the same to a Nephite; and so they were takin stock of all their drinks.

33. Then Moroni figured it was high time to gear up for an offensive on the city of Morianton; hed noticed that the Lamanites had been makin that place a fort like nobodys business with all their work.

34. And they was constantly packin in new troops and fresh supplies into that city.

35. And thats how the twenty-ninth year of the judges over the Nephites wrapped up, yall.

### **Alma Chapter 56**

1. Well now, it was right at the start of the thirtieth year of them judges bein' in charge, and on the second day of the first month, Moroni got him a letter from Helaman about how folks were doin' over yonder.

2. And heres what he had to say: My dear ol' brother Moroni, both in the Lord and in the hard times of our fightin'; listen here, my cherished brother, I got some things to share about our battle out this way.

3. Well now, two thousand of them young'uns from those fellas Ammon brought down outta Nephiy'all know these boys are kin to Laman, who was the firstborn of our dad Lehi;

4. Ain't no need for me to go on about their stories or their lack of faith, 'cause you already know all that

5. So its just fine to tell ya that two thousand of these young bucks picked up their weapons, wishin' I'd lead 'em; we came out to protect our land.

6. And you know 'bout the promise their daddies made, sayin' they wouldn't lift their guns against their own kin to spill blood.

7. But in the twenty-sixth year, when they saw how much we was sufferin for 'em, they was thinkin' 'bout breakin' that promise and pickin' up their guns to help us out.

8. But I wasn't gonna let 'em break that promise they made, thinkin' Godd give us strength so we wouldnt suffer too much for stickin' to the word theyd given.

9. But lemme tell ya, heres somethin' that brings us a heap of joy. In the twenty-sixth year, I, Helaman, headed up them two thousand young'uns straight to the city of Judea, to lend a hand to Antipus, the one you put in



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

charge of that part of the land.

10. And I joined my two thousand sons (and they sure deserve to be called that) to Antipus's army, which made him mighty happy; cause let me tell ya, his crew was gettin whittled down by the Lamanites, who had taken out a whole bunch of our men, and we had the blues over it.

11. But still, we can take comfort that they died fightin' for their homeland and their God, bless 'em, theyre in a better place.

12. And them Lamanites also captured a whole bunch of our top brass, and they ain't spared nobody else alive. We figure theyre sittin in Nephi right now, unless they done got themselves killed.

13. Now listen here, these are the towns the Lamanites claimed after spillin' so much of our brave folks' blood:

14. The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, Zeezrom, Cumeni, and Antiparah too.

15. And these are the towns they had when I got to Judea; I found Antipus and his men bustin' their humps to fortify the city.

16. Yes indeed, they was feelin' beat down, both in body and spirit, cause they fought hard all day and worked all night tryin' to protect their towns, and they was sufferin something fierce.

17. And they was dead set on winnin or goin down swingin; so you can imagine that the little bunch I brought with me, my sons and all, gave 'em a mighty boost of hope and some happiness.

18. Well, when the Lamanites caught wind that Antipus had beefed up his army, they got the message from Ammoron to keep their distance from the city of Judea, us too, no fightin here.

19. And the Lord was favorin' us; had they come at us when we was weak, they mighta wiped out our little band; but we were spared.

20. Ammoron told 'em to hold onto them towns they snatched up. And that wrapped up the twenty-sixth year. At the start of the twenty-seventh year, we got ourselves and our city all set for defendin.

21. Now we was hopin the Lamanites would make a move towards us; we didnt wanna be the ones attackin' 'em in their strongholds.

22. So we kept some spies lurkin around, keepin an eye on them Lamanites, makin' sure they didnt sneak by

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

us to attack our other towns up north.

23. Cause we knew them towns wasnt strong enough to take 'em on; so if they decided to go 'round us, we wanted to surprise em from the back while we met em head-on. We figgered we could take 'em, but you know what? We got let down on that front.

24. They didnt dare march by us with their whole army, nor even with part of it, cause they was worried they might end up too weak and get taken down themselves.

25. They didnt even try to hit the city of Zarahemla; nor would they cross the head of Sidon over to Nephihah.

26. And so with their forces, they was mighty set on hangin onto the towns theyd grabbed.

27. In the second month of that year, we got a whole mess of supplies from the daddies of my two thousand boys.

28. And on top of that, two thousand fellas showed up from Zarahemla to help us out. So we was sittin pretty with ten thousand men and all the grub we needed for them and their families too.

29. And the Lamanites, seein' us growin the numbers and supplies showin' up, started gettin jumpy, thinkin' they oughta do somethin to stop our flow of goods and muscle.

30. Now when we realized the Lamanites was gettin fidgety like that, we wanted to put a plan into action; so Antipus told me to take my young'uns and march over to a nearby town, makin' it seem like we was carryin' supplies to somewhere else.

31. And we was to make our way near Antiparah, pretending we was headin' to a place down by the seaside.

32. So off we went, actin like we was transportin' our supplies over to that town.

33. Antipus sent part of his boys out too, lettin' the rest hold down the fort at the city. He didnt head out till I took my little crew near Antiparah.

34. Now in that city of Antiparah was the mightiest part of the Lamanites; yeah, they was the biggest bunch.

35. Soon as their scouts caught wind of things, they came out with their army ready for us.

36. We took off runnin from em, headin north. And we led their strongest army away from our people;

37. And we took 'em a good distance, so much so that when they saw Antipus comin after em, they didnt veer

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

left or right but kept straight on comin' for us; we reckon they wanted to finish us off before Antipus could catch up and surround 'em.

38. But Antipus, seein' our trouble, hurried his troops up. But it was nightfall when he got movin'; he didnt catch up to us, and we didnt catch 'em; so we set up camp for the night.

39. Then, before the sun started risin', those Lamanites was right on our tail again. We just didnt have the strength to stand up to em; I wasnt gonna let my little ones fall into their hands, so we just kept on movin, makin' our way into the wild.

40. They didnt dare turn left or right neither, scared theyd end up surrounded; and I wasnt about to do the same, so we kept on runnin straight ahead, not wantin to get caught up ourselves and end up dead while they skedaddled away; and so we spent the whole day runnin through the wilderness until dark.

41. And when morning light broke, we saw the Lamanites right there on our heels, and we took off runnin again.

42. But they didnt chase us far before they stopped; it was the mornin of the third day in the seventh month.

43. Now, whether Antipus caught up with 'em, we couldn't rightly say, but I told my men: Alright now, we ain't sure if they stopped so we could come at 'em and get caught in a trap;

44. So what do ya say, my boys, you wanna take em on in a fight?

45. And now, I tell ya, my dear brother Moroni, I ain't never seen such guts, not in any of the Nephites.

46. Cause when I called 'em my sons (and they was all young bucks), they said to me: Father, our Gods with us, He ain't gonna let us fall; lets go now; we ain't lookin to kill our brothers, just want 'em to leave us be; so lets move before they overwhelm Antipuss army.

47. Now they ain't never fought before, yet they had no fear of death; they were thinkin more about their folks' freedom than their own lives; yeah, their mamas taught 'em that if they didnt doubt, God would save em.

48. And they told me what their mamas said: We aint doubtin our mamas knew whats up.

49. Then I turned around and took my two thousand back against them Lamanites who was chasin us. And lo and behold, the armies of Antipus had caught up with 'em, and a fierce fight was on.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

50. Antipuss army was wearin' down, cause they done marched so far in such a short time, they was fixin to end up in the hands of them Lamanites; had I not returned with my two thousand, they mighta gotten their way.

51. Antipus had fell to the sword, and many of his leaders, cause they was too tired from their quick march so Antipuss men, bein all mixed up from losin their leaders, started givin ground to them Lamanites.

52. Then them Lamanites picked up steam, and started chasin hard, but just then I rolled in from behind with my two thousand, and we started takin 'em out left and right, so much so that the whole Lamanite army stopped and turned tail at us.

53. Now when Antipuss people saw the Lamanites backin' off, they rallied their men and came at the Lamanites from behind.

54. And lo and behold, we, the Nephites, along with Antipuss folks and my two thousand, surrounded them Lamanites and took 'em down; yeah, forced 'em to give up their weapons and themselves as prisoners.

55. And it came to pass that when they surrendered, I made sure to count up them younguns who fought with me, 'cause I was worried some mighta been lost in the fray.

56. But to my absolute joy, not a single soul of 'em had fallen; nope, they fought like they had the strength of God Himself; ain't never known men to fight with such heavenly strength; and with such might did they come down on them Lamanites, they was so scared, them Lamanites turned around and gave up.

57. And since we didnt have a proper place to keep our prisoners safe from the Lamanite army, we sent em off to the land of Zarahemla, along with some guys who aint been slain from Antipus; then I took the rest and put 'em with my young Ammonites, and we made our way back to the city of Judea.

## **Alma Chapter 57**

1. Well, it sure did happen that I got me a letter from King Ammoron, sayin' if I handed over them prisoners of war we caught, then he'd give us the city of Antiparah.

2. But I shot back a letter to the king, lettin' him know that we figured our folks were strong enough to take Antiparah with our own might; and handin' over them prisoners just ain't smart, so wed only do a trade if it

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

came down to it.

3. Ammoron went on to refuse my letter, 'cause he didn't wanna swap prisoners. So, we started makin plans to head on down to Antiparah.

4. But the townsfolk of Antiparah packed up and skedaddled to their other towns, tryin to beef 'em up; and just like that, Antiparah fell right into our hands.

5. And that wraps up the twenty-eighth year of the judges reign.

6. Then, come the start of the twenty-ninth year, we got ourselves some grub and a whole mess of new soldiers from Zarahemla and the surroundin' lands, addin' up to six thousand men, plus sixty good ol' Ammonite boys who came to lend a hand to my little band of two thousand. And let me tell ya, we was feelin strong, and boy did we have plenty of supplies.

7. Turns out we wanted to go head to head with the army watchin over the city of Cumeni.

8. Now, lemme tell ya, we didnt waste no time gettin what we wanted; with a piece of our strong crew, we snuck up on Cumeni at night, just a bit before they were fixin' to get their supply drop.

9. Well, we set up camp around that city for a heap of nights; but we was sleepin on our swords and takin turns keepin watch, so them Lamanites couldnt sneak up and take us out in the dead of night, and they sure did try. But every time they did, they ended up spillin their own blood.

10. Finally, their food supplies rolled in, and they were just about to slip into the town under cover of night. But we werent no Lamanites, we were Nephites; so we snagged both them and their provisions.

11. Even with the Lamanites bein' cut off like that, they still wanted to hold onto that town; so it made sense for us to haul those provisions off to Judea and send our prisoners on down to Zarahemla.

12. Not long after that, the Lamanites started losin all hope, and they went and handed the town over to us; and just like that, we achieved what we set out to do, takin' the city of Cumeni.

13. But lemme tell ya, we had so many prisoners that even with all our numbers, we had to use every bit of our strength to keep em in line or deal with em some other way.

14. You see, they kept tryin to break out in droves and fightin with rocks, clubs, or whatever they could get

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

their hands on, and we ended up takin' out over two thousand of em after they gave themselves up.

15. So it made sense that we had to either finish 'em off or guard their sorry selves all the way down to Zarahemla; besides, we didnt have enough provisions just for our own folks, what with all wed taken from the Lamanites.

16. So, in those tricky times, decidin what to do with them prisoners became a real serious thing; still, we decided to send em down to Zarahemla and picked out some of our men to watch over em on that journey.

17. But just the next day, they came back. And let me tell ya, we didnt even ask em about the prisoners; the Lamanites were right on us, and they made it back just in time to save our hides. 'Cause, see, Ammoron sent a fresh batch of supplies and a whole new army to back em up.

18. Those fellas who we sent down with the prisoners showed up just in time to stop the Lamanites as they were tryin to stomp us flat.

19. But my little group of two thousand sixty went at it like wildcats; yeah, they stood their ground against the Lamanites, dishin out death to all who came at em.

20. And while the rest of our crew was about to give a bit, those two thousand and sixty held on tight and didnt flinch none.

21. And you bet they obeyed every command like it was their last breath; and according to their faith, it was done for em, and I remembered what they said their mommas taught em.

22. Now look here, it was these younguns of mine and the ones we picked to transport the prisoners that brought us this victory; they turned the Lamanites tail tucking back to the city of Manti.

23. And we held onto Cumeni, not all of us sliced up by the sword; though I reckon we did take some serious losses.

24. After the Lamanites took off, I ordered my wounded men be pulled from amongst the dead and got them patched up.

25. Turns out, two hundred of my two thousand sixty fainted from loss of blood; but, thank the good Lord, to our astonishment and joy, not a single one of them perished; and not one of em went without a good number

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

of wounds, either.

26. Now, their livin' was a true wonder to our whole army, especially since a thousand of our brothers didnt make it. We rightly thanked the miraculous power of God, 'cause of their mighty faith in what theyd been taught that theres a just God out there, and if ya dont doubt, He'll see ya through.

27. This is the faith of those I been talkin about; theyre young, their minds are set, and they just keep trustin in God.

28. So after we took care of our wounded and buried our dead including the dead Lamanites, which was a whole heap we asked Gid bout them prisoners who started headin to Zarahemla.

29. Gid was the head captain of the group keepin an eye on em as they made their way down.

30. Now these are the words Gid shared with me: We set out to head down to Zarahemla with our prisoners, and we ran into the spies from our armies who were watchin over the Lamanite camp.

31. They called out to us, shoutin Look out, the Lamanite armies are marchin right towards Cumeni; theyre fixin to pounce on our folks and wipe em out.

32. Well, our prisoners caught wind of their shoutin, which got em all riled up; next thing ya know, they was risin up in rebellion against us.

33. And because they went and rebelled, we had no choice but to let our swords do the talkin. They ran right at our swords, and most of em ended up bite the dust; the ones that didnt broke free and scampered off.

34. Once they fled and we couldn't catch em, we picked up the pace to Cumeni; and, bless my soul, we made it in time to help our folks save the city.

35. And just like that, we were delivered again from our enemies. Blessed be the name of our God; Hes the one who set us free; yeah, He done this great thing for us.

36. Now when I, Helaman, heard these words from Gid, I was filled to the brim with joy 'bout the goodness of God for keepin us safe so we didnt all buy the farm; and I trust those souls lost have found their peace with their God.

## **Alma Chapter 58**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well now, listen up, it all started when we had ourselves a mind to grab that city of Manti. Problem was, our little crew just couldnt wrangle them folks outta there. They had a real memory on 'em about all the things wed done before, so they werent fixin to leave their safe spots.
2. They outnumbered us by a whole heap, and we werent about to charge on in to their strongholds.
3. So, we figured itd be smarter to keep our men in the parts wed already claimed back, waitin' till we could get some extra muscle from Zarahemla, along with a fresh batch of food.
4. Well, I sent a message to the big boss of our land, lettin him in on what was goin on with our people. We waited to get our supplies and reinforcements from Zarahemla.
5. But, shoot, that didnt help us much at all; the Lamanites were just gettin' stronger by the day, stockin up on supplies too, and that was just our luck.
6. They'd charge out at us from time to time, tryin to come up with a plan to take us out, but we couldnt meet 'em in battle cause they were too busy hightailin' it back to their strongholds.
7. We stuck it out in them tough times for months, gettin' more desperate for food by the minute.
8. Then, lo and behold, we finally got some grub, guarded by two thousand of our folks, and that was all the back-up we had to keep our heads above water gainst a whole mess of enemies.
9. Now, we didnt rightly know why we werent gettin more support, and that got us all worried, thinkin' maybe God was gonna rain down judgment on us, bringin us to ruin.
10. So, we laid it all bare to God in prayer, askin Him to give us strength and deliver us from those traitorous hands, and to help us keep hold of our towns and lands for the sake of our people.
11. And wouldnt you know it, the Lord came to us, whisperin sweet peace to our troubled hearts, fillin us up with faith and makin us hopeful for rescue.
12. With what little force we had left, we bravely set our sights on conquerin our foes and holdin on to our lands, our families, and fightin' for our freedom.
13. So, we gathered all our strength and charged on in against the Lamanites holdin down the city of Manti, pitchin our tents right by the wilderness, close to the city.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. Now, come the next day, the Lamanites caught sight of us near the borders and sent out some spies to figure out how many of us there were and what our strength looked like.

15. And when they saw we werent too strong, fearin we might cut em off from help if they didnt step out and engage in battle, thinkin they could wipe us out with their big army, they began makin their own preparations to face us.

16. Once we saw them gearin up to come after us, I told Gid to take a small bunch and sneak off into the wilderness, just like Teomner and another small crew doin the same.

17. Gid and his crew were tucked away on one side, and the others on the other; and there I stood with the rest of my men, right where we first set up camp, waitin for the Lamanites to come on out.

18. Sure enough, the Lamanites came rollin out with their big ol' army, and just as they were fixin to come down on us, I told my folks to pull back into the wilderness.

19. They chased after us quick as a flash, real keen on catchin' us to take us out; they followed us into the wilderness, right between Gid and Teomner, who managed to stay hidden from 'em.

20. Then, when the coast was clear and the Lamanites passed by, Gid and Teomner popped up from their hidey holes and took care of the spies, makin sure they didnt make it back to city.

21. Once they dealt with those spies, they charged right over to the city and took out the guards who were watchin the place, takin control of it real quick.

22. Now, this worked 'cause the Lamanites let their whole army, except for a few guards, wander off into the wilderness.

23. So thanks to Gid and Teomner, we had ourselves a solid hold on their strongholds, after trippin through the wilderness towards Zarahemla.

24. When the Lamanites caught wind that we was headin towards Zarahemla, they got mighty scared, thinkin there must be some scheme to lead em to their doom, and they skedaddled back into the wilderness, retracin their steps.

25. And fore long, it was night and they set up camp, thinkin the Nephites were too tired from marchin'. They

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

figured they had run us off good, so they werent worried bout Manti anymore.

26. Later that night, I made sure my men didnt shut their eyes but kept movin' towards Manti, takin a different route so the Lamanites wouldnt catch wind of us.

27. And come the next day, we had outmaneuvered the Lamanites and ended up sittin pretty before em at the city of Manti.

28. And so, by this clever plan, we took over the city of Manti without spillin' any blood.

29. But, when the Lamanite armies got near and saw we were ready for em, they were shocked and filled with fear, and they took off runnin into the wilderness.

30. Sure enough, the Lamanite armies skedaddled outta that whole part of the land, but they took a whole mess of women and children with 'em.

31. The cities those Lamanites had snatched up are all ours again now, and our folks, including the women and children, are makin' their way back home, all cept for those poor souls who got captured and taken away.

32. But we do have a small army, and it aint easy to cover all them cities and hold onto what we got.

33. But were trustin in our God whos given us victory over them lands, so weve managed to get back what rightfully belongs to us.

34. Now, we dont rightly understand why the government aint sendin more help our way; even them men who showed up dont know why we aint seen more support.

35. We just dont know if we didnt have no success out there and they moved the troops elsewhere; if thats the case, we aint complainin.

36. And if that aint it, well, we start to worry that theres some sort of fuss in the government, and they aint sending more folks to help us, cause we know theres more of em than what theyve sent our way.

37. But it dont matter nonewere trusting Gods gonna save us, even with our small forces, and deliver us from these pesky enemies.

38. Now, its the end of the twenty-ninth year, and were holdin onto our lands, while the Lamanites have hightailed it back to Nephi.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

39. And them sons of the people of Ammon Ive been braggin on? Theyre with me in Manti, and the Lords been good to em, keepin 'em safe and sound, cause not a single ones been lost to the sword.

40. But theyve been through the wringer, yeah, and theyve got their fair share of wounds; but theyre stayin' strong in that freedom God gave 'em, and theyre real good about rememberin the Lord every single day; they stickin' to keepin' His laws, His judgments, and His commandments, and they got a strong faith in the promises of whats yet to come.

41. And now, my dear brother Moroni, I pray the Lord our God, whos redeemed us and set us free, keeps you in His sights; and may He bless our people so that you can snag back everything the Lamanites took from us that we need to survive. And thats all I gotta say. Yours truly, Helaman, son of Alma.

### **Alma Chapter 59**

1. Now, let me tell ya, back in the thirtieth year of them judges running things over the Nephites, after Moroni done read that letter from Helaman, he was just tickled pink 'bout how things was goin' for Helaman, what with all that land he managed to get back.

2. Shoot, he let everyone know 'round his neck of the woods so they could rejoice right along with him.

3. So, he up and sent Pahoran a letter, askin' him to wrangle up some folks to back up Helaman, so he could keep holdin' onto that part of the land that had been handed back to him like a miracle.

4. And as soon as Moroni sent that note down to Zarahemla, he started puttin' together a plan to get back the rest of the stuff and towns the Lamanites swiped from 'em.

5. Well, while Moroni was busy gettin' ready to take on them Lamanites, the folks in Nephihah who came over from Moroni, Lehi, and Morianton found themselves under attack by them Lamanites.

6. Yup, even them people who had to skedaddle away from Manti and the surrounding lands came on over and joined forces with the Lamanites.

7. And lemme tell ya, they was a heap of em, growin' stronger every day, and under the command of Ammoron, they went at the Nephihah folks, and it turned into a huge ol' slaughter.

8. Their army was so big that the rest of Nephihah's people had no choice but to hightail it; they ended up

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

joinin' up with Moroni's army.

9. Now, Moroni figured they'd send folks to help out the city of Nephihah, knowin' it was a lot easier to keep that city safe from Lamanite hands than to try and get it back after it was lost, so he figured they'd be able to hold onto it just fine.

10. So he kept all his men in them spots he had just got back.

11. But when he saw Nephihah was in trouble, he got mighty upset and started doubting things since folks were actin' so wicked, wonderin' if they were fixin' to fall into the Lamanites' hands, just like they'd done before.

12. And that was how all his main captains felt too. They was doubting and scratching their heads about how wicked the people had gotten, all 'cause the Lamanites was havin' themselves a good run against 'em.

13. And would ya believe it? Moroni was fit to be tied with the government, seein' how they didn't give a hoot about keepin' their country free.

## **Alma Chapter 60**

1. Well, it happened that I penned another letter to the governor of our fair land, Pahoran, and here's what I had to say, listen up: Look, I'm sendin' this here letter straight to Pahoran, over in Zarahemla, who's supposed to be the chief judge and governor of this whole territory, along with all y'all folks pickin' to run this war business.

2. Now lemme tell ya somethin' important y'all know good and well you been put in charge to round up men, get 'em armed with swords, fancy knives, and all kinds of war gear, and send 'em off to take on the Lamanites wherever they might see fit to traipse into our land.

3. And I gotta say it's been tough on me and my crew, not to mention Helaman and his boys ya see, we've been sufferin' somethin' fierce; yeah, we bout starved, been thirstier than a dog on a hot day, and just plain wore out, feelin' all kinds of agony.

4. But reckon if that was all we were dealin' with, we wouldn't be grumblin' none.

5. But shoot, the bloodshed has been mighty brutal among our folks; I mean thousands hittin' the dirt, and it sure could've been different if y'all had just lent our armies some decent help. Looks like y'all been ignorin' us

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

real good.

6. So now, were hopin to understand why yall been so neglectful; were wantin to figure out why yall don't seem to give a hoot.

7. You really think you can just sit up there on your high horses and not care while the bad guys are bringin death right round ya? Theyre out there killin thousands of the good folks who look to you for protection

8. Yeah, those same folks whove placed their trust in you, that you mightve sent some help their way, strengthened em up, and kept em from dyin by the sword.

9. But hold up, that aint allyall been holdin back the grub from em too, so much so that plenty have fought and lost their lives tryin to take care of this people, even while they was bout to starve, all thanks to your downright neglect.

10. And now, my dear brethrenyall really oughta be loved; fact is, you shouldve been workin a whole lot harder for the welfare and freedom of these folks; look at whats happened, your neglects gonna weigh heavy on your heads for all the blood thats spilled; Gods heard their cries and knows their sufferings

11. Do you think you can lounge around on your thrones, thinkin that Gods goodness means you can just sit there and Hell do all the work? If thats what you reckon, youre foolin yourselves.

12. You actually believe that just cause so many of your brothers have faced the sword, its cause they were bad folks? Listen here, if you think that, youre real far off; Im tellin ya, plenty good folks have fallen, and thats on you

13. See, the Lord lets the righteous get slain so that justice can catch up with the wicked; so dont go thinkin the good ones are lost cause they fall; theyre just headin to rest with the Lord their God.

14. And now, Im tellin ya, Im mighty scared that Gods gonna unleash His judgment on this people for their laziness, yeah, the laziness of our leaders, and their awful neglect towards their own, especially those who been slain.

15. If it hadnt been for all the wickedness at the top, we couldve kicked the enemy right outta here without them gainin a lick of power over us.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

16. Yeah, if it werent for the fights breakin out among us; and if it werent for them king-men who made such a mess of things; while we was busy fightin each other, if we had pooled our strength like we oughta done; and if them king-men had been true to our cause, come together with us, and stood against our enemies instead of liftin their swords against their own, there wouldnt be the heavy bloodshed were seein; you see, if wed fought em with the Lords strength, we couldve sent em runnin, just like He promised.

17. But here we are; the Lamanites are comin at us, takin our land and killin our folks, yup, even our women and children, takin em away, makin em suffer in all kinds of ways; all cause of the wickedness of them power-hungry king-men.

18. But why should I go on bout this? Were not sure if yallre out there lookin for power too. Could be you might as well be traitors to your own land.

19. Or is it that yall just turned a blind eye to us, sittin pretty in the heart of our country, feelin all safe, forgettin to send us food and folks to help our armies?

20. Yall forgettin Gods commandments? Yall forgotten our daddies captivity? You really forgot how many times weve been saved right outta the hands of our enemies?

21. Or do you honestly think the Lords still gonna save us while you just sit there and dont use the means Hes laid out for us?

22. Yup, you reckon you can just sit still while youve got thousands, even tens of thousands, sittin' idle, while all around us folks are fallin by the sword, bleedin and hurtin?

23. Do you think Gods gonna see you as innocent while youre sittin by watchin it all go down? I tell ya, no way. Now, dont ya forget God says the inside has gotta be cleaned up first, then the outside gets taken care of too.

24. And now, unless you get off your duff and start makin amends for what youve done, and send us food and men to support Helaman, whos tryin to hold on to what bits of land we got back, we shouldnt even bother with the Lamanites til we clean up our own house, even the head of our government.

25. And unless you take this letter to heart, and come show me some real spirit of freedom, and work to shore

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

up our armies and feed em, I reckon Ill leave some of my good folks here to guard this patch of land, and Ill lean on Gods strength to make sure nothin else can come against em

26. And thats all cause of their rock-solid faith, and their patience through tough times

27. And Ill be comin to you; and if theres anybody among ya with even a hint of desire for freedom, Im tellin ya now, Im gonna stir up some trouble until all the power-hungry folks are wiped out.

28. Yup, I aint scared of your power or your authority, but I am mighty scared of my God; Ive got to defend this land cause Hes told me to, and what youve done wrong is why weve lost so much.

29. Look, its time, the times now to wake up; if yall dont jump into action and defend your land and your little ones, that sword of justice is hangin right over ya; its gonna come fallin down and take ya out.

30. Im here waitin for some help from you all; and if you dont step up to help us out, Im comin to you in Zarahemla, and Im going to smite ya with the sword, so you cant stop us in our pursuit of freedom.

31. Cause the Lord aint gonna let you live and thrive in your sins while Hes tryin to protect His righteous people.

32. Do you really think the Lords gonna look the other way and come down on the Lamanites, when its their family traditions causin all this hatred, and its been made worse by those whove turned against us, while your wrongs stem from your love of glory and all the flashy things in the world?

33. You know youre breakin Gods laws, just throwin' em down like nothin. Look, the Lords told me: If those youve appointed don't fix their wrongs, youre gonna find yourselves in battle against them.

34. And now, listen here, I, Moroni, got no choice but to follow what I promised to God; so Im hopin yall will listen up, do whats right, and get food and men to me quick-like, and to Helaman too.

35. And lemme tell ya, if you dont hop to it, Im comin your way in a hurry; God aint gonna let us starve; Hell find a way to take your food, even if it means wagin war. Now yall better fulfill the word of God.

36. Just so ya know, Im Moroni, your main captain. I aint lookin for power, but to bring it down. I aint in it for the worlds honor, but for the glory of my God, and for the freedom and well-bein of my country. And thats how Im wrapping up this here letter.

## **Alma Chapter 61**

1. Well, lemme tell ya what happened after Moroni shot a letter off to the main boss man, Pahoran, the chief governor. Heres what he got back:
2. I, Pahoran, the head honcho round these parts, am a-sendin this here message to you, Moroni, whos runnin the show over the army. Now listen up, Moroni, I ain't too happy bout all the hard times youre facin, and it just tugs at my heartstrings somethin fierce.
3. But let me tell ya, there are folks out there who are actually happy bout your troubles, and theyve decided to rise up against me and my good peeps who are just tryin to keep it free, and let me tell ya, theyre a mighty big crowd.
4. Its them rascals tryin to take my judgment-seat thats caused all this mess; theyve been blowin smoke and flatterin folks, leadin many good people astray, which is sure gonna hurt us bad; theyve even kept our supplies from reachin ya and scared off our free folks from gettin' to you.
5. Theyve pushed me right outta my own place, and Ive hightailed it to Gideon with however many good men I could gather.
6. And listen here, Ive sent out a shout across this part of the land, and folks are bein drawn to us every day, ready to grab their guns and stand up for their home and freedom, lookin to settle the score for whats been done to us.
7. Theyre comin our way in numbers, and those rebel folks think they can just thumb their nose at us; theyre downright scared of us and aint got the guts to face us in a fight.
8. Them king-men have taken over Zarahemla; they got themselves a king and hes shootin letters off to the Lamanite king, makin deals to support that city. This fella thinks keepin Zarahemla will help the Lamanites take the rest of the land, and that hell be sittin pretty as king when they conquer us.
9. Now, I gotta say, you gave me a little bit of a hard time in your letter, but that ain't got me riled up; Im just happy to see your hearts in the right place. Pahoran here aint lookin for no power, just wantin to hold onto my seat so I can keep my folks rights and freedom safe. My spirit is firm in that freedom Gods given us.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

10. And now, bless your heart, were ready to fight against all this wickedness, even if it comes down to spillin blood. We sure wouldnt want to hurt them Lamanites if they just stayed put in their own neck of the woods.
11. We wouldnt take out our own kin if theyd just keep their heads down and not start a ruckus against us.
12. Wed put on the ol yoke of bondage if Gods justice called for it, or if He told us to do it.
13. But let me be clear, He aint tellin us to bow down to our enemies; Hes sayin we should trust Him, and Hell come through for us.
14. So, my dear brother Moroni, lets stand up against this evil, and for all the trouble we cant talk downlike rebellions and squabbleslets take up our swords to hold onto our freedom, revelin in the good ol privilege of our church and fightin for our Redeemer and our God.
15. So come on over here quick-like with a few of your good ol boys, and leave the rest to Lehi and Teancum; let em know they got the green light to handle the fightin wherever they are, goin with Gods Spiritthe spirit of freedom lingerin in them.
16. Ive sent a couple of supplies their way, just to keep em from starvin while you make your way over here.
17. Gather up whatever force you can, and lets skedaddle against those dissenters, leanin on the strength of our God cause were full of faith.
18. Well take back Zarahemla so we can stock up on more grub to send to Lehi and Teancum; yeah, well head out against em with the Lords might and put a stop to this mess once and for all.
19. And now, Moroni, Im right happy to get your letter cause I was gettin a bit anxious bout what we oughta dowhether itd be fair to go after our own brothers.
20. But you let it be known, unless they mend their ways, the Lords ordered you to go after em.
21. Make sure to strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell em not to fret, cause Gods gonna save em, and everyone who stands firm in that sweet liberty Hes given us. And that's all she wrote for now, my dear brother Moroni.

## **Alma Chapter 62**

1. Well now, it turns out when Moroni got that letter, his heart just swelled with courage and he was happier

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

than a lark, 'cause he knew Pahoran was as loyal as they come, not a traitor like some folks.

2. But Lord, he sure did grieve 'bout all them folks whod run Pahoran outta his seat o' judgment, and them rebels who turned their backs on their country and their God too.

3. So, Moroni rounded up a handful of good ol' boys, just like Pahoran asked, and handed Lehi and Teancum the reins for the rest of the crew, then he marched off toward Gideon, just like a dadgum soldier.

4. Everywhere he went, he waved that flag of freedom high, gatherin' every little backwoodsman he could find in his great march to Gideon.

5. Next thing ya know, thousands were showin' up to pick up their swords and fight for their freedom, makin' sure they didnt end up shackled like some sad sack.

6. So there Moroni was, roundin' up every man he could find on the road, finally settlin' down in Gideon; once he teamed up with Pahoran, they were tougher than a two-headed dollar bill, even more than them punks followin' Pachus, who had run the good folks outta Zarahemla and taken over the place.

7. Then, wouldn't ya know, Moroni and Pahoran rode into Zarahemla, armies in tow, lookin to tussle with Pachus and his crew, which led to quite the dust-up.

8. Pachus ended up six feet under, and his men were caught red-handed, and Pahoran got his old judge's seat back, clearer than a Georgia sky.

9. So, Pachus and his gang went through the ropes of trial, 'cause thats how things work, and all them king-men who'd been locked up got the same fate; if they werent about to help defend their country, then they faced the hangmans noose.

10. Thats how it became necessary-like for those laws to stick around, keepin' the peace on the home front; and if anyone was found denyin' their freedoms, well, they didnt have much time left here, thats for sure.

11. Well, that was the end of the thirtieth year with them judges over Nephi, and Moroni and Pahoran had brought peace back to Zarahemla, dealin' death to those who werent true blue to the cause of freedom.

12. Now when the thirty-first year rolled round for them judges, Moroni wasted no time gettin' provisions sent out, and roundin' up a good ol' army of six thousand to help Helaman hold down the fort.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

13. And he also sent another bunch of six thousand, loaded with grub, to back up Lehi and Teancum, all to beef up the defenses against the Lamanites.

14. So, Moroni and Pahoran left a big ol' group in Zarahemla and set out with a hefty crew towards Nephihah, all set on givin' the Lamanites a good kickin' in that town.

15. As they marched on, they took down a good number of Lamanites, mowin 'em down and snaggin their supplies and weapons too.

16. After that little skirmish, they made those Lamanites swear they wouldnt be pickin' up arms against the Nephites no more.

17. Once they got that promise, they sent em off to live with the good folks of Ammon, 'bout four thousand strong who made it through unscathed.

18. After givin' em the boot, they kept headin' to Nephihah, settlin' down their tents in the plains not too far from the city.

19. Moroni really wanted those Lamanites to come out and throw down on him in the open, but they knew damn well how brave he and his boys were and how many they had, so they didnt wanna dance that dance just yet.

20. Come nightfall, Moroni snuck out in the dark like a cat, climbin' up on the wall to see where the Lamanites were camped out.

21. They were snoozin all cozy-like on the east side by the entrance. Moroni came back to his group and told em they needed to make some ropes and ladders quick-like, to drop down into the inner part of the wall.

22. So, Moroni led his men up on top of that wall and let themselves down into the city from the west side where them Lamanites werent hangin' out.

23. They snuck into the city all sneaky-like by night, and when morning broke, they found themselves snug inside the walls.

24. When the Lamanites woke up and saw Moroni's crew sittin' in their backyard, they were scared silly and took off runnin'.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

25. Well, once Moroni noticed they were skedaddlin', he told his men to hustle out there, take down as many as possible, and round up the rest, the ones who high-tailed it going back to Moroni's land by the coast.

26. And just like that, Moroni and Pahoran took Nephihah without losin a single soul, not to mention many Lamanites bite the dust.

27. Now, a good number of captured Lamanites wanted to team up with the Ammon folks and be free again.

28. So, anyone who wanted it got the green light to join em, plain as day.

29. Thus, all them Lamanite prisoners jumped in with the Ammonites, and they started workin' hard, plowin' fields, growin' grains, and raisin' all sorts of critters, takin' a load off the Nephites.

30. After Moroni took Nephihah, he had nabbed a whole heaping of prisoners, which really knocked the Lamanites armies down some pegs, and he also got his Nephites back, beefin' up his own army good-like; so, off he went from Nephihah to Lehi's land.

31. Once the Lamanites spotted Moroni makin' his move, they were spooked again and took off runnin' from his army.

32. On they went, Moroni and his crew, chasin 'em from town to town til they teamed up with Lehi and Teancum, and the Lamanites scampered down by the seashore til they made it to Moroni's turf.

33. And all them Lamanite armies were bunched together like a pack of dogs in Moroni's land. And wouldnt ya know it, but their king Ammoron was amongst em too.

34. So, Moroni, Lehi, and Teancum set up camp 'round the edges of Moronis land, with the Lamanites caught like a bug in a jar, surrounded by wilderness on the south and east.

35. And thats how they hunkered down for the night. Both sides were worn-out from all the marchin, so nobody came up with any tricks in the dark, except Teancum, who was hotter than a firecracker cause of Ammoron, reckonin he and his brother Amalickiah was the reason for all this ruckus and heartache, all that bloodshed and hunger.

36. In his anger, Teancum snuck off into the Lamanites camp and climbed down those city walls. He wandered around huntin for the king, and when he found him, he tossed a javelin that nearly sent him to the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

grave. Sadly, the king woke his guards before he kicked the can, and they went after Teancum, endin' his life.

37. Now, when Lehi and Moroni caught wind that Teancum was gone, they felt as low as a snakes belly; he was a brave soul who stood up for his people, a true friend to freedom, and hed been through more than his fair share of hard times. But now he was gone, joinin the ranks of the deceased.

38. Come the next mornin, Moroni marched back out and clobbered those Lamanites, sendin' them packin' and givin' 'em a good ol thrashin; they didnt dare return against the Nephites that day.

39. That was how the thirty-first year ended with them judges over the Nephites; lots of wars, blood spills, famines, and sorrows, it was a long road.

40. Thered been murders and fights, and all sorts of wickedness among the Nephites; yet, for the righteous folks sake, and cause of their prayers, they got spared.

41. But with the war dragging on, reckon some folks got hard-hearted from all that strife; still, others softened up from their afflictions, humblin' themselves right down before God, crawlin low as they could.

42. After Moroni fortified the most vulnerable spots against the Lamanites, makin' sure they were strong as could be, he headed back to Zarahemla; and Helaman followed suit to settle back where he belonged, and peace finally returned to the Nephites.

43. So, Moroni passed the command of his armies to his son, Moronihah, and he retired to his home, lookin' to enjoy the rest of his days in peace.

44. Pahoran plopped back down in his judgment seat, and Helaman picked up preachin' to the folks bout Gods Word, since things had gotten messy with all that fightin'.

45. So, Helaman and his brothers hit the road, shoutin the Word of God with powerful conviction 'til plenty folks caught on to their wrongdoings, makin em wanna repent and be baptized in the name of the Lord.

46. And just like that, they got the church back up and runnin all across the land.

47. Yup, and they set some rules down about the law. Chose judges and chief judges, all organized like.

48. As time rolled on, the Nephites began to flourish again, populatin' and growin' strong, livin' it up like kings and queens.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

49. But even with all that riches, strength, and success, they didnt let it go to their heads; they kept humble and remembered the Lord their God, stayin' low before Him.

50. Oh yeah, they kept on rememberin all the mighty ways the Lord saved 'em, pullin' them from death, bonds, prisons, and all sorts of troubles, rescuin' em from their enemies too.

51. And they prayed to the Lord their God non-stop, and He showered 'em with blessings, growin strong and prosperin' in their land.

52. And all these things happened, and Helaman met his maker, passin on in the thirty-fifth year out of the judges over the Nephites.

### **Alma Chapter 63**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, it was right at the start of that thirty-sixth year of them judges runnin things over the Nephi folks, when good ol Shiblon got his hands on them sacred records that Helaman got from Alma.

2. He was a straight-shootin' fella, walkin the line with God, doin good deeds all the time, keepin the Lords commandmentsjust like his brother did too.

3. Then aint it just the way that Moroni passed on outta this world too. And thats how the thirty-sixth year of them judges wrapped up.

4. Now, rollin' into the thirty-seventh year of the judges, we had a whole bunch of folks, bout five thousand four hundred men, along with their wives and kiddos, packin up and leavin Zarahemla to head north.

5. So this feller Hagoth, real curious kinda guy he was, went and built hisself a mighty big ol ship right near the land of Bountiful, on them Desolation borders, and sent that thing sailin' out into the west sea by that narrow neck headin northward.

6. And let me tell ya, a whole heap of Nephites climbed aboard that ship, packin it full of supplies, women, and kids, settin their sights north. And thats how the thirty-seventh year came to a close.

7. Then in the thirty-eighth year, this fella didnt stop; he built more ships. That first one even came back, and lots more folks hopped on, loadin up with supplies, and off they went again all headed north.

8. Now, we ain't never heard from em again, reckon they got swallowed up by the deep blue. Another ship

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

sailed out too, but where it went, shoot, we aint got a clue.

9. Then gotta say, that year had plenty of folks packin up, headin off to the north too. And thats how the thirty-eighth year wrapped up.

10. Come thirty-ninth year of them judges, Shiblon passed away as well, while Corianton took off to the north on a ship, tryin to haul some supplies to them folks that had already gone.

11. So it was mighty important for Shiblon to pass those sacred records down to Helaman, the son of Helaman, named after his daddy, fore he kicked the bucket.

12. Now heres the thing, all them engravings Helaman had were sent out among the people, except the parts Alma said to keep under wraps.

13. But hey, these precious things were meant to be kept sacred and passed down through the ages; so in this year, Helaman got em right before Shiblon's time ran out.

14. And wouldn't you know it, this year also saw some dissenters who skedaddled off to the Lamanites, sparkin up their anger against the Nephites again.

15. Then, in that same year, they brought down a big ol army to throw down with Moronihahs folks, but they got their tails whooped and had to skedaddle back home, takin some heavy losses along the way.

16. And that's how the thirty-ninth year of them judges over the Nephi folks came to an end.

17. So that wraps up the tale of Alma, his boy Helaman, and also Shiblon, who was his son too.

## **Helaman**

### **Helaman Chapter 1**

1. Well, lemme tell ya bout the Nephites, their squabbles and spats, and all that fussin. Theres also the prophecies from a bunch of holy folk, long before Jesus showed up, from the records of Helaman, who, by the way, was Helamans boy. And its all noted down by his younguns too, goin all the way up to when Christ came. Oh, and a heap of Lamanites turned their ways round too, which is a whole chapter in itself. It's about how they found their righteous way, while the Nephites were busy makin' a mess of things, all writ in the book

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

of Helaman, and so on.

2. Now, Pahoran the second stepped up as chief judge but got himself murdered by Kishkumen. Then Pacumeni slid right into that judgment seat. Coriantumr rallied the Lamanite troops, took over Zarahemla, and took out Pacumeni. Moronihah turned the tables on 'em, beat the Lamanites, took back Zarahemla, and then Coriantumr met his end. We're talkin' bout the years 'round 52 to 50 B.C.

3. Now yall listen close, cause right at the start of the big fortieth year of them judges runnin things over the Nephites, trouble started brewin among 'em Nephites.

4. See, ol Pahoran had passed on, shuffled off this mortal coil; so a big ol fuss broke out over whod take the judgment seat among Pahorans kin.

5. Now lemme tell ya who was fussin over that seat: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

6. Now these fellas ain't the only sons of Pahoran, 'cause he had a whole bunch; but they were the ones causin a ruckus about that seat, stirrin' up three factions among the folks.

7. But wouldnt ya know it, the people picked Pahoran to be chief judge and governor over Nephis folk.

8. Then Pacumeni saw he werent gonna get that judgment seat, so he joined the crowds pick.

9. But lemme tell ya, Paanchi and his supporters were fit to be tied; they was mighty mad and thought bout stirrin up trouble against their own kin.

10. Just as he was bout to set that trouble in motion, he got nabbed, put on trial by the folks, and sentenced to kick the bucket 'cause he tried to spark a rebellion and mess with the peoples freedom.

11. Now those folks wanting Paanchi as their governor saw he was facing the gallows and got all riled up. So they sent Kishkumen over to the judgment seat of Pahoran, and he straight-up murdered Pahoran while he was sittin there.

12. Pahorans servants chased after him, but shoot, Kishkumen was so quick on his feet, they couldnt catch up.

13. He got back to his folks, and they all took a secret oath together, swearing on their Maker that they wouldnt spill the beans about how Kishkumen offed Pahoran.

14. So, Kishkumen kinda disappeared among the Nephites, hidin himself right after he did the deed. Him and



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

his crew blended into the crowd so well that folks couldnt pin em down; but any of em they caught got sentenced to die.

15. Now Pacumeni got himself put in charge, just like the people wanted, takin up where his brother Pahoran left off, and all that went down in the fortieth year of them judges' ruleit was all wrapped up nice like.

16. Now in the forty-first year of the judges, the Lamanites got themselves a could-be endless army, armed to the teeth with swords, cimeters, bows, arrows, head-plates, breastplates, and all kinds of shields.

17. They headed on down again to throw down against the Nephites, led by a fella named Coriantumr, who was a descendant of Zarahemla and was a bit of a turncoat among the Nephites, a big ol strong dude he was.

18. So the Lamanite king, named Tubaloth, who was Ammorons son, thought Coriantumr, bein such a big shot, could handle the Nephites and give em the old one-two with his brawn and smarts, so he sent him out to take charge of the Lamanites.

19. He kinda ticked em off, gathered em together, and named Coriantumr head honcho, settin them to march down to Zarahemla to have at it with the Nephites.

20. Now with all that fussin and botherin in the government, they didnt keep watch good-like over Zarahemla; figured them Lamanites wouldnt dare come right into the heart of their lands to have a go at that big city.

21. But here comes Coriantumr, marchin out front with his whole ol crowd, zoomin right on down to the folks in the city, and their quick marchin caught them Nephites with their pants down.

22. So Coriantumr chopped down them watchmen at the city gates and stormed right in with his whole crew, takin out anyone who resisted, and before you knew it, they claimed the entire city.

23. Now Pacumeni, chief judge that he was, hightailed it away from Coriantumr right up to the city walls. And wouldnt ya know it, Coriantumr smashed him against the wall and that was that for Pacumeni.

24. After Coriantumr saw he had Zarahemla under his thumb, watchin the Nephites run and get mowed down, tossed in jail, and realized he held the strongest spot in the whole land, his heart swelled with bravery like he was about to take on the whole dang place.

25. No sir, he didnt stick around in Zarahemla, but marched on with a big ol army straight towards Bountiful,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

lookin to slice through the northern parts of the land with his sword.

26. Figured their best folks were sittin in the middle of the land, so he didnt give em a chance to come together save for a few folks, and thats how they snuck up on em and cut em down to the ground.

27. But yknow, Coriantumr marchin through the middle of the land gave Moronihah an edge, despite all those Nephites that got taken out.

28. See, Moronihah thought them Lamanites wouldnt dare step into the center of the land but would stick to their usual hit-and-run attacks on the cities ringin the outskirts. So he had his strong forces holdin the borders tight.

29. But the Lamanites werent scared off like he hoped; they came pourin into the center, snatched up the capital city Zarahemla, and was marchin through the best parts of the land, slayin folks left and rightmen, women, and childrentakmin over plenty of cities and strongholds.

30. When Moronihah got wind of all this, he quickly sent Lehi out with a force to head em off before they hit Bountiful.

31. And thats just what he done; he met them before they could reach Bountiful and gave em a good ol fight, makin em turn tail back towards Zarahemla.

32. Then Moronihah caught up with em again as they was retreatin, battlin it out so fierce it turned into a downright bloody mess, with heaps falling, includin Coriantumr himself.

33. Now, I reckon the Lamanites found themselves in a pickle, with no way to go back north or south, east or west, cause the Nephites had em boxed in from every direction.

34. And thats how Coriantumr got the Lamanites right in the thick of the Nephites, and with him goin down, the Lamanites gave themselves up to the Nephites.

35. So, Moronihah took back control of Zarahemla again and made sure the captured Lamanites could head outta the land safe and sound.

36. And there y'go, that wrapped up the forty-first year of the judges' rule.

## **Helaman Chapter 2**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Helaman, the son of Helaman, takes the top judge spot. Gadianton's leadin' em rowdy folks known as Kishkumen. Helaman's servant takes out Kishkumen, and the gang of Gadianton high-tails it into the wild.
2. Well, it was in the forty-second year of them judges sittin' pretty, after Moronihah had patched things up between the Nephites and the Lamanites, and wouldn't ya know it, there wasn't nobody to fill that judgment seat; so folks started fussin' again over who oughta take it.
3. Then along comes Helaman, son of Helaman, and folks picked him to take that judgment seat, just by what they all said.
4. But hold on, Kishkumen, the feller who put Pahoran six feet under, was layin' in wait to do the same to Helaman; and he had his crew backin' him up, all havin' made a secret vow that no one would spill the beans on their dirty deeds.
5. Now there was this fella named Gadianton, who was real slick with his words, and just as good at the whole sneaky business of killin' and thievin'; so, sure enough, he ended up bein' the head honcho of Kishkumen's crew.
6. So he sweet-talked em, and even Kishkumen, sayin' that if they'd make him the judge, he'd let em have all kinds of power and authority; that's how Kishkumen got himself all twisted up in a plan to ice Helaman.
7. As he was stridin' toward that judgment seat to take Helaman out, one of Helaman's servants, who had been out and about at night, got wind of what them rascals were schemin' against Helaman. Disguised and all.
8. Then he bumped into Kishkumen and gave him a signal; so Kishkumen let slip what he was up to, wantin' to be led to that judgment seat so he could go ahead and do Helaman in.
9. And once Helaman's servant got the lowdown on what all Kishkumen was plannin', that it was all about murderin' and robbin' to grab some power, he told Kishkumen: Let's head on over to that judgment seat.
10. Now, Kishkumen was mighty pleased with this idea, thinkin' he was gonna get his way; but lo and behold, as they were makin' their way to that judgment seat, the servant of Helaman put a knife right in Kishkumen's heart, and he dropped dead without so much as a whimper. Then he took off runnin' to tell Helaman all he'd seen and done.
11. So Helaman sent word out to catch them robbin' and killin' rascals so they could get what was comin' to em.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

under the law.

12. But heres the thing, when Gadianton found out Kishkumen didnt come back, he got real uneasy thinkin he might meet the same fate; so he told his gang to stick close. They made a run for it outta town, takin a sneaky route into the wilderness; and when Helaman sent out searchin parties, they were nowhere to be found.

13. And therell be more talkin bout Gadianton later on. And thus wrapped up the forty-second year of them judges holdin court over the Nephi folks.

14. Now, listen here, by the end of this little tale, youll see that this Gadianton surely did cause a mess, yeah, nearly wiped out the whole Nephi crowd.

15. And dont get it twisted, I ain't talkin bout the end of the book of Helaman, but the end of the book of Nephi, where I pulled all this account Ive written.

### **Helaman Chapter 3**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, in that forty-third year of them judges, folks 'round Nephi weren't arguin much, 'cept maybe a pinch of pride in the church, stirrin' up a tad bit of fuss among 'em, but they settled all that by the end of the year.

2. Now, in that forty-fourth year, there wasnt much fuss goin on, and the same goes for the forty-fifth year, too.

3. But shoot, come forty-six, well, it got real rowdy with a heap of disagreements; lots of folks packed up and skedaddled outta Zarahemla, headin north lookin' for greener pastures.

4. They went on a long ol trek, far enough that they found some big ol lakes and plenty of rivers.

5. Yup, they spread out all over the land, wherever it wasnt all dried up and bare, cause there was too many folks livin in the land before.

6. Ain't no part of the land stayed barren, cept it was short on timber; that destruction done happened to the people before made it seem all desolate.

7. With not much timber left round, they sure got good at workin with cement; built em some sturdy houses of that stuff to live in.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

8. And wouldn't ya know it, they multiplied and spread out everywhere, movin from the south to the north, coverin the whole dang earth, from sea to sea.
9. Them folks up north, they lived in tents and cement houses, lettin any tree that sprouted grow up, hopin one day theyd have timber for their homes, cities, temples, and all sorts of buildins.
10. And since timber was mighty rare up yonder, they started shippin in a whole lotta it.
11. Thats how they got them folks up north to buildin a heap of cities, both with wood and cement.
12. Now, I reckon some of Ammon's folks, them Lamanites by blood, went up into that land too.
13. And right now, there's a whole mess of records kept by the Nephites about whats been goin on with 'em; its a long story with lots of details.
14. But lemme tell ya, a hundredth part of what went down, the wars and squabbles, preachin, prophecies, shippin, buildin temples and synagogues, and the good and bad stuff they did, ain't fit to be crammed into this here work.
15. And Ill be darned, but theres a whole pile of books and records of all sorts kept mostly by the Nephites.
16. These records been passed down from one generation to the next, even til they fell into sin and got hunted down, murdered, and scattered all over the earth, mixin in with the Lamanites till they weren't known as Nephites no more, turnin wicked and wild.
17. Now back to my tale; what I'm sayin happened after a whole lotta fuss, disturbances, wars, and disagreements among them Nephites.
18. The forty-sixth year of them judges wrapped up;
19. And it just so happened, that in the forty-seventh year, the land was still filled with argument, and it lingered on into the forty-eighth year.
20. But Helaman, he sure kept that judgment seat filled with fairness and justice; he was faithful bout keepin Gods laws and did what was right in His eyes, followin in his fathers footsteps makin life work for 'im.
21. He had two sons; the oldest he named Nephi, and the youngest was called Lehi, and they were raisin up to serve the Lord.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

22. By the time they got to the latter end of the forty-eighth year, those wars and arguments started to simmer down a bit among the Nephites.

23. Now in the forty-ninth year of judges, the land found some peace, cept for them sneaky secret groups Gadianton the robber set up in the more settled areas, they were hidin from the ones runnin' the government, so they werent wiped out.

24. That same year, the church was just doin so well, folks by the thousands was joinin up and gettin baptized for repentance.

25. The church was boomn, and the blessings they got had even the high priests and teachers taken aback.

26. The Lords work was movin right along, gatherin' plenty of folks into His church, even tens of thousands.

27. So ysee, the Lords mighty merciful to all wholl call on His name with a genuine heart.

28. Yup, the gate to heavens wide open for anyone whos willin to believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

29. Anyone can grab ahold of the word of God, powerful enough to cut right through all the devil's tricks and lead a fella down the narrow path across that miserable gulf meant for the wicked

30. To land their souls, yes, their eternal souls, right there with God in heaven, sittin with Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and all the holy fathers, never to leave again.

31. And in that year, folks was just celebratin all over Zarahemla and the parts around it, in every bit of land the Nephites held.

32. It turned out, there was peace and real joy in what was left of the forty-ninth year; and the fiftieth year of judges brought even more peace and good cheer.

33. Then in the fifty-first year of judges, there was peace again, but pride started creepin' into the church not Gods church, but in the hearts of the folks claimin to be part of it

34. And they got all puffed up with pride, even persecutin a lot of their own brothers. Now that was a real mess, causin' the humble folks to face a heap of troubles and trials.

35. Still, they prayed and fasted a lot, growin stronger in their humility and faith in Christ, fillin their souls with joy and comfort, purifyin their hearts cause they turned 'em over to God.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

36. That fifty-second year wrapped up in peace too, cept for all that pride fillin the hearts of the people; their riches and prosperity just kept growing on em day by day.

37. Then in the fifty-third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman passed away, and his oldest son Nephi took over. He filled that judgment seat fair and square, keptin Gods commandments and walkin in his daddy's ways.

### **Helaman Chapter 4**

1. Well, let me tell ya, in the fifty-fourth year, things got all kinds of messy in the church, and folks were squabblin like cats in a sack, causing a heap of bloodshed.

2. So, the troublemakers got taken out and kicked outta the land, and they made their way to the king of the Lamanites.

3. Next thing ya know, they were tryin their darndest to rile up the Lamanites to go to war against the Nephites; but shoot, the Lamanites were so scared they wouldnt even listen to those dissenters.

4. Then in the fifty-sixth year, those dissenters went up to the Lamanites, and managed to get those folks all riled up against the Nephites; they spent the whole year gearin up for a fight.

5. In the fifty-seventh year, they came at the Nephites ready for battle, and boy, did all hell break loose; come fifty-eight, they took over the land of Zarahemla, and all the surrounding areas, all the way to Bountiful.

6. Well, the Nephites and Moronihahs folks got pushed right back into Bountiful;

7. And there they set up defenses against the Lamanites, stretchin from the west sea to the east; it was a good day's walk for a Nephite, on that line they fortified to guard their northern territory.

8. So it was that them dissenters from the Nephites, with a big ol army of Lamanites, took over just about all the Nephite territory down south. And all this went down in the fifty-eighth and ninth years of the judges' rule.

9. Then in the sixtieth year of the judges reign, Moronihah and his armies managed to take back a bunch of land; yep, they got back several towns that had been snatched up by the Lamanites.

10. And it came to be in the sixty-first year, they even managed to get back half of everything they lost.

11. Now, all this mighty loss for the Nephites, and the big ol bloodbath among em, wouldnt have happened if

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

it werent for their own wicked ways and all that foul stuff they was up to; yep, it was even among those who claimed to be part of Gods church.

12. And it was their pride, their excessive riches that got em, and their mistreating the poor folks, holdin back food from the hungry, clothes from the needy, slappin their humble brothers, makin fun of whats holy, denyin prophecy and revelation, murkin, stealin, lyin, cheating, and all that quarrellin', eventually skedaddlin off to Nephi, rubbin shoulders with the Lamanites

13. And cause of all that wickedness and boastin about their own strength, they was left to fend for themselves; so they didnt thrive but got beat down, driven away by the Lamanites, losin nearly all their land.

14. But, lo and behold, Moronihah preached a whole mess of things to the folks cause of their wrongness, and so did Nephi and Lehi, sons of Helaman, preachin and prophesying about their misdeeds and the consequences ifn they didnt turn their ways around.

15. Well, it finally happened that they turned back, and as they did, they started to prosper again.

16. See, when Moronihah noticed their repentance, he took a chance and led em around from place to place, city to city, til they had got back half of their stuff and their lands.

17. And that wrapped up the sixty-first year of the judges reign.

18. Then in the sixty-second year, Moronihah couldnt snag any more land from the Lamanites.

19. So, they gave up on claimin the rest of their territory, cause the Lamanites were just too dang many, makin it impossible for the Nephites to gain any more ground; so Moronihah focused all his efforts on holdin onto what he already had.

20. And it came to pass, with so many Lamanites around, the Nephites were in sheer panic, worryin theyd get overrun, trampled, killed off, and wiped out.

21. Yeah, they started to remember the prophecies of Alma and the words of Mosiah; they realized they had been so stiff-necked, all the while throwin' God's commandments aside;

22. They saw how theyd twisted and stomped on the laws Mosiah brought from the Lord; realized their laws had turned all corrupt and they was just as wicked as the Lamanites.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

23. And cause of their wrongdoings, the church started to fade; they began doubtin the spirit of prophecy and revelation, and Gods judgment was right in their faces.

24. They noticed they had grown weak, just like their Lamanite relatives, and the Lords Spirit didnt hang around no more; yep, it had up and left cause the Spirit aint livin in no unholy places

25. So, the Lord stopped protectin em by His mighty power, cause they had fallen into doubt and awful wickedness; and they could see that the Lamanites outnumbered them something fierce, and if they didnt cling to the Lord their God, they were bound to meet their end.

26. For they saw that the Lamanite strength matched their own, man to man. And thats how they found themselves in this mess; yep, they had gotten weak real quick, all cause of their own wrongdoings, over just a handful of years.

### **Helaman Chapter 5**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, in this year, ol Nephi passed the judgment seat over to a fella by the name of Cezoram.

2. Now, ya see, their laws and gubbment were set up by the folks say-so, but the ones who picked the bad stuff outnumbered them good folks, so things was headed for a mess, 'cause the laws got all twisted and bent outta shape.

3. Ill tell ya what, they was a real stiff-necked bunch, couldn't follow no law nor justice, less it was takin 'em straight to trouble.

4. So it happened that Nephi was just plain tired of all their wicked ways; he gave up that judgment seat and decided he was gonna spend the rest of his days preachin the good word of God, and his brother Lehi, he joined in too.

5. They remembered what their daddy Helaman told em, and this is what he laid down:

6. Hey, boys, I really want yall to keep Gods commandments, and Id like for ya to share these words with the folks. Look here, Ive given ya the names of our first folks who came outta Jerusalem, and I did that so when yall hear your names, ya remember 'em; and when ya think of 'em, youll remember their good deeds.

7. So, listen up, my sons, I want yall to do whats good, so folksll say nice things about ya and write em down,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

just like em good ones before you.

8. And now, boys, I got a little more I wanna ask of ya; this aint about showin off, but about buildin up a treasure in heaven, somethin that lasts forever; yeah, Im talkin about that sweet gift of eternal life that we reckon was handed down from our ancestors.

9. Oh, dont you forget, my boys, what King Benjamin told his people; remember, there aint no other way for folks to be saved 'cept through the blood of Jesus Christ, whos comin to redeem us all.

10. And dont forget what Amulek told Zeezrom in Ammonihah; he said the Lords comin to save His people, but not in their sins, but from their sins.

11. Hes got the power from the Father to save em from their sins if they just repent; thats why Hes sendin His angels to tell folks what it takes to get the Redeemers power, leadin em to salvation.

12. And now, my sons, remember that its on the rock of our Redeemer, Christ, the Son of God, that yall gotta build your lives; 'cause when the devil sends his wild winds, and all that chaos, it wont drag you down to the depths of misery, for yall are built on that solid rock, a sure foundation where if folks build, they cant fall.

13. Now it came to pass these are the words Helaman taught his boys; he told em tons, much aint even wrote down, and many that is written.

14. And they did remember all that he said; so they got out there, keepin Gods commandments, spreadin the good word all round Nephi, startin from the city Bountiful;

15. Then they headed from there to Gid, from Gid to Mulek;

16. And from city to city, till they covered all the Nephites down south; and then into Zarahemla among the Lamanites.

17. And it happened that they preached real powerfully, confusin a heap of those who had turned away from the Nephites, 'cause they came forward, owned up to their wrongs, and got baptized for repentance, rushin back to the Nephites to fix what they had messed up.

18. And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi preached to the Lamanites with such strength and authority, 'cause they were givin' the power to speak and also what to say

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

19. So they spoke in a way that left the Lamanites all stunned, and it convinced so many, that eight thousand of em in Zarahemla and around got baptized for repentance, and turned away from their folks bad traditions.

20. And they decided to head back to the land of Nephi.

21. But then, wouldnt ya know it, they got caught by an army of Lamanites and tossed into prison, right in the same place Ammon and the boys got thrown in Limhis time.

22. After bein locked up for a good spell without no food, the guards came to take em out to kill em.

23. But Nephi and Lehi were surrounded like they was in a fire, so scared the guards wouldn't even touch em for fear theyd get burned. Still, Nephi and Lehi wasnt burned; it was like they was standin in the fire and didnt get hurt at all!

24. When those guards saw they was all wrapped up in fire and it didnt even singe em, it gave 'em a boost of bravery.

25. Cause the Lamanites stood back, they couldnt bring themselves to touch em, just stood there dumbfounded.

26. Then Nephi and Lehi stepped out and said to em: Dont be scared, its God showin yall this amazin thing, lettin' ya know you cant lay a hand on us.

27. And right after they said that, the ground shook hard, and the prison walls shook like they was about to fall right down; but, miraculously, they didnt.

28. Inside that prison was Lamanites and Nephites who had turned away from the path.

29. Then it came to pass, a cloud of darkness fell over em, and a dreadful fear hit 'em hard.

30. And it was then a voice come boomin' like it was just above that dark cloud, sayin: Repent, repent, and dont seek to destroy my servants I sent to bring ya good news.

31. Well, when they heard that voice, and saw it werent thunderous, nor loud and chaotic, but a gentle whisper that cut straight to the soul

32. And even with that soft voice, the earth shook like crazy, and the prison walls rattled again, like they was fixin to fall, and that darkness cloud stayed put

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

33. And then, the voice came again, sayin: Repent, repent, cause the kingdom of heavens at hand; and stop trying to harm my servants. And once again, the ground shook, and the walls trembled.

34. And the third time, that voice came back, sayin marvelous words that a man cant put into talk, and the walls shook again, and the earth trembled like it was about to break apart.

35. The Lamanites couldnt run away cause of that darkness cloud hangin' over em; and they couldnt move 'cause of the fear that gripped em.

36. Now there was one fella among em, a Nephite by birth, who had once been with Gods church but walked away.

37. But then he turned around and saw through that darkness cloud the faces of Nephi and Lehi; their faces was shining bright, like angels. And he saw they was looking up to heaven, as if talkin' or speakin' to someone up there.

38. Then this fella yelled out to the crowd to turn and look. And sure enough, there was power in em that they did look, and behold, they saw Nephi and Lehis faces.

39. They asked him: Whats all this mean, and who are those fellas talking with?

40. Well, this mans name was Aminadab. And he told em: Theys talkin with Gods angels.

41. Then the Lamanites was like, What in the world we gotta do to get this darkness cloud off us?

42. Aminadab said, You gotta repent and cry out to the voice until ya got faith in Christ, the one Alma, Amulek, and Zeezrom told ya about; and when yall do that, the dark cloudll lift.

43. They all began to holler out to the voice that shook the ground; yeah, they kept on until that dark cloud was gone.

44. And it came to pass that they looked round, seein that the cloud had lifted, and they found they was surrounded, every last soul, by a pillar of fire.

45. And there stood Nephi and Lehi right in the middle; they was surrounded like they was in a blazin' fire, but it didnt harm em, nor did it touch the prison walls; they was filled with joy that was too great for words.

46. And just then, the Holy Spirit of God came down from heaven and filled their hearts up like they was on

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

fire, and they started spoutin out marvelous things.

47. Then a sweet voice came to em, real soft, sayin:

48. Peace, peace be unto ya, cause of your faith in my Beloved Son, whos been here since the world began.

49. Now, when they heard that they looked up to see where that voice was comin from, and lo and behold, they saw the heavens open, and angels comin down to help em.

50. About three hundred folks saw and heard all this; they were told to go out and not be amazed, and to have no doubt.

51. Well, they went out and started ministerin to the folks, shoutin out all the things theyd seen and heard, so much so that most of the Lamanites got convinced cause of all the wonders they witnessed.

52. And those who got convinced laid down their weapons of war, leavin behind all that hatred and their folks old ways.

53. And it came to pass that they gave the Nephites their lands back.

### **Helaman Chapter 6**

1. Well, it happened that when the sixty-second year of the judges reign wrapped up, all this here went down, and most of the Lamanites turned out to be pretty righteous folks, 'specially since their goodness outshone the Nephites, what with their steadfastness and all that faith stuff.

2. Now, lemme tell ya, there sure were a whole lotta Nephites whod gone and got their hearts all hardened up, bein stubborn and downright wicked, shun the good word of God and all that preachin and prophecy floatin 'round 'em.

3. But, bless your heart, the church folks found a whole heap of joy over the Lamanites findin' the light, yep, 'cause of that church of God that had sprung up among em. They were all about that fellowship, rejoicin together, and havin a grand ol time.

4. And then it came to be that a whole passel of Lamanites came down into the land of Zarahemla, spillin the beans to the Nephites 'bout how they turned their lives around, and tellin em to have some faith and repent.

5. Shonuff, a whole bunch of em preached with a whole lotta power and authority, and they helped many of

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the Nephites sink down into real humility, makin em humble followers of God and the Lamb.

6. Then it happened that a bunch of Lamanites headed north; Nephi and Lehi joined 'em too, preachin' to the folks up there. And thats how the sixty-third year came to a close.

7. And lo and behold, there was peace stretched across the land, so much so that the Nephites could wander wherever their hearts desired, whether it was hangin with Nephites or Lamanites.

8. They sure did; the Lamanites could go wherever too, be it with their own or mixin with the Nephites; they had free reign to trade and sell, doin whatever they fancied.

9. Well, I reckon they got right rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; they piled up a whole lotta gold, silver, and all kinds of shiny metals, both down south and up north.

10. Now, the land down south was called Lehi, and the land up north was known as Mulek, named after Zedekiah's boy; the Lord sent Mulek up north and Lehi down south.

11. And Ill be, every kind of gold you could imagine was in both places, along with silver and all sorts of precious ore; they even had folks workin the ore and polishin it up; they surely got wealthy like that.

12. They grew grains like nobodys business, both up north and down south; they thrived real good in both places, multiplyin and gettin stronger, raisin plenty of flocks and herds, yessiree, many a fat calf too.

13. Just look at their gals, toilin and spinnin, makin fine cloth, and all kinds of fabric, to cover up their nakedness. And thats how the sixty-fourth year rolled by in peace.

14. Then in the sixty-fifth year, they also basked in joy and peace, 'cause there was a whole lotta preachin and prophecies 'bout things to come. And thats how the sixty-fifth year slipped on by.

15. And it came to pass that in the sixty-sixth year of the judges reign, poor ol Cezoram got himself murdered by an unknown scoundrel while sittin on his judge seat. And wouldnt you know it, that same year his boy, whod been put in charge by the people, got himself murdered too. And just like that, the sixty-sixth year came to an end.

16. Then kickin' off the sixty-seventh year, folks started gettin wicked again, hotter than a goat on a griddle.

17. You see, the Lord had blessed 'em for so long with worldly riches that they didnt get riled up for war or

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

blood; so they started fixin' their hearts on their gold; they was lookin' to get ahead of each other; next thing ya know, they was commitin secret murders, plunderin', and thievin' to get what they wanted.

18. And now, lookey here, these no-good murderers and thieves ran in a pack formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. Now it just so happened that there were plenty of 'em, even among the Nephites, who were in Gadiantons gang. But they were more common among the wicked Lamanites. And folks started callin 'em Gadiantons robbers and murderers.

19. Yep, they were the ones that done in that chief judge Cezoram and his boy while they were sittin' in judgment; and well, they couldnt be found.

20. Then it came to pass that when the Lamanites figured out there were robbers in their midst, they got downright sad; they did everything in their might to wipe 'em off the face of the earth.

21. But you know what? Satan stirred up the Nephites' hearts so much that they went and teamed up with them robbers, sealin' their deals and oaths, sayin' theyd look out for each other when things got tough, guaranteein they wouldnt pay for their sins and crimes.

22. And these folks had their signs, you know, them secret signs and secret words, just to spot a brother in the gang; that way, whatever bad stuff his brother did, he wouldnt get hurt by him or anyone in their crew who took that same oath.

23. So that meant they could murder, thiefe, and carry on with all kinds of sins, goin against the laws of the land and God.

24. And whoever in their band spilled the beans about their wrongdoings would be tried not by the laws of the land but by their own wicked laws, made up by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

25. Let me tell ya, Alma sure gave a warning to his boy not to let them secret oaths and covenants see the light of day, or theyd lead folks to ruin.

26. Now, I gotta tell ya, them secret oaths and covenants didnt come from the records given to Helaman. No, siree, they was put right into Gadiantons heart by that same rascal who led our folks to taste that forbidden fruit

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

27. You got it, that same one who pulled tricks with Cain, whisperin that if he offed his brother Abel, nobody would be the wiser. And hes been workin with Cain and his buddies ever since.

28. And hes also the one who got folks to build a tower tall enough to reach heaven. That same fella led the people from that tower into this land, spreadin darkness and all kinds of evils til he dragged 'em down to total ruin, and an everlasting hell.

29. Yup, its that same character who nudged Gadianton to keep the darkness rollin and the secret murderin alive; hes been at it from the get-go, all the way down to now.

30. And can you believe it? Hes the culprit behind all sin. Hes out there doin his dark deeds and secret murderin, handin down plots, oaths, and plans of wickedness from one generation to the next, as long as he can lay claim to folks' hearts.

31. And now check this out, he really dug in deep with the Nephites hearts; so much so, they got exceedingly wicked; most of 'em tossed righteousness aside, trampin on Gods commandments, followin their own paths, and buildin themselves idols made of gold and silver.

32. And it came to pass that all these wicked ways got piled on top of 'em in just a few years, to where most of it hit 'em in the sixty-seventh year of them judges over the Nephites.

33. They kept growin' in their bad ways in the sixty-eighth year too, fillin the righteous folks with great gloom and sadness.

34. So, yall see, the Nephites started slippin into disbelief, growin in their wicked ways and habits, while the Lamanites blossomed in knowin their God; yep, they began keepin His rules and commands, walkin in truth and honesty before Him.

35. Its clearer than mud that the Spirit of the Lord started pullin away from the Nephites, what with their evil ways and hard hearts.

36. And so we see that the Lord began to shower His Spirit on the Lamanites, 'cause they were open and ready to believe in His words.

37. Sure enough, the Lamanites went huntin for Gadiantons robbers; they took to preachin the word of God



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

- among those who were still wicked, and that whole gang of robbers got wiped out from among the Lamanites.
38. On the flip side, the Nephites went and lifted them up, supportin that wicked bunch, startin with the worst of 'em, until they spread out all over Nephite land, gettin the majority of the righteous to buy into their ways, enjoyin the perks of their wickedness, and joinin in on their secret murders and schemes.
39. So they took over the whole government, trampin on the meek and poor folks, and turnin their backs on the humble followers of God.
40. And thus we see they found themselves in a pretty dire state, ripenin' for total destruction.
41. And so it came to pass that this is how the sixty-eighth year of the judges reign over the Nephites came to a close.
- ### **Helaman Chapter 7**
1. Well now, lemme tell ya, in the sixty-ninth year of them judges runnin' the Nephites, Nephi, Helaman's boy, come back down to Zarahemla from up north.
2. He'd been out preachin' to them folks up north, givin' 'em the good word and prophesyin' all sorts of things.
3. But they sure did turn him away, so much so that he just couldnt stick aroundhad to head back to where he was born.
4. And when he laid eyes on how downright wicked the people was, with them Gadianon robbers sittin in the judgment seatsusurpin the good Lords power and authority, tossin Gods commandments aside and bein all sorts of wronghe just couldnt believe it.
5. Them righteous folks were bein condemned for bein good, while the guilty ones got off scot-free 'cause they was rich. And on top of that, they were the ones runnin the government, doin what they pleased just to fill their pockets and hold on to their glory, makin' it easier to cheat and steal.
6. This here big ol iniquity crept up on the Nephites in no time, and when Nephi caught wind of it, his heart was bustin with sorrow. He couldnt help but shout out in his pain.
7. Oh, how I wish I coulda lived back when my daddy Nephi first hightailed it outta Jerusalem, so I coulda shared in the joys of the promised land. Back then, them folks was easy to talk to, always stickin' to Gods

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

commandments, and didnt hardly stray into wickedness at all. They was quick to listen to the Lords words.

8. If only I'd been around back then, my heart wouldve danced with the righteousness of my kinfolk.

9. But here I am, stuck in these days, and my hearts full of sorrow 'cause of all the wickedness my people are up to.

10. And lo and behold, Nephi was up on a tower in his garden, right by the main road that led to the market in Zarahemla. He was bent low on that tower, near the garden gate, prayin his heart out to God.

11. Well, a few fellas passed by and saw him pourin out his soul up there, and they ran off to tell others what they seen, gatherin a whole crowd tryin to understand why ole Nephi was so torn up over the wickedness all around.

12. When Nephi stood up, he looked and saw all them folks gathered 'round.

13. And he opened his mouth and asked, Whats all this fuss about? Yall come together just so I can lay out your wrongdoings?

14. Yep, 'cause I climbed up here on my tower just to spill my heart to God about the heavy sorrow I feel 'cause of your wicked ways!

15. Yall saw me mournin' and wondered about it; and you dang right you ought to wonder, 'cause its a shame how the devil's got such a tight grip on your hearts.

16. How on earth could yall let yourself be tempted by the one who wants to drag your souls down to endless misery and sorrow?

17. Oh, yall need to repent, repent! Why yall wanna die? Turn back to your Lord and God. Whys He turned His back on ya?

18. Its 'cause yall got hearts of stone; you wont listen to the good shepherd. Youve made Him mad with your ways.

19. And listen here, if yall dont gather together to repent, Hes gonna scatter ya like leaves in the wind, and youll be just food for dogs and beasts out there.

20. How could you forget your God right after He saved ya?

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. But I reckon its all about chasin after gold and silver, wanna be praised by folks. You got your hearts set on riches and all the flashy nonsense of this world, which makes ya murder, plunder, steal, and bear false witness against your neighbors, dabblin' in all sorts of evil.

22. And for all that, woe is comin on yall unless ya turn around. If you dont, this great city, along with all the other towns 'round here that we call home, is gonna be snatched away from ya; the Lord aint gonna give you the strength to stand against your enemies like He used to.

23. For the Lord done said: I ain't gonna show my strength to no wicked folks, not one over another, 'cept for those who repent and listen to my word. So, yall wanna pay attention, 'cause it'll be better for the Lamanites than for ya if you dont turn away from your sins.

24. 'Cause they aint done nothin' wrong against the great knowledge youve had; the Lord will be merciful to 'em, givin them long lives and lots of kin, while you folks risk bein wiped out if ya dont change your ways.

25. Woe to you for that great abomination thats come among you; youve joined yourselves up with that secret gang kickstarted by Gadianton!

26. Woe's comin' for you 'cause of that pride that snuck into your hearts, puffin you up 'way past whats good just 'cause of your big ol piles of riches!

27. Woe to you for all your wickedness and sins!

28. And if you dont repent, youll be done for, and I ain't just whistlin Dixie; your lands will be taken from ya, and youll be wiped off the face of the earth.

29. Now I ain't sayin all this just 'cause I woke up thinkin it; it ain't from me that I know this stuffit's the Lord God who showed me the truth of it all, and I stand here testifying that its real.

## **Helaman Chapter 8**

1. Well, it sure did happen that when Nephi finished spoutin off his words, there was a bunch of fellas who were judges, part of that secret gang called Gadianton, and they was fit to be tied. They hollered at the folks, sayin: Why aint yall grabbin this man and draggin him out here, so he can be judged for whatever trouble hes caused?

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. Whats the deal with this fella, and why yall lettin him talk bad about us and our laws?
3. Well, reckon Nephi was layin it out straight to em about how shady their laws were; shoot, he gabbed on about a heap of things that just cant be scribbled down, and nothin he said went against Gods commandments.
4. Them judges got all riled up cause he was bein real frank about their sneaky, dark deeds; but they didnt dare lay a hand on him, cause they were scared the folks would turn on them.
5. So they hollered to the crowd, sayin: Why yall lettin this man talk smack about us? Hes sayin this whole lot of people gon be doomed, and our good towns are gonna be taken from us, leavin us with nowhere to go.
6. Now we all know that aint happenin, cause were powerful and our towns are mighty fine, so aint no way our enemies can get the upper hand.
7. So, they got the folks all stirred up, tryin to turn em against Nephi, causin all sorts of fuss; some folks were shoutin: Leave that man be, hes a good soul, and what hes sayin is likely to come true if we dont straighten up;
8. Yeah, all the judgments hes warned us about are gonna come down on us, cause we know hes speakin truth about our wicked ways. And he knows just as well every little thing thats gonna happen to us, just like he knows our messes;
9. Yup, and if he wasnt a prophet, he wouldnt be able to talk about all this.
10. So it turned out that the folks gunnin for Nephi didnt have the guts to lay hands on him cause they were scared, so he started talkin to em again, seein he had some folks on his side, makin the rest of em uneasy.
11. So he felt pushed to say more to em: Listen up, my brothers, ain't yall ever heard that God gave a man, Moses, the power to smack those waters of the Red Sea, and they parted like curtains, lettin the Israelites, our forefathers, walk through on dry ground while the water swallowed up the Egyptians?
12. Now, if God could hand that kinda power to Moses, why in tarnation are yall fussin and sayin He ain't given me no power to know whats comin for yall if you dont turn back around?
13. But look here, yall aint just denyin what Im sayin, youre rejectin all the words our forefathers spoke too, even what Moses had to say, cause he had some serious power, speakin about the Messiah comin.
14. Didnt he say the Son of God was gonna come? And just like he lifted up that bronze serpent in the desert,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

so shall the one who comes be lifted up too.

15. And just like folks who looked at that serpent lived, so too will folks who look on the Son of God with faith, having a humble spirit, find life everlasting.

16. Now reckon Moses didnt just testify about these things, but so did all them holy prophets, from his time back to Abrahams days.

17. Yeah, and Abraham saw him comin and was filled with joy and excitement.

18. Now listen, Im tellin yall, Abraham not only knew all this, there were plenty before him who were called by Gods order; reckon they was even after the order of His Son; and its to show the people that redemption would come long before He arrived, thousands of years ahead.

19. Now, yall oughta know, from the days of Abraham, theres been a whole mess of prophets out there testifying about all this; that brave old prophet Zenos testified loud and proud, and guess what? Got himself killed for it.

20. And dont forget about Zenock, Ezias, Isaiah, and Jeremiah (the one who called out the destruction of Jerusalem), and we all know Jerusalem went down just like Jeremiah said. So why wouldnt the Son of God come just like he prophesied?

21. Now are yall gonna argue that Jerusalem wasnt destroyed? Are ya gonna tell me the sons of Zedekiah didnt meet their end, cept for Mulek? Do ya not see that Zedekiahs seed is with us, and they were run outta Jerusalem? But hold on just a minute

22. Our daddy Lehi was chased outta Jerusalem cause he was talkin about all this. Nephi was sayin it too, along with nearly all our ancestors, even to this day; yep, theyve been shoutin about Christ comin and lookin forward, rejoicin in the day thats ahead.

23. And let me tell ya, Hes God, and Hes among em, showin himself to em, and they got redeemed by Him; and they gave Him glory cause of whats comin.

24. Now, since yall know all this and cant deny it unless youre tellin a flat-out lie, well, I reckon in that youve sinned, cause youve turned your backs on all these facts, despite all the proof you been shown; even got

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

witnessin from up high and down here on Earth, showin that its all true.

25. But lo and behold, youve turned away from the truth and rebelled against your holy God; and even right now, instead of stockin up treasures in heaven where no corruption can touch em, youre stackin up wrath for the day of judgment.

26. Yep, at this very moment youre lettin your sins pile up, cause of your murders, fornication, and wickedness, just waitin for your everlasting destruction; and if ya dont turn your ways, its comin for ya real soon.

27. Yeah, its knockin at your door now; you best head on over to that judgment seat and have a look; your judge has been done murdered, layin in a pool of his own blood, and it was his brother what killed him, tryin to claim that judgment seat.

28. And you better believe theyre both in cahoots with your secret gang, led by Gadianon and that evil one out to ruin the souls of men.

### **Helaman Chapter 9**

1. Well now, it was like this: when Nephi got done sayin his piece, a few fellas in the crowd took off runnin to the judgment-seat; there were five of em, and they were chattin away as they made their way.

2. Well, now were gonna find out for sure if this fella is a prophet and if God sent him to tell us all these wonders. We ain't buyin it yet; we didnt think he was a prophet. But if what he said bout the chief judge bein dead turns out to be true, then well reckon that the other stuff he said might hold water too.

3. So they ran hard, made it to the judgment-seat, and lo and behold, the chief judge was down on the ground, bleedin' like a stuck pig.

4. When they saw that sight, good gracious, they were shocked outta their boots, and just fell right down on the ground; they hadn't believed a word Nephi had said bout the chief judge before this.

5. But as soon as they laid eyes on it, their belief kicked in, and they were scared stiff thinkin bout all them judgments Nephi mentioned might just come down on the folks, so they was shakin' and hit the dirt.

6. Now, soon as the judge got himself murderedstabbed by his own brother, and that brother skedaddled off all

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

sneaky-like, and the helpers ran back yellin murder;

7. And lo, the crowd gathered round the judgment-seat, and to their total surprise, they saw those five fellas who had gone down earlier.

8. But the folks didnt have a clue bout the big group that had gathered at Nephi's garden; so they started talkin amongst themselves, sayin, These boys right here are the ones who done killed the judge, and God done knocked em down so they couldnt run away from us.

9. They got ahold of those fellas, tied em up, and tossed em in jail. And word spread like wildfire that the judge was gone and the murderers was locked up tight.

10. Next day, the folks showed up to mourn and shake it off at the burial of their chief judge, that great man whod been slain.

11. And those judges whod been at Nephis garden, the ones who heard him out, they showed up too for the buryin.

12. So then they started askin the crowd, Wheres the five that were sent to check if the chief judge was dead? And the people answered, We got no idea where yall reckon theyve run off to, but we got five fellas right there who done the deed, and we locked em up.

13. Aight, so the judges wanted to see em brought in; they was fetched, and guess what? Yep, it was them five whod gone. So the judges asked em bout what happened, and they spilled the beans sayin:

14. We ran right on over to the judgment-seat, and when we saw everything just like Nephi said, we was dumbfounded, fell down on the ground; and when we pulled ourselves back together, they tossed us in the clink.

15. Now, bout that murder, we cant say who done it; all we know is we came runnin just like y'all wanted, and behold, he was dead, just like Nephi said.

16. Then them judges explained it all to the folks and started hollerin against Nephi, sayin, We know hes in cahoots with someone to off the judge, and then he could come tell us, tryin to pull us into his faith, tryin to make himself out to be some big shot, chosen by God and a prophet.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

17. Now, wes a-gonna catch this fella, and hes gonna confess and spill the beans bout who really killed the judge.

18. Well, the five was let go on the day of the buryin. But they sure gave them judges a piece of their mind for all the talk theyd jabbered bout Nephi, takin em on one at a time and totally messin with their heads.

19. But somehow, they managed to grab Nephi, tie him up, and drag him before the crowd, startin to grill him from every angle tryin to trip him up, so they could pin the blame on him for death

20. Talkin to him like, Youre all in this together; whos the fella that done this murder? Now come clean, and own up the deed; heres some cash; well even let ya keep breathin if youll just spill the beans and own up to your buddy youre workin with.

21. But Nephi shot back, Yall are just plain foolish, blind as a bat and hard-headed! Do ya have any idea how long the Lords gonna put up with your sinning ways?

22. Yall need to start cryin and feelin real sorry, cause yall got some serious trouble comin your way, less you turn your lives round.

23. You think Im conspirin with someone to have Seezoram, our chief judge, killed? Well, lemme tell you, Im sayin this to ya cause I testified to you so youd know whats really goin on; its just proof that I see the wickedness and all the nasty stuff happenin among ya.

24. And cause I've done that, you reckon Im in cahoots with someone to do this? Yep, cause I showed yall a sign, youre furious, tryin to take my life.

25. Now listen up, Im fixin to show yall another sign, lets see if youre still gonna want to hunt me down.

26. Heres the deal: Go on over to Seantum's house, the brother of Seezoram, and ask him

27. Did that slick talker Nephi, the so-called prophet, who keeps yappin bout all the bad stuff comin our way, did he partner up with you to murder Seezoram, your own brother?

28. And I bet hell say, Nope.

29. Then you ask him: Did you kill your brother?

30. Hell stand there all scared-like, not knowin what to say. And I betcha, hell act all shocked, but hell still say



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

hes innocent.

31. But yall need to check him over, cause youll find blood on the hem of his coat.

32. When you see that, just ask: Whered this blood come from? Dont we know its your brothers blood?

33. Then hell go pale, looking like hes seen a ghost.

34. Then you tell him: Cause of this fright and the paleness on your face, well, we know youre guilty.

35. Then hell get all scared again, and then hell confess, and wont deny no more that hes done the deed.

36. And then hell say, Look here, I, Nephi, aint got a clue bout none of this, cept what Gods told me. And then yall will know Im an honest man, sent by God.

37. So they took off and did just like Nephi told em. And wouldnt ya know it, what he said held true; cause he denied it just like he said, and then fessed up just like hed said he would.

38. And then they brought him out as proof he was the very one who committed the murder, so those five got to walk free, along with Nephi.

39. Now there were some Nephites who took to heart what Nephi said, and some others, who changed their minds cause of the fives testimony, since they found faith while sittin in the slammer.

40. And then there were folks in the crowd who said Nephi was a prophet.

41. And others was sayin, Well, hes gotta be a god cause if he wasnt, how could he know all this stuff? He done read our hearts and told us all manner of things; and even showed us who the real killer of our chief judge was.

## **Helaman Chapter 10**

1. Well, it so happened that there got to be a big ol' mess among the folks, to the point they split off in all sorts of directions, leavin' poor Nephi standin' there all by his lonesome right in the middle of 'em.

2. So Nephi shuffled on back to his own place, thinkin real hard bout all them things the Lord had shown him.

3. As he was sittin' there thinkin' feelin' mighty low 'bout the wickedness of the Nephites, all their sneaky deeds, the murderin', and plunderin', and just plain ol' sin all of a sudden, a voice came to him sayin':

4. "Bless your heart, Nephi, for all that you've done; I been watchin' ya work your tail off, spreadin' the word I

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

gave ya to this here people. And you ain't been scared of 'em, nor tryin to save your own neck, but you been searchin' for my will and keepin' my commandments."

5. "Now listen here, cause youve poured yourself into this with all you've got, I'm fixin' to bless ya forever; Ill make ya strong in your words and your deeds, in faith and your works; yep, even all things shall be done for you according to your word, since you wont go askin for nothin that ain't in line with my will."

6. "You listen real close, you're Nephi, and Im God. Im tellin ya right now in front of all my angels, you'll have power over this here people, and youll strike the earth with famine, disease, and destruction, 'cause of the wickedness in 'em."

7. "Heres the deal, I'm givin' ya power, so whatever you seal down here on earth, it'll be sealed up there in heaven; and whatever you loose down here, it will be loosed up there, and that way youll have power among the folks."

8. "And if you tell this temple to split in two, its gonna happen."

9. "And if you order this mountain to tumble down and be smooth, itll sure enough happen."

10. "And looky here, if you say Gods gonna smite this people, just wait and see, thats gonna come to pass."

11. "Now I'm tellin' you, go on and tell this people what the Lord God, the Almighty, says: If yall dont repent, you gonna be smitten till there ain't nothin' left."

12. And wouldnt ya know it, when the Lord said all this to Nephi, he just stopped in his tracks and didnt head home, but turned right back to the crowd that was scattered all over the land, startin' to tell em what the Lord had revealed about their destruction if they didnt repent.

13. Now despite that big ol miracle Nephi pulled off tellin' em bout the chief judge kickin' the bucket, they just wouldn't listen, hardenin their hearts against the Lord's words.

14. So Nephi went on and told em again what the Lord had to say, sayin': "You gotta repent, or else, the Lord says, youll be smitten till there's nothin' left."

15. Well, when Nephi finished tellin' em that, they still wouldnt soften up, and instead they reviled him and tried to grab him to throw him in the slammer.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

16. But looky here, the power of God was right there with him, and they couldn't lay a finger on him to haul him off, cause the Spirit took him and whisked him away from right in the middle of em.

17. And it went down that he just kept wanderin in the Spirit, from crowd to crowd, tellin the word of God, till he'd shared it with all of em or sent it out among every single soul.

18. And they just wouldnt listen to what he had to say; before long, there was a whole lotta fussin goin on, and they started fightin amongst themselves, even takin each other out with swords.

19. And thats how the seventy-first year of the judges over the Nephites wrapped up.

### **Helaman Chapter 11**

1. Well now, heres how it all played out in that seventy-second year of the judges reign, folks were arguin' so much that it kicked off wars all 'round in the land of Nephi.

2. And it was them sneaky robbers causin' all sorts of trouble and messin' things up real bad. That war went on the whole year long, and shoot, it was still goin' on in the seventy-third year.

3. So one fine day, Nephi hollered out to the Lord, sayin':

4. "Hey Lord, dont let these folks get wiped out by the sword! Instead, how 'bout a famine to make em remember you, their God, and maybe then theyll shape up and come back to ya."

5. And lo and behold, the Lord did just that, and there was a mighty famine spreadin across the land, hittin' all them Nephites hard. So come the seventy-fourth year, the famine rolled on, and folks stopped bein' killed by swords but got hurtin real bad from the lack of food.

6. Now that destruction kept rollin' through the seventy-fifth year. The ground was bone dry, not a speck of grain comin' up when it was time for harvestin, even the Lamanites were takin' hits, and thousands of 'em were goin under in the worst parts of the land.

7. Then folks realized they was on the brink of starvin', and they started rememberin' their God again; them words from Nephi started comin back to em.

8. So they started plead in with their chief judges and leaders to reach out to Nephi: Hey, we know youre a man of God, so please, pray to our Lord to lift this famine off us, or else all them dire warnings youve been

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

givin us might just come true.

9. And sure enough, those judges called on Nephi just like they wanted. Well, when Nephi saw everybody givin in and humblin' themselves wearin' sackcloth, he cried out to the Lord again, sayin':

10. Lord, lookie here, this crowds repentin; theyve run off them Gadianton robbers so much theyve disappeared, and theyve hid their sneaky plans in the dirt.

11. Now, Lord, 'cause of their humbleness, will ya cool down your anger and let go of destroyin' them wicked men you done already taken care of?

12. Lord, can ya ease up your anger, the fire of it, and let that famine lift from this land?

13. Lord, do listen to me, and make it so like I asked, send down rain on this dry ground so it gives back its fruits, and let us have our grain when its supposed to.

14. Lord, you listened when I asked for a famine to stop the sword's pestilence; I know youll listen again 'cause you promised me: if these folks shape up, you'll keep 'em safe.

15. Yep, Lord, you see theyre turnin back cause of that famine and all the trouble that fell on em.

16. Now, Lord, can ya let go of your anger and give em another chance to see if theyll serve ya? If thats the case, Lord, you can bless em just like you said you would.

17. And so it happened that in the seventy-sixth year, the Lord turned his anger away from the people and caused it to rain, so much that the land brought forth its fruits in season. And sure enough, it came up with grain at the right time too.

18. And the folks were shoutin and givin glory to God, the whole land lit up with joy, and they stopped tryin to bring harm to Nephi; instead, they held him in high esteem as a great prophet, a man of God, with a whole heap of power givin to him from above.

19. And let me tell ya, Lehi, his brother, wasnt laggin' behind none when it came to doin right by God.

20. So it was that the Nephites started prosperin again, fixin up their run-down spots, multiplyin and spreadin out until they covered every bit of land, from the west sea to the east sea, north and south.

21. Come the end of that seventy-sixth year, they rolled right on into peace. Then the seventy-seventh year

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

kicked off peaceful too; the church spread far and wide, with a big chunk of the people, both Nephites and Lamanites, joinin in, enjoyin a heap of peace; and thats how the seventy-seventh year wrapped up.

22. And they had peace again in the seventy-eighth year, 'cept for a few disagreements 'bout some points of doctrine the prophets passed down.

23. But then, in the seventy-ninth year, arguments flared back up. However, Nephi, Lehi, and their brethren, who had a good grasp on the right doctrine and were gettin' daily revelations, preached to the folks, and by that same year, they managed to put an end to that strife.

24. Then, in the eightieth year of judges runnin things over Nephis folks, some of them dissidents who once turned from Nephi and signed up with the Lamanites stirred up a ruckus, rallyin' the real Lamanites to go to war against their own kin.

25. They started a whole mess of murder and plunderin, then scampered back up into the mountains and out into the wilderness, hidin out so folks couldnt catch em, all the while swellin their ranks with more dissidents comin to join their cause.

26. So, over time, in just a few years, they formed a massive band of robbers, huntin down all them Gadianton schemes, and they straight up became Gadianton robbers themselves.

27. Well, lemme tell ya, these robbers made quite a ruckus, causin heaps of destruction among Nephites and Lamanites alike.

28. It became clear they had to stop this destructive madness; so they sent a strong army into the wilderness and up in the mountains to hunt down this band of robbers and wipe 'em out.

29. But wouldnt ya know, even that year, they got driven back to their own lands. And thats how the eightieth year of the judges came to an end over Nephis lot.

30. As the eighty-first year started rollin, they went back at 'em again, takin out a whole mess of em, but they also took a few hits themselves.

31. They had to retreat once more outta the wilderness and back to their own lands 'cause the robbers put up a good fight, and there were just too many of em runnin around in the mountains and the wild.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

32. And so this year ended, but the robbers kept growin' and gettin stronger, showin no fear to go up against the armies of Nephites and Lamanites alike, creatin a heap of dread for folks all across the land.

33. Yessiree, they raided all over the place, bringin about all sorts of destruction; killin many and cartin' off others, especially women and children, into the wilderness.

34. Now this big ol' mess came upon the people 'cause of their wrongdoings, and it shook em awake to remember the Lord their God.

35. And thats how the eighty-first year of them judges wrapped up.

36. Then in the eighty-second year, they started slippin back, forgettin their Lord again. By the eighty-third year, they were growin' strong in their wicked ways. And in the eighty-fourth year, they just wouldnt shape up.

37. When the eighty-fifth year rolled around, they got prouder and prouder in their wrongdoing, ridin' that slippery slope right back to destruction again.

38. And thats how the eighty-fifth year came to a close.

## **Helaman Chapter 12**

1. Folks sure are wobbly and foolish as a three-legged cow and quick to get up to no goodThe Lord gives a good ol' whoopin to His peopleAin't nothin but a collection of dust compared to the might of GodOn judgment day, folks gonna get either forever life or forever suffering. 'Bout 6 B.C.

2. And we can sure see how fickle and false the hearts of folks are; ya see, the Lord in His boundless goodness blesses those who trust in Him.

3. Yup, and you know what? Right when Hes showering blessings on His peoplewith their crops growin', their sheep bleatin' like crazy, and a whole heap of gold and silver, and all sorts of shiny stuffHe saves their skins and rescues 'em from their enemies; He even softens the hearts of them foes so they ain't feeling feisty at all; and in the end, Hes just lookin out for the good and happiness of His peoplethen, somehow, that's when they turn hard-headed, forgettin' their Lord, and just stompin' on the Holy Oneyep, it's all 'cause things are too easy for 'em and they got it made.

4. And thats how we see, unless the Lord puts 'em through some rough patcheslike death and fear and hunger,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

and all kinds of sickness they ain't gonna remember Him.

5. Oh, ain't it just crazy how foolish, vain, evil, devilish, and quick folks are to do bad things, and yet so slow to do good? Yep, how fast they run to listen to the evil one, settin' their hearts on all them worthless things of this world!

6. Sure 'nuff, they get all puffed up with pride real quick; they boast and carry on, doin all manner of mischief; but boy, they sure do take their sweet time rememberin' the Lord their God and listenin to His advice, yeah, slow as molasses when it comes to walkin' in wisdoms ways!

7. Looky here, they dont want the Lord their God, the one who made 'em, to be their boss; even with all His goodness and mercy, they just scoff at His counsel and refuse to let Him lead 'em.

8. Oh, how downright pitiful the nothingness of folks is; yep, they ain't even worth a grain of dirt from the ground.

9. 'Cause see here, the dust of the earth moves all around, splitting apart when our great and everlasting God gives the order.

10. Uh-huh, at His voice, them hills and mountains are shakin and quakin.

11. And with just the power of His voice, they break apart and smooth out, like some fancy valley.

12. Yeah, by the command of His voice, the whole earth gets to rockin';

13. And when He speaks, the very foundations sway like a boat in a storm.

14. And if He tells the earth Move it sure does move.

15. And if He says You better go back and stretch out the day for a good long while it gets done;

16. Thats how it goes, according to His word the earth goes back, and it looks to us like the sun is sittin' still; and yep, thats just how it is; 'cause it's the earth doing the moving, not the sun.

17. And if He says to them deep waters Dry up it is as good as done.

18. If He tells that mountain Get up, come over here and bury that city ya betcha, it happens.

19. And if a fella buries some treasure in the ground, and the Lord says Let it be cursed, 'cause of what that fella did it'll be cursed, sure enough.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

20. If the Lord says You be cursed, and ain't no one gonna find you from now on and forever yep, no one gets near it ever again.
21. And if the Lord tells a man 'Cause of your sins, you gonna be cursed forever it'll surely go down like that.
22. And if the Lord says Because of your sins, you ain't gonna be in my presence no more it's gonna be done.
23. And woe to the fella on whom He says that; he gonna be in trouble for doing wrong, and he ain't gonna be saved; that's why, for folks to have any hope, repentance got to be announced.
24. So, blessed are they who will turn and listen to the voice of the Lord their God; 'cause those are the ones who will find salvation.
25. And may God bless that, in His endless goodness, folks might come to repentance and do good works, so they can find their way back to grace for grace, for what they've done.
26. And I hope all men might find salvation. But we hear tell that on that big day, some folks gonna be sent away, yeah, cast off from the Lord's presence;
27. Yup, they gonna be stuck in a state of endless misery, fulfillin' what it says: Those who done good gonna get everlasting life; and those who done evil gonna get everlasting punishment. And that's the way it is. Amen.

## **Helaman Chapter 13**

1. Well now, let me tell ya 'bout this here prophecy from that Samuel fella, the Lamanite, speakin' to the Nephites. It covers all them chapters up to fifteen.
2. So, in that eighty-sixth year, them Nephites just keep on bein wicked, I reckon, real wicked, while the Lamanites are stickin' to the good Lord's commandments, just like Moses said to do.
3. Well, lo and behold, this Samuel he's a Lamanite he waltzed into Zarahemla and started preachin to the folks. He went on preachin for days, callin folks to repent, but they booted him outta there, and he was fixin to head back home.
4. But then the good Lord hollered at him, told him to turn back around and prophesy again what was on his mind.
5. So they wouldn't let him in the city, yknow? So he climbed up on the wall and waved his arms, shoutin real



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

loud, preachin whatever the Lord laid on his heart.

6. He told em: Yall listen here, Im Samuel, a Lamanite, speakin what the Lord put in my heart. And let me tell ya, the sword of justice is hangin over yall, aint gonna be four hundred years passin 'fore it falls.

7. Yeah, heavy destructions comin your way, and its sure as shootin. Aint nothin gonna save yall except repentin and puttin your faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, whos comin to the world, sufferin' a whole lot, and gonna get killed for yall.

8. And lo and behold, an angel from the Lord told me all this good news, makin my heart sing. I was sent to share it with you, too, so yall could feel that joy, but, shoot, yall wouldnt take me in.

9. So the Lord says this: Since yall got hard hearts, if yall dont repent, Im takin away my word from ya and pullin back my Spirit, and Im done puttin up with yall, gonna turn your own folks against ya.

10. Ain't gonna be four hundred years goin by without me givin you a good whoppinyeah, Im fixin to visit you with the sword, famine, and sickness.

11. Yup, I'm comin down in my fierce anger, and theres gonna be some from the fourth generation of your enemies seein your full destruction comin unless you turn back, says the Lord; and that fourth generation will witness your ruin.

12. But if yall would just repent and turn back to the Lord your God, Ill take my anger back, says the Lord; and blessed be them that do turn back to me, but woe be to those who dont.

13. Oh, woe to this big ol city of Zarahemla, cause its only saved thanks to the good folks in it; I tell ya, it aint lookin good, 'cause it seems like a whole mess of people are hardenin their hearts against me, says the Lord.

14. But blessed are the ones who do repent, 'cause Ill spare em. But if it werent for the righteous folks here in this big city, Id rain down fire from the sky to torch it.

15. But dont forget, it's for the righteous folks sake that it's bein spared. But times a-comin, the Lord says, when yall throw the good folks out, then youll be ripe for ruin; woe unto this city for all the wickedness and evil inside it.

16. And woe be to Gideon too, 'cause of all that wickedness goin on.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

17. And woe onto every city round here full of Nephites, because of all that evil and sin.

18. Now listen up, a curse is comin on this land, says the Lord of Hosts, 'cause of all them folks sittin on this land, what with all their iniquities and wrongdoings.

19. And the Lord of Hosts, our true and mighty God, says itll be a time when folks try to stash their treasures in the ground, but they aint gonna find em again, cause the lands a-cursed, cept for the good folks who hide it with the Lord.

20. Yup, I want folks to keep their treasures hidden with me; and cursed be those who don't do it right! Ain't nobody be hidin treasures with me but the righteous; if you ain't, youre cursed, and sos your treasure, and no ones gonna get it back cause of the lands curse.

21. Then theres gonna come a day when folks try to hoard their riches, thinkin theyre safe, but when they get scared and run from their enemies, they aint gonna be able to hold onto em; they gon be cursed with their treasures because they didnt hide em with me, and that day, they's gonna get smitten, says the Lord.

22. Now listen, you folks in this great city, pay attention to what I'm tellin ya, ya hear? The Lord says youre cursed 'cause of your wealth, and your riches are cursed too, cause youve set your hearts on em and ain't payed no mind to the words of the one who gave em to ya.

23. You got forgettin' the Lord your God who blessed ya, always thinkin bout your riches without givin thanks to Him; your hearts ain't drawn to Him, but swelled with pride, boastin, envy, strife, mean-spiritedness, persecutions, and killings, all kinds of wickedness.

24. Thats why the Lord's laid a curse on this land and your treasures, all cause of your sins.

25. Yup, woe to you folks, on account of this time were in, throwin out the prophets, mockin em, throwin stones, killin em, and doin all sorts of wrong to em, just like they did back in the day.

26. And when you talk, you say, If wed been around in the days of our ancestors, we wouldnt have done all that to the prophets; we wouldnt have stoned em or tossed em out.

27. But let me tell ya, youre doin worse! Cause the Lords alive, if a prophet walks in here and tells ya the word from the Lord, callin out your sins, you get all riled up and toss him out, tryin to figure out how to destroy

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

him; yeah, you call him a false prophet, a sinner, a devil, just cause hes callin you out on your bad deeds.

28. But let me tell ya, if somebody comes around sayin, Do this, you ain't done no wrong; do that, and youll be alright, he's gonna get a warm welcome; sayin, Oh go on, follow your hearts and eyes, do whattya wantif he says that, youll take him right in, and call him a prophet.

29. Yeah, youll lift him up, give him your stuff, spill your gold and silver on him, dress him in fancy clothes; and 'cause hes showerin you with sweet talk, sayin alls well, you wont have a bad word to say about him.

30. Oh, you wicked folks, you perverse bunch; you hard-headed, stiff-necked people, how long you think the Lords gonna put up with ya? How long will you let yourselves be led by blind fools? How long will you pick darkness over light?

31. The Lords anger is already flared up against ya; thats the truthhes cursed the land cause of your wrongdoings.

32. And the times comin when Hell curse your riches, makin em all slippery-like, so ya cant hold onto 'em; and when youre poor, you just wont be able to keep em.

33. When youre broke, youll howl to the Lord; but itll be like shoutin in the wind cause your desolations already hit, and your doom is on its way; and youll cry and moan that day, says the Lord of Hosts. And youll bemoan, sayin:

34. Oh, if only Id repented! If I hadnt killed the prophets, stoned em, and tossed em out! Yeah, youll say that day: Oh, if we had just remembered the Lord our God when He blessed us with our wealth, then it wouldnt have slipped away like it did; cause now, our riches are gone.

35. Look at this, we set down a tool, and poof, its gone by mornin; swords weve needed for fightin just up and vanished when we wanted em.

36. Yeah, weve hid our treasures, but theyve just slipped away 'cause the lands cursed.

37. If only wed repented back when the Lord spoke to us; the lands cursed, everythings slippin away, and we just cant hold onto nothin.

38. Look around, were swarmed by demons, surrounded by angels of the one whos tryin to put an end to our

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

souls. Our sins are heavy, Lord, cant ya turn your anger back from us? Thatll be the words youll speak in them days.

39. But Im tellin ya, your time of probations run out; youve dragged your feet on the day of salvation 'til its way too late, and your ruins a-comin; youve been searchin your whole lives for what you just cant have, lookin for happiness in doin wrong, which just aint the way of the good and right.

40. Oh, you people of the land, why cant ya hear what Im sayin? Im prayin the Lords anger gets pulled back from ya, and that yall would make a turn and get saved.

### **Helaman Chapter 14**

1. Well now, it did come to pass that Samuel, that Lamanite fella, he went and prophesied a heap more stuff that ain't writ down nowhere.

2. Now pay attention, he said to 'em: Listen up, Im givin yall a sign; five years more and guess what? The Son of Gods comin to save all them who put their faith in His name.

3. And lemme tell ya, this is gonna be a big ol sign at the time he shows up; ya see, therell be great lights up in the heavens, so much so that the night before he arrives wont have a lick of darkness, its gonna feel like daybreak to folks.

4. So, mark this down, there'll be one day followed by a night and then another day, like its just one long day and there ain't no night; and this heres gonna be a sign for ya; youll know when the sun rises and when it sets; so they'll be sure as shootin that theres two days and a night, but that night aint gonna be dark; and itll be the night before hes born.

5. And now, lo and behold, a brand new star's gonna pop up, one like you ain't ever laid eyes on; this toos gonna be a sign for ya.

6. Now, hold on, this ain't all; therell be a whole mess of signs and wonders in the sky.

7. And its gonna happen that yall will be jaw-dropped and astonished, to the point that you'll just fall down to the ground.

8. And its gonna be that whoever believes in the Son of God, theyre gonna have life everlasting.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

9. Now listen, the Lords given me a command through His angel to come tell yall all this; yep, Hes asked me to prophesy these things to ya; and He told me: Shout out to these folks, turn around and get ready for the Lord.

10. And now, since Im a Lamanite and Im just spoutin what the Lords told me, and since it dont sit right with ya, yall are all riled up with me and want to throw me out.

11. Youll hear my words, cause I came up here on the walls of this town just so yall could know bout the judgments of God thatre comin your way cause of your sins, and also so youd understand what it takes to repent;

12. And you oughta know bout the coming of Jesus Christ, thats the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Maker of everything from the very start; and you oughta know the signs when Hes comin, so ya can put your faith in His name.

13. And if you put your faith in His name, yall gonna turn away from your sins, so ya can be freed from em cause of His goodness.

14. And lo and behold, heres another sign Im givin ya, yep, a sign of His death.

15. Cause let me tell ya, Hes gotta die for salvation to roll in; yep, its gotta happen for the resurrection of the dead, so folks can get back into the presence of the Lord.

16. Sure nuff, this deaths whats gonna lead to the resurrection, and its gonna redeem all of mankind from the first deaththat spiritual death; cause all folks, cause of Adams fall, get cut off from the Lord, considered dead, both in this world and the next.

17. But looky here, the resurrection through Christ is whats gonna redeem everyone, even all of mankind, and bring em back to the Lord.

18. Yep, and its gonna lead folks to repent, so that whoever turns around wont get chopped down and thrown into the fire; but whoever dont turn around, well, theyll be chopped down and thrown into the fire, and then theyll face that spiritual death again, yep, a second death, cause they get cut off again from doin whats right.

19. So yall better repent, repent, less you know what to do and dont do itthen youre gonna bring that second

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

death upon yourselves.

20. But now, just remember, like I told ya before about another sign, a sign of His death, in that day when He takes His last breath, the suns gonna get dark and wont shine no more; and the moon and stars, they aint gonna shine either; therell be no light on this here land, from the moment He dies, for three whole days, til He rises up from the dead.

21. Sure as shootin, when He gives up the ghost, theres gonna be thunder and lightenin for many hours, and the earth is gonna shake and shudder; and the rocks, which yall know are solid now, are gonna get busted up;

22. Yep, theyll split in two, and from then on, theyll be found all cracked up and in pieces all over the face of the earth, both above and below.

23. And look, theres gonna be mighty tempests, and loads of mountains are gonna be laid down flat, turnin into valleys, and there'll be places now called valleys thatll rise up to be mountains, tall as can be.

24. And plenty of roads will get torn up, and many towns are gonna be left in ruins.

25. And a whole lotta graves will pop open, and let out many of their dead; and a bunch of saints are gonna show up to folks.

26. And behold, the angel spoke to me, he told me there'd be thunder and lightenin for many hours.

27. And he said to me that while all the thunder and lightning was goin on, and them tempests, thats when darkness would cover the whole earth for three days.

28. And the angel told me that many folks will see greater things than these, so they might believe that these signs and wonders are gonna happen across this whole land, so there wont be no reason for folks to doubt

29. And its all so that whoever wants to believe can be saved, and if folks choose not to believe, then just judgments gonna come down on em; and if theyre condemned, theyre only bringin it upon themselves.

30. And now just remember, listen up, my brothers, that whoevers lost is lost for their own reasons; and whoever does wrong is doin it to themselves; cause ya see, youre free; you can make your own choices; Gods given ya that knowledge and made ya free.

31. Hes laid it out so youd know good from bad, and given you the chance to choose life or death; you can do

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

good and get back to whats good, or have whats good come back to ya; or you can do wrong and have all that evil come back around to ya.

### **Helaman Chapter 15**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya, the Good Lord gave the Nephites a good talkin' to 'cause He loved 'em. Them Lamanites who've turned over a new leaf sure are solid and steadfast in their faith. The Lord's gonna show mercy to the Lamanites in the days to come. 'Bout 6 B.C.

2. Now listen up, my dear brothers, I gotta tell ya, if ya dont shape up and repent, yer houses gonna be left empty and all desolate like.

3. Shoot, if ya dont turn things around, yer women will have plenty to weep 'bout when they're tryin to nurse them babies; cause when the time comes to run, aint gon' be no safe place for ya; and oh boy, woe to them with little ones, they'll be weighed down and cant run; so they gonna get trampled and left to meet their end.

4. Yeah, woe be to this lot known as the Nephites unless they get it together, even when they spot all them signs and miracles that pop up; you see, they been a chosen folks of the Lord; yep, the Nephites are ones Hes got a soft spot for, and Hes also given 'em a good whippin when they stepped outta line; yup, during their goofy times, Hes given 'em a proper chastisin' 'cause He truly cares for 'em.

5. But wouldnt ya know it, my brothers, them Lamanites, He aint got much love for 'em cause they keep doin bad stuff day in and day out, all cause of their daddies bad ways. But hey, salvations come to em thanks to the Nephites preachin the good word; and thats why the Lords been lettin em stick around a bit longer.

6. Now, I want ya to see that most of 'em are struttin' down the right path, and they're watchin' their steps real careful-like before God, keepin' to His commandments and laws, stickin to what Moses laid down.

7. Yep, Im tellin ya, most of 'em are doin just that, bustin their tails to bring the rest of their kin to know the truth; thats why theres a good bunch joinin their ranks every day.

8. And dont ya know, yall have seen it with yer own eyes, how many of 'em have come round to learnin the truth, and got wise to the wicked ways of their daddies, and are led to believe in them holy scriptures, and the prophecies from the holy prophets, which gets em to believe in the Lord, and to repent, and that faith and

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

repentance turns their hearts round

9. So, as many of em who have come to this, yall know real well theyre solid and steady in their faith, and in whats set em free.

10. And you also know theyve laid down their war weapons, and theyre afraid to pick em up again, fearin' they might slip up; shoot, you can see theyre scared of sinfor theyd rather take a beatin and get taken out by their enemies than lift a sword against 'em, all cause of their faith in Christ.

11. And now, 'cause theyre so steadfast in what they believe in, for bein firm when they finally see the light, behold, the Lords gonna bless em and let em stick around longer, even with their mess-ups

12. Yeah, even if they should start slippin into doubt, the Lords gonna let em stick around, till the time comes that our daddies talked about, and also what the prophet Zenos mentioned, and plenty of other prophets, bout bringin our folks, the Lamanites, back to the truth

13. Im tellin ya, in the later days, the Lords promises are gonna reach out to our brothers, the Lamanites; and even with all the troubles they gonna face, and bein tossed around and hunted like dogs, and beaten and spread all over the place with nowhere safe to go, the Lords gonna be merciful to em.

14. And this heres what was prophesied, that theyll come back to true knowledge, which is knowin their Redeemer, and their real good shepherd, and get counted among His sheep.

15. So I reckon its gonna be better for em than for yall if ya dont repent.

16. Cause lemme tell ya, if them mighty deeds had been shown to 'em like they been shown to ya, those whove fallen into doubt cause of their daddies traditions, you know they wouldntve fallen back into doubt again.

17. So the Lord says: I aint gonna wipe em out completely, but one day, when I see fit, they gonna come back to me, says the Lord.

18. And now listen up, says the Lord, bout the Nephites: If they dont turn from their ways and do what I say, Ill wipe em out completely, says the Lord, cause of their doubt, in spite of all the great things I done for 'em; and sure as the Lord lives, these things is gonna happen, says the Lord.



## Helaman Chapter 16

1. Well now, it happened that a heap o' folks heard ol' Samuel, the Lamanite, speakin' up on them city walls. And them that believed what he was sayin' got themselves on over to Nephi; when they found him, they fessed up 'bout their wrongdoings and didn't hold back none, just wantin' to get baptized 'fore the Lord.
2. But let me tell ya, those who didnt buy what Samuel was sellin got real mad at him; they started throwin' stones and shootin' arrows at him while he stood up there on the wall. But lemme tell ya, the Lord's Spirit was with that feller, so they couldn't hit him with a single stone or arrow.
3. Now when they figured out they couldn't nick him with none of that, a whole lot more folks came 'round to believe what he was sayin', and they skedaddled off to Nephi to get baptized.
4. Well, Nephi was busy baptizin', speakin' prophecies, and preachin' too, shoutin' for folks to repent, showin' off signs and wonders, makin' miracles happen among the people, so they'd know the big man, Christ, was fixin' to show up real soon
5. He was spillin' the beans on things comin' up, lettin' them know that when it happened, they'd remember he had told 'em beforehand, all so theyd believe; thus, those who put their faith in Samuel's words went on over to be baptized, come in a-pourin' out their hearts confessin their sins.
6. But most folks didnt reckon Samuels words were worth a lick; so when they saw their stones and arrows wouldn't do a thing, they hollered for their captains, sayin': Seize that feller and tie him down, for hes possessed; and 'cause of that devil's power he's got, we can't hit him with our stones nor our arrows; so take him and bind him up, send him off.
7. And as they made a move to grab hold of him, he just flung himself down from that wall and bolted off to his own place, preachin' and prophesyin' to his own folks.
8. And Ill tell ya what, after that, we never heard tell of him again among the Nephites, and thats how the folks were doin' things.
9. So that wrapped up the eighty-sixth year of them judges rule over the Nephites.
10. And that also finished out the eighty-seventh year of their judges, with most of the folks stuck in their

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

pride and wicked ways, while a smaller group was tryin' to live right before God.

11. And likewise, that was the case in the eighty-eighth year of them judges.

12. Now there wasnt much change in the folks' doin's, 'cept they got even more stubborn in wickedness, goin' further astray from Gods commandments in the eighty-ninth year of them judges.

13. But let me tell ya, when the ninetieth year rolled around, there were a whole mess of signs thrown at the people, with wonders in the mix; and the prophets words started comin true.

14. And angels dropped down to see some wise folks, tellin' them the good news that'd fill their hearts with joy; so right then, the scriptures were kickin in.

15. Still, the people got hard-hearted, cept for the most faithful among 'em, both Nephites and Lamanites, leanin' on their own strength and smarts, sayin':

16. "Maybe they guessed a few things right among all those; but lookie here, we know all these grand and miraculous deeds ain't gonna happen, nothin' like what they been talkin' 'bout."

17. And they started arguin' and squabblin' amongst themselves, sayin':

18. "It don't make no sense that a Christ could show up; if he's really the Son of God, the one who runs heaven and earth, then why ain't he showin' his face to us like he does to them folks over in Jerusalem?"

19. Yeah, why ain't he puttin' in an appearance here as much as over there in Jerusalem?

20. But yknow, they figured that was just some wicked tradition passed down from their folks to keep em thinkin' some big fancy thing was gonna happen, just not here, but way off yonder in a place they dont even know; so they just kept us in the dark, since we ain't seein' with our own eyes that it's real.

21. And they believed that by the tricky and mysterious ways o' the devil, some big mystery would work out that we just couldn't wrap our heads 'round, keepin us servin' their words, always lookin to em to teach us the gospel; and if we let that happen, theyd keep us in ignorance till the end of our days.

22. Now, a whole lot more nonsense was floatin in their heads, real foolish and vain, and it made em all stirred up, cause Satan was at it again, whisperin' and causin' trouble all over the land, makin' 'em harden their hearts against the good stuff and what was yet to come.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

23. And even with all the signs and wonders the Lord was performin among His people, and the miracles they pulled off, ol Satan had a strong grip on their hearts across the whole land.

24. So thats how the ninetieth year wrapped up in the saga of them judges over the Nephites.

25. And that also brought to a close the book of Helaman, as its recorded by Helaman and his kin.

### **3 Nephi**

#### **3 Nephi Chapter 1**

1. Well, let me tell ya, this here Nephi business starts back in the day of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, the son of Almaa whole family tree so thick you could get lost in it. Were talkin about Nephi, the one who came from Lehi, who hightailed it outta Jerusalem right when Zedekiah started runnin things in Judah.

2. Now Nephi, Helamans boy, took off from these parts, leavin his eldest son Nephi in charge of keepin the recordsmeanwhile, folks were up to no good, plottin to get rid of the good folks. Then comes the night when Christ was bornsigns all over the place, and a brand new star shinin bright. Meanwhile, lies and deceit were risin like bread in the oven, and them Gadianon robbers was causin quite the ruckus, spillin' blood like it was goin outta style. Thats round A.D. 1 to 4, yall.

3. You see, the ninety-first year slid on by, and it had been six hundred years since Lehi made his getaway from Jerusalem; it was also the year that Lachoneus was runnin the show as the chief judge and governor over the land.

4. Well, Nephi, Helamans son, skedaddled outta Zarahemla, passin the baton to his firstborn Nephi. He told him bout the brass plates and all the records theyd kept safe since Lehi packed up and left.

5. Then Nephi took off from the land, and where he went, nobodys figured out yet; but his boy Nephi kept the records in his placeyep, the whole saga of this folks.

6. Now right in the dusty start of the ninety-second year, lo and behold, those prophecies started comin true more and more. Folks was seein them big ol signs and miracles happen close to home.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

7. But then there was a crowd startin to yap bout how the time had slipped on by for Samuels words to be true.
8. So they was gettin all giddy over their buddies, shoutin, Looky here, times run out and Samuels words didnt show up; your joy and faith is all for nothin.
9. And sure enough, they made a mighty commotion all over town; the folks who still believed were feelin down in the dumps, afraid them prophecies was just hot air.
10. But they was watchin real close for that one daythat day and night rolled into onein hopes to see their faith wasnt just wishful thinkin.
11. Now there was a group of doubters who set a date to snuff out all them believers unless that sign showed itself, the one spoken by Samuel the prophet.
12. When Nephi, Nephis boy, saw the wickedness around him, his heart felt heavier than a sack of rocks.
13. So he hit the dirt, bowin down and callin out to God for his people, them fixin to get wiped out just cause they believed in their elders ways.
14. He was hollerin to the Lord all day long; then the Lords voice came to him, sayin:
15. Lift your chin and cheer up, cause the moments comin'; tonight the signs gonna show, and come sunrise, Im showin up to let the world know Ill do everythin my holy prophets been talkin bout.
16. Looky here, Im comin home to carry out all them things I told folks since the creation of the world, followin the will of both my Father and myselfof the Father cause of me, and of the Son cause of my human side. And trust me, the moments here, and tonight that sign is comin.
17. Sure enough, what the Lord told Nephi came to pass just as promised; when the sun set, there was no darkness at all, and folks were scratchin their heads cause it didnt look like night when it rolled in.
18. Now many who hadnt believed in the prophets fell flat on their faces like they were knocked out, realizin that the grand scheme of destruction they had set up for the believers got turned on its head; that sign was already here.
19. They started to understand that the Son of God was fixin to show up any minute now; in fact, every last soul on this big ol earth from the west to the east, up north and down south, was so shocked they took a tumble

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

to the ground.

20. Cause they knew them prophets had been preachin this stuff for years, and now that sign was right in front of 'em; fear hit em hard cause they could see their sins and doubts straight in the eye.

21. And it was a sight to behold that nightno darkness at all, just clear as a bell like it was high noon. Come mornin, the sun rose all proper-like; they knew deep down it was the day the Lord was born cause of that sign.

22. Everything happened just like the prophets said it would.

23. And it also turned out there was a bright new star shinin, just like the word said.

24. Then, from that point onward, them lies started slippin in like a snake among the folks, puttin calluses on their hearts so they wouldnt believe the signs and wonders right before their eyes; but despite them lies, most of the folks still believed and turned their hearts to the Lord.

25. Nephi went out among the people, along with plenty others, baptizin folks who wanted to turn away from their sins, and boy, there was a whole lotta forgiveness goin on. So the people started to settle down and find peace again in the land.

26. Now there wasnt much fussin goin on, cept for a handful tryin to preach that it wasnt necessary to keep the law of Moses. Well, they got it wrong, not catchin the real gist of the scriptures.

27. But it didnt take long before they turned around and realized they had been missin the point; they found out the law hadnt been fulfilled yet, and it was gonna be fulfilled right down to the last dot and dash; so, that very year, they were made aware of their mistakes and came clean bout their wrongdoings.

28. And that ninety-second year wrapped up with good news for the folks, all cause of them signs that came true, just like the holy prophets had said.

29. Then the ninety-third year strolled on by peaceful-like, cept for them Gadian-ton robbers settin up camp in the hills, causin a world of trouble; them folks was so dug in that no one could take em on, and they was gettin away with all kinds of murder and mayhem among the people.

30. By the time the ninety-fourth year rolled round, things got a whole lot worse cause a big crowd of dissenters from the Nephites ran off to join those robbers, bringin heartache to the Nephites who stayed put.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

31. And the Lamanites were feelin' it too; they had a heap of kids growin up and turnin into strong younguns, and some of em got led astray by them Zoramites with their sweet-talk and lies, joinin right up with the Gadianton crowd.

32. So the Lamanites took their hits too, startin to lose their faith and goodness cause of the wickedness of them younguns risin up.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 2**

1. Well, it just so happened that the ninty-fifth year rolled on by, and folks started forgettin all them signs and wonders theyd heard about. They got less and less amazed at any ol sign or wonder floatin' down from the heavens, til they got hard in their hearts and blind in their heads, disbelievin all theyd seen and heard

2. Thinkin up some silly notions in their hearts, sayin it was all done by folks and the devil himself, tryin to lead em away and fool em good; and thats how Satan wiggled back into their hearts, blindin their eyes and gettin em to think the doctrine of Christ was just plain foolishness.

3. Things got real bad with folks startin to grow strong in wickedness and all sorts of abominations; they just didnt believe thered be any more signs or wonders comin their way, and Satan was out there temptin em, leadin lots of hearts away to do some serious wickedness in the land.

4. And just like that, the ninty-sixth year passed on by; then came the ninty-seventh year; then the ninty-eighth year; and the ninty-ninth year too;

5. And can you believe it, a whole hundred years had gone by since ol Mosiah was runnin things as king over the Nephites.

6. Six hundred and nine years had sauntered on by since Lehi up and left Jerusalem.

7. And nine years had ticked away since that sign was given, the one the prophets spoke about sayin Christ would be comin into this world.

8. Now the Nephites started keepin' track of their years from the time that sign showed up, or from Christs arrival; shoot, thats when nine years passed on by.

9. And bless his heart, Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, the one keepin the records, didnt come back to the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

land of Zarahemla, and you couldnt find him nowhere round in that land.

10. And it came to pass that folks kept on livin in wickedness, even with all that preachin and prophesyin goin' on, and thats how the tenth year went by; then the eleventh year slid on past in all sorts of iniquity.

11. Then in the thirteenth year, trouble stirred up all over the land; them Gadianton robbers got so many in their ranks, they was killin' folks left and right, layin waste to cities, spreadin death and destruction everywhere, and it got to where all the people, Nephites and Lamanites alike, needed to pick up arms and fight back.

12. So all the Lamanites who found their way to the Lord teamed up with their Nephite kin, and they had no choice, for the sake of their lives and their families, to take up arms against them Gadianton robbers, fightin to protect their rights, their church, their worship, and all their freedom.

13. And before that thirteenth year was done, the Nephites were lookin at total destruction cause of this rough war that was causin a whole heap of trouble.

14. And it came to pass that them Lamanites who sided with the Nephites got counted among the Nephites;

15. And their curse was lifted off of em, and their skin turned white like the Nephites;

16. And their young men and daughters turned out real pretty, gettin numbered with the Nephites, and they was called Nephites. And thats how the thirteenth year wrapped up.

17. When the fourteenth year kicked off, the war tween the robbers and the Nephites was still crankin on, gettin even rougher; but the Nephites managed to gain some ground against the robbers, pushin em back into the hills and their hidey-holes.

18. And that wrapped up the fourteenth year. Then in the fifteenth year, the robbers came back at the Nephites; and cause of the Nephites wickedness, and all their fussin and fightin, the Gadianton robbers got the upper hand on em.

19. And thats how the fifteenth year ended, leavin folks in all kinds of trouble, with destruction hangin over em like a dark cloud, lookin like they was gettin ready to get smitten down, all on account of their iniquity.

## **3 Nephi Chapter 3**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well, it all happened that in the sixteenth year since the good Lord showed up, Lachoneus, the head honcho of the land, got himself a letter from the leader of them wayward robbers; and let me tell ya, the words in that letter were somethin like this:
2. Lachoneus, ya big shot and top governor of this here place, listen up, Im scribblin this letter to you, givin ya a heap of compliments for bein so firmya and yer folks hangin onto what yall reckon is your rights and freedoms; yall sure stand tall, like ya got the Lord Himself holdin ya up, fightin for your liberty, your stuff, and your home, or whatever yall call it.
3. And I gotta say, it sure pains me, most noble Lachoneus, that ya think ya can take on so many tough hombres who got my command, standin ready for action right now, just waitin for me to say, Go get the Nephites and wipe em out.
4. Now me, I know their spirit can't be broken, seen it myself in that battlefield, and knowin their everlasting grudge against ya cause of all the wrongs ya done to em, so if they roll down on ya, they aint gonna hold back, and youll be in a world of hurt.
5. So Im sendin this here letter, sealin it with my own hand, hopin for yalls well-bein', cause of your stand on what ya reckon is right and your brave spirit in fightin for it.
6. So Im askin ya real nice, just hand over your towns, your lands, and all your stuff to my folks, instead of lettin em come swingin swords and bringin destruction down on ya.
7. Or to put it another way, just submit to us, join up with our crew, get to know the secret stuff we got goin on, and be our brothers not our slaves, but partners in all we have.
8. And let me tell ya, I swear on it, if yall do this, Im givin my word, ya wont be wiped out; but if ya dont, I swear by all thats good, come next month Im sendin my armies down on ya with no mercy, and they wont be lettin up til youre all gone.
9. And here I am, Giddianhi; Im the big cheese of this sneaky little club of Gadianton; and I reckon the way things are run is mighty good; its been around for ages and passed on down to us.
10. Now Im writin this letter to ya, Lachoneus, hopin youll turn over your lands and your stuff without spillin



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

any blood, so my people can get back their rights and keep their government, cause theyve left ya cause you been wicked, holdin back their rights. If ya dont, Ill be lookin to settle the score. I am Giddianhi.

11. And when Lachoneus got that letter, he was downright shocked, cause of the audacity of Giddianhi askin for the Nephite land, and threatenin the people, and talkin 'bout avengin folks who hadnt even wronged nobody but themselves for runnin off to those nasty robbers.

12. Now lemme tell ya, Lachoneus wasnt no pushover; he was a fair man who wouldnt let a robber scare him none; so he didnt pay mind to Giddianhis demands but told his folks to pray to the Lord for strength cause them robbers was fixin to come down on em.

13. Yep, he sent a word out to all the folks, tellin em to gather up their women, their younguns, their livestock, and all their things, cept for their land, all in one place.

14. And he got them fortifications built all round, strong as a bull, and made sure there was armies, both Nephites and Lamanites, watchin out for em from the robbers come day or night.

15. He told em, As long as the Lord is livin', if ya dont turn from your wicked ways and cry out to Him, you ain't gonna get saved from those Gadianon robbers.

16. And man, Lachoneuss words were so powerful and inspirin that they scared the livin daylights outta everybody; and they sure put all their might into doin what Lachoneus said.

17. Next thing ya know, Lachoneus went and picked chief captains over all the Nephite armies, to lead em when them robbers come at em.

18. Now the top dog of all them chief captains was named Gidgiddoni, and he was the greatest commander of the Nephite armies.

19. Now it was a common thing for the Nephites to choose their chief captains, unless they was in a rough patch, as someone who had revelation and could prophesy; so this Gidgiddoni was a real prophet, same as the main judge.

20. So the people yelled out to Gidgiddoni: Pray to the Lord, and lets climb them hills and head out into the wild to take the fight to those robbers and haul em out from their own turf.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

21. But Gidgiddoni shot back, The Lord says no; if we go up against em, Hell hand us right over into their clutches; so lets gear up in the middle of our lands, gather all our armies, and wait for em to come at us; cause as long as the Lord is around, if we do this, Hell put em right in our hands.

22. And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, towards the end of the year, Lachoneuss word had spread all over the land, and folks took their horses, chariots, cattle, flocks, herds, grain, and everything, marchin out by the thousands til they all got to where they was supposed to gather to defend against their foes.

23. The spot they picked was called Zarahemla, and the land betwixt Zarahemla and Bountiful, right to the line that separates Bountiful from Desolation.

24. And believe it or not, there was thousands of people called Nephites who got themselves together in this land. Lachoneus made sure they gathered in the southern land cause of that big ol curse weighin down on the northward land.

25. And they set themselves up strong against their enemies, stayin in one place, and one group, scared of what Lachoneus had said, so much so that they turned from all their sins, prayin to the Lord their God to save em when their foes came round for a fight.

26. They was mighty sad cause of them enemies. And Gidgiddoni made sure they built all sorts of weapons for war, makin strong armor, shields, and bucklers, just like he showed em.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 4**

1. Well, let me just tell ya, at the end of that ol' eighteen year, those pesky robbers were gettin' ready to throw down, comin' down from the hills, mountains, and the wilds, settlin' into lands that the Nephites had just scooted on from, all them towns left empty-like.

2. But you see, down in those lands all deserted by the Nephites, there weren't no wild critters nor game for them robbers to munch on, 'cept what they could find out in the wilds.

3. Them robbers just couldn't make do 'less they were out in the wilderness lookin' for grub; the Nephites had left their homes all barren and loaded up their flocks and herds, all huddled together in one group.

4. So, there just wasnt much chance for them robbers to steal some food, unless they decided to dive right into

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

a fight with the Nephites; and believe me, the Nephites were all ready to rumble, with a whole heap of folks, sittin' on a pile of provisions, horses, cattle, and all sorts of critters, ready to last 'em for seven whole years, hopin' to wipe them robbers off the face of the earth; and thats how that eighteenth year rolled on by.

5. Then come the nineteenth year, and Giddianhi figured it was high time to saddle up and head into battle with the Nephites, since there wasnt no way they could get by without robbin and killin.

6. And they were too scared to spread themselves thin tryin' to grow any crops, 'cause they reckoned the Nephites would come right on over and take 'em down; so Giddianhi told his crew they best be goin' to war against the Nephites this year.

7. Then they rolled up for battle; it was the sixth month, and I tell ya, it was a fierce day they showed up for a fight; they looked every bit like a gang of robbers, all dressed up grim-like, wearin lamb skins dyed in blood, with their heads shaved and wearin head-plates; and let me tell ya, Giddianhis army looked terrifying with all that armor and the blood stains.

8. But when the Nephites laid eyes on Giddianhis bunch, they hit the ground and cried out to the Lord, beggin Him to spare 'em and save 'em from their enemies.

9. Well, when Giddianhi's crew heard that, they started hollerin' right loud, thinkin' the Nephites were scared stiff 'cause of their fierce lookin' army.

10. But they was wrong, mighty wrong, 'cause the Nephites werent scared of them at all; they feared their God and asked Him for protection; so when Giddianhi's troops charged at 'em, the Nephites were ready to face 'em head-on; yep, they were tough with the Lords strength behind 'em.

11. And the fight kicked off in the sixth month, and let me tell ya, it was fierce, real fierce, the bloodshed was something terrible, like nothin seen before by the people of Lehi since he made his way outta Jerusalem.

12. And even with all the threats and curses Giddianhi had barked out, the Nephites wiped the floor with 'em, sendin em runnin' back.

13. Then Gidgiddoni shouted for his troops to chase em all the way to the edge of the wilds, not lettin up on any folks that fell into their hands; and thats just what they did, takin 'em down to the borders of the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

wilderness until theyd done what Gidgiddoni commanded.

14. Now Giddianhi, who had bravely stood his ground, found himself on the run; but wearin out from all that fightin, he was caught and put down. And that was the end of ol Giddianhi the robber.

15. Then the armies of the Nephites made their way back to safety. And just like that, the nineteenth year rolled on by, and the robbers didn't come back to battle again; nor did they show their faces in the twentieth year.

16. In the twenty-first year, they didnt come fumblin up to fight, but they surrounded the Nephites, thinkin if they cut em off from their lands, like a fish in a net, they could make em give in to their demands.

17. They picked themselves a new boss man named Zemnarihah; so it was he who got the siege goin'.

18. But let me tell ya, that worked in the Nephites' favor; the robbers just couldnt hang around long enough to put much pressure on em, 'cause the Nephites had stockpiled too much grub.

19. And the robbers, well, they didnt have much to eat, just enough to scrape on, which they managed to scrounge up in them woods.

20. And it turned out the wildlife was scarce in the wilds, so them robbers were fixin to starve real soon.

21. Meanwhile, the Nephites were continually marchin out both day and night, hittin 'em hard, and takin em out by the thousands.

22. As you might imagine, the folks under Zemnarihah started wantin to back out of their plan, what with the heavy losses they faced night and day.

23. Then Zemnarihah commanded his people to pull back from the siege and head up north to the far edges of the land.

24. And now, Gidgiddoni saw what they were doin and figured out their weakness from not havin enough food and all the killin theyd taken on, so he sent his troops out at night, blockin off their way of escape and settin up camp in their path.

25. They did this all sneaky-like in the night, gettin ahead of those robbers, so when the robbers started movin the next day, they ran smack into the Nephite armies, caught between the front and the back.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

26. And the robbers down south were pinned in too, and every bit of this was done by Gidgiddoni's orders.
27. Many thousands ended up givin themselves up to the Nephites, and the rest? Well, they didnt make it.
28. Zemnarihah, their new boss man, was caught and hung up on a tree till he took his last breath. Once they made sure he was gone, they dropped that ol' tree down to the ground and shouted loud and clear:
29. "May the Lord keep His folks righteous, so that they can take down anyone tryin to hurt 'em with their secret plans, just like this fella here has been brought low."
30. And they let out a great cheer, all together shoutin: "May the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob keep this people righteous, as long as they call on His name for help."
31. Then they all broke out singin and givin' thanks to their God for the mighty things He done for 'em, keepin em safe from their foes.
32. And they hollered: "Hallelujah to the Most High God!" And they cried out: "Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God."
33. Their hearts were just overflowing with joy, shedin' tears for the goodness of God in savin 'em from their enemies; and they knew it was their change of heart and humility that had pulled em from the brink of ruin.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 5**

1. Well now, let me tell ya, there wasnt a single soul 'mongst the Nephites that doubted what them holy prophets had said; they were all fully convinced it was gonna happen, no doubt about it.
2. And they realized it just made sense that Christ had shown up, what with all them signs that had been poppin' up, just like those prophets said; because of what they'd seen happenin' already, they figured everything was gonna go down just like they said it would.
3. So, they up and left behind all their sins, their wicked ways, and their foolin around, and they served God real earnest, day and night.
4. And would ya believe it, once they captured all them robbers, not a one got away unless they were dead, they tossed the prisoners in the pen and started preachin the good word to 'em; anyone who was willin to repent and promise not to kill no more got to walk free.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

5. But those stubborn folks who wouldnt make a promise, still holdin onto them nasty thoughts in their hearts, yeah, those that were makin threats against their own kin got what was comin to 'empunished real good, just like the law said.

6. And thus, they put an end to all that wickedness and secretive, vile business they had goin on, with all that mischief and murderin' going down.

7. And so the twenty-second year passed by, then came the twenty-third, the twenty-fourth, and the twenty-fifth; just like that, five whole years went on by.

8. There was a whole heap of stuff that happened that some folks thought was mighty impressive; still, they couldnt fit it all in this here book; shoot, this book couldnt even hold a hundredth of what went down among so many folks in the span of twenty-five years.

9. But you see, there are records out there that keep track of everything this crowd done; and our buddy Nephi gave a shorter, yet truthful, account of it all.

10. So here I am, makin my record of these happenings based on what Nephi wrote on them plates called the plates of Nephi.

11. And heres the kicker: Im makin my record on plates I crafted with my very own hands.

12. And ya see, my names Mormon, named after the land of Mormon, where Alma went and got the church started among the folks; yep, the very first church established after their missteps.

13. Im a follower of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. Hes the one who called me to spread His word among the folks so they could find everlasting life.

14. Its been deemed necessary that I, by Gods will, fulfill the prayers of them holy ones whove passed on, based on their faith, by recordin all these happenings

15. Yep, just a little record of whats gone down since Lehi left Jerusalem all the way up till now.

16. So Im puttin together my record from the stories shared by the folks before me, leadin up to the time Im livin in now;

17. And then Ill also jot down the things Ive seen with my very own eyes.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. Im tellin' ya, the record I create is fair and true; yet, theres plenty of stuff we just cant put into words.
19. And now I'm fixin' to finish up what I've got to say about myself and move on to share what Ive witnessed firsthand.
20. Im Mormon, pure and simple, a descendant of Lehi. Ive got plenty of reasons to be thankful to my God and Savior Jesus Christ for bringin our people outta Jerusalem (and no one knew it except Him and those He led outta that place) and for givin me and my folks so much wisdom for our souls salvation.
21. Sure as shootin, Hes blessed the house of Jacob and been kind to the seed of Joseph.
22. And as long as Lehis kids have kept His commandments, Hes blessed em and helped em thrive, just like He promised.
23. Yep, I reckon Hes gonna bring back some folks from the seed of Joseph to know the Lord their God once again.
24. And as surely as the Lords alive, He'll gather up all the scattered remnants of Jacobs seed from every corner of the earth, wherever they ended up.
25. And just like He promised all the house of Jacob, that covenant He made with emll come to pass in His own good time, bringin back all the house of Jacob to know the covenant Hes made with em.
26. Then theyre gonna know their Redeemer, Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and theyll all be gathered back from the four corners of the earth to their own lands where they used to be, and just as the Lord lives, its gonna happen. Amen.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 6**

1. Well now, it sure did come to pass that all them Nephites packed up and headed back to their own homesteads in that twenty-sixth year, every man grabbin his family, critters, and all his possessionshorses, cattle, you name it, he brought it along.
2. And wouldnt ya know, they hadnt gobbled up all their supplies, so they loaded up everything they hadnt scarfed down, all kinds of their grain, gold, silver, and all sorts of fine stuff, and they made their way back to their lands and all their goods, both up north and down south, everywhere they called home.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

3. Now, they went ahead and did a favor for them robbers who agreed to keep the peace, the ones wishin' to stay Lamanites, givin' 'em plots o' land based on how many folks they had, so they could work hard and make a livin; and thats how they set up peace across the whole place.

4. Next thing ya know, they started thrivin real good, and them twenty-sixth and twenty-seventh years rolled on by, and there was a mighty fine order all around; they made their laws fair and square too.

5. Ain't nothin' gonna get in the way of folks doin' well cept they go messin up and fallin off the path.

6. And it was that Gidgiddoni fella, along with the judge Lachoneus and them leaders they picked, that got this big peace movin in the land.

7. It came to be that they built lots of new towns, and some of the old ones got all spruced up too.

8. They went ahead and paved a whole bunch of roads and paths that linked up them cities, givin' folks a way to travel from place to place.

9. And just like that, the twenty-eighth year passed on by, and folks enjoyed a stretch of peace without much ruckus.

10. But when the twenty-ninth year rolled in, folks started bickering a bit; some got all puffed up with pride and braggin 'bout their big ol piles of gold and silver, even leadin to some mean persecution.

11. See, there was a whole boatload o merchants around, along with a flock of lawyers and plenty of officials.

12. Folks started givin' themselves titles based on how rich they were and what they knew; some didnt have much smarts 'cause they were broke, while others who were loaded got real wise.

13. Some folks strutted around all high and mighty, while others stayed real humble; some tossed back insults, while others took it all, not fighting back but stayin low and sorry before God.

14. Thats when you could see a big ol gap growing in the land, and the church started to fall apart; by the thirtieth year, it was all but gone cept for a handful of Lamanites who found true faith and stuck to it, bein steady and determined to follow the Lords commandments.

15. Now, the root of all this mess was plainSatan had a strong hold, stirrin folks up to do all sorts of bad deeds, puffin 'em up with pride, and temptin 'em to chase after power, respect, and all that flashy stuff in this world.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

16. So, Satan led the hearts of the people to stray; they had a taste of peace, but it didn't last long.

17. At the start of that thirtieth year, folks had been tossed 'round by the devils tricks for a good while, doin whatever wickedness he led 'em to, and by the kick-off of this year, they was knee-deep in trouble.

18. Now, they aint sinning outta ignorance, cause they understood what God wanted from em since it was taught clear as day; they chose to rebel anyway.

19. And this here was in the days of Lachoneus, son of Lachoneus, who took his daddys place and was runnin the show that year.

20. Then folks who were inspired from on high started poppin up mongst the people everywhere, preachin loud and clear about the folks sins and pointing out how the Lords gonna redeem his people, which is to say, talkin bout Christ's resurrection, and they sure werent shy about remindin folks about His suffering and death.

21. Well, a whole bunch of folks got real mad at them who were shoutin about these truths; the ones who got all riled up were mainly the top judges and them high priests and lawyersyep, all them lawyers were upset with them truth-tellers.

22. Now, there aint no lawyer, judge, or high priest that could send anyone to the gallows unless the governor of the land gave the green light.

23. But you see, a whole lotta folks yellin about Christ were put to death in secret by them judges, and nobody even told the governor what happened until it was all over.

24. Now, lemme tell ya, that was against the laws of the land; no man should be put to death less the governor had givin' the order first

25. So, a complaint made its way to Zarahemla, gettin to the governor about them judges who had sentenced the Lords prophets to die, and it sure wasnt followin the law.

26. Next thing you know, they were rounded up and put on trial for the crimes they committed, to be judged by the laws the people had put in place.

27. But them judges had a heap of friends and family; and nearly all them lawyers and high priests banded together with the kin of them judges who were about to face the music.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

28. So they made a pact together, joinin in on an old covenant, one that had been set by the devil, to band against all that was good and right.

29. So they teamed up against the Lords people and plotted to wipe 'em out, trying to get the murderers off the hook from facing justice, which was fixin to be served up according to the law.

30. They thumbed their noses at the law and the rights of their land, and they made a pact to take out the governor and put a king in charge instead, so that land would never be free again but instead, be ruled by kings.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 7**

1. Well now, lemme show ya somethin here. They didnt get no king set up over the land; nah, in that thirtieth year, they went and wiped out the chief judge right on the judgment-seat, dead as a door nail.

2. Folks started fightin amongst themselves; they split up into tribes, every man clinged to his family, kin, and friends, and that theres how they done wrecked the whole government.

3. Every tribe picked themselves a chief or a leader; so just like that, they started callin themselves tribes with their own big shots.

4. Now, listen here, there wasnt a soul among em who didnt have a heap of family and plenty of kin and pals; cause of that, their tribes got pretty darn big.

5. All this ruckus happened, and they aint had no wars on their hands yet; and this here wickedness fell on the folks cause they let themselves get wrapped up in Satans grip.

6. The rules of the government got tossed aside, all because of that secret gang made up of them kinfolk and pals of them murderin prophets.

7. Them folks got to fussin and fightin, so much so that the more righteous folk were actin wicked; I tell ya, there was hardly a few good folks left.

8. So, six years went by and not much time had passed since the majority of the folks turned away from doin right, just like a dog goin' back to his vomit or a pig gettin back to wallerin in the mud.

9. Now this here secret gang that brought all that trouble gathered up together and plopped a fella named Jacob

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

at the head of things;

10. They called him their king, so he became the big cheese over this wicked crew; he was one of the main ones who had his say against them prophets hollerin bout Jesus.

11. But it turns out, they werent as many as the other tribes, who were all banded together, save for them leaders makin their own rules, each tribe doin their own thing; yet still, they was enemies, even if they wasnt all righteous, they were united in hating those who made a promise to take down the government.

12. So, Jacob noticed that his enemies outnumbered em, bein the king of this gang, he told his people they oughta skedaddle up to the northern part of the land, where they could build themselves a kingdom till they got some dissidents to join up (he sweet-talked em, sayin thered be plenty of dissenters) and theyd get strong enough to stand up against them tribes; and they went on ahead and did just that.

13. They moved so fast it was like nobody could slow em down till they got clear away from the people. And that wrapped up the thirtieth year; thats how things stood for the Nephite folks.

14. Now, in the thirty-first year, they were divided into tribes again, with every man stickin close to his family, kin, and buddies; yet they all kinda agreed not to pick no fights with each other, though they werent all on the same page with their laws and how to run things, seein as how them chiefs was callin the shots. They set some tight rules so one tribe wouldnt mess with another, so in a way, they had a bit of peace in the land; but deep down, their hearts turned away from the good Lord, and they started stonin the prophets and throwin em outta the mix.

15. Then Nephiblessed with visits from angels and the Lords voicewhat with seein angels and bein an eyewitness, got power to know all bout Christs minstry, and he saw folks flip-floppin' from their good ways back to wickedness and all them nasty deeds;

16. So feelin real sad for em cause of their hard-heartedness and thick-headednesshe stepped right into the mix that same year, preachin loud and proud about changin ways and forgivin sins through faith in good ol Jesus.

17. He shared all sorts of things with em; cant write it all down, and even the part that could be written wouldnt do it justice, so it aint all in this here book. Nephi was teachin with power and authority.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. Now, folks got mad at him, cause he showed more power than they did, and it just werent possible for em to doubt what he was sayin, cause his faith in the Lord was so strong that angels showed up to help him out every day.

19. In the name of Jesus, he kicked out them devils and impure spirits; he even brought his brother back from the dead after they had stoned him and he was dead and gone, all cause of the people.

20. And folks saw it happenin, they couldnt believe it and they were furious with him for his power; he went on to do many more miracles right in front of the folks, all done in the name of Jesus.

21. The thirty-first year rolled on by, and only a handful got converted to the Lord; but the ones that did sure let the folks know theyd been touched by the power and Spirit of God, which came from Jesus Christ, the one they believed in.

22. Anyone who had devils sent outta them, and who was healed of their sicknesses and troubles, showed it clearly to the folks that Gods Spirit had worked on em, and they were healed; they put on a show of signs and even did some miracles among the people.

23. So the thirty-second year passed by too. And Nephi cried out to the folks right at the start of the thirty-third year; he preached repentance and the forgiveness of sins.

24. Now, keep in mind, there werent none who got brought to repentance who werent baptized in water.

25. So Nephi set up some men for this ministry, so all them folks who come to em could get baptized in water, and this here was a witness and a testimony before God and the folks, that they had turned from their wickedness and got their sins washed away.

26. There were a whole bunch in that years beginning who were baptized for repentance; and most of that year rolled on by after that.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 8**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya, there was some wild weather goin' on tempests, earthquakes, fires, whirlwinds, and a whole lotta ruckus that just showed what happened when Christ was crucified. Folks was gettin' wiped out left and right, and for three whole days, it was as dark as a coal mine out there. Them that was left was

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

fussin' and complainin' 'bout their sorry state. Now we're talkin' A.D. 33-34.

2. So, here's the deal according to our records (and we sure do believe 'em to be right), it was a good ol' boy who kept track of things, cause he performed a whole mess of miracles in Jesus's name. Ain't nobody could pull off a miracle in Jesus's name unless they was cleansed from their sins.

3. Now, if this feller didnt mess up takin' count of the years, then the thirty-third year done slipped right on by.

4. Folks started watchin' real close for that sign that the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, talked about, ya knowwaitin' for that spell of darkness that was gonna hang around for three whole days across the land.

5. And boy, doubts was stirrin up like a kettle on the boil 'mongst the people, even with all them signs that had been shown.

6. Sure enough, in the thirty-fourth year, first month, on the fourth day, a storm like nobody had ever seen blew up, lettin' folks know it werent gonna be pretty.

7. And lemme tell ya, that tempest was somethin' fierce; the thunder roared so loud it felt like the whole earth was fixin' to tear apart.

8. Them lightnin' bolts struck so sharp and bright, ain't nobody ever seen nothin' like 'em in all the land.

9. Then you got the city of Zarahemla catchin' fire like it was doused in kerosene.

10. And the city of Moroni? Well, it just sank right down into the sea, takin' all its folks with it.

11. The ground got lifted up over in Moronihah, and where the city once stood, a big ol' mountain rose up.

12. Down south, things got real ugly with a heap of destruction.

13. But hold your horsesup north, it was way worse; the whole place changed thanks to that storm, whirlwinds, thunder, lightnin, and the earth shakin like a rattlesnake.

14. The roads got torn up, smooth places turned rough, and a whole bunch of mighty cities got sunk or burned, leavin their people dead and the land desolate.

15. A few cities hung on, but oh boy, they were in bad shape, and many good folks bit the dust.

16. Some folks got swept off in the whirlwind, and where they ended up, nobody knowsnot even they do.

17. And just like that, the whole earth's face looked all kinds o' messed up cause of the storms, thunder,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

lightnin, and earth quakin.

18. Rocks got split right in half, all broken up like an old road, scattered across the land in bits and pieces.

19. Then, after some three hours of booming thunder, crackin' lightnin', stormin', tempestuous weather, and earth quakin', it all came to a stopjust like that. Folks said it mighta been longer, but all them great and terrible events took place in 'round three hours, and then it was dark as night all over.

20. Thick darkness rolled in real heavy over the land, so folks who hadnt fallen could feel the darkness like a damp blanket.

21. There wasnt a flicker of light to be foundnot candles, not torches, nada. Folks couldnt even get a fire goin' with their dry wood, no light at all.

22. No light showed up, whether it was fire, glow, sun, moon, or starsjust thick mists of darkness coverin' the land.

23. And this darkness held tight for three whole daysno light anywhere to be seen. Mourning, wailing, and crying filled the air as folks grieved, and man, the groans of people echoed real loud cause of the darkness and the awful destruction they faced.

24. In one spot, folks was heard cryin', "If only wed repented before this dreadful day, our kin mighta been spared and not burned up in that big ole city of Zarahemla."

25. And in another place, the cries went up, "If only wed turned our hearts 'round before this terrible day, not killed and shunned the prophets, our mamas, our fair daughters, and our little ones might still be with us, and not buried up in that great city of Moronihah." And the wailin of the people was truly somethin' to behold.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 9**

1. Well, it done got real quiet round here, and a voice can be heard by folks all over this land, hollerin:

2. Woe, woe, woe to this here people; woe to everyone on this ol' earth unless they get to repentin; 'cause the devil's laughin, and his little demons are throwin a party 'cause of all the lost good folks, the mighty fine sons and daughters of mine. They done fell 'cause of their nasty ways and all them awful deeds!

3. Yall listen up, I done burned that big ol city Zarahemla down to the ground, and everyone in it.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

4. And that big city Moroni? Yep, I sunk that sucker down deep in the sea, and folks there drowned like fish outta water.

5. And look here, that big ol' city Moronihah, I covered it up good with dirt, and the folks in it, too, just to hide their wicked ways and stanky deeds from my sight, so the blood of my prophets and good folks wont come crying to me no more gainst 'em.

6. And let me tell ya, I sunk the city of Gilgal right down deep, and all 'em folks are buried in the ground;

7. Uh-huh, and dont forget 'bout the city of Onihah and all its people, and the city of Mocum with its folks, and that city of Jerusalem, too; I done made the waters rise up in their place to cover up their dirty deeds, so the blood of my prophets and good folks wont come crying to me 'gainst 'em no more.

8. And theres the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimginno, all a them I sunk down in the ground, turned 'em into hills and valleys, and buried the folks deep, sos their wickedness and bad deeds cant come to my ears again.

9. Now listen, that big city Jacobugath, where King Jacobs folks were hangin out, I set it ablaze cause they was as wicked as they come, worse than all the evil in a the land, what with their sneak murders and hush-hush alliances; they done ruined the peace of my people and messed up the whole place, so I burned 'em up real good, to keep em from comin to me 'gain with all that blood on their hands.

10. And that city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen? I done burned 'em to ashes, and their people, too, cause they kicked out the prophets and stoned the ones I sent to warn em 'bout their nasty ways and all them evil things.

11. And since they kicked out every last one of 'em, not a single soul righteous in sight, I rained down fire and wiped 'em clean, hidin all that wickedness from my view, so the blood of my prophets and good folks who tried to help 'em wouldnt go cryin out against 'em no more.

12. I done caused a whole heap of destruction to come down on this land and its people, all 'cause of their wickedness and their stanky deeds.

13. O all you who are left standin' 'cause ya aint as bad as they are, why dont ya come back to me, and give up

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

them sins, and get right with me, 'cause I wanna heal ya?

14. I mean it, yall listen now, if ya come to me, I promise youll find everlasting life. Lookee here, my arms of mercy are wide open for ya, and whoever wants to come, Ill welcome em right in; blessed are all yall who come to me.

15. Now Im Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I made the heavens and the earth and everything in em. I was with the Father from the very start. The Fathers in me, and I'm in the Father; its in me where the Fathers name gets glorified.

16. I came to my own folks, but they turned me away. And all them scriptures bout my coming? Well, they done come to pass.

17. And to all whove taken me in, I give 'em the chance to be sons of God; and Ill do the same for anyone who believes in my name, 'cause through me, redemptions here, and in me, the law of Moses is all wrapped up.

18. Im the light and the life of this world. Im the Alpha and the Omega, the very beginning and the end.

19. Yall aint gotta keep spillin blood no more for me; nope, your ol sacrifices and burnt offerings aint needed no more, 'cause Im not gonna accept any of 'em.

20. What I want for a sacrifice is a broken heart and a spirit thats humble. And anyone who comes to me with a broken heart and that contrite spirit? Ill baptize em with fire and the Holy Ghost, just like them Lamanites who had faith in me when they changed their ways, and they didnt even know it.

21. Look here, Ive come to this world to bring redemption, to save folks from their sins.

22. So who-so-ever repents and comes to me like a little child, Ill take 'em in, 'cause thats who gets the kingdom of God. I laid down my life for them, then picked it back up; so repent and come to me, you ends of the earth, and lets get you saved.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 10**

1. Well now, yall listen up, it sure did get quiet-like across the land for a whole heap of hours Christ was givin' His promise to round up folks, just like a mama hen gathers up her chicks'course, the better folks amongst em were kept safe. 'Bout A.D. 3435.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. And now, heres the deal: all them folks in the land heard what was said, and they saw it too. After all that talk, the land fell real quiet for many hours on end;
3. Folks were so flabbergasted that they stopped their moanin and wailin' over the kin they'd lost; so, it was quiet as a church mouse for a good long while.
4. Then, bam! Suddenly, a voice came back to the people, and everybody heard it clear as day, sayin:
5. Hey yall, folks from them big cities that done fell down, yall who are kin to Jacob, yes sir, you folks of Israel, time and again I tried to gather you up like a hen pulls her chicks under her wings and took care of ya.
6. And time and again, I wanted to gather you up just like that, but yall, oh people of Israel whove fallen away; yeah, yall who hang out in Jerusalem, how many times did I wanna gather you up like a hen does, but you just wouldnt have it.
7. Oh my folks of Israel who I've held onto, how many times will I gather ya like a hen gathers her brood under her wings, if yall just turn back to me with a repentant heart?
8. But if ya dont, oh my house of Israel, your homes are gonna be empty and desolate till the promises made to your forefathers come to pass.
9. Now, this heres what happened after the people heard those words: they started cryin and wailin' on account of the kin and friends they lost.
10. Three whole days passed by like that. Then in the mornin, the dark cloud lifted and the ground stopped shakin, rocks stopped bustin, and all them awful groans fizzled out, havin' all them ruckus sounds fade away.
11. The earth came back together, standin sturdy, and the mournin', weepin', and wailin' of them folks who were still livin' calmed down; their sorrow turned into joy, and they started shoutin praises and thankin the Lord Jesus Christ, their Savior.
12. And thats how far the scriptures matched up with what them prophets been sayin.
13. It was the good folks left who got saved, cause they welcomed the prophets and didnt stone 'em; twas them who hadnt shed the blood of the saints who were kept safe
14. And they were spared, not sunk and buried in the ground; they werent drowned in the deep water, nor

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

burned up by fire, nor crushed under debris; they werent swept away by the whirlwind, and didnt get overpowered by smoke and darkness.

15. Now, if ya readin this, pay attention; if ya got them scriptures, dig in and see if all these deaths and destruction from fire, smoke, storms, whirlwinds, and the earth openin up to swallow folks aint all just fulfillin the prophecies from a whole bunch of holy prophets.

16. Look here, Im tellin ya, plenty folks talked about this when Christ showed up and got themselves killed for spoutin it.

17. Yup, the prophet Zenos testified 'bout these things, and Zenock had his say too, 'cause they were callin' out specifically on behalf of us, the ones left from their lineage.

18. Now, our daddy Jacob also talked bout the little bit left from Josephs line. And just look at us, aint we part of Josephs kin? And dont them things that testify about us got their names scratched on them brass plates our daddy Lehi brought back from Jerusalem?

19. Then, it came to be that at the end of that thirty-fourth year, Im fixin to show ya that the Nephites who were kept safe and those called Lamanites who were also spared got a whole lotta blessings and good stuff rainin down on em, so much so that right after Christ went up to heaven, He sure enough showed Himself to them

20. Showin off His body and ministerin' to em; well tell yall more 'bout His ministry soon enough. So for now, Ill wrap up my talkin'.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 11**

1. Well now, let me tell ya, Jesus did show his face to them folks from Nephi when they was all gathered up at the temple down in Bountiful, and he ministered to 'em; and thats how he did it.

2. So heres how it went down, a whole heap of folks came 'round the temple in Bountiful, just a-gatherin and wonderin bout all the miraculous things that had happened.

3. They was chin-waggin 'bout this Jesus Christ, ya know, the one they heard about with the signs n all bout his death.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

4. Well, while they was yammerin away, all of a sudden, they heard a voice like it was comin' down from the sky; they looked all 'round cause they didnt quite know what that voice was sayin. Now, it werent no thundering voice, not loud or harsh, but it was a little voice that went right through 'em, makin' every single one of em shiver; yes sir, it went straight to their very souls and set their hearts on fire.

5. Then, wouldnt ya know it, they heard that voice again, but they still didnt get it.

6. And then the third time, that voice rang out and they really tried to open their ears to listen; they set their sights on where the sound was comin' from, starin' up at the heavens.

7. And lo and behold, the third time they figured it out, and that voice said to em:

8. Looky here, this is my Beloved Son, the one Im mighty pleased with, the one Ive glorifiedyall better listen to him.

9. Well, when they got the message, they raised their eyes to heaven once more, and would ya believe it, they saw a Man comin down outta heaven, wearin a white robe; he floated down and stood right there in the midst of em, and everyone was just starin at him, couldnt hardly say a word, even to each other, cause they thought he was just an angel appearin' before em.

10. Then he reached out his hand and spoke to the folks, sayin:

11. Hey yall, Im Jesus Christ, the one them prophets been talkin about whos gonna come into the world.

12. And just so ya know, Im the light and the life of this world; I done drank from that bitter cup the Father gave me and glorified Him by takin' on the sins of the whole world, showin the Father Ill do His will in all things since the very beginning.

13. When Jesus finished sayin' all this, the whole crowd just hit the dirt; they remembered how it was foretold hed show himself after he went up to heaven.

14. Then the Lord spoke to em, sayin':

15. Get up and come to me, feel free to put your hands right in my side, and take a gander at the marks from the nails in my hands and feet, so ya know Im the God of Israel and the God of this whole earth, who done got killed for the sins of the world.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

16. So, that crowd started movin on up, thrustin their hands right in his side, feelin them nail marks in his hands and feet; and they all did it, one by one, until they had their turn, seein with their own eyes and feelin with their own hands, and they knew for sure and told everyone, this was the one the prophets talked about who would come.

17. And once they all had their turn and witnessed it themselves, they all hollered together, shoutin:

18. Hosanna! Bless the name of the Most High God! Then they fell down at Jesus' feet and worshiped him.

19. Then the Lord spoke to Nephi, since he was right there in the crowd, and told him to come on forward.

20. Nephi got right up and walked over, bowin low and givin the Lord a kiss right on his feet.

21. The Lord told him to get back up. So, Nephi stood up tall before him.

22. And the Lord told him: Im givin you the power to baptize these folks when I head back up to heaven.

23. Then the Lord called on some others and told em the same thing; he gave em all the power to baptize too, sayin: This is how youre gonna do it, and dont be arguin amongst yourselves.

24. Im tellin ya straight up, if anyone repents of their sins cause of your words and wants to get baptized in my name, heres how youre gonna do ityall are gonna wade into the water and in my name, youll dunk em.

25. And just so ya know, these are the words you gotta say, callin em by name, like this:

26. With the authority I got from Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost. Amen.

27. Then youre gonna dip 'em in the water and pull em right back up outta the water.

28. Thats how youll baptize in my name; cause Im tellin ya, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost are all one; and Im in the Father, and the Fathers in me, and were all one together.

29. Now, according to what I told ya, thats how youll do the baptizin. No squabblin like theres been before, nor shufflin around about my teachings like its been in the past.

30. Cause Im tellin ya true, anyone whos got that spirit of arguein aint with me, but they belong to the devil, who stirs up folks to fight and get mad at each other.

31. Now listen here, my doctrine dont stir folks up with anger against one another; my doctrine is all bout

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

puttin that away.

32. Let me tell ya, Im fixin to share my doctrine with you.

33. And here it is, this is my doctrine, and its what the Father gave me; I bear witness of the Father, and he bears witness of me, and the Holy Ghost testifies of the Father and me too; and I bear witness that the Father tells all folks everywhere to repent and put their faith in me.

34. And whoever believes in me and gets baptized, theyre the ones gonna be saved; them the ones whos gonna inherit the kingdom of God.

35. But whoever dont believe in me and dont get baptized, they gonna be damned.

36. Im tellin ya true, this is my doctrine, and Im bearin witness of it from the Father; and whoever believes in me believes in the Father too; the Fathers gonna testify of me to him because Hes gonna fill him up with fire and the Holy Ghost.

37. And thats how the Fathers gonna testify of me, and the Holy Ghosts gonna testify to him of the Father and me; cause the Father, me, and the Holy Ghost, were all one.

38. And Ill say it again, ya gotta repent, be like a little child, and get baptized in my name, or ya just aint gonna receive these things at all.

39. And Ill say it again, ya gotta repent and get baptized in my name, and be like a little child, or youre not gonna inherit the kingdom of God, not even a bit.

40. Im tellin ya true, this is my doctrine, and whoever builds on it, theyre builtin on my rock, and the gates of hell aint gonna stand against em.

41. And whoever is out there sayin more or less than this, claimin it as my doctrine, well, theyre spreadin evil, and they aint built on my rock; theyre buildin on shifty sand, and when the floods come and the winds start blowin, them gates of hell are wide open for em.

42. So, get goin out to the folks, and tell em the words Ive said, all the way to the ends of the earth.

## **3 Nephi Chapter 12**

1. Well, Jesus done spoke these words to Nephi an all them folks he called up, (now there was twelve of 'em

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

who got the power n authority to do some baptizin), an yknow, he reached out his hand to the crowd, hollerin: Yall are mighty blessed if ya pay attention to the words of these twelve fellas I picked out from yall to serve ya; Ive given em the power to dunk ya in water; an after ya get wet, Ill be givin ya a good ol baptism with fire n the Holy Ghost; so yall are blessed if ya believe in me and get baptized, specially after ya seen me and know who I am.

2. An again, they sure are extra blessed who believe in yalls words, cause youll be givin testimony bout seein me, knowin who I am. Yup, blessed are those who take ya seriously, humble themselves, and get baptized, cause they gonna be touched by fire and the Holy Ghost, an have their sins washed away.

3. You betcha, blessed are the poor in spirit who come over to me, cause theirs is the good ole kingdom of heaven.

4. An again, blessed are all them folks who mourn, cause they gonna get some comfort.

5. An blessed are the meek, cause they gonna inherit the whole dang earth.

6. An blessed are them whore hungry and thirsty for righteousness, cause theyll be filled with the Holy Ghost.

7. An blessed are the merciful ones, cause they gonna get mercy back.

8. An blessed are all them pure in heart, cause they gonna see God face to face.

9. An blessed are the peacemakers, cause they gonna be called the children of God.

10. An blessed are them who get picked on for my names sake, cause theirs is the kingdom of heaven too.

11. An blessed are yall when folks start talkin bad about ya, persecute ya, an throw all kinds of false evil at ya, just cause of me;

12. For yall are gonna have big ol joy an be real glad, cause your reward up in heaven is gonna be huge; for thats how they treated the prophets that came before ya.

13. Now listen here, Im tellin ya straight up, I want yall to be the salt of the earth; but if that salt loses its flavor, hows this world gonna be spiced up? That salt's just gonna be tossed out and walked on.

14. Now, Im tellin ya again, yall are the light of this whole group. A city sittin up on a hill cant be hid nohow.

15. Now, do folks light a candle and cover it up with a basket? Nope, they put it on a candlestick so it lights up

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the whole house;

16. So yall let your light shine in front of everyone, so they see all them good things ya do and praise your Father up in heaven.

17. Dont think Is here to tear down the law or the prophets. I ain't here to destroy but to fulfill all that mess;

18. Cause truly Im sayin to ya, not a single dot or dash of the laws gonna pass away, with me its all been fulfilled.

19. And see here, Ive given yall the law and my Fathers commandments, which is for ya to believe in me, turn away from your mess, and come to me with a broken heart and a spirit that's sorry. So there ya have it, them commandments are right in front of ya, and the laws all been wrapped up.

20. So come on over to me an get saved; cause Im tellin ya for real, if yall aint keepin' my commandments I told ya bout now, ya aint got no chance enterin the kingdom of heaven.

21. Yall heard em say a long while back, its written that ya cant kill, an if ya do, you best believe youre in trouble with God;

22. But Im sayin to ya, if ya get mad at your brother, youre in trouble. An if ya call your brother a fool, youre gonna be in danger of Hellfire.

23. So, if ya come on over to me, or want to come to me, an remember your brothers got a grievance with ya

24. Go on over to him, fix things with your brother first, then come to me ready to roll, and Ill take ya in.

25. Fast-tackle that mess with your opponent while youre still together, fore he gets ya in a bind, and ya end up in jail.

26. For I truly say to ya, you aint gettin outta there till ya pay every last penny. And while youre sittin there, can ya pay even that? Im here to tell ya, No way.

27. Now, its written from way back when, that you cant go messin' with marriage;

28. But Im sayin to ya, if you look at a woman and feel lust in your heart, youre already messin' around in your heart.

29. Now listen here, I give ya this commandment: dont let any of that junk creep into your heart;

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

30. Cause its better to give that stuff up, carry your cross, than to get tossed into hell.
31. Now its been said, that whoevers throwin his wife outta the house, better give her a divorce paper.
32. Im tellin ya true, if you toss your wife aside cept for fornication, youre makin her commit adultery; and if you marry her after shes been put away, youre commitin adultery yourselves.
33. And again its been said, dont swear on nothin, but ya ought to stick to your oaths to the Lord;
34. But Im sayin to ya, dont swear at all; not by heaven, cause thats Gods throne;
35. Nor by the earth, thats just his footstool;
36. And dont swear by your own head, cause you aint even able to change a single hair from black to white;
37. Just let your yes be yes, and your no be no, cause anything beyond thats just a load of trouble.
38. And looky here, its written, an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth;
39. But Im tellin ya, dont fight back against evil; but if someone smacks ya on your right cheek, turn and let em have the other one;
40. And if someone takes ya to court and wants your coat, give em your cloak too;
41. And if someone makes ya go a mile, go ahead and walk two with em.
42. Give to everyone who asks ya, and dont turn away from anyone who wants to borrow from ya.
43. Now look, its also written that you gotta love your neighbor and hate your enemy;
44. But Im tellin ya, love your enemies, bless em that rag on ya, do good to em that hate you, an pray for folks who use you and persecute you;
45. So ya can be the children of your Father up in heaven; he makes that sun shine on the good folks and the bad ones too.
46. So all them old laws that were around, in me theyre all wrapped up and fixed.
47. Old stuff is gone, and everythings brand new.
48. So Im hopin yall get perfect, just like me, or your Father whos up in heaven is perfect too.

## **3 Nephi Chapter 13**

1. Well, I reckon I wanna tell yall that yall oughta be doin good deeds for the folks down on their luck; but let



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

me tell ya to keep that business hush-hush cause showin off to folks dont get you no goodies from your Father up in heaven.

2. So, when yall go doin your good deeds, dont go blarin a horn like them hypocrites do at church or strut around the streets to soak up the praise from folks. I tell ya straight, theyve already gotten their reward.

3. But when youre givin to charity, dont let your left hand know what your right hands up to;

4. Keep it all quiet-like, cause your Father who sees what aint out in the open, Hes gonna bless you right in front of everybody.

5. And when you pray, dont be like them hypocrites who love to stand all proud in church and on street corners just to show off. Im tellin ya, theyve got their rewards too.

6. But you, when ya wanna pray, find a quiet little spot, close the door behind ya, and have a little chat with your Father whos listenin quietly; and Hell let folks see how Hes rewarded ya.

7. Now, when yall pray, dont be rattlin off the same words over and over like them folks who ain't got sense. They think bein loud and constant would get em heard.

8. Dont be thinkin like that, yall! Your Father knows what you need before you even ask.

9. So pray like this: Our Father up there in heaven, may your name be treated with respect.

10. Let your will happen here on earth, just like it does in heaven.

11. And forgive us our debts, just like we forgive them that owe us.

12. And keep us away from temptations, but save us from all the bad stuff.

13. Cause yours is the kingdom, the power, and the glory, forever and ever. Amen.

14. If youre forgivin folks their wrongdoings, then your heavenly Fathers gonna forgive you too;

15. But if you dont forgive them, well, dont expect your Father to forgive you either.

16. And listen here, when yall fast, dont go lookin all sad like them hypocrites who mess up their faces just to appear like theyre bein good. Im here to tell ya, theyve already got their reward.

17. But you, when youre fasting, fix yourself up and wash your face,

18. So you aint lookin like youre starvin, but keep it private with your Father, whos in the secret place; and

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Hell make sure youre rewarded in front of folks.

19. Dont be hoardin up treasures down here on earth where moths and rust can wreck em and thieves can break in and steal;

20. Instead, keep your treasures in heaven, where moths and rust cant mess with em, and where thieves cant break in and steal.

21. Cause where your treasure is, thats where your hearts gonna be too.

22. Now, the eyes the light for the body; if your eyes focused, your whole bodyll be lit up.

23. But if your eyes all messed up, your whole bodyll be dark as a moonless night. So, if the light in you is dark, man, ain't that darkness somethin else!

24. Aint no one can serve two bosses; you either gonna love one and hate the other, or hang on to one and be mean to the other. You cant serve God and money.

25. Now, it came to pass that Jesus finished sayin all this, and He looked at the twelve He picked out, and He told em: Remember the stuff Ive told ya. Look here, yall are the ones I chose to serve this crowd. So Im sayin dont worry bout your life, what youre gonna eat or drink; or even what youre gonna wear. Aint life more important than food, and the body more than clothes?

26. Look at them birds in the sky, they dont plant or harvest or stash away in barns; but your heavenly Father takes care of em. Dont ya think youre worth more than them?

27. Which of you can add a single inch to your height just by worryin?

28. And why ya fret over clothes? Check out the lilies in the fields how they grow; they dont work or weave.

29. Yet Im tellin ya, even ol Solomon in all his fancy robes wasnt dressed as pretty as they are.

30. So, if God takes care of the grass in the fields, whichs here today and tossed in the oven tomorrow, Hell take care of you too if you aint got little faith.

31. So dont worry and say, What we gonna eat? Or what we gonna drink? Or what we gonna wear?

32. Your heavenly Father knows you need all these things.

33. But put Gods kingdom and doin right first, and all these things will come to ya.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

34. So dont be frettin bout tomorrow, cause tomorrowll take care of itself. Todays got enough trouble of its own.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 14**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya, when Jesus spoke those words, He turned back to the crowd and opened His mouth again, sayin: Listen up, I mean it, dont be judgin, or youll get judged yourself.
2. Cause the way ya judge folks, thats how youll get judged too; and however ya measure stuff, well, its gonna come right back atcha.
3. Now why in the world you lookin at that speck in your buddys eye when ya aint even payin attention to that big ol' log in your own?
4. Or how you fixin to tell your friend: Let me get that speck outta your eyewhen you got a whole dang beam stickin outta yours?
5. You hypocrite! First, get that beam outta your own eye; then youll be able to see clear enough to help your brother with his speck.
6. Dont be throwin' around whats holy to the dogs, and dont be givin' your pearls to pigs, or theyll just walk all over 'em and come back to bite ya.
7. Ask, and itll be given to ya; seek, and youre gonna find; knock, and the doors gonna open up for ya.
8. Every single person that asks gets something; the one who seeks will find; and the one who knocks, well, that door's comin right open.
9. Now, tell me, what kinda man among you, if his son asks for bread, is gonna hand him a rock?
10. Or if the boy asks for fish, is he gonna give him a snake?
11. If yall, bein the way ya are, know how to give good gifts to your kiddos, how much more will your Father in Heaven give good stuff to them that ask Him?
12. So, whatever ya want folks to do to ya, you go on and do it for them too, cause that theres the law and the prophets rolled up in one.
13. Go on in through the narrow gate; cause the wide gate and easy path lead straight to trouble, and lots of

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

folks goin' that way.

14. Cause the gates narrow and the ways tight leadin to life, and theres only a handful thats gonna find it.

15. Watch out for them false prophets, comin at ya lookin all fluffy like sheep, but deep down, theys ravenous wolves.

16. Youll know em by their fruits. Do folks pick grapes off thorn bushes, or figs from thistles?

17. Just like a good tree produces good fruit; but a bad tree? Well, its gonna produce nothin but rotten fruit.

18. A good tree cant produce bad fruit, and a rotten tree aint gonna bear good fruit.

19. Every tree that aint givin good fruit is gonna get chopped down and tossed in the fire.

20. So remember, youll know em by their fruits.

21. Not everyone who calls out to me, Lord, Lord, is gonna get in the Kingdom up in Heaven; its the ones who do what my Father wants wholl see it.

22. Many folks will come to me on that day, sayin: Lord, Lord, didnt we predict the future in Your name, and cast out demons in Your name, and do a whole heap of wonders?

23. And Ill tell em straight up: I never knew ya; take a hike, you who do wrong.

24. So, anyone who hears these words of mine and puts em into action, Ill compare 'em to a wise man who built his house on a rock

25. And the rain fell, the floods showed up, the winds blew and beat against that house; and it didnt fall, cause it was built on solid rock.

26. But everyone who hears these words of mine and dont do em? Well, Id say theyre like a foolish man who built his house on sand

27. And the rain fell, the floods came, the winds blew and beat on that house; and it went crashin down, and oh, what a great fall it was.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 15**

1. Well now, yall listen here, Jesus done wrapped up all that preachin and looked around at the crowd, sayin: Yall heard what I taught before I headed up to see my Daddy; so, whoever remembers what I told ya and puts

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

it into action, Ill lift 'em up on the last day.

2. So, right then, when Jesus finished speakin, he noticed some folks were scratchin their heads, wonderin what he meant bout the law of Moses; they just couldnt wrap their minds round the idea that old stuff was gone and everythings brand new.

3. And he told em: Dont be all surprised I said old things done passed away, and everythins startin fresh and new.

4. Looky here, Im tellin ya the law Moses got aint no more cause its fulfilled.

5. Im the one who gave yall that law, Im the one who made a deal with my folks Israel; so basically, that laws wrapped up in me, cause I came to finish it off, and theres a time it all ends.

6. Now, dont think Im out to trash the prophets; whatever aint happened through me will surely come to pass, I promise ya that.

7. So when I told ya old thingsve passed away, I aint throwin' out all them words about whats comin next.

8. Look, the deal I made with my folks aint all done yet; but the law Moses received has got its end in me.

9. Check it out, Im the law, and Im the light. Just keep your eyes on me, hang in there till the end, and yall gonna live; cause for anyone who sticks it out till the end, Im givin eternal life.

10. Now, I done told ya the commandments, so keep em close. That right theres the law and the prophets, cause they been speakin' bout me for real.

11. Well, then Jesus finished up that chat and spoke to the twelve he picked out:

12. Yall are my crew, and youre a light for this here people, who are the leftover kin of the house of Joseph.

13. And hey, this heres the land youll be claimin for your own; the Fathers handed it over to ya.

14. And at no point did the Father tell me to go blab bout it to your brothers in Jerusalem.

15. They never did give me the lowdown bout the other tribes of the house of Israel, that the Father led away from home.

16. Heres what the Father did tell me to say:

17. I got other sheep not in this herd; I gotta go fetch em too, and theyll hear my voice; and we gonna have one

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

big herd with one shepherd.

18. But since they were stubborn and didnt believe, they just couldnt get what I was sayin; so I was told to keep quiet bout what the Father wanted from me.

19. But listen here, Im tellin ya straight, the Father gave me the word, and Im passin it on: yall were kept apart cause of their wrongdoings; thats why they dont even know youre out there.

20. And Im tellin ya again, the Father set apart the other tribes cause of their sins; so they dont have a clue bout em neither.

21. And Ill say it one more time, yall are the ones I was speakin bout: I got other sheep not in this fold; I gotta reel em in, and theyll hear my voice; and therell be one big fold with one shepherd.

22. Well, they didnt quite catch what I meant, reckonin it was about the Gentiles; they just didnt see that the Gentilesd be turned round by their preachin.

23. And they didnt get that when I said theyd hear my voice; nor did they understand I wouldnt be showin myself to the Gentiles, cept through the Holy Ghost.

24. But lookie here, yall have heard my voice and seen me; youre my sheep, and youre counted among those the Father handed over to me.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 16**

1. Well now, I gotta tell ya, Jesus is gonna hightail it over to those other lost sheep from Israel. In them last days, the good word's gonna spread to the Gentiles first, then right back to the folks from Israel. It's gonna be a sight when the Lords people can finally see eye to eye, all thanks to Him bringing back Zion. This heres around A.D. 34.

2. And Im tellin ya the truth, I got more sheep out there that ain't from these parts, nor Jerusalem, or even anywhere 'round there where Ive had a chance to preach.

3. Now, the folks Im jawin about aint even heard my voice yet; I aint never showed myself to em neither.

4. But the big man above told me I gotta go to em, so they can hear me and be counted as my sheep, cause we gotta have one big ol fold and one shepherd; reckon that's why Im off to show myself to them.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

5. And heres what Im tellin' you: write all this down after I'm gone, so if my folks in Jerusalem, the ones whove seen me and been with me while I was preachin, dont ask the Father in my name to know bout you by the Holy Ghost, or even of them other tribes they ain't never heard of, then this here stuff you write down is gonna stick around and be shown to the Gentiles, so that through all them Gentiles, the leftovers of their kin whore scattered round this earth 'cause they dont believe, might finally come in, or at least learn bout me, their Redeemer.

6. And you bet Ill gather em up from all corners of the earth; gonna fulfill that good ol promise the Father made to the whole house of Israel.

7. Bless them Gentiles, cause they believe in me and the Holy Ghosts got their backs, givin' em a good witness about me and the Father.

8. Listen up now, cause the Father says, since theyve got faith in me, and yall in the house of Israel dont believe, the truths gonna roll on in to the Gentiles in the last days, and the fullness of all this is gonna be spilled out to em.

9. But woes betide those Gentiles who dont believe for even though theyve been prancin round this land, pushin my folks from Israel away; my people from Israel have been thrown out, trampled underfoot by em folks.

10. And seein as the Fathers been merciful to the Gentiles, but also layin down judgment on my people from Israel, Im tellin you straight, after all that, and Ive put my people of Israel through the wringer, gettin em hurt, afflicted, killed, thrown out, and made to be hated and a punchline

11. So heres what the Fathers got for ya: When them Gentiles go messin' round with my gospel, turnin' their noses up at the fullness of it, thinkin theyre better than all folks and puffed up with pride, and filled up with all sorts of lies, trickery, mischief, hypocrisy, murders, shady dealings, and all kinds of secret sin; if they up and do all that and spurn the fullness of my gospel, the Father says, Ill pull the fullness of my gospel right outta their reach.

12. And then Ill bring to mind the promise I made to my folks, the house of Israel, and Ill be bringin my

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

gospel to em like I said I would.

13. And Im gonna show you, Israel, that those Gentiles aint gonna have a lick of power over you; no sir, Ill keep my promise to you, house of Israel, and you'll come to know the full measure of my gospel.

14. But if the Gentiles will turn around and come back to me, the Father says, theyll get counted among my people, thats the house of Israel right there.

15. And I wont let my people from Israel be walkin around among em, gettin trampled on, not from the Fathers view.

16. But if they dont turn to me and listen to my voice, Ill let em go their way, yep, Ill let my people from Israel get walked on and trampled down, and theys gonna be like salt that lost its flavor, good for nothin but to get tossed out and stepped on by my people, the house of Israel.

17. I swear, Im tellin ya, the Fathers commanded me to say this here: Im supposed to give this bunch this land as their inheritance.

18. And then, what the prophet Isaiah said is gonna come to pass, it goes like this:

19. Them watchmen are gonna lift up their voices; and theyll sing together, cause they gonna see eye to eye when the Lord brings Zion back.

20. Yall break out in joy, sing together, you lonely spots of Jerusalem; the Lords comforted His people, Hes redeemed Jerusalem.

21. The Lords rolled up His holy arm where all nations can see; and everybody from all over the worlds gonna witness the salvation of God.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 17**

1. Well now, when Jesus got done sayin all that, he looked around at all them folks again and said, Listen up yall, my times comin real soon.

2. I can tell ya, yall ain't quite gettin everything Im saying here what the Good Lord told me to share with ya right now.

3. So yall go on back home, chew on what I just told ya, and ask the Father, in my name, to help ya



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

understand, and get ready in yer minds for tomorrow, cause Ill be back with ya.

4. But now Im fixin to head on to the Father and to show myself to them lost tribes of Israel, cause they ain't lost to Him; He knows right where He sent em.

5. And after He said that, He looked around at the crowd again and saw them folks all teary-eyed, starin at Him like they wanted Him to hang around a bit longer.

6. He told em, I gotta tell ya, my heart's just full of compassion for yall.

7. Got anyone sick among ya? Bring em here. Anyone who cant walk, cant see, ors got some other ailment? Bring em on over, and Ill take care of em cause I truly care about yall. My heart's overflowin' with mercy.

8. I reckon yall wanna see what Ive done for your buddies over in Jerusalem, cause I can tell your faith's strong enough for me to heal ya.

9. And as soon as He said that, all them folksevery single one of emwent on up with their sick and their hurt, with the lame and the blind, and all them who was suffering in some way; and He healed every last one of em as they came forward.

10. All of em, healed and whole, bowed down at His feet and worshiped Him; and as many folks that could get close enough, they were kissin His feet and the tears were flowin like a river.

11. And then Jesus told em to bring the little ones over.

12. So they brought them youngsters and set em all down on the ground round Him, and Jesus was standin right there in the middle; and the crowd made way till all them little ones were gathered up with Him.

13. And once they got all the kiddos there, Jesus told the crowd to get on their knees and hit the ground.

14. Then when they knelt down, Jesus felt a groanin inside him and said, Father, Im troubled by all the wickedness the folks in Israel are up to.

15. And after He said that, He knelt down on the ground too; and shoot, He prayed to the Father, and what He prayed cant even be put into words, and the crowd there bore witness to what they heard.

16. And this is how they shared it: Ain't no eyes ever seen or ears ever heard anything as grand and amazing as what we saw and heard Jesus speak to the Father.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

17. Ain't no tongue can say it, no man can write it down, and no mind can come up with such splendid things as what we saw and heard Him say; and nobody can imagine how overjoyed we felt when we heard Him prayin' for us to the Father.

18. When Jesus wrapped up prayin to the Father, He got up; but let me tell ya, the joy of that crowd was so great that they were just blown away.

19. Then Jesus spoke to em and told em to get up.

20. And they stood up off the ground, and He said, Yall are blessed because of your faith. And lemme tell ya, my joy's just over the moon."

21. And once He said that, tears started flowin, and the folks bear witness to it, and He took them little ones one at a time, blessed em, and prayed for em to the Father.

22. After He done that, He shed some more tears;

23. Then He spoke to the crowd and said, Check out your little ones.

24. And when they looked up to see, they cast their gazes towards the heavens, saw the skies partin, angels comin down outta heaven like they was wrapped in fire; they came down and surrounded the little ones, all wrapped up in fire; and them angels was lookin after em.

25. And the crowd saw and heard and gave their testimony; and they knew their story was true cause every single one of em saw and heard it for themselves; and there was about two thousand and five hundred souls there, including men, women, and children.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 18**

1. Well, let me tell ya, Jesus told them disciples to rustle up some bread 'n wine for Him.

2. And while they was fetchin' that bread 'n wine, He told the crowd to sit down on the good ol' ground.

3. Once them disciples came back with the bread 'n wine, He took the bread, broke it up, blessed it like a Sunday meal, and handed it out to the disciples, tellin' 'em to eat up.

4. After they filled their bellies, He told 'em to share with the crowd.

5. Once the crowd had their fill, He told the disciples: Y'all gotta pick one of you to be ordained, and I'll give

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

him the power to break bread, bless it, and hand it out to my church folks, all those who believe and get baptized in my name.

6. And this heres somethin' yall always gotta stick to, just like I done, breakin' bread and blessin' it and givin' it to ya.

7. Yall gotta do this in memory of my body, which I done showed you. It'll be a testament to the Father that y'all always remember me. And if ya keep me in your hearts, my Spirit will be with you.

8. Now, when He said this, He told the disciples to take that cup o' wine and drink it, and to hand it out to the crowd too.

9. So they did just that, drank up and got filled, givin' it to the crowd who likewise drank and got their fill.

10. After the disciples done all this, Jesus told 'em: Yall are blessed for what ya done here, 'cause this fulfills my commands, and it shows the Father you're willin' to follow what I told ya.

11. And this is what you gotta do for folks who repent and get baptized in my name; do it in memory of my blood, which I shed for you, so you can show the Father that you're always rememberin' me. And if you do that, my Spirit will be right there with ya.

12. And Im givin' ya a commandment to do these things. If ya keep doin' these, y'all will be blessed, 'cause you're built on my rock.

13. But if any of ya stray too far from this, ain't built on my rock, you're on shaky ground; and when that rain comes pourin', and the floods rise up, and the winds start howlin, youre gonna fall, 'cause the gates of hell are lookin to welcome ya.

14. So yall be blessed if ya keep my commandments, the ones the Father gave me to hand on to ya.

15. Listen here, Im serious when I say ya gotta watch and pray all the time, or else that ol devil's gonna get ya, leadin' ya off like a sheep strayin' from the herd.

16. Just like Ive prayed amongst ya, yall should pray in my church, among my folks who repent and get baptized in my name. Im the light, and Ive set an example for ya.

17. Now when Jesus finished speakin' to His disciples, He turned back to the crowd and said:

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. Listen up, I say it again, you gotta watch and pray all the time to avoid temptations; 'cause that ol' Satan's itchin' to have ya, lookin' to sift ya like wheat.

19. So yall need to always pray to the Father in my name;

20. And whatever ya ask the Father in my name if its right and you truly believe it'll happen well then it'll be given to ya.

21. Pray with your family to the Father, always in my name, so your wives and kids can be blessed.

22. And listen, yall should get together often; don't be turnin' folks away when they come to see ya, but let 'em come on in and dont push 'em away;

23. But make sure you pray for 'em, dont be kickin' 'em out; and if they come around a lot, you better pray for 'em to the Father, in my name.

24. So hold up that light so it shines for the world to see. Im that light which yall should hold up thats what Ive shown ya. Yall see me prayin' to the Father, and yall been witnessin' it too.

25. You know Ive told ya that none of ya should be goin off alone, but rather come to me, so you can feel and see; that's how yall should act towards the world; and if anyone breaks this commandment, they're just walkin' on a slippery slope into temptation.

26. Now it came to pass that after Jesus said all this, He turned His eyes back to those disciples He had picked and said to em:

27. Listen up, Im givin' ya another commandment, and then I gotta go to my Father to fulfill the other commands Hes given me.

28. Now pay attention, heres the commandment Im givin' ya: dont let nobody knowingly partake of my flesh and blood if they ain't worthy, when yall are ministerin' it;

29. Cause whoever eats and drinks my flesh and blood unworthily, well, theyre just eatin' and drinkin' damnation unto their own souls; so if ya know someone ain't worthy to partake, you gotta stop 'em.

30. But dont just throw em out, yknow, you still gotta minister to 'em and pray for 'em to the Father, in my name; and if they repent and get baptized in my name, then yall can receive em and minister to em with my

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

flesh and blood.

31. But if they dont repent, well, they can't be counted among my folks, 'cause I don't want nobody destroyin' my people; 'cause I know my sheep, and theyre numbered.

32. But hey, dont kick em out of your gatherings or places of worship; keep ministerin' to them, 'cause ya don't knowthey might come back, repent, and return to me with a full heart, and Ill heal em; and youll have played a part in bringin' 'em salvation.

33. So keep these words Ive told ya, so you don't end up under condemnation; cause woe to anyone the Father condemns.

34. And I'm givin' ya these commandments 'cause theres been some quarrels among yall. Blessed are ya if y'all aint got no squabbles goin' on.

35. Now Im headin' to the Father, 'cause its what's best for you that I go.

36. And it came to pass that when Jesus finished these words, He laid hands on each of the disciples He chose, one by one, until He had touched 'em all, and spoke to em personally.

37. And the crowd didnt hear the words He said, so they didnt take note; but the disciples made sure to record that He gave 'em power to bestow the Holy Ghost. And let me tell ya, Ill show yall later that this record is true.

38. Once Jesus touched 'em all, a cloud came down and overshadowed the crowd so they couldnt see Him no more.

39. And while they was in that cloud, He slipped away from em and ascended up to heaven. And the disciples saw it and made sure to write that He went up again to heaven.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 19**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, when Jesus floated off to heaven, that big ol' crowd scattered like roaches when the lights come on, and every fella scooped up his wife and kiddos to head on home.

2. Folks started chattin quick, even before the sun dropped behind the hills, sayin theyd spotted Jesus and that hed been good to em, and he was gonna show his face again tomorrow.

3. Yep, all night long, word spread about Jesus; folks was so eager that a heap of em worked real hard all night

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

just to be where they thought Jesus would show up come mornin.

4. Sure nuff, when the sun peeked up and the crowd gathered again, there was Nephi with his lil brother, the one he brought back to life, Timothy, plus his boy, Jonas, and also Mathoni and Mathonihah, his bro, Kumen, Kumenonhi, Jeremiah, Shemnon, Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah too. Those were the chosen ones by Jesus, and they stepped right up into the center of that big ol' crowd.

5. And golly, that crowd was so large they had to split em up into twelve groups.

6. The twelve started teachin the folks; they got em all kneelin down on the ground to pray to the Father in Jesus' name.

7. And the disciples, they was prayin to the Father too, right there in Jesus' name. Then they got up and went to ministerin to the peeps.

8. Now, when they spoke them same words Jesus had said, there wasnt a single change in 'em, they knelt down once more and prayed to the Father in Jesus' name.

9. They prayed for what they wanted most, hopin the Holy Ghost would be given to em.

10. And when they wrapped up their prayers, they headed on down to the waters edge, and the crowd followed along.

11. So, Nephi stepped into the water and got baptized.

12. He popped back up outta the water and started baptizin folks. He baptized all them Jesus had picked out.

13. Once everybody was baptized and had come up from the water, the Holy Ghost came upon em, fillin 'em up with the Holy Ghost and fire.

14. Heck, they were surrounded like they was wrapped up in flames; it came down from heaven, and the crowd saw it and bore witness to it, while angels came cruisin down from heaven to help em out.

15. And while them angels was busy helpin the disciples, wouldnt ya know it, Jesus showed up right in the middle and got to ministerin' to 'em.

16. He talked to the crowd and told em to kneel down again on that ground, and he wanted his disciples to do it too.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

17. When they all got down on their knees, he told his disciples to pray.

18. Well, they kicked off their prayers, callin Jesus their Lord and God.

19. Then Jesus up and moved a lil' ways from em, bent down to the ground, and said:

20. Father, I sure do appreciate you givin the Holy Ghost to these folks I picked; its cause they believe in me that I chose em outta the world.

21. Father, Im askin you to give the Holy Ghost to all them wholl believe in what they say.

22. Father, youve given em the Holy Ghost cause they believe in me; you can see theys all believers cause you hear em prayin to me, and they pray to me cause Im right here with em.

23. And now, Father, Im prayin for them, and all those wholl believe what they tell, so they can have faith in me, so I can be in them just like you, Father, are in me, so we can be one.

24. So when Jesus got done prayin to the Father, he went on back to his disciples, and they still was prayin without stoppin for a breath, not usin a heap of words cause they knew what to say, and they was filled with desire.

25. And Jesus blessed em while they was prayin to him, and he wore a smile that lit up his face and glowed on em, and they shone bright like the clothes of Jesus; it was whiter than anything youd ever seen on this earth.

26. Jesus told em, Keep prayin now; but they didnt stop.

27. Then he turned away from em, moved a little ways off, and bowed down again, prayin to the Father, sayin:

28. Father, Im grateful youve cleaned up those I chose cause of their faith, and Im prayin for em and for those wholl believe in what they say, so they might be cleaned up in me, through faith in what they say, just like theyre cleaned up in me.

29. Father, I aint prayin for the whole world, just for those youve given to me outta that world cause of their faith, that they might be purified in me, that I might be in em like you, Father, are in me, so we can be one and I can be glorified in em.

30. When Jesus got done sayin all that, he came back to his disciples, and there they was prayin steady without a break, and he smiled on em again; and they was as white as snow, just like Jesus.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

31. Then he moved away again, prayin to the Father;

32. And no words could even touch on what he was prayin, and nobody could scribble it down neither.

33. The crowd heard it and took note of it; their hearts opened up, and they understood deep inside what he was sayin.

34. But Ill tell ya, the words he was prayin' was so great and so amazing that nobody could write it down or even speak it out loud.

35. So when Jesus finished prayin, he came back to the disciples and said: I aint seen faith like this among the Jews; thats why I couldnt show em such great miracles due to their doubt.

36. Truly I tell ya, none of em have seen what yall have seen; and they aint heard such great things as yall have heard.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 20**

1. Well, lemme tell ya how it went down: Jesus went ahead and told the crowd to hush up on them prayers, and he told his disciples to keep prayin' in their hearts.

2. Then he said to em, "Yall get up on your feet!" And sure enough, they stood right up.

3. Next thing ya know, he broke some bread again, blessed it, and shared it with his disciples.

4. After they had their fill, he told em to break bread and pass it out to all the folks gatherin' round.

5. Then, after that, he was passin' out wine for 'em to drink, and told em to share it with the crowd too.

6. Now, I gotta tell ya, them disciples didnt bring no bread or wine for anyone; neither did the folks out there.

7. But he sure did give em some bread to eat and some wine to drink, thats for sure.

8. He said to em, "Now listen here, eatin this bread is like eatin my body for your soul, and drinkin this wine is like drinkin my blood for your soul. Youll never be hungry or thirsty again; youll be filled right up."

9. Well, once everybody had ate and drunk, they got filled with the Spirit; and they all started shoutin' together, givin glory to Jesus, whom they could see and hear.

10. And after they done praised Jesus, he told em, "Now look here, Im finishin up what the Father told me about yall, who are a remnant of Israel."



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

11. Yall remember I spoke to ya and said when Isaiahs words come to passwell, theyre written right here, you got em laid out in front of ya, so go on and search em.
12. And Im tellin ya straight up, once they get fulfilled, thats when the covenant the Father made with his people, you folks of Israel, comes to be.
13. Then the leftovers, scattered all over this earth, gonna be gathered up from the east, the west, the south, and the north; and they gonna learn bout the Lord their God, who done redeemed em.
14. And the Father told me I should hand over this land to you, for yalls inheritance.
15. Now, if them Gentiles dont get right after all the blessin' they gonna get, after scatterin my people
16. Yall, being the remnant of Jacob, will be sent among 'em; and youll be like lions among the beasts of the forest, and like young lions messin' up flocks of sheep, causin a ruckus, and nobody gonna save em from it.
17. Your hand will be raised against your foes, and all your enemies gonna be cut off.
18. Ill gather up my folks together just like a farmer gathers his sheaves on the floor.
19. For Im gonna make my people, who have made a deal with the Father, strong as iron and tough as brass. Yall gonna take down many folks, and Ill make sure their stuff goes to the Lord, for He runs the whole earth. And just know, its me makin it happen.
20. And its comin that the sword of my justice will hang over em that day; and unless they repent, its gonna smack em good, says the Father, yes, even all them Gentile nations.
21. And I reckon Ill set up my people, you house of Israel.
22. And oh look, Im gonna set this people up right here in this land, fulfillin the covenant I made with your daddy Jacob; and itll be a New Jerusalem, with the powers of heaven right in the middle of yall; yes, Ill be hangin out with you too.
23. Now behold, Im the one Moses was talkin 'bout, sayin, "The Lord your God gonna raise up a prophet from among your own people, like me; listen to every word he says." And mark my words, if anybody dont listen to that prophet, they gonna be cut off from the people.
24. Im tellin ya, all the prophets, from Samuel on down, they all been talkin bout me.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

25. And just look at yall, youre the kids of them prophets; you come from Israel and yall are part of that covenant the Father made with your daddies, sayin to Abraham that in your seed, all the folks of the earth gonna be blessed.

26. The Father raised me up first for yall, sent me to bless ya by turnin ya away from your sins, cause youre the kids of the promise

27. And once yall been blessed, then the Father gonna keep his promise with Abraham, sayin: In your seed, all the folks of the earth gonna be blessedcomin through me with the Holy Ghost bein poured out on the Gentiles, and that blessed them strong, scatterin my people, you house of Israel.

28. Yall gonna be a scourge for the folks of this land. But hey now, once they get the fullness of my gospel, if they harden their hearts against me, Ill just bounce their sins right back to em, says the Father.

29. And I aint forgettin the covenant I made with my people; I promised Id gather em up in my own time, and give em back their dads land for their inheritance, which is Jerusalem, the land promised unto em forever, says the Father.

30. And its gonna come to pass when the fullness of my gospel gets preached to em;

31. And theyll believe in me as Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and pray to the Father in my name.

32. Then their watchmen gonna lift up their voices, and theyll sing together; for they gonna see eye to eye.

33. Then the Father gonna gather em back up and hand em Jerusalem for their inheritance.

34. Then they gonna burst into joysing together, yall barren spots of Jerusalem; 'cause the Father done comforted his people, and hes redeemed Jerusalem.

35. The Fathers flexed his holy arm in front of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth gonna see the salvation from the Father; me and the Father are one.

36. And its gonna come to pass, like its written: Wake up, wake up again, and put on your strength, O Zion; put on your pretty clothes, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for from now on, aint nobody uncircumcised or unclean gonna get in here.

37. Shake off that dust; rise up, sit down, O Jerusalem; free yourself from them bands round your neck, O

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

captive daughter of Zion.

38. Cause the Lord says: You done sold yourselves for nothin', but you'll be bought back without no cash.

39. Im tellin you the honest truth, my people gonna know my name; yeah, on that day, they'll see Im the one speakin.

40. And yall gonna say: How beautiful are the feet of them that bring good news on the mountains, that shout bout peace; that bring good tidings of good, shoutin about salvation; that tells Zion: Your God reigns!

41. Then there gonna be a shout: Get outta here, get outta here, leave that place; dont touch anything unclean; get outta her midst; be clean that holds the vessels of the Lord.

42. You wont need to rush out or take flight; the Lord gonna go before ya, and the God of Israel gonna have your back.

43. Now look, my servant gonna be smart about things; hes gonna be lifted up and honored and real high.

44. Many folks gonna be shocked at himhis appearance was so messed up, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men

45. So he gonna sprinkle many nations; kings gonna be speechless cause they gonna see what they never heard before.

46. Im tellin you, all this is surely comin, just like the Father commanded me. Then this covenant the Father made with his people gonna get fulfilled; and Jerusalem gonna be livin' again with my people, and it'll be their inheritance.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 21**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya, Israel's gonna come on back together once that Book of Mormon gets out thereThem Gentiles gonna set themselves up as a free folks right here in AmericaIf they got faith and follow the rules, they'll be alright; but if not, well, they'll be outta luck and in a heap of troubleIsrael's gonna build that New Jerusalem, and those lost tribes are fixin' to return. 'Bout A.D. 34.

2. Now Im tellin ya, heres a sign fer ya, so you'll know when its all about to go downI'm gonna gather my people, the house of Israel, who've been spread out all over the place, and I'm gonna set up my Zion right back

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

among em;

3. And listen up, heres your signcause Im tellin ya, when the stuff Ive been sayin, and what Im gonna say later on, and all the power of the Holy Ghost from the Father starts reachin them Gentiles, theyll know bout this little remnant of Jacob and my folks wholl be scattered;

4. Truly, truly, Im sayin this: when all this comes from the Father, itll be passed down to you;

5. Cause its wise in the Fathers eyes that they be settled right here on this land, standin tall as a free people with the Fathers power, so these things can come through to your little seed, fulfillin that promise He made to His people, O house of Israel;

6. So then, when these works and the stuff that happens among ya later on comes from them Gentiles, to your folks whore gonna fade away cause of their disbelief and bad deeds;

7. See, this is how the Father wants it, that it comes from the Gentiles, showin off His power to em, hopin they wont be stubborn, so they can repent and come find me, get baptized in my name, and learn the real truths bout my teachings, so they can be counted as my people, O house of Israel;

8. And when all this starts happenin, your folks will get wise to itthis herell be a sign for em, so they know the Fathers work is already kickin off to keep that promise made to the house of Israel.

9. And when that day rolls around, you betcha itll be somethin elsekings will be hushed up; theyll see what they never even knew was comin and ponder what theyd never heard before.

10. Cause on that day, for my sake, the Fathers gonna be busy doin a mighty fine work among em; some folks wont buy into it, but a mans gonna preach it to em anyway.

11. But Im tellin ya, my servants life is in my hands; they ain't gonna harm him, even though he might get battered on account of em. But Ill mend him up, cause Im showin em that my wisdoms bigger than all the trickery of the devil.

12. So its gonna happen that whoever dont believe in my wordsyall know me, Jesus Christ, the ones the Fathers sendin to the Gentiles and givin power to do so(just like Moses said), theyre gonna be cut off from my people holdin that covenant.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

13. And my folks, where left of Jacob, gonna be right there among the Gentiles, yeah, like a lion stridin through the forest, like a young lion messin with sheep flocks if he walks through, hes gonna trample and tear em up, and nobody can save em.

14. Their hands gonna be raised against their enemies, and all their foes will be finished off.

15. Oh, woe be it to the Gentiles if they dont turn around; for that days comin, says the Father, when Im gon wipe your horses off the map, and Im gonna smash your chariots;

16. And Im gonna knock down your towns, bringin your strongholds to naught;

17. And Im gonna get rid of all them witchy folks in your land, and you wont have no more fortune tellers;

18. Your idols are gettin chopped out too, Im takin away your statues, and you wont worship your own handiwork no more;

19. And Ill root out your groves right in the middle of ya; Im gonna lay waste to your cities.

20. And its gonna be a time when all that lyin, deceivin, envy, fights, priestcraft, and fornicatin will be done with.

21. For its gonna happen, says the Father, that on that day anybody who wont turn and come to my Beloved Son, they gonna be cut off from my people, O house of Israel;

22. And Im gonna dish out some payback and wrath upon em, just like I would on those heathens, and they aint never heard the likes of it.

23. But if theyll turn around and listen to my words, not hardenin their hearts, Ill set up my church among em, and theyll join in on the covenant and be counted as part of this remnant of Jacob, whom Ive given this land as their home;

24. And theyll help my people, the remnant of Jacob, and anybody from the house of Israel who comes along, so they can build a city to be called the New Jerusalem.

25. Then theyll help gather in my folks, where scattered across the whole land, back into the New Jerusalem.

26. And then the heavenly powers gonna come down and be among em; and Ill be right there too.

27. Then the Fathers works gonna kick off that day, when this gospel gets preached to the remnants of this

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

people. Im tellin ya, that day will mark the start of the Fathers work among all my scattered people, yep, even the lost tribes that the Father led away from Jerusalem.

28. Yep, the works gonna begin with all the scattered folks of mine, with the Father makin a path for em to come to me, so they can call on the Father in my name.

29. And then the works gonna start, with the Father among all nations, preparin the way for His people to find their way back home to the land thats theirs.

30. And theyll come out from all over; they wont be rushin or takin off in a panic, cause Ill be out front, says the Father, and Ill have their backs too.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 22**

1. In the last days, Zion and her parts are gonna get set up nice, and Israel's gonna be gathered up with a whole lotta mercy and kindnessTheyre gonna come out on topKinda like what Isaiah said in chapter 54. Round about A.D. 34.

2. And then whats been writtens gonna come round: Sing, oh barren lady, you who aint had no kids; let out a holler and shout, you who didnt go through childbirth; cause theres gonna be more kiddos from the lonely than from the ones married up, says the Lord.

3. Stretch out your tent, and let em pull the curtains wide; dont hold back, lengthen them cords, and make them stakes nice and strong;

4. Cause youre gonna break out to the right and the left, and your kiddos are gonna inherit the nations and fill up them empty towns.

5. Dont you fret, cause you aint gonna be ashamed; dont be confused, cause you wont be put to shame; youll forget all that shame from your younger days, and you aint gonna remember the shame from your widowhood no more.

6. For your maker, your husband, the Lord of Hosts, thats what Hes called; and your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israelthe whole earths God, thats His name.

7. The Lords called you like a woman all alone and hurtin in spirit, and a young wife who got left behind, says

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

your God.

8. Now, I mightve left you for a little bit, but Ill gather you up with a whole lotta mercy.

9. For just a tiny spell, I turned my face way from you, but Ill have mercy on ya forever, says the Lord your Redeemer.

10. Cause this heres like Noahs waters to me; just like I promised those waters wouldnt flood the earth again, I promised I wont get mad at you.

11. Though the mountains might move and the hills might shake, my kindness wont fade from you, and my peace covenant wont be taken away, says the Lord whos got mercy on you.

12. Oh you poor soul, tossed round by tempests and feelin all alone! Listen up, Im gonna lay your stones with pretty colors, and set your foundations with sapphires.

13. And Im gonna make your windows outta agates, and your gates outta hot red stones, and all your borders gonna be filled with lovely stones.

14. And all your kids are gonna be taught by the Lord; and your kiddos peace is gonna be mighty good.

15. In doing right, youll be set up strong; you wont have to worry bout oppression, cause you wont be scared, and terror wont be comin near you.

16. Look, theyre surely gonna gather against you, but not on my watch; whoever tries to come against you is gonna fall for your sake.

17. See, I made the blacksmith whos workin the coals in the fire, and makin his tools; I also made the destroyer, whos here to wreck things.

18. No weapon formed against yous gonna prosper; and every tongue that speaks out against you in court, you gonna put them in their place. This heres the inheritance of the Lords servants, and their righteousness comes from me, says the Lord.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 23**

1. Well now, listen here, I reckon yall oughta search fer these things. Yep, Im tellin ya, its a commandment Im givin ya to look into these things real good; cause them words of Isaiah are mighty important.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. Sure as shootin, he was talkin bout everything that concerns my people from the house of Israel; so it only makes sense that hed be talkin to the Gentiles too.
3. Everything he said has happened and is gonna happen, just like he said it would.
4. So pay close attention to my words; write down what Ive told ya, and when the time is right and its the Fathers will, these words will go out to the Gentiles.
5. And whoever listens to my words, repents, and gets baptized, well, theyll be saved. Yall better search the prophets, cause theres a whole lot of em testifyin about this stuff.
6. Now, it so happened that after Jesus said these words, He told em again, after He done gone through the scriptures they already had. He said, Now look here, I want yall to write down some other scriptures that yall havent got yet.
7. Then He told Nephi: Bring me that record youve been keepin.
8. And when Nephi brought out them records and laid em before Him, Jesus looked at em and said:
9. Now Im tellin yall true, I told my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, to testify to this here people that when the Father glorifies His name in Me, theres gonna be a whole mess of saints risin up from the dead, showin themselves to many folks, and helpin em out. Now didnt I tell ya that?
10. And the disciples piped up sayin: Yessiree, Lord, Samuel done prophesied just like You said, and everything came to pass.
11. And Jesus replied, How come yall aint wrote down that many saints popped up and showed themselves and helped folks out?
12. Well, Nephi suddenly remembered that this here thing wasnt written down after all.
13. So Jesus said it needed writin; and sure enough, just like He commanded, it got wrote down.
14. And it came to pass that after Jesus had explained all them scriptures they had in one big ol bunch, He told em to teach the things He explained to em.

## **3 Nephi Chapter 24**

1. Well, it happened that He told em to write down them words the Father gave to Malachi, so he could fill em



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

in. Then, after they put it all down, He went on to explain it. Heres what He shared with em: The Father said to MalachiYall best pay attention, cause Im sendin my messenger whos gonna clear the path for me, and the Lord youre searchin for is fixin to show up at His temple, the messenger of the covenant, the one that makes your heart warm; yep, Hes comin, says the Lord on high.

2. But who in the world can handle the day He shows up, and who can stand tall when He appears? Hes gonna burn brighter than a blacksmiths fire, and folks better be ready to get scrubbed clean.

3. Hell be sittin there like a silversmith, purifyin silver; Hell clean up the sons of Levi and refine em like gold and silver, so they can bring a right offering to the Lord.

4. Then Judah and Jerusalems offerings are gonna smell real sweet to the Lord, just like back in the good ol days, like long ago.

5. And Ill be comin near to judge yall; Ill be a fast witness against them sorcerers, the cheatin husbands, them false swearers, and those who take advantage of the hired hands, the widows and orphans, and turn their back on strangers, and dont fear me, says the Lord on high.

6. See, Im the Lord, I dont change; thats why yall, the sons of Jacob, aint been wiped out.

7. From way back when your daddies was around, yall drifted away from my laws and didnt hold onto em. Come back to me and Ill come back to you, says the Lord on high. But youre askin, How in the world do we come back?

8. Can a man rob God? Well shoot, yall done robbed me. But youre wonderin, How we robbin you? Its through them tithes and offerings.

9. Youre under a curse cause youve robbed me, and it aint just you, its this whole nation.

10. Bring all them tithes to the storehouse, so theres food in my house; go ahead and test me on this, says the Lord on high, and see if I wont open up the windows of heaven and bless you so much you wont have room to hold it all.

11. And Ill take care of that devourer on your behalf, and he wont ruin the fruits of your land; and your vines aint gonna drop their fruit too soon in the fields, says the Lord on high.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

12. All them nations will call you blessed, cause you'll be a land that brings joy, says the Lord on high.
13. Your words have been mighty tough on me, says the Lord. Yet you're askin, What in the world have we said against you?
14. You've said it don't do no good to serve God, and what's the profit in keepin His rules and walkin all sad-like before the Lord on high?
15. Now we're callin the proud folks happy; yep, the ones up to no good look like they're sittin pretty; even them who tempt God seem to get by just fine.
16. Then those who feared the Lord were chattin with each other a lot, and the Lord listened and caught what they said; and a book of remembrance got written up for those who feared the Lord and thought on His name.
17. And they gonna be mine, says the Lord on high, on that day when I gather up my treasures; I'll spare 'em just like a good dad spares his own son who's down there servin him.
18. Then y'all gonna turn around and see the difference between the righteous and the wicked, between the ones who serve God and the ones who don't serve Him at all.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 25**

1. Well now, here comes that day that's gonna burn hotter than a fire in an oven; them proud folks and all them wicked doers, they gonna be like dried grass, just aburnin upaint nothin gonna be left, says the Big Guy upstairs.
2. But for y'all who hold fast for my name, the Son of Righteousness is gonna shine down with some healing, like a coon dog waggin' its tail; and y'all gonna go out like happy calves just arunin round in the barn.
3. And y'all are gonna stomp all over them wicked folks, cause they gonna be nothin but ashes under your boots when I decide to take care of this, says the Lord of Hosts.
4. Don't you forget that law of Moses, my good ol servant, which I laid down for him way back in Horeb for all of Israel, with all the rules and regulations.
5. Lookie here, I'm gonna send you Elijah the prophet before that big ol dreadful day of the Lord rolls in;
6. And he's gonna turn the hearts of the daddies to their kids, and the kids back to their daddies, or else I might

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

just come in and bring a curse on this here earth.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 26**

1. Well now, let me tell ya, Jesus was breakin' it down for everyone, from the little ones to the big folksthose kids were spillin' out some mighty fine words that just couldnt be penned downfolks in the Church of Christ were all sharin' what they had. This was all goin' on round A.D. 34.
2. So, Jesus laid all this out for the crowd, givin' em the scoop on everything, from the tiny details to the big ol' stuff.
3. He said, "Now yall listen up, these here scriptures you ain't got with ya, the Father told me to pass 'em on to you; it was smart of Him, seein that future generations needed em."
4. And he spilled the beans on everything, right from the get-go until he makes his grand returnyep, even everything thatll happen on this ol' earth, 'til the fire gets so hot it melts like butter, and everythings all rolled up like a scroll, n the heavens and earth start to fade away;
5. And theres gonna be a final day when all folks, all those related and from every nation and tongue, stand before God, reckonin with what they done, whether its been good or bad
6. If its good, theyll get to live forever; if its bad, well, theyre in for a world of hurt; both sides weighin' in equally, all according to the mercy, justice, and holiness wrapped up in Christ, who was around before time even started.
7. Now I tell ya, there ain't no way to write down even a hundredth of what Jesus really taught the folks;
8. But take a gander at Nephi's plates, 'cause they hold a good bit of what he was teachin'.
9. And heres what Ive penned down, a little slice of what he shared with everyone; and I wrote it hopin' itd get back to this people from the Gentiles, just like Jesus said it would.
10. And when they get this here, which is real important for em to have first, itll test their faith, and if they believe all that, then the big stuffll be shown to em.
11. But if they dont believe it, well, the big stuffs gonna be kept from em, and that aint good for em.
12. I was fixin' to write down everything that was carved on Nephis plates, but the Lord stopped me, sayin:

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

"Im gonna test my folks faith."

13. So here I am, Mormon, writin' what the Lord told me to put down. Now Im callin it a day on my talkin and gonna keep writin' whats been commanded of me.

14. Now, listen here, I want ya'll to know that the Lord truly taught the people for three whole days; and after that, he was showin' himself to em a whole lot, breakin' bread often, blessin it, and handin it out.

15. And it came to pass that he was teachin and helpin the little ones in that crowd we was talkin bout, loosenin' their tongues so they could say some amazin' things way beyond what he had told the grown folks; he let em speak up.

16. And after he went on up to heavenwhen he showed himself to em again, and then went back to the Father, after fixin' up the sick and the lame, givin sight to the blind, openin' the ears of the deaf, doin all sorts of healings, even raisin a man from the dead, and showin his power

17. Well, the next day, folks gathered around, they could see and hear those little ones; even the tiniest babies were chirpin' away with marvelous things; and wouldnt ya know it, they were sayin' stuff that no one was allowed to write down.

18. And those disciples Jesus picked out started baptizin' and teachin' anybody that came round; and all who went under in Jesuss name got filled with the Holy Ghost.

19. A whole bunch of them got to witness and hear things that just ain't right to be writ down.

20. They were teachin, helpin' each other out; they shared everything, treatin each other fair and square.

21. And they went and did all the things just like Jesus told em to do.

22. And all those who got baptized in the name of Jesus were known as the Church of Christ.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 27**

1. Well now, Jesus is sayin the Church oughta be called by His nameHis whole mission and the sacrifice He made is what His gospels all aboutFolks gotta repent and get baptized so they can be made holy by the Holy GhostAnd they gotta be just like Jesus is. 'Bout A.D. 3435.

2. So, there was this time when Jesus disciples were wanderin 'round, preachin what theyd heard and seen, and

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

baptizin folks in Jesus' name, and they got together for some serious prayin and fastin.

3. Then Jesus popped up again to show Himself 'cause they were prayin to the Father in His name; He just walked right up in the middle of em and asked: What is it yall want me to give you?

4. And they replied: Lord, wed sure like to know what we oughta call this church; folks are arguin 'round about it.

5. The Lord said to 'em: Now listen here, Im tellin' ya straight up, why in the world should folks be complainin' and fussin' about this?

6. Aint they read the good book that says ya gotta take on the name of Christ, which is my name? 'Cause thats the name yall gonna be called come judgment day;

7. And anyone who takes upon 'em my name and sticks it out to the end, well, theyre gonna be saved when the day comes.

8. So, whatever yall do, make sure ya do it in my name; that means yall gotta call the church by my name; and ya gotta pray to the Father in my name so Hell bless the church for my sake.

9. How could it be my church if it ain't called in my name? If its called after Moses, then its Moses church; if its named after a man, well then, its just a mans church; but if its in my name, then its my church, as long as its built upon my gospel.

10. Im tellin ya true, yall are built on my gospel; so whatever you call it, do it in my name; so if ya call on the Father for the church, if its in my name, Hes gonna hear ya;

11. And if the church is built on my gospel, then the Fathers gonna show His mighty works through it.

12. But if it aint built on my gospel and its just schemin from men or the devil's doing, Im here to tell you they might have a good time for a spell, but then the ends gonna come, and theyll be chopped down and tossed into the fire, where they ain't gonna come back.

13. Cause their works'll follow 'em, its cause of those works they get chopped down; so keep in mind the stuff Ive shared with ya.

14. Lookit, Ive laid out my gospel for ya, and here it isI came into this world to do the Fathers will, cause He

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

sent me.

15. And the Father sent me up on that cross; and after I was lifted up there, it was so I could draw all folks to me, just like I was lifted up by men, so men should be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me and be judged on what theyve done, whether its good or bad

16. And for that reason, Ive been lifted up; so by the Fathers power, Im gonna draw all folks to me, so they can be judged on what they did.

17. And heres the deal, anyone who repents and gets baptized in my name, theyll be filled; and if they hang in there to the end, I wont hold anything against 'em before my Father come judgment day.

18. But if ya dont endure to the end, youre gonna get chopped down and tossed into the fire, and they ain't gonna be able to come back, all cause of the Fathers justice.

19. And this heres the word Hes given to the folks: Hes keepin His promises, He dont lie, and Hes fulfillin every word.

20. And aint no unclean thing can get into His kingdom; so nothin gets into His rest cept those whove washed their clothes in my blood, cause of their faith, and the turnin away from their sins, and their loyalty to the end.

21. Now heres the commandment: Repent, all yall everywhere, and come to me and get baptized in my name, so you can be made holy by the Holy Ghost, and stand clean before me on the last day.

22. Im tellin ya true, this is my gospel; and you know what you gotta do in my church; for the works you saw me do, thats what you gotta do too; cause whatever youve seen me do, thats what youll do;

23. So, if you do these things, youll be blessed cause youre gonna be lifted up on that last day.

24. Write down the things youve seen and heard, except for those things that aint allowed.

25. Write down what this people does, just like got wrote down before.

26. Cause look here, from all the books thatve been written and thatre gonna be written, this peoples gonna be judged, cause thats how folks gonna know what they did.

27. And you best believe, everythings written down by the Father; that means outta the books that get written, the worlds gonna be judged.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

28. And knowin this, youre gonna be judges of this people, based on the judgment I give ya, which is gonna be fair. So, what kinda folks oughta you be? Im here to tell ya, just like I am.

29. And now Im headin to the Father. And I tell ya true, whatever ya ask the Father in my name, Hes gonna give it to ya.

30. So, ask away, and youll get it; knock, and its gonna be opened up to ya; cause whoever asks, receives; and whoever knocks, its gonna be opened.

31. And right now, let me tell ya, Im full of joy, all 'cause of yall and this generation; yep, even the Fathers happy, and all the holy angels too, cause none of em are lost.

32. Lookit, I want you to get this; I mean the folks livin now in this generation; and not a single one of 'em are lost; and in em Ive got full joy.

33. But it does make me sad 'bout the fourth generation that's comin after you; theyre gonna be led off just like the son of perdition; theyll sell me out for silver and gold, and for stuff that moths eat up and thieves break in and steal. And on that day, Im gonna pay 'em a visit and turn their doings back on 'em.

34. And it came to pass that when Jesus finished saying all this, He told His disciples: Yall better enter in through that straight gate; 'cause its a tight gate, and the paths narrow that leads to life, and not many find it; but that gates wide, and the ways broad that leads to death, and a whole lotta folks are takin that road, till the night comes when no man can work.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 28**

1. Well, it happened that when Jesus finished sayin' all that, he turned to his disciples, goin' one by one, and asked, "So what is it yall want from me once I head back up to the Father?"

2. And all of 'em spoke up, 'cept for three, sayin': We sure hope that after weve lived our days like folks do, our workin' for ya, the job you've given us, can come to a close, so we can hurry on back to ya in your kingdom.

3. Then Jesus told 'em: Yall are blessed cause you wished for this from me; so after ya reach seventy-two years old, youll come back to me in my kingdom, and youll find rest with me.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

4. Once he said all this, he turned to them three special ones and asked: What do yall want me to do for ya when I go back to the Father?
5. And they was sad deep down, not havin' the guts to ask him what they really wanted.
6. He said to 'em: Look, I know whats goin' on in your heads, and what yall want is the same as what my good buddy John asked for me before them Jews lifted me up.
7. So yall are even more blessed, cause you aint gonna ever know the taste of death; yall will live to see all the Fathers doings for folks, till everything's just right according to his will, right when I come in my glory with the heavenly powers.
8. And yall aint gonna feel the pains of death; when I come in my glory, youll swap from this ol' mortal life to immortality quicker than a blink, and then youll be feelin blessed in my Fathers kingdom.
9. And again, you wont have no pain while youre hangin' out in the flesh, nor sadness cept for the worlds wrongdoings; and all this Ill do 'cause of what you wished for from me, cause you wanted to bring peoples souls to me while this world keeps goin.
10. So, for that reason, youll have a whole heap of joy; and youll get to sit in my Fathers kingdom; yep, your joy will be complete, just like the joy the Father gave me; and youll be just like me, cause Im just like the Father; and the Father and I are one;
11. Now, the Holy Ghost gives a shout-out about the Father and me; and the Father hands out the Holy Ghost to the folks cause of me.
12. And it just so happened, when Jesus wrapped up all this talkin', he touched each one of em with his finger except for them three who were supposed to stick around, then he took off.
13. Next thing ya know, the heavens opened up, and they got swept up to heaven, seein' and hearin' things that were just too much to even talk about.
14. And they couldnt go tell nobody bout what they heard and saw, 'cause it wasnt allowed; neither did they have the power to spill what they witnessed;
15. And they couldnt tell if they was in their bodies or not; it sure felt to em like a whole change where they



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

turned from this flesh-and-blood thing into something immortal so they could see the things of God.

16. But eventually, they went back to doin' their work down here on earth; yet they didnt share none of what they had heard or seen, cause heaven gave em strict orders not to.

17. Now, whether they was livin' or beyond that, since the day of their big ol' change, I cant say;

18. But this much I know, lookin' at whats been toldthey went all around the land and ministered to the folks, bringin' as many as would believe into the church; baptizin em, and those who got baptized received the Holy Ghost.

19. And they got thrown into jail by folks who didnt belong to the church. But them prisons couldnt hold em, 'cause they split right open.

20. Then they got tossed down into the ground; but they hit the earth with Gods word, and by his power, they were pulled up from the deep places; they were so slick, nobody could dig deep enough to keep 'em down.

21. Three times they were thrown into a furnace and came out without a scratch.

22. Twice they were chunked into a den full of wild critters; and you wouldnt believe it, they played with them beasts like a kid with a lil lamb and didnt get hurt one bit.

23. And it went down like this they went out there among all the Nephites, preachin Christs gospel to every last soul on the land; and folks turned their hearts to the Lord, gettin' all joined up to Christs church; and so that bunch of folks in that time were blessed, just like Jesus said.

24. And now its me, Mormon, wrapping up my talk about all this for a spot.

25. Look here, I was fixin to write down the names of them who wouldnt ever taste death, but the Lord said, No sir, so I didnt write em down, 'cause theyre hid away from the world.

26. But Ive seen em, and they done helped me out.

27. And let me tell ya, theyll be hangin out with the Gentiles, but the Gentiles aint gonna know 'em.

28. Theyll also be among the Jews, and guess what? The Jews aint gonna know 'em either.

29. And its gonna happen that when the Lord finds it right in his wisdom, theyll be out there helpin all the scattered tribes of Israel, and folks from all nations, languages, and people, bringin many souls to Jesus so that

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

their wish can come true, all cause of the powerful convincing goodness of God thats in em.

30. And they are like Gods angels, and if they pray to the Father in Jesuss name, they can show up to whoever seems good to em.

31. So, big ol marvelous things will be done by em before that great day when everyones gotta stand before the judgment seat of Christ;

32. Yep, even among the Gentiles, therell be some mighty big and marvelous works done by em, right before that judgment day.

33. And if ya had all them scriptures that tell about all the amazing things Jesus done, youd know that these things gotta come to pass, just like he said.

34. And woah unto the one who dont listen to Jesuss words, nor to them hes picked to send out; cause whoever dont take in the words of Jesus and those hes sent aint gonna receive him; and so, they wont be gettin em at the last day;

35. Itd be better for 'em if they hadnt even been born. Do ya reckon yall can escape the justice of a God who's been stomped on by folks, just so salvation could come?

36. Now listen up, as I talked about them the Lord chosen, yeah, even them three who got swept off to heaven, I didnt know if they was cleaned up from bein mortal or what

37. But since I wrote that, I went and asked the Lord, and he straightened it all out for me sayin there must be a change that happens to their bodies, or they gotta taste death;

38. So, to keep them from dyin, there was a change made to their bodies so they wouldnt feel no pain or sorrow, cept for the sins of the world.

39. Now, this change aint nothin like whats gonna happen on the last day; but a change sure did happen, so that Satan couldnt touch em, and he couldnt tempt em; and they were made holy in the flesh, cause the powers of the earth couldnt hold em back.

40. And in this state, they were to stay until judgment day comes for Christ; and on that day, theyll get another big ol' change, and be welcomed into the Fathers kingdom where they wont ever leave again, but will live with

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

God forever in the heavens.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 29**

1. Well now, the showin' of the Book of Mormon is a sure sign that the Good Lord's gettin' busy gatherin' up Israel and makin' good on His promises Them folks who turn their backs on His modern-day words and blessings are gonna find themselves in a heap of trouble. Bout A.D. 34-35.
2. So lemme tell ya, when the Lord decides it's time, in His great wisdom, for these words to reach the Gentiles just like He said, then you better believe that promise made to the kids of Israel 'bout gettin' back their good ol' lands is already startin' to come true.
3. And you can trust that every word from the Lord, which has been spoken by them holy prophets, is gonna come to pass; so there aint no need for ya to think the Lord's takin' his sweet time comin' back for the children of Israel.
4. You ain't gotta think deep down that those words ain't worth nothin', cause the Lord's gonna remember His promise to His folks from the house of Israel.
5. Now when you start seein' these words poppin' up around ya, you best quit messin' 'round with what the Lord's doin', cause His sword of justice is ready to strike; and mark my words, if you keep spurnin' His ways, youre gonna find out real quick how fast it can catch up to ya.
6. Oh, pity on the fella who scoffs at what the Lords up to; yes sir, pity on the one who denies Christ and the good work Hes done!
7. Yep, and pity on the one who says God dont work by revelation no more, or prophecy, or gifts, or tongues, or healings, or the mighty power of the Holy Ghost!
8. And you best believe, pity on whoever says to get a little somethin' for themselves that Jesus cant work no miracles; cause that fella's gonna end up like the son of perdition, where mercy just ain't in the cards, according to Christ!
9. Dont you dare go hissing, spurnin, or makin fun of the Jews or any of the leftover folks from the house of Israel; 'cause listen here, the Lord's got His promises in mind for em, and Hell deliver just like He swore He

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

would.

10. So dont you think for a second that you can twist the Lords right hand to the left, thinkin He wont bring down judgement to make good on that promise to the house of Israel.

### **3 Nephi Chapter 30**

1. Yall listen up now, cause I got some words from Jesus Christ, the Good Lords own son, and hes told me to share this right here with ya.

2. Now, yall better turn away from them sinful ways and quit all that wickedness, toss aside them lies and trickery, and stop them shenanigans, and all them hidden sins, and get outta that idol mess, and leave all that murdering alone, and stop playin preacher for your own gain, and let go of them jealous feelings, and quit stirrin up trouble, and just leave all that bad stuff behind, and come on over to me, and get yourself baptized in my name so ya can wash away them sins, and get filled up with the Holy Ghost, so ya can be counted among my folks, the good people from the house of Israel.

### **4 Nephi**

#### **4 Nephi Chapter 1**

1. Well, let me tell ya, the thirty-fourth year rolled on by, then the thirty-fifth came 'round, and lo and behold, those disciples of Jesus got themselves a whole church of Christ settin' up in all the nearby lands. And folks, anyone who come to em and genuinely repented of their mess-ups ended up gettin' baptized in the name of Jesus, and they got themselves the Holy Ghost too.

2. Then in that thirty-sixth year, every last one o them folks got all converted to the Lord all over the land, both Nephites and Lamanites. There wasnt no fussin' or fighting no more, and each fella treated his neighbor just right.

3. They shared everything they had, so there weren't no rich folks or poor folks, bond or free; everyone was free, partakin' in that heavenly goodie.

4. And wouldnt ya know it, the thirty-seventh year came and went, and still, there was peace all across the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

land.

5. Shoot, those disciples of Jesus were doin' some mighty fine works, healn up the sick, raisin' the dead, makin the lame walk, givin' sight to the blind, and helpin' the deaf hear. They was pullin' off all sorts of miracles among the folks, and not a one of em worked their wonders 'cept in the name of Jesus.

6. So the thirty-eighth year passed along, then the thirty-ninth, and it just kept on goin til the forty-first and forty-second years had slipped right on by, even up to forty-nine years and then fifty-one and fifty-two; shoot, fifty-nine years just zoomed past.

7. And, lemme tell ya, the Lord was sure blessin em plenty in the land; so much so that they were rebuildin' cities that had been burnt to the ground.

8. Yep, that big ol city of Zarahemla got built right back up again.

9. But doggone it, there were a heap of towns that had sunk into the ground, and water took their place, so them cities couldn't be fixed back up.

10. Now, look here, them Nephites sure got strong and had a bunch o kids, turning into a real fair and happy folks.

11. They was gettin' married left and right, all blessed up just the way the Lord had promised 'em.

12. They weren't followin' that ol law of Moses anymore, nah; they were stickin' to the commandments that they got from their Lord and God, keepin' up their fasting and prayers, meetin together often to pray and listen to the word of the Lord.

13. Well, Ill be, there wasn't no bickering among the folks, all across the land; only some powerful miracles bein done by them disciples of Jesus.

14. Now, the seventy-first year passed, then the seventy-second, and on til the seventy-ninth year had come and gone. A hundred years ticked by, and all the disciples of Jesuscept for three that was stickin aroundhad gone on to the paradise of God, and other disciples were put in their place; a whole lotta that generation had passed too.

15. Not a drop of contention was found in the land, thanks to the love of God settlin' in folks hearts.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

16. There wasnt no jealousy, no fights, no ruckus, no shenanigans, no tall tales, no killings, or any kinda wildness; you best believe those folks was the happiest around, 'cause they was made by the hand of God.

17. There werent no thieves nor murderers, no Lamanites, and none of them -ites either; they was just one big ol' family, the children of Christ, and heirs to Gods kingdom.

18. Boy, how blessed they were! The Lord was showerin' them with blessings in everything they did; they thrived so much it was a hundred and ten years before the first generation from Christ shuffled off, and still, there wasnt no fussin' in the land.

19. And it came to pass that Nephi, the fella who kept this last record (on them plates of Nephi), he passed away, and his boy Amos took over for him, keeping it on them plates too.

20. That Amos held on to it for eighty-four years, and peace still lay over the land, cept for a small bunch of folks that broke away from the church and started callin themselves Lamanites; hence, Lamanites popped up in the land again.

21. Then ol Amos kicked the bucket too (countin' one hundred and ninety-four years since Christ hit town), and his son Amos picked up the record in his place; he kept it on them plates of Nephi as well, and it got written down in that book of Nephi, which is this one right here.

22. Now two hundred years slipped on by, and only a few left from the second generation were still kickin.

23. And I, Mormon, just wanna share that folks was multiplyin so fast, they spread all over the land, gettin themselves pretty darn rich from their good fortune in Christ.

24. Now, in the two hundred and first year, pride started stirrin up among em, with folks wearin' fancy clothes and all sorts of shiny pearls, gettin' real big on the fine stuff of the world.

25. And after that, they didnt share their goods no more, not even a little bit.

26. They started drawin' lines, divvyin themselves into classes; and built up churches just for themselves to cash in, all while turnin their backs on the true church of Christ.

27. And wouldntcha know it, when two hundred and ten years rolled on past, a whole mess of churches sprang up in the land; shoot, there were lots of churches claiming they knew Christ, yet they denied parts of His

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

gospel so much that they welcomed all kinds of wrongdoings and got all mixed up with the sacred stuff reserved for folks who were worthy.

28. That church blew up real big cause of all the wrong stuff happenin, and cause ol Satan managed to wrangle their hearts.

29. And then, there popped up another church that flat out denied Christ, and they took after the true church of Christ, persecutin em for bein humble and for believing in Christ; they were all riled up 'cause of the many miracles gettin done among those disciples.

30. So, they flexed their power and authority over those disciples of Jesus who stuck with em, throwin em in jail; but with the power of the word of God in them, the prisons busted open, and they got out there doin' mighty miracles right among the folks.

31. But even with all them miracles, the people hardened their hearts, fixin' to kill em just like those Jews in Jerusalem aimed to take out Jesus, just like He said.

32. They tossed 'em into fiery furnaces, and somehow, they came out without a scratch.

33. And they heaved 'em into dens of wild beasts, and those disciples played with em like a child plays with a lamb; and they walked right out, no harm done.

34. Still, folks kept hardenin' their hearts cause they was led astray by a bunch of priests and false prophets buildin' more churches and doin all sorts of wrong. They smacked around the people of Jesus; but those folks of Jesus didnt hit back. And so they dwindled in disbelief and mischief, year after year, 'til two hundred and thirty years ticked by.

35. Now this year, yeah, the two hundred and thirty-first year, a big ol' divide happened among the folks.

36. And it came to pass that in this year, a group arose callin themselves the Nephites, true believers in Christ they were; and among em, some were known as Jacobites, Josephites, and Zoramites by them Lamanites.

37. So the true believers in Christ and the true worshipers of Him (which included them three disciples who was meant to stay) were dubbed Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, and Zoramites.

38. And it came to pass that those who turned against the gospel got tagged Lamanites, Lemuelites, and

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Ishmaelites; and they didnt just drift in disbelief, no, they fought back against the gospel of Christ; they taught their younguns not to believe, just like their kinfolk did startin off.

39. It was the wickedness of their folks that led em down that path, just like it was from the get-go. They learned to despise Gods children, just like the Lamanites were taught to hate the Nephites ever since the beginning.

40. And it came to pass two hundred and forty-four years had rolled on by, and there went the ways of the people. The more wicked side of things grew strong, gettin way more numerous than the people of God.

41. And they kept buildin up churches just for themselves, deckin 'em out with all kinds o precious stuff. Two hundred and fifty years passed by, and then two hundred and sixty.

42. And wouldnt you know, the wicked part of the people started to rebuild them secret oaths and shady Gadianton combinations again.

43. And as for the folks callin themselves Nephites, they got all puffed up in their hearts over their big ol riches, gettin vain just like the Lamanites.

44. From then on, them disciples was filled with sorrow for the worlds sins.

45. And it came to pass that after three hundred years rolled on by, both the Nephites and Lamanites turned as wicked as each other.

46. And it came to pass that the Gadianton robbers spread all across the land, and nobody was righteous except for them disciples of Jesus. Gold and silver piled up in heaps, and they were wheelin and dealin in all sorts of trades.

47. And then, after three hundred and five years, with folks still stuck in wickedness, Amos took his leave; his brother Ammaron stepped in to keep track of the record.

48. Once three hundred and twenty years had come and gone, Ammaron, moved by the Holy Ghost, went and hid the sacred recordsyep, all those precious records handed down through the yearsuntil three hundred and twenty years since the Lord came.

49. He hid em up to the Lord, hopin theyd make their way back to the remnant of Jacobs house, just like the



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

prophecies and promises of the Lord said. And that, my friend, is how the record of Ammaron comes to a close.

## **Mormon**

### **Mormon Chapter 1**

1. Well now, Im a-fixin to write down all the stuff Ive seen and heard, and Im callin it the Book of Mormon.
2. So, bout the time when Ammaron stashed away them records with the Lord, he came alookin for me, cause I was round ten years old and startin to learn a bit like my folks did. Ammaron took one look at me and said, I see youre a serious kinda kid, quick on the uptake.
3. So, when ya hit the ripe ol age of twenty-four, I want ya to remember all them things you noticed bout our people; and when you get there, head on over to the land of Antum to a hill called Shim; thats where I done put all the sacred stuff for the Lord bout our folks.
4. And listen now, youre gonna take those Nephi plates with ya, leave the rest where they are, and youre gonna write down all them things youve seen bout our people on them Nephi plates.
5. Now I, Mormon, bein a descendant of Nephi (my daddys name was also Mormon), I sure remembered what Ammaron told me.
6. So, it happened that when I was eleven, my daddy carried me down south to the land of Zarahemla.
7. Lord, the whole place was just crawlin with buildings, and folks were as plentiful as the grains of sand at the beach.
8. Now, this year, war kicked off tween the Nephites, who were made up of the Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, and Zoramites, and the Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites. It was a real ruckus between them Nephites and Lamanites.
9. So the Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites all got lumped together as Lamanites, and you had two sidesNephites and Lamanites.
10. And sure enough, this war broke out right near Zarahemla by the waters of Sidon.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

11. Well, the Nephites pulled together a mighty fine crowd, over thirty thousand strong. They had themselves a heap of battles that year, and let me tell ya, the Nephites handed the Lamanites their hats and sent many of em to the ground.

12. Eventually, the Lamanites called off their plans, and peace returned to the land for bout four years no bloodshed at all.

13. But on the flip side, wickedness took over the whole land, and the Lord took away His favorite disciples, so there werent no miracles or healings cause folks just turned rotten.

14. There werent no gifts from the Lord either, and folks wasnt feelin the Holy Ghost cause of all their sin and doubt.

15. Now I was fifteen, had a pretty clear head, and the Lord came to visit me. I got to taste and see how good Jesus really is.

16. I tried to spread the word to my people, but they shut me up and said I couldnt preach cause they just wouldnt listen; they up and rebelled against their God, and the beloved disciples got taken away cause of their sin.

17. I stayed among em, but I couldnt preach to em cause their hearts were harder than a rock; and cause of that hard-heartedness, the land got cursed on their account.

18. And those Gadianon robbers among the Lamanites really stirred up trouble, so folks started buryin their treasures in the ground. They got slippery cause the Lord cursed the land so they couldnt keep hold of nothin.

19. And let me tell ya, there were all sorts of sorcery, witchcraft, and magic goin on; the power of the evil one was all over the land, fulfillin what Abinadi and Samuel the Lamanite said.

## **Mormon Chapter 2**

1. Well, it was one o' them years when the fightin' broke out again 'twixt them Nephites and them Lamanites. Now, even though I was still a pup, I was a big fella, and the folks chose me to lead 'em, bein the head honcho of their armies.

2. So, in my sweet sixteen, I saddled up and took charge of a Nephite army, headin' straight for them

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Lamanites, which meant that a whole bunch like three hundred and twenty-six years had already ticked on by.

3. Then, lo and behold, in the three hundred and twenty-seventh year, the Lamanites came at us with a power that was mighty hefty, scarin' my troops so bad they didn't wanna strike back, startin' to skedaddle back up north.

4. We made our way to the city o' Angola, took it over, and got ready to stand our ground against them Lamanites. We fortified that city real good, but still, them Lamanites rolled in and pushed us on outta there.

5. And they kicked us right outta the land o' David, if ya can believe it.

6. So, we kept marchin' and found ourselves in the land of Joshua, which was sittin' pretty close to the coast.

7. We rounded up our folks as quick as we could, tryin' to get 'em all together, one big happy family.

8. But, shoot, the place was crawlin' with thieves and Lamanites galore, and even with all that destruction hangin' over us, my people just kept on doin' their wrongs; there was blood and guts spillin' everywhere, from the Nephites and the Lamanites alike, like a whole mess of chaos all over the land.

9. Now, them Lamanites had themselves a king named Aaron, and he rolled up against us with forty-four thousand men. Meanwhile, I held my ground with forty-two thousand of my own, and wouldn't ya know it, I sent him packin' with my army chasin' him down. And just like that, three hundred and thirty years had passed.

10. Next thing ya know, the Nephites started to feel a bit guilty 'bout all their wrongdoings, hollerin' out just like Samuel the prophet had predicted; cause I tell ya, no one could keep their stuff with all them thieves, robbers, and murderers lurkin' 'round, and don't forget the magic and witchery floatin' through the air.

11. So, there was a whole lotta mournin' and lamentin' all over the place, especially among the Nephites.

12. When I, Mormon, saw all that cryin' and sorrowin' they had before the Lord, I couldn't help but feel a bit of joy bubble up in me, knowin' how merciful and patient the Lord is, thinkin' maybe they'd straighten up and fly right again.

13. But, bless my soul, my joy was in vain cause their sad faces weren't turnin' into repentance, seein' as they was just wallowing in shame like the damned, 'cause the Lord won't let 'em have their cake and eat it too when they're livin' in sin.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. And they didnt come to Jesus with a broken spirit, nah, they was cussin God and wishin for the sweet release of death. Still, they was fightin' tooth and nail to stick around.

15. Then my heart sunk again when I noticed the day of grace had slipped right past 'em, both in this life and the next; I saw thousands of 'em cut down, rebellin against their God, just layin' there like a pile of dung spread over the land. And wouldn't ya know it, three hundred and forty-four years had gone by.

16. Then in the three hundred and forty-fifth year, the Nephites started skedaddlin away from the Lamanites, and they didnt stop until they found themselves in the land of Jashon, tryin to make a run for it.

17. Now, the city of Jashon was close to where Ammaron had stashed the records so they wouldnt get wrecked. I did like Ammaron said and snagged those plates of Nephi, keepin' a record of what all went down.

18. On those plates, I wrote a full account of all the wickedness and wrongdoings, but I decided to hold off on spillin every last detail of their sins, cause, darlin, Ive seen a straight-up parade of wickedness since I was old enough to notice folks' behavior.

19. And oh, woe is me for all their bad ways, 'cause my heart's been carryin' that sorrow all my dawnin days; still, I reckon Ill be lifted up in the end.

20. Well, it turned out that this year, the Nephites were bein' hunted and hounded real bad. We got chased all the way north to a place they called Shem.

21. We fortified that city o' Shem and tried to gather our folks as best we could, hopin to save 'em from bein' wiped out.

22. Then, in the three hundred and forty-sixth year, we found ourselves under attack again.

23. I stood up and spoke to my people real fervently, tellin 'em they needed to get their grit on and fight for their wives, children, houses, and homes.

24. And my words kinda lit a fire under 'em, enough so they didnt turn tail and run but stood their ground against them Lamanites.

25. We found ourselves facin' down an army of thirty thousand against fifty thousand of 'em. And wouldn't ya know it, we stood firm enough that they ended up turnin tail and runnin.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

26. When they skedaddled, we chased 'em down, meetin' 'em again and beatin' 'em good; still, the Lords strength wasnt with us that day; we was left to fend for ourselves, and let me tell ya, we got weak just like our brethren.

27. My heart ached for the plight of my people, sufferin' from their wickedness and all. But we charged out against them Lamanites and those robbers of Gadianton until we took back our rightful lands.

28. Three hundred and forty-nine years had slipped on by. Then in the three hundred and fiftieth year, we made ourselves a treaty with the Lamanites and them Gadianton robbers, and we sorted out the lands of our inheritance.

29. Those Lamanites gave us the land up north, all the way to the narrow pass leadin' into the land down south, and we, in turn, gave 'em all the land down south.

### **Mormon Chapter 3**

1. Well, it went down like this, them Lamanites didnt show up for another tussle 'til ten whole years had rolled on by. And I had my folks, the Nephites, busy gettin' their land and weapons all ready for when the fight would come 'round again.

2. Then the Lord told me somethin like, Yell out to these folksget 'em to repent, come on over to me, and get baptized, build my church back up and Ill spare ya.

3. So I hollered at 'em, but bless my soul, it was all for nothin; they didnt get that it was the Lord who had kept 'em safe and given 'em another shot at repentance. Instead, they went and hardened their hearts against their God.

4. Well, wouldnt ya know it, after that tenth year went by, makin' it three hundred sixty years since Christ showed up, the king of the Lamanites sent me a letter lettin me know they was gettin ready to come back and fight us again.

5. So, I gathered my people up at the land Desolation, right at the edge by that narrow pass that leads down south.

6. We set our armies there, tryin' to stop the Lamanites from takin' over any of our land; we fortified ourselves

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

against 'em with every ounce of strength we got.

7. In that three hundred sixty-first year, them Lamanites came down to the city of Desolation lookin' for a fight; and y'all wouldnt believe it, but we whipped 'em back so good they skedaddled back to their own lands.

8. Then in the three hundred sixty-second year, they came down again for another round. We beat 'em down again, takin out a whole mess of em, and their bodies got tossed into the sea.

9. Now, 'cause of all the glory my Nephite folks had racked up, they started puffin themselves up, swearin to the heavens they was gonna get back at the blood of their fallen kin whod been killed by them foes.

10. They swore by the heavens and by Gods throne that they was fixin to head on up against their enemies and wipe 'em off the map.

11. And from that moment on, I, Mormon, straight-up refused to be their leader no more, cause they was livin in wickedness and all sorts of abominations.

12. I had led em plenty despite their misdeeds, lovin 'em like God wanted me to, with all my heart; and Id poured my soul out in prayer for 'em all day long, but it was all without any faith, cause their hearts were too hard.

13. I done saved em three times from their enemies, and they hadnt changed their ways one bit.

14. When they swore by everything that our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ told em not to, that theyd go after their enemies to settle the score, the voice of the Lord came to me sayin:

15. Vengeance is mine, and Ill pay 'em back; and cause this people didnt repent after I saved em, theyre gonna get cut off from the face of the earth.

16. So, I flat-out refused to go up against my enemies after that; I did just as the Lord commanded me, standin' there as a quiet witness to show the world what I seen and heard, thanks to the Spirit givin me a heads up on what was to come.

17. Thats why Im writin to you folks out there, Gentiles, and yall too, house of Israel, when the work starts, yall better get ready to head back to your inheritances.

18. Yup, Im writin to all corners of the earth; to you twelve tribes of Israel, whore gonna be judged based on

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

what yall done, by them twelve Jesus picked for his disciples in Jerusalem.

19. And Im also sendin this message to the leftover folks from this people, wholl also be judged by them twelve Jesus picked in this land, and by the other twelve he picked in Jerusalem.

20. The Spirits revealin' all this to me; thats why Im puttin this down for yall. I want ya to know yall gonna stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, thats right, every soul from Adams family; and yall gonna be judged for what ya did, whether it was good or bad.

21. And I reckon it's also so yall will believe in the gospel of Jesus Christ that yall gonna hear about; and that the Jews, the Lord's covenant people, will have more proof besides just the one they saw and heard, that Jesus, the one they killed, is the real Christ and the true God.

22. And I sure wish I could persuade all yall out there to repent and get ready to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

### **Mormon Chapter 4**

1. Well, let me tell ya, them wars and all that mess just keep on goinits like the wicked retaliatin' against the wicked. Things are gettin worse than ever in Israelaint no way around it. Theyre sacrificin women and children to them idols, and the Lamanites are gettin' mighty aggressive, pushin the Nephites back.

2. So, it was in the year three hundred sixty-three that the Nephites up and took their armies to battle against the Lamanites, comin outta that land called Desolation.

3. But wouldnt ya know it, them Nephites got pushed right back to that land of Desolation. And while they were still tryin to catch their breath, another fresh army of Lamanites came down on em, and boy, did they have a nasty fight! The Lamanites ended up takin over the city Desolation, killin a whole bunch of Nephites and waltzin' off with a truckload of prisoners.

4. The ones who made it outta there ran off and joined the folks in the city Teancum. Now, this here city Teancum was sittin right by the seashore, not too far from Desolation, I reckon.

5. This whole ruckus got started cause the Nephites went headin' up to the Lamanites; if they hadnt done that, them Lamanites wouldnt have stood a chance against 'em.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

6. But hold on now, Gods got a way of settlin scores with the wicked; its the bad folks who end up makin' trouble for the other bad folks, stirrin up the hearts of good folks to spill blood.
7. So, the Lamanites started gettin' their ducks in a row to come at the city Teancum.
8. And in the year three hundred sixty-four, those Lamanites rolled on up to Teancum, tryin to lay claim to that city too.
9. But wouldnt ya know it, the Nephites pushed back and sent em packin. When the Nephites saw they had driven the Lamanites away, they got all puffed up about their strength again, marchin right back to take Desolation once more.
10. Well, that was all well and good, but by now, there were thousands layin dead on both sides, Nephites and Lamanites alike.
11. Then, in the year three hundred sixty-six, the Lamanites came back on them Nephites ready for a scrap again; and still, the Nephites werent changin their wicked ways, just kept diggin in deeper.
12. Now listen up, its mighty hard to put into words, or even write down, the horrid sight of all that blood and destruction on both Nephites and Lamanites. Folks hearts were so hard they found joy in spillin' blood all the time.
13. There aint never been such wickedness among Lehis offspring, nor in all the house of Israel, as what these people were up to, accordin' to the Lords own words.
14. Then the Lamanites waltzed on in and took the city Desolation cause they had more folks than the Nephites did.
15. And they didnt stop therethey marched on to Teancum, pushin the folks right outta there, takin women and children as prisoners, and offerin em up to their idol gods.
16. So, in the year three hundred sixty-seven, them Nephites got fired up cause the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and children, and they charged against the Lamanites with some serious rage, beatin' the tar outta em and driving em from their lands.
17. The Lamanites didnt come back for a tussle until the year three hundred seventy-five.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

18. In that year, they came down hard on the Nephites, bringin all their might; and nobody knew how many there were cause there were just so dang many of em.
19. From that point onward, the Nephites lost all the power they had over the Lamanites and started gettin swept away like dew in the morning sun.
20. Next thing ya know, the Lamanites came down on the city Desolation, and boy, was there a savage fight in that landthose Lamanites really tangled up the Nephites good.
21. They ran off again, escaping, and made their way to the city Boaz, where they stood their ground against the Lamanites with some serious backbone, not bein' knocked down until the Lamanites took a second shot at 'em.
22. Well, when that second round came, the Nephites got driven back and suffered a dreadful defeat; their women and children were sacrificed again to them idols.
23. So, whats more, the Nephites took off again, grabbin all the folks with em, both in towns and out in the sticks.
24. And here I am, Mormon, seein that the Lamanites were fixin' to take down the land, so I hiked it up to the hill Shim and gathered up all the records Ammaron had hidden away for the Lord.

## **Mormon Chapter 5**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, I went on out there among them Nephites, and I took back that promise I made 'bout not helpin 'em no more; they handed me the reins to their armies again, thinkin I could save 'em from their troubles.
2. But I gotta say, I was feelin pretty hopeless, 'cause I knew what the Good Lord had in store fer 'em; they didnt even bother to turn from their wrongdoings, but just kept fightin' for their lives without askin that higher power who made 'em.
3. So, we were mindin our own when those Lamanites came at us while we was tryin to take cover in the city of Jordan; but bless their hearts, they got pushed back and didnt manage to take the city at that time.
4. Then, wouldnt ya know it, they came at us again, but we managed to hold on to the city. There was a couple

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

more towns than them Nephites kept standin strong in too, which blocked them Lamanites from gettin' into our land to cause any real trouble.

5. But I gotta tell ya, all those places we passed by, where the folks didnt come together, got wiped out by the Lamanites, and their towns and villages went up in flames; and thats how three hundred seventy-nine years just slipped right on by.

6. Now, in the three hundred and eightieth year, those Lamanites came at us again lookin for a fight, and we stood tall against 'em; but it was just a big ol waste of time, cause there was so many of 'em they trampled on the Nephites like they was nothin.

7. So, we grabbed our boots and high-tailed it again, and some folks were quick enough to escape the Lamanites, while others who couldnt keep up got taken out.

8. And now, listen here, I, Mormon, dont wanna go and stir up all yall's feelings with a gruesome picture of blood and battle that I saw; but I know its gotta be told, 'cause everything thats hidden's got to come to light

9. And folks gotta know all 'bout this here stuff, both the remnant of this people and the Gentiles, who the Good Lord said would scatter us, and wed end up as nothin in their eyesso Im puttin together a little summary, not tryin to spill every detail of what I saw, cause I got a commandment to follow, and I dont wanna add to your heartache over how wicked these folks have been.

10. Now, pay attention, 'cause Im talkin to their descendants, and to the Gentiles who care for the house of Israel, who know where their blessings come from.

11. Cause I know they gonna feel real sad about whats happenin to the house of Israel; they gonna feel bad for the folks bein destroyed; itll hurt 'em that this people didnt turn around so they couldve been held close by Jesus.

12. Now these words are aimed at the leftover folks of Jacob; theyre written like this cause God knows wickedness aint gonna lead 'em right; they gonna be kept safe from the world till its time for the Lord to show em.

13. And heres the command I got, yall: they gonna come out just like the Lord said when He thinks its the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

right time in His wisdom.

14. And they gonna go to them unbelievin' Jews; the whole point is to get em convinced that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the livin God; so the Father can bring about His big ol plan to restore the Jews and all of Israel to the land Hes given em, fulfillin His promise;

15. And also, so the kids of this people can really believe the gospel thats gonna come to em from the Gentiles; cause this people is gonna be scattered, and gonna turn into a dark, filthy mess, worse than anything we ever seen, even worse than the Lamanites, 'cause they just dont believe and love their idols too much.

16. For you see, the Spirit of the Lord has already stopped bein with their ancestors; they ain't got no Christ and no God in this world, just blowin around like chaff in the wind.

17. They used to be a happy bunch, with Christ lookin out for 'em; yeah, they were led by God Himself.

18. But now, looky here, they bein led around by Satan, just like chaff caught in the wind, or a boat tossed around on the waves, with no sail, no anchor, and no way to steer; just like that boat, so are they.

19. And the Lords holdin' back the blessings they coulda had in this land, givin em to the Gentiles instead.

20. But dont get comfy, cause they gonna be pushed and scattered by them Gentiles; and when that happens, the Lords gonna remember the promise He made to Abraham and the whole house of Israel.

21. And Hes also gonna keep in mind the prayers of the good folks askin for help on their behalf.

22. And then, oh Gentiles, how yall gonna stand before the power of God unless yall repent and turn from your sinful ways?

23. Dont ya know youre in Gods hands? Dont ya realize Hes got all the power, and at His word the earths gonna roll up tight like a scroll?

24. So, you better repent and humble yourselves before Him, or else Hes gonna come down hard on yalest some of Jacobs descendants come at ya like a lion, and tear you apart with no one to save ya.

## **Mormon Chapter 6**

1. Well, I reckon Im finishing up my story bout how my folks, the Nephites, met their end. So we marched right out in front of them Lamanites.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. Now me, Mormon, I penned a letter to the king of the Lamanites, askin him kindly if hed let our folks gather round that hill out in Cumorah so we could have ourselves a good fight.
3. Lo and behold, that king of the Lamanites granted me what I was askin for.
4. We packed up and headed to the land of Cumorah, settin up our tents all round that hill. It was a place with plenty of water, rivers, and springs, and we thought wed have the upper hand against them Lamanites.
5. Now, after three hundred eighty-four years had passed, we rounded up all the rest of our folks to the land of Cumorah.
6. Well, when we finally got everybody together at Cumorah, I started feelin my age settlin in. Knowin this was gonna be the last fight for my people, I remembered the Lord told me to protect them sacred records our daddies passed down to us from fallin into Lamanite hands, 'cause theyd just tear em up. So I made this record from the plates of Nephi, and I hid up all the records entrusted to me by the Lord in that hill, cept for a few plates I handed down to my boy Moroni.
7. Then my people, along with their wives and little ones, could see them Lamanite armies comin toward em, filled with that awful dread of death that grips the wicked tight in their chests.
8. And sure nuff, they came at us swingin, and every single one of us was shook to our core by how many of em there were.
9. So they brought the fight to my people with swords, bows, arrows, axes, and every darn weapon they could think of.
10. Well, my men got cut down right there, even my ten thousand who were standin with me, and I fell hurt right in the middle of it all; they passed me by without finishin me off.
11. When they had gone through and cut down all my folks, cept for twenty-four of usmy son Moroni bein' one of 'emwe were still standin after all the carnage, and we looked out from the top of hill Cumorah the next day and saw my ten thousand folks who had been taken down, with me out front.
12. We also spotted my ten thousand folks being led by my boy Moroni.
13. And, land sakes, Gidgiddonah's ten thousand had bit the dust, and he too fell right there in the fray.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

14. Then Lamahs ten thousand had met their end, and Gilgals ten thousand bit it too; Limhah, Jeneum, and all them others Cumenihah, Moronihah, Antionum, Shiblom, Shem, and Josheach had their own ten thousand fallin too.

15. And wouldn't you know it, there were ten more who fell by the sword, with their ten thousand each; that made all my folks gone, cept for them twenty-four with me, plus a few who skedaddled off to the south and a couple who switched sides to the Lamanites. Their flesh, bones, and blood lay all over the ground, left by those who took em down to decompose and return to good ol Mother Earth.

16. My heart was just crushed with sorrow cause of all my people that had been slain, and I cried out:

17. Oh, you sweet souls, how in the world could youve strayed from the Lords ways? Oh, my sweet souls, how could youve turned your back on Jesus who stood there with open arms just waitin for ya!

18. Listen here, if yall hadnt gone and done all that, you wouldnt have fallen. But look at ya now, youve fallen, and I grieve your loss.

19. Oh, yall beautiful sons and daughters, mothers and fathers, husbands and wives, how in tarnation could youve fallen like this!

20. But there ya go, youre gone, and my sad heart cant bring you back.

21. Soon enough, the times gonna come when your mortal selves gotta put on immortality, and these bodies that are just laying around in decay gonna become incorruptible; and then youll stand before Christs judgment seat, to be judged by your actions if you did good, then your hearts will be blessed alongside your forebears.

22. Oh, if only you had turned back fore this awful destruction hit ya. But now, youre gone, and the Heavenly Father, the Eternal Father, knows where you stand, and Hes gonna deal with ya based on His fairness and mercy.

## **Mormon Chapter 7**

1. Well now, listen up, I'm fixin to have a little chat with yall whore still kickin around, hopin Godll let me share my thoughts with ya, so yall can know what your kinfolk been through; yep, Im talkin to you, the folks left from the house of Israel; and heres what I gotta say:

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. Y'all need to know ya part of the house of Israel.
3. Yall gotta understand that ya need to turn your ways, or yall aint gonna be saved.
4. Ya best lay down yer guns and quit lovin the spillin of blood, and dont go pickin 'em up again unless God gives ya the nod.
5. Yall gotta come to know your ancestors, turn away from all your wrongdoings, and put your faith in Jesus Christ, cause Hes the Son of God, and them Jews had Him killed, but by the Fathers might, He rose up again, and He beat death like a champion; in Him, the bite of death is gone.
6. And Hes gonna bring back the dead, cause folks gotta stand before Him when its time for judgment.
7. Hes takin care of the redemption of the world, and on that big ol judgment day, if youre found blameless in His eyes, you get to hang out with God in His kingdom, singin praises that never quit, to the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, who are all one God, livin large in pure joy that never ends.
8. So, yall need to repent, get baptized in Jesus name, and grab hold of that there gospel of Christ they got laid out for ya, it ain't just in this here record but also in the one thatll come to the Gentiles from the Jews, which will come from the Gentiles back to you.
9. Now listen, this heres written so ya might believe that; and if you believe that, then ya gonna believe this too; and if you believe this, youre gonna know all bout your ancestors and all the wondrous works God did among em.
10. And youll also know that yall are a leftover bunch from Jacobs line; so, mebbe youre countin among those folks in the first promise; and if you believe in Christ and get baptized, first in water, then with fire and the Holy Ghost, followin what our Savior showed us, then it's gonna be all good for ya when that judgment day rolls around. Amen.

## **Mormon Chapter 8**

1. Well now, listen here, Im Moroni, and Im finishin up my dads record, you see. I ain't got much to scribble down, just a few things my daddy told me I gotta write.
2. So, it happened after that wild and crazy battle at Cumorah, that the Nephites who got away and ran down

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

south were tracked down by them Lamanites, and let me tell ya, they didnt spare em none.

3. And my poor daddy, well, he got done in by them too. Here I am, all by my lonesome, penning this sorrowful story of my people bein wiped out. But lookie here, theyre all gone, and Im just doin what my daddy told me to. As for whether theyll take me down too, I reckon I just dont know.

4. So Im fixin to write and bury these records in the ground; where Im headin, it dont really matter none.

5. My daddy wrote this here record, and he had it clear in his mind what he wanted to say. Id be scribblin' it too if I had some room on these plates, but I aint got none; and truth be told, Im just all alone. My daddys gone, and sos my kinfolk, and I aint got a soul to turn to; and how much longer the Lords gonna let me stick around, well, I aint got a clue.

6. Looky here, its been four hundred years since our Lord and Savior made his entrance.

7. And let me tell ya, the Lamanites been huntin my people, the Nephites, all over creation, from town to town, till there just aint no more of us left; and its been quite a fall, I tell ya; its a wonder to behold how my people have been wiped out.

8. And make no mistake, it's the Lords hand at play here. And ya know what? The Lamanites are fightin each other too; this whole land's just a mess of murder and bloodshed; nobody knows when it'll all come to an end.

9. And now, I aint got much more to say bout em, cause all thats left are the Lamanites and a bunch of thieves round here.

10. Ain't nobody knowin the true God cept for the followers of Jesus, who hung around till folks got so wicked that the Lord wouldnt let em stay no more; and as for whether theyre still here? Well, who can say?

11. But my daddy and I sure did see em, and they helped us out.

12. Now, whoever reads this record, and dont go judgin it for its warts and all, theyre gonna learn some pretty amazing things. Im Moroni, and if I could, Id share the whole shebang with ya.

13. Alright, I'm wrapin up my talk bout this here folks. Im the son of Mormon, and my daddy was kin to Nephi.

14. And here I am, hiding this record for the Lord; them plates aint worth much, cause the Lord told me no

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

ones sposed to be using em to line their pockets. But this records got great worth, and whoever brings it to light, the Lords gonna bless em.

15. Aint nobody got the power to bring it out less the Lord gives it to em; cause the Lord wants it done with an eye aimed straight at His glory, or to help out His old, scattered folks.

16. And bless the one who brings this thing to light; itll come outta the dark into the light, just as the Lord said it would; yeah, itll come up from the ground and shine bright for all to see, and itll be done through the Lords power.

17. And if theres any mess-ups, well, thats just human. But let me tell ya, we dont see no faults ourselves; but God knows everything, so whoevers bein' judgmental better watch out, cause they might be in a heap of trouble.

18. And if someones sayin', "Show me, or else!" they better tread carefully, cause they might just be callin for somethin the Lord has forbidden.

19. Cause lemme say, those who judge too quickly gonna get judged back just as quick; just like their works, so too shall their payback be; that means whoever throws a punch gonna get one back from the Lord.

20. Now, look at what the good book saysaint no man supposed to throw punches or judge; cause judgments the Lords, and so is vengeance, and Hell make it right.

21. And anyone who breathes out anger and fights against the Lords work, and the folks who got His covenantthe house of Israelwho says, Well wreck the Lords work, and He wont remember His promisethat persons dancin on thin ice, waiting to be cut down and thrown into the fire;

22. Cause the Lords big ol plans gonna keep on rollin, till all His promises come true.

23. Look through the prophecies of Isaiah. But I aint got em to write down. Yeah, I tell ya, those saints who came before me, who had this land, theyre gonna be cryin, even from the dust, callin on the Lord; and as sure as the Lord lives, Hell remember the covenant He made with em.

24. And He knows their prayers, and He knows they prayed for their kin. He knows their faith too, cause with His name, they could move mountains; with His name, theyd make the earth shake; and by His word, theyd



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

knock down prisons; even fires wouldnt touch em, nor wild beasts or snakes, all thanks to the power of His word.

25. And yeah, their prayers were also for the one the Lord would let bring these things to light.

26. And aint nobody gotta say they wont come, cause they surely will; the Lord said it, after all; theyll come up from the ground, by the hand of the Lord, and no one can stop it; and itll happen on a day when folks think miracles are gone, like if someone talked to em from the dead.

27. And itll happen on a day when the blood of saints cries out to the Lord, cause of all them secret schemes and dark doins.

28. Yeah, itll come on a day when folks deny Gods power, and churches get all dirty and puffed up with pride; yeah, even on a day when church leaders and teachers get all high and mighty, even envying their own people.

29. Yeah, itll come on a day when theres fires, and storms, and smoke clouds in faraway places;

30. And therell be chatter of wars, rumors of wars, and quakin earth in various spots.

31. Yeah, itll come on a day when the earths gonna be polluted real bad; folks will be killin, robbin, lyin, deceivin, running after all kinds of nasty stuff; when manyll say, Do this, or do that, it dont matter none, cause the Lords gonna back em up in the end. But woe to these folks, cause theyre deep in bitterness and trapped in sin.

32. Yeah, itll come on a day when churches spring up saying, Come on over here, and for a price, youll get forgiveness for your sins.

33. Oh, you wicked, stubborn folks, why are you buildin up these churches just to make a buck? Why're you twistin the holy word of God, tryin to damn your own souls? Look, keep your eyes on the revelations of God; cause the times comin when all this gotta happen.

34. Look, the Lords shown me incredible and mind-blowin things thatll come soon, round the time when these things get revealed to yall.

35. Im talkin to you like youre right here, even if you aint. But Jesus Christ, Hes shown you to me, and I know what yall been up to.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

36. And I know yall walk with pride in your hearts; cause theres only a few who aint puffed up, wearin fancy clothes, full of envy, strife, and all sorts of bad behavior; and your churches, yeah, every single one, have been made dirty cause of that pride.
37. Cause yall love your money, your nice stuff, and dressin up them churches more than you love the poor, the needy, the sick, and the ones who need help.
38. Oh you dirty, hypocritical folks, you teachers sellin your souls for things that'll rust away, whyd ya gotta pollute the holy church of God? Why are you scared to take upon yourself the name of Christ? Dont you think happiness forever is worth more than a misery that never ends, all just for the worlds approval?
39. Why do you deck yourselves out in things that dont even have life, while lettin the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick just pass you by, without a glance?
40. Yeah, why are you buildin your secret sins just to rake in the dough, causin widows to cry out before the Lord, and orphans too, while lettin' the blood of their dead cry out to the Lord for vengeance against you?
41. Looky here, the sword of vengeance hangin over ya; and soon enough, Hes gonna avenge the saints blood upon ya, cause He aint gonna put up with their cries no longer.

## **Mormon Chapter 9**

1. Well now, let me y'all know, I'm fixin' to talk 'bout them folks who ain't puttin' their faith in Christ.
2. Well, now, yall reckon you'll believe when the Good Lord shows up? Just picture itwhen the Lord rolls in, and the whole world's gonna roll up like a scroll, and the heats gonna melt everythin good. Yeah, that big ol' day when you find yourself standin right there in front of the Lamb of Godthinkin, then you'll say there ain't no God?
3. Naw, you reckon youll still keep denyin Christ? Or can you even take a good look at the Lamb of God? Do yall really think you could just hang out with Him while feelin guilty as a dog? You really think youd find joy bein with that holy Being when your spirits all twisted bout how you done broke His laws?
4. Listen, Im tellin ya, you'd be a heap more miserable bein with a holy and just God, feelin' all filthy-like than you would be with the damned souls down in hell.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

5. Cause, lemme tell ya, when youre laid bare before God, and seein His glory and the holiness of Jesus Christ, thats gonna light a fire in ya that cant be put out.
6. So, all you who ain't believeturn yourselves around and hit your knees to the Lord; holler real loud to the Father in Jesus name, hopin' you might be found all clean and pure, washed up by the blood of the Lamb come that final day.
7. And once again, Im talkin to yall who just cant wrap your heads round Gods revelations, sayin they ain't no more revelations, prophecies, gifts, or even healings, or speakin in tongues, and all that interpretin stuff.
8. Listen up now, I say if you deny these here things, you ain't got a clue bout the gospel of Christ; no sir, you ain't even read them scriptures, and if you have, you just cant make sense of it.
9. Aint we readin that Gods the same yesterday, today, and forever, and there ain't no change or shadow round Him?
10. Now, if yall gone and imagined a god who changes like the weather, then youre picture-in yourself a god who ain't no miracle worker at all.
11. But hold on now, Im gonna show ya a God of miracles, the same one whos Abraham's God, Isaac's God, and Jacob's God; the same one what made the heavens and the earth and all that's in 'em.
12. Right there, He created Adam, and through Adam, we got the fall of man. And cause of that fall came Jesus Christ, the Father and the Son; and through Jesus, we got our redemption.
13. And because of this redemption, what came through Jesus, folks can come back to the presence of the Lord; yep, thats how every last one of us gets redeemed, cause when Christ died, He brought on the resurrection, which lifts us outta that endless sleep, and come judgment day, all yall gonna wake up by the power of God when that trumpet sounds; and youll show up, big and small, standin before His bar, redeemed and freed from that there eternal death span, which is really just a temporary death.
14. And then comes the judgment from the Holy One; and thats when the filthy folks will be filthy still, and the righteous will be just fine being righteous; the happy will be happy still, and the unhappy will stay unhappy.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

15. And now, all yall who imagined ya a god that cant do miracles, Im itchin to know, have all them things I been blabbin' about come to pass? Is the end here yet? Naw, Im telling ya, nope; God ain't stopped bein a God of miracles.

16. Looky here, ain't the stuff Gods done just downright marvelous to us? Shoot, who can really grasp the wondrous works of the Lord?

17. Whos gonna say it wasnt a miracle when by His word the heavens and earth came to be, and by that same power man was formed from the dust? And by that same word, miracles got done?

18. And whos out there gonna say Jesus Christ didnt perform all kinds of mighty miracles? The apostles did a whole pile of them too.

19. And if they was doin' miracles back then, why do ya reckon God would stop being that God of miracles but still be a God that dont change? Listen here, I tell ya, He dont change; if He did, He wouldnt be God, and Hes not gonna stop bein a God of miracles.

20. Now the reason He dont do miracles amongst folks is 'cause they be fallin away into unbelief, and wanderin off the right path, not knowin the God they oughta trust.

21. Well, Im sayin to ya, whoever believes in Christ, doubtin nuthin, whatsver ya ask the Father in Christs name, its gonna be granted to ya; and that promise is for everyone, even to folks at the ends of the earth.

22. For, looky here, Jesus Christ, the Son of God, told His disciples whod hang around, and all His other followers, while folks were listenin: Yall go out into all the world and preach that gospel to every critter;

23. And whoever believes and gets baptized is gonna be saved, but whoever dont believe, theyll be damned;

24. And them signs are gonna follow them that believeMy name, they'll cast out devils; they gonna speak in new tongues; theyll pick up serpents; and if they drink somethin' deadly, it wont hurt em; theyll lay hands on the sick and theyll get better;

25. And who soever believes in My name, doubtin nuthin, Im gonna back up all my words straight to the ends of the earth.

26. Now, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny what Hes said? Whos gonna rise up

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

against the mighty power of the Lord? Wholl look down on the Lord's work? Wholl look down on the kids of Christ? Listen, all ye who look down on the works of God, you're gonna wonder and meet your end.

27. So dont go despisin and wonderin, but listen close to the Lords words, and ask the Father in Jesus' name for what you need. Dont doubt, just believe, and start alignin your heart with the good ol days, and come to the Lord with all ya got, workin out your own salvation with a bit of fear and shakin before Him.

28. Be smart while youre on probation; shake off all the junk; don't ask just to fulfill your cravings, but ask with a steadiness, that you wont fall for no temptations, but serve the true and livin' God.

29. Make sure you ain't gettin baptized in a sorry state; make sure you aint takin the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but do all things worthily, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the livin' God; if you do this, and hang tight till the end, you ain't gonna be cast out.

30. Im talkin to ya like Im preachin' from the grave; cause I know youll have my words.

31. Dont yall condemn me cause I aint perfect, neither my daddy or the ones who wrote before him; just give thanks to God for showin you our flaws, so you can learn to be smarter than we ever were.

32. And right now, weve put this here record down based on what we know, in the language we call reformed Egyptian, handed down and kinda twisted by us, just talkin like we do.

33. If our plates had been big enough, weduv written in Hebrew; but we changed that around too; and if we coulda gone with Hebrew, well, youdve found no faults in our record.

34. But the Lord knows what we wrote, and nobody else knows our lingo; and cause none other folks know our language, Hes made a way for it to be understood.

35. And these words are penned that we might clean our hands of the blood of our brethren, whove wandered off in unbelief.

36. And look here, what weve wished for our brethren, their comeback to the knowledge of Christ, is based on the prayers of all the holy folks whove lived in the land.

37. And I pray the Lord Jesus Christ gets their prayers answered cording to their faith; and may God the Father remember that deal He made with Israel; and may He bless em forever, cause of faith in the name of Jesus

Christ. Amen.

## **Ether**

### **Ether Chapter 1**

1. Well now, let me spin you a yarn 'bout them Jaredites, takin' it from them twenty-four plates the good folks of Limhi found back in the days of King Mosiah.
2. Moroni starts to chop down them writings of Etherhe lays out Ethers family tree tooAnd yknow, them Jaredites weren't all mixed up at the Tower of BabelThe Good Lord promised to lead 'em to a mighty fine patch of land and make 'em a big ol' nation.
3. And now, Im fixin to tell ya bout them ancient folks that got wiped out by the Lord right here in this northern territory.
4. Im pullin my tale from them twenty-four plates that Limhis people found, which folks call the Book of Ether.
5. Now, I reckon the first part of this here record talks 'bout how the world got made, and Adam too, all the way up to that big ol tower, and all that went on with folks up till then, well, that stuffs got to be in the hands of the Jews
6. So I ain't gonna write none of that goin' back to Adam, 'cause its all on them plates; and anybody who finds 'em gets the whole kit and caboodle.
7. But lemme tell ya, I ain't givin the whole shebang, just part of it, from that tower down to when they met their end.
8. So this is how Im tellin the tale. The fella who wrote this was Ether, and he was kin to Coriantor.
9. Coriantor was the son of Moron.
10. And Moron was the son of Ethem.
11. And Ethem was the son of Ahah.
12. And Ahah was the son of Seth.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

13. And Seth was the son of Shiblon.
14. And Shiblon was the son of Com.
15. And Com was the son of Coriantum.
16. And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.
17. And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.
18. And Aaron was from Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.
19. And Hearthom was the son of Lib.
20. And Lib was the son of Kish.
21. And Kish was the son of Corom.
22. And Corom was the son of Levi.
23. And Levi was the son of Kim.
24. And Kim was the son of Morianton.
25. And Morianton was kin to Riplakish.
26. And Riplakish was the son of Shez.
27. And Shez was the son of Heth.
28. And Heth was the son of Com.
29. And Com was the son of Coriantum.
30. And Coriantum was the son of Emer.
31. And Emer was the son of Omer.
32. And Omer was the son of Shule.
33. And Shule was the son of Kib.
34. And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;
35. Now Jared and his brother brought their families and a few others out from that big ol tower, right at the time when the Lord made folks' tongues all tangled up, and He got mad and said 'fore long they'd be spread out all over the earth; and just like He said, folks got scattered.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

36. So the brother of Jared, he was a big ol strong fella, real favored by the Lord, said to Jared, his brother: Hey, call on the Lord, and maybe He wont make us all confused so we can still chit-chat.

37. Well, that brother of Jared done cried out to the Lord, and the Lord took pity on Jared; so He didnt mix up Jareds words, 'n they werent left in a tangle.

38. Then Jared told his brother: Call out again to the Lord, maybe Hell turn back His anger from our friends so they dont get all jumbled up either.

39. So it happened that the brother of Jared cried out again, and the Lord had compassion on their buddies and their families too, so they all stayed clear of that mess.

40. Then Jared said again to his brother: Go on and ask the Lord if Hes bout to kick us outta this land, and if so, ask Him where we oughta go. Who knows, maybe the Lords got a better land in mind for us? And if that's the case, lets stick close to the Lord so we can inherit it.

41. Then the brother of Jared went on and called out to the Lord just like Jared told him to.

42. And the Lord heard the brother of Jared, had a heart for him, and said to him:

43. Gather up your flocks, male and female, of every kind; and also get all the seeds of the earth you can find; and bring your families; and dont forget Jared your brother and his kin; and all your friends and their families too.

44. And when youre done with that, head on down into that valley to the north. Ill meet ya there, and Ill lead you into a land thats better than any other land out there.

45. And there Ill bless you and your descendants, and raise up a great nation from your line, and your brothers line, and all who follow you. Aint nobody gonna be bigger than that nation Im fixin to raise up from your bloodline, all over this great big earth. And Ill do this for you 'cause you've been callin out to me for so long now.

## **Ether Chapter 2**

1. Well, it all started that Jared and his brother, along with their families and a few friends and their families too, made their way down into this here valley goin' northward, and they called that valley Nimrod, named



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

after some big ol' hunter, yknow? They brought along all their critters they gathered up, both the boys and the girls, of all sorts.

2. They set up some traps and caught them some birds; then they whipped up a vessel to haul in all the fish from the water.

3. And they also took along some deseret, which folks say means honey bee, and wouldn't you know it, they brought a whole swarm of bees and all kinds of seeds from the land.

4. So they got down into Nimrod Valley, and the Lord showed up and had a chat with Jareds brother, but he didnt see him cause the Lord was hangin' out in a cloud.

5. Then the Lord told em they needed to venture out into the wilderness, way out where no soul had ever been. He went ahead of em talkin like he was right there in a cloud, giving em directions on where to go.

6. They traveled through the wild and built themselves some barges to cross the waters, with the good Lord always guidin their way.

7. And the Lord didnt want em stoppin' beyond the sea out in the wildhe wanted em to get on over to that promised land, a real special place above all others that he had set aside for good folks.

8. He had swore to Jareds brother, all mad and wrathful-like, that whoever claimed this here promised land from then on was gonna serve him, the one true God, or they'd be swept away when his full wrath hit em.

9. Now, yall can see how God feels bout this landit's a promised land, and whoever gets ahold of it gotta serve God, or theyll be done for when his wrath comes down, which happens when folks start a-gettin' too sinful.

10. Cause let me tell ya, this lands choice above all other lands; so whoever owns it gotta serve God or be swept away 'cause thats how its always been decreed. Ain't 'til the folks get fully iniquitous that theyll be swept off.

11. And this messages for yall Gentiles, so you can catch wind of Gods decreesthat you can get right and not keep on with your sins 'til the time comes when you bring down Gods full wrath on yourselves, like the folks of this land have done before.

12. Look here, this lands a mighty choice one, and any nation settlin' here gets to be free from bondage and

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

captivity, and all them other nations under heaven, so long as they serve the God of this land, whos none other than Jesus Christ, shown to us through our writings.

13. And now Im gonna keep on with my tale; see, it came to be that the Lord led Jared and his crew to that great sea that splits the lands. So when they got to the sea, they pitched their tents and called the place Moriancumer; dang near lived in those tents right on the shore for four whole years.

14. When those four years wrapped up, the Lord popped back down to chat with Jareds brother, stood in a cloud, and talked with him for three whole hours, seriously scoldin' him for not callin upon the Lord like he should've been doin'.

15. Jareds brother felt real bad about what he done and called on the Lord for his folks with him. And the Lord told him: "Ill forgive you and your kin, but dont mess up again; ya gotta keep in mind, my Spirit aint always gonna strive with folks. If you let your sins grow ripe, youll be cut off from me. And these here are my thoughts on the land Im givin youits a land that surely stands out above all others.

16. Then the Lord said: Get to work and build them barges like you done before. So Jareds brother rolled up his sleeves and got to work, him and his kin, buildin' those barges just like the Lord instructed. They were little and light on the water, kinda like a bird floatin on the surface.

17. And they made 'em super tight, real snug like, so they could hold water just like a dish; the bottom of em was tight like a dish; the sides were tight too; and the ends all peaked up; the top was tight like a dish; and each one was long as a tree; and when that door was shut, it was tight like a dish too.

18. So it went that Jareds brother called out to the Lord sayin: Oh Lord, Ive done what you told me to do, built those barges just like you said.

19. And now he's sayin', Lord, there ain't no light in em; how we gonna steer these things? We gonna run outta air and perish, cause we can only breathe the air thats in here; if we dont got no air, were goners.

20. Then the Lord told Jareds brother: Heres what you domake a hole in the top and the bottom; when youre gaspin for air, just open that hole to breathe. If the water's gettin' in, plug it back up so you dont drown.

21. And sure enough, Jareds brother did just as the Lord commanded.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

22. Then he called out to the Lord again, sayin': Lord, look here, I've done what you asked; I made those vessels for my folks, but theres still no light in em. Will you let us cross this big ol' water in the dark?

23. The Lord said to him: What do you want me to do so yall can have light in your vessels? Cant have windows cause theyll get smashed; also, dont be takin fire with you, cause yall aint gonna be travelin' by firelight.

24. 'Cause here's the thing, yall are gonna be like a whale out there in the sea, gettin tossed by them monster waves. But fear not, Ill pull you back up from the depths of the sea; the winds are blowin outta my mouth, and Ive sent forth the rains and floods.

25. And look, I'm makin preparations for these challenges; you cant cross this vast deep unless I get you ready for those waves and winds and floods comin' your way. So what do you want me to prepare for yall so you can have light when youre swallowed up in the deep blue sea?

### **Ether Chapter 3**

1. Well now, it happened that the brother of Jared, (there was a total of eight boats ready to go) trekked up the mountain they called Shelem, 'cause it was just way up there, and he carved himself out sixteen little rocks; they were sparkly white like clean glass, yall. He hauled 'em up on his hands to the top of that mountain, and hollered out to the Lord, sayin':

2. Oh Lord, You mentioned we gotta face them floods. Now look here, Lord, dont you be mad at me for bein' weak, 'cause I know way too well Youre holy and sittin high up there, while were just lowly folks down here; were all messed up from that fall and our hearts just keep bein bad; but still, Lord, You told us to call on You, so we can get what we need from You.

3. Well, Lord, Youve given us a good whuppin 'cause of our wrongdoings, and forced us out here in the wilderness for way too many years; but, bless Your heart, Youve been good to us. So, Lord, have a heart and dont let Your anger fall on this here people, and dont let em drown in this wild ocean in the dark; look at these little stones I made outta that rock.

4. Now, I know, Lord, You got all the might, and can do what You please for us folks; so go on and touch

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

these stones, Lord, with Your finger, and get 'em ready to shine when its dark; they need to light our way while we cross this big ol sea.

5. Yeah, Lord, You can do this, we know You got the power, even if it seems small to us folks down here.

6. And just like that, when the brother of Jared finished sayin all that, the Lord reached out His hand and touched them stones one by one with His finger. And the veil was lifted off the brother of Jareds eyes, and he saw the Lords finger; it looked just like a mans finger, made of flesh and blood, and boy, the brother of Jared hit the ground 'cause he was scared to death.

7. And the Lord noticed he was flat on the ground and said to him: Get up, why are you down there?

8. He replied to the Lord: I saw Your finger, and I was afraid Youd strike me down; I had no clue You had a body like that.

9. And the Lord told him: 'Cause of your faith, youve seen that I can take on flesh and blood; aint nobody ever come to me with faith as strong as yours; if it wasnt so, you couldnt have seen my finger. You seein more than that?

10. And he replied: No, Lord; just show Yourself to me.

11. And the Lord asked him: Do you believe what I'm about to tell ya?

12. And he said: Sure do, Lord, I know You're tellin' the truth, 'cause Youre a God of truth, and You dont lie.

13. And when he said that, well, the Lord revealed Himself to him and said: Since you know these things, youre saved from that fall; now youre back in my presence; that's why Im showing myself to ya.

14. Lookie here, Im the one who was set up since the world started to save my people. Yup, thats me, Jesus Christ. Im both the Father and the Son. In me, all folks can have life, and its eternal for them who believe in my name; theyll be my sons and daughters.

15. And Ive never showed myself to anyone I created, 'cause no ones had faith in me like you do. Can ya see that youre made in my own image? Yeah, everyone was made at the start just like me.

16. Look here, this body you see is the body of my spirit; I made man after the body of my spirit; just like Im showing myself to you as a spirit, Ill show myself to my people in the flesh.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

17. And now, I, Moroni, gotta say I cant give a full account of all this stuff thats written, so its enough for me to say that Jesus showed Himself to this man in spirit, just like He did to the Nephites.

18. And He took care of him just like He did with the Nephites; all this was so this man would know He was God, 'cause of the many mighty things the Lord had done for him.

19. And since this man knew what he knew, he just couldnt help but see behind the veil; and he saw Jesus finger, and when he did, he hit the ground scared, knowing it was the Lords finger; he had no doubt left, 'cause he knew with all his heart.

20. So, with that perfect understanding of God, he couldnt be kept from behind the veil; he saw Jesus, and He took care of him.

21. And it happened that the Lord said to the brother of Jared: Now listen, dont you let what you seen and heard go out to the folks until its time for me to show off my name in the flesh; so, you keep all this close, dont show it to no one.

22. And when you come to me, write it all down and seal it so nobody can figure it out; youre gonna write it in a way they can't read at all.

23. And look, Im givin you these two stones, and youre gonna seal them too with the stuff you write down.

24. 'Cause see, the way you gonna write it, Ive made it all jumbled up, so in my own time, these stones will show folks what you wrote about.

25. And when the Lord said that, He showed the brother of Jared all the folks of the earth that ever was and all thats yet to come; He didnt hold back any of it from his view, even to the ends of the earth.

26. Hed told him before that if he believed, he could see everythingso the Lord wasnt holding back, 'cause He knew He could show him all things.

27. And the Lord said to him: Write this all down and seal it up; Ill show it again when the time's right to the children of men.

28. And it happened that the Lord told him to seal up those two stones he got, and dont show them to nobody, 'til the Lord shows em to the children of men.

## **Ether Chapter 4**

1. Well now, the Lord told the brother of Jared to skedaddle down that mountain after bein' in His presence and write down all that he seen; and they wasnt allowed to show up for folks till after He got lifted up on that cross; that's why King Mosiah kept 'em under wraps, so they wouldnt make an appearance before the world till after Christ showed Himself to His people.
2. And once Christ really did show Himself to His folks, He made it clear that they should bring those things to light.
3. But now, after all that, everybody done faded away into doubt; ain't nobody left cept them Lamanites, and they gone and turned their backs on the gospel of Christ; so here I am told to stash 'em away in the ground again.
4. Looky here, I done wrote down on these plates the very things the brother of Jared laid his eyes on; and there ain't been nothin' greater brought to light than what was shown to the brother of Jared.
5. So the Lord told me to write 'em down; and I sure did. And He told me to seal 'em up tight; He also told me to seal the explanation of 'em too; so I went ahead and sealed up the interpreters, just like the Lord said.
6. The Lord said to me: These things ain't gonna go out to the Gentiles till they get their act together and clean up their wrongdoings before Him.
7. And on that day when they decide to have faith in me, like the brother of Jared did, so they can be made pure in me, then I'll show 'em all the things the brother of Jared saw, even all my revelations, says Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Big Boss of the heavens and the earth, and all that's in 'em.
8. And if anyone wanna argue with the word of the Lord, let 'em be cursed; and if anyone denies these things, let 'em be cursed too; 'cause I'm not gonna show 'em nuthin' greater, says Jesus Christ; 'cause Im the one doin' the talkin'.
9. And when I give the word, them heavens gonna open and close; and when I say it, the ground's gonna shake; and my command gonna make folks disappear, just like they was burnt up.
10. And if ya dont believe my words, then ya ain't believing my disciples neither; and if it turns out I ain't

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

talkin', yall judge for yourselves; cause yall gonna know it's me speakin' at the end.

11. But the ones who believe what Ive said, Ill visit 'em with my Spirit, and they gonna know and testify.

'Cause my Spirit gonna show em these things are true; it gets folks doin' good.

12. And anything that gets folks to do good is from me; cause good aint comin' from nowhere but me. Im the one that leads folks to all thats good; if ya dont believe what I say, then youre not gonna believe I'm who I say I am; and if ya dont believe me, ya ain't gonna believe the Father who sent me. Cause listen here, I am the Father, I am the light, the life, and the truth of this whole world.

13. Come on over here to me, you Gentiles, and Ill show ya the greater things, that knowledge all hid up 'cause folks ain't believing.

14. Come on over here to me, you house of Israel, and I will show ya all the great things the Father got laid up for ya since the beginning of time; and it aint got to ya cause of doubt.

15. Now listen, when you rip down that veil of doubt that keeps ya stuck in all that wickedness, hard-heartedness, and blindness, then you gonna see the great and marvelous things that have been hidden from ya since the foundation of this worldyeah, when you call on the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a humble spirit, then you gonna know that the Father remembered the promise He made to your ancestors, O house of Israel.

16. And then all my revelations that I had my servant John write down gonna be shown to all the people. Remember now, when yall see these things, youll know the time's come for em to be shown for real.

17. So when you receive this record, you can know the Fathers work has kicked off all over the land.

18. So, yall best repent, all corners of the earth, come on over to me, and believe in my gospel, and get baptized in my name; cause anyone who believes and gets baptized is gonna be saved; but if ya dont believe, youre gonna be in a heap of trouble; and signs gonna follow those who believe in my name.

19. And blessed is the one found faithful to my name at the end, cause he gonna be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him since the world's been laid down. And dont forget, its me talkin. Amen.

## **Ether Chapter 5**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well, let me just say, those three folks who witnessed this whole shebang and the work itself sure will back up just how true the Book of Mormon is.
2. Now, Im Moroni, and Ive been scribblin down the stuff I was told to write, all from memory, ya know? And Ive shared with ya the bits I sealed up tight, so dont go messin with 'em lookin' to translate; that kind of things a no-go unless it's real smart-like from God.
3. Now, yall might just get lucky and get to show the plates to folks wholl help bring this here work to light;
4. And Gods gonna let three of em see it; theyll know for sure that all this is true as the day is long.
5. And let me tell ya, the words of three witnesses will make all this plain as day, and their testimony, along with this work, shows off the mighty power of God and His words, just like the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost have testified and all this will stand strong against the world come judgment day.
6. And if folks turn their ways and come to the Father in Jesus' name, they'll be welcomed right into Gods kingdom.
7. Now, if I ain't got no authority for all this, well, yall can be the judge; you'll sure know I got the goods when you see me standin there before God on that last day. Amen.

## **Ether Chapter 6**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, Moroni's fixin' to give y'all the scoop on Jared and his brother.
2. So after the Good Lord had prepped them stones that the brother of Jared lugged up that mountain, he came down and tossed them into them fancy vessels, one at each end; and lo and behold, them stones lit up like a firefly at dusk.
3. And just like that, the Lord made them stones shine even in the darkest times, givin' light to folks, young and old, so they wouldnt have to paddle through them great waters without sight.
4. Now, when theyd prepped all sorts of grub, enough to keep em full on the water, plus makin sure there was food for their critters, they climbed aboard them vessels or barges, and took off into the sea, settin their sights on the Lord.
5. Next thing ya know, the Lord whipped up a wild wind that blew over the waters towards that promised



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

land; they were tossed around like a tumbleweed in a storm.

6. It sure was a rough ride, time and again they found themselves deep in the oceans belly, all due to them big ol waves crashin over em, and the storms like a wild bullfight cause of that fierce wind.

7. But no worries, when they sunk into the deep, they was all snug in their vessels, tight as a drum, and just like Noahs ark; so when they got surrounded by all them waters, they cried out to the Lord, and He lifted em back up to the surface.

8. That wind just wouldnt let up, blowin towards that promised land while they floated around on the water; and they were headin on in the winds strong push.

9. They sang their hearts out to the Lord; yep, the brother of Jared was singin his praises all day long, and when night rolled around, they didnt stop none.

10. And they kept gettin blown along; nothin from the deep blue sea could break em, not even a whale could mess with em; they always had their light, whether under the waves or above.

11. So they kept on floatin for a long stretch, three hundred and forty-four days right there on the water.

12. Finally, they hit the shore of that promised land. And when they touched down on that soil, they bowed down, humbled themselves before the Lord, and shed a few joyful tears 'cause of all the goodness He showed em.

13. Then they stepped out on that land and got right to plowin.

14. Now, Jared had four boys, and they went by the names Jacom, Gilgah, Mahah, and Orihah.

15. And let me tell ya, the brother of Jared was busy too, havin himself some sons and daughters.

16. Now, Jareds buddies and his brother had about twenty-two folks in total; and they had themselves some younguns too before they got to that promised land, so they started growin like weeds.

17. They learned to walk humble-like before the Lord, and they got some lessons from on high.

18. Next thing ya know, they started spreadin out all over the land, multiplyin and workin the earth, and they got strong as oxen in their new home.

19. Now, the brother of Jared was gettin up there in age, and he knew his time was comin, so he said to Jared:

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Lets gather the folks up so we can count em, figure out what they want from us before we head down to our final rest.

20. So the people came together. Now, the brother of Jared had twenty-two kids, and Jared had twelve, what with his four sons.

21. And they went ahead and counted their folks; after that, they asked em what they wanted done before they kicked the bucket.

22. Well, the folks asked em to anoint one of their boys to be their king.

23. But lemme tell ya, that weighed heavy on em. The brother of Jared told em: This here thing might just lead to trouble.

24. But Jared told his brother: Let em have a king if thats what they want. He said to em: Pick one of our boys to be king, whoever ya reckon.

25. Next thing yall know, they picked the firstborn of the brother of Jared, by the name of Pagag. But he turned it down and said no, he wouldnt be their king. The people wanted his daddy to convince him, but his daddy wouldnt do it; he told em not to force anyone to be king.

26. So they tried pickin all Pagags brothers, but they all said no, sir.

27. And neither would the sons of Jared, all but one; and Orihah got himself anointed to be king over the folks.

28. Now he started reignin, and the people began to thrive, gettin rich as croissants.

29. Then it came to pass that Jared passed away, and so did his brother.

30. And Orihah, he walked humbly before the Lord, rememberin all the great things the Lord did for his father, and taught his folks 'bout all the miracles the Lord blessed their fathers with.

## **Ether Chapter 7**

1. Orihah's runnin things right, yallwhile folks be fightin' over kingdoms like Shule and Cohor, them prophets speakin out gainst all that sin and worshipin' false gods, and wouldnt ya know, the people started turnin back.

2. So its told that Orihah handed down justice round these parts his whole life long, which was a mighty long time.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

3. He had him some sons 'n daughters, yes sir, thirty-one in total, includin' twenty-three boys.
4. And sure enough, in his later years, he had himself a boy named Kib. Then Kib took over the throne, and he ended up havin a son named Corihor.
5. Now, when Corihor hit thirty-two, he got this wild notion to rebel against his daddy, scootin' off to Nehor to set up shop; he got him some folks real good-lookin and pulled a whole mess of people along with him.
6. So, once he had himself a little army, he marched right on over to Moron, where the king was hangin out, and caught him up, fulfillin what that ol' brother of Jared said bout folks endin up captives.
7. Now, Moron, where the king stayed, was right close to this place called Desolation that them Nephites talked bout.
8. Pretty soon, Kib found himself all locked up while his own son Corihor was runnin' the show; Kib got real old by then, but still managed to have another boy named Shule while he was still stuck in that there captivity.
9. Well, Shule got mighty mad at his brother; he grew strong as a bull and could judge up a storm too.
10. So he hiked on over to that hill Ephraim, forged him some fine steel swords for all them folks who followed him, then he marched right back to Nehor to take on Corihor, and wouldnt you believe it, he snatched the kingdom back for his pop, Kib.
11. Now, cause of what Shule had done, his daddy handed the kingdom over to him, and thus he started his reign in place of his father.
12. From then on, he laid down justice that was right as rain; he spread his kingdom all over cause there were folks poppin' up everywhere.
13. Shule also had himself a whole passel of sons n daughters.
14. And Corihor, well, he felt bad bout all the mess he made; so Shule gave him a lil power in his kingdom.
15. Corihor had a slew of kids, and one of em was named Noah.
16. Now it just so happened that Noah turned against King Shule and his own pa, Corihor, and he managed to pull Cohor, his brother, and a whole bunch of folks right along with him.
17. Noah fought against Shule, and he ended up snaggin the land where they first settled and started callin

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

himself king of that territory.

18. Then he went round fightin Shule again, and caught him up and took him back to Moron.

19. As fate would have it, just as Noah was fixin' to off him, Shules boys snuck into Noahs place at night, took him out, busted down the prison door, and got their daddy back up on his throne.

20. So then, Noahs kid took over building that ol kingdom in his daddys place; but they could never edge out Shule the king again, and the people under ol Shule were doin real well and growin' strong.

21. Then there was a division in the land, creatin two kingdoms, one led by Shule, and the other by Cohor, Noahs boy.

22. Cohor had his people goin up against Shule, but Shule showed em whos boss and took out Cohor.

23. Now, Cohor had himself a son named Nimrod, and Nimrod was savvy enough to pass the kingdom of Cohor over to Shule, gainin favor in his eyes; so Shule treated him real good and let him run things the way he wanted.

24. During Shules time, them prophets came rollin in among the folk, sent by the Lord, saying that the peoples wickedness and idol-worship was cursing the land, and if they didnt straighten up, destruction was comin.

25. Well, the folks didnt take kindly to them prophets and started throwin shade. But King Shule? He served up some justice to all them mockers.

26. He enacted a law all over the land givin' the prophets the green light to go wherever they pleased, and thanks to that, folks started turning their lives around.

27. And since them people turned away from their sins and false gods, the Lord showed them mercy and they began to thrive again on the land. Aint no surprise that Shule had himself some more kids when he got old.

28. Now, in Shules days, there werent no more wars, and he kept in mind all the big stuff the Lord did for his people gettin em across that big ol' water into the promised land; so he kept on dishin out justice the right way for all his days.

## **Ether Chapter 8**

1. Well, theres a whole mess of fuss and fightin bout the kingdomAkish done went and swore himself into

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

some secret club to take out the king Now, these secret clubs, they aint nothin but the devils handiwork and theyll bring ruin on a whole nation Folks these days, they best keep their eyes peeled for those sneaky groups that aim to mess with the freedom of every land, nation, and place out there.

2. So, one day, ol Omer popped out some kids, and he took over the throne after that. Then Omer had him a boy named Jared; Jared went and had himself some sons and daughters too.

3. But then Jared got real rebellious, n moved himself over to the land of Heth. He started butterin up folks with them slick words of his, til he had half the kingdom in his pocket.

4. Once he had that half, he went to war against his own daddy, n took his poor pa into captivity, makin him serve like some lowly prisoner.

5. Now, durin Omers reign, he was stuck in captivity for a good long while. And while locked up, he had him some more kids, mongst em bein Esrom and Coriantumr.

6. Now, them kids was mighty mad bout what their brother Jared had done, so they rallied up a whole army and went after Jared. And would ya believe it, they snuck up on him at night to settle the score.

7. Well, after they took care of Jareds army, they was fixin to take him out too; but Jared begged them not to, sayin hed hand over the kingdom to his daddy. So, they let him keep on livin.

8. Now Jared was feelin pretty low-down bout losin the kingdom since he had his heart all set on it and the glory that comes with it.

9. Then his daughter, clever as a whip, saw her father wallowin in sorrow and thought up a scheme to get back that kingdom for him.

10. Now this gal was a real looker. So she chit-chatted with her daddy, askin why he was so sad. Didnt he read that ol record the folks brought over the big ol sea? Aint there tales bout them gettin kingdoms and glory through some sneaky plans?

11. So, she figured her daddy oughta call for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and shes like, Well, look at me, Ill shimmy and shake for him, and then hell want me as his wife; so ifn he asks ya for my hand, just say: Ill give her to ya if yall bring me the head of my daddy, the king.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

12. Now, Omer was chums with Akish; so when Jared sent for Akish, his daughter danced up a storm for him, and he was all taken with her, wantin her for his wife. So he told Jared, You best hand her over to me.

13. And Jared was like, Sure, Ill give her to ya, but you gotta fetch me my daddys head first.

14. Then Akish gathered up all his kinfolk at Jareds place and asked them, Yall gonna swear to me that youll stick by me in whatever I ask?

15. And they all said they swear by the God above and everything in it, that if anyone goes back on what Akish wanted, theyd lose their noggin; and if anyone blabbed what Akish told em, their life was forfeit too.

16. So thats how they struck a deal with Akish. He laid down the oaths just like the folks did back in the day who were all about power, and those oaths had roots goin all the way back to Cain, the first murderer.

17. And they kept those oaths rollin round because of the devils power, messin with the folks to keep em in the dark, helpin those who craved power to get it, and pushin them to kill, steal, lie, and all sorts of other wicked stuff.

18. It was Jareds daughter who sparked the idea in him to dig up all them old stories; and Jared flipped that thought to Akish; so he shared it with his fam and buddies, sweet-talkin em into doin whatever dirty deed he wanted.

19. They formed themselves a secret club, just like them old timers did; and lemme tell ya, its the most detestable and corrupt thing in Gods eyes.

20. Cause the Lord dont work in secret clubs, and he sure dont want folks spillin blood; Hes been sayin that from day one.

21. And now I, Moroni, aint gonna spill the beans on how they swore those oaths and made their clubs, cause I know theyre all over the place, even with the Lamanites.

22. And theyve been part of the downfall of the folks Im talkin bout now, along with the Nephi crowd.

23. Now any nation that puts its faith in these secret clubs lookin to grab power and riches, unleashed across the land, better watch out; cause theyll be headed for destruction; the Lord wont take kindly to the blood of His saints bein shed, itll be cryin out from the ground for payback, and He wont sit idle.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

24. So listen up, Gentiles, its wise in Gods eyes to learn about this here stuff so you can turn from your sins and not let these killer clubs rise up against ya, built on greed and powercause destructions comin for ya, and the sword of Gods divine justice is gonna land hard if you let this nonsense go on.

25. So, the Lords givin you the heads up; when you see all this trouble rollin in, you better wake up to the fact that youre in deep trouble because of this secret combination; or wo betide you alltheres blood on the ground cryin out for vengeance against whats been done, and those who built this mess will have it comin too.

26. Cause whoever builds this thing is gunnin for the freedom of every land, nation, and town; and its gonna lead to the downfall of every last one of em, cause its hatched by the devil, the king of all liars; that same old liar who tricked our first ancestors; hes the one who got men on the path to murder since the dawn of time; hes the one whos hardened hearts of men so theyve killed the prophets, stoned em, and kicked em to the curb since the very beginning.

27. So here I am, Moroni, tasked with spillin all this so evil can be wiped out, and the day comes when Satan cant drag folks down no more, that theyll be led to do good and drink from the well of righteousness and be saved.

## **Ether Chapter 9**

1. Well, let me tell ya, the kingdom sure does hop around from one folks to another, all 'cause o' sneaky business, envy, and good ol murderEmer laid eyes on the Son of RighteousnessPlenty of prophets hollered about turnin from their sinsWhile a famine and some nasty snakes was givin folks a mighty tough time.

2. Now I, Moroni, gonna keep on with my story. So, it went like thiscause them secret plotters Akish and his pals were up to no good, they managed to knock Omer right off the throne.

3. But the good Lord had mercy on Omer, his boys, and his gals who weren't tryin to do him in.

4. And the Lord sent Omer a dream tellin him to skedaddle outta that place; so, Omer packed up his fam and hightailed it outta there, travelin a good long while, passin by the hill of Shim, and swingin around where them Nephites got wiped out, headin east til he found a spot called Ablom down by the sea. Settin' up camp there, him and his whole family, 'cept for Jared and his crew.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

5. Well, wouldnt ya know it, Jared got himself crowned king by the hands of wickedness; then he married off his daughter to Akish.
6. Then it happened that Akish couldnt stand the sight of his father-in-law and got a mind to off him; he went to those he promised old oaths to, and before you know it, they had his father-in-laws head while he was sittin up on his throne, holdin court with the folks.
7. Man, this wicked secret club spread so big it corrupted everybody; so there was Jared, murdered on his throne, and Akish took over just like that.
8. Soon enough, Akish got jealous of his own boy, so he threw him in the slammer and cut back his grub until he didnt make it.
9. Now his brother Nimrahoh, he was mighty mad at his daddy for what he done to his brother.
10. Nimrah got himself a small band of men, and they high-tailed it to join Omer.
11. Akish had himself more sons, and wouldnt ya know, they charmed the folks real good, even though everyone promised to toe the line and do whatever Akish wanted.
12. Them Akish folks wanted riches, just like their daddy wanted power; so the boys of Akish dangled money out there and pulled most folks toward em.
13. Then a big ol war broke out between Akishs sons and Akish himself, lastin years and years, strippin nearly everyone from the kingdom, cept for thirty souls and them who ran off with Omer.
14. So, Omer got brought back to his familys land.
15. Now Omer was gettin on up in years, but even so, he had himself a boy named Emer; and he anointed Emer king so he could sit in his spot.
16. Well, after givin' Emer the crown, Omer saw two years of peace before he passed on, full of daysmany of em rough and tough. Emer took over and followed right in Omer's footsteps.
17. The Lord started takin the curse away from the land, blessin Emers fam with heaps of prosperity; in only sixty-two years, they got themselves real strong and rich-like
18. With all sorts of fruits, grains, fancy fabrics, gold, silver, and all them spoils;



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

19. And on top of that, they had all kinds of livestock oxen, cows, sheep, pigs, goats, and a whole mess of critters useful for eatin.

20. They also had horses and donkeys, and even elephants, cureloms, and cumoms all of which were real handy, especially them elephants, cureloms, and cumoms.

21. So there ya go, the Lord was pouring his blessings all over this land, the best land of all, tellin folks if they took the land, it better be for the Lord, or theyd face his mighty wrath when they got ripe with wickedness.

22. Emer was all about judgin righteously till the end of his days; he had a whole mess of sons and daughters, and among them was Coriantum, who he anointed to take his place.

23. After makin Coriantum king, Emer lived four more years and saw peace settle in the land; he even laid eyes on the Son of Righteousness and reveled in those times, then passed on peacefully.

24. Well, Coriantum followed right in his daddys footsteps, buildin up a bunch of big ol cities, doin good by his people, all the while. But it took him a long while before he had any younguns, waitin til he was awfully old.

25. Then, sure enough, his wife passed away at the ripe ol age of a hundred and two. So, Coriantum, in his old age, found him a young wife and had him some kids; he lived to be a hundred and forty-two years old.

26. Then Coriantum had himself a boy named Com, who took up the crown after him; Com reigned for forty-nine years and had him a boy named Heth, along with some other kids.

27. But hold on tight, cause folks spread out all over again, and wickedness crept back into the land, with Heth pickin up those old secret plans to do away with his daddy.

28. Then it happened that Heth took his father down, killin him with his own sword, and then he grabbed the crown for himself.

29. Prophets came around again, yellin for folks to repent and make way for the Lord, or theyd bring a curse on the land; shoot, they warned em of a mighty famine thatd leave em lost if they didnt turn from their ways.

30. But them folks wouldnt listen, tossin the prophets outta town; some they even tossed down pits to leave em to rot. And wouldnt ya know, they did it all cause King Heth commanded it.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

31. Well, that led to a terrible drought settlin over the land, and folks began droppin off quick-like cause there wasnt no rain fallin.

32. And then came them poisonous snakes, causin harm to plenty folks. Their herds took off runnin from them snakes southward to a place called Zarahemla by the Nephites.

33. A good many didnt make it along the way, but some did escape down south.

34. Then the Lord stepped in, making them serpents stop their chase, blockin the paths so nobody could get through em; any soul that tried to cross might just fall victim to them poisonous critters.

35. The people followed after the animals and gorged themselves on the carcasses of critters that fell along the way, until they cleaned em out. Once they saw they were on the brink of perishing, folks started to repent of their wrongdoings and cried out to the Lord.

36. And it came to pass, when they finally humbled themselves enough before the Lord, He sent rain upon the earth; and the folks started to come back to life, with crops poppin up in the northern parts and all around. And the Lord showed off His power, keepin em safe from hunger.

## **Ether Chapter 10**

1. One king takes over from anothersome kings are good folks, while others are real no-gooderswhen the good folks are in charge, the people get blessed and do well by the Lord.

2. So, there was this fella named Shez, he was kin to Hethcourse Heth done gone away cause of a famine, leavin just Shez to carry the torchso, Shez got to work fixin up a broken crowd.

3. Well, Shez remembered how his folks had been wiped out, and he set out to build a decent kingdom; he didnt forget how the Lord had helped Jared and his brother make it across that big ol ocean; he walked the path of the Lord and had himself some sons and daughters.

4. But his oldest boy, who was also named Shez, turned against him; still, that boy got himself hurt by a thief cause of all that money weighin down his pockets, which ended up makin peace for his daddy again.

5. Then ol Shez built up a whole mess of cities all over the land, and folks started spreadin out again. He lived to be as old as dirt and had himself a boy named Riplakish before he passed away, and then Riplakish took

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

over.

6. Well, Riplakish didnt exactly do right by the Lord; he had a whole bunch of wives and concubines, and he sure piled up the burdens on folks, givin em heavy taxes to pay; and with all that cash, he built up some fancy buildings.

7. He also got himself a downright gorgeous throne; built a pile of jails, too, and if anyone didnt wanna pay their taxes, they found themselves behind bars; and if they couldnt pay, you guessed it, straight to jail they went; he made em work hard just to keep their heads above water; anyone who didnt want to work, well they found a whole different fate.

8. So, he got all that fine work done, even had them refine his fine gold in prison; all sorts of fancy stuff was crafted there. This fella made sure to put folks through the wringer with his wickedness and vile acts.

9. After he ran the show for forty-two years, folks finally got fed up and stood up against him; and lo and behold, war broke out again, and Riplakish ended up bitin the dust, with his kin driven right out of the land.

10. Then, after a bunch of years gone by, Morianton, who also had Riplakish in his family tree, rounded up a whole gang of misfits and started fightin the people; he took over a heap of cities, and that war got real intense, lastin for ages; he took control over all the land and named himself king.

11. Once he wore that crown, he lightened the load on the folks, which made em like him; they even anointed him as their king.

12. He brought justice for the folks, but he looked out for himself, not so much, cause of all his wrongdoings; thats why he got cut off from the Lords presence.

13. Well, Morianton went on to build a whole bunch of cities, and folks got rich under him, both with buildings and gold, silver, grain, livestock, you name it, they got back what they lost.

14. Morianton lived a long life, then had him a boy named Kim; Kim took over his daddys throne, ruled for eight years, and then Morianton died. But Kim didnt quite rule fair, so the Lord wasnt too fond of him.

15. His brother got all rebellious and put him in chains; that boy was stuck in captivity all his life, but he still had kids while he was there, and when he got old, he had himself a son named Levi; and then he passed on.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

16. Levi ended up servin in chains after his daddy was gone for forty-two years; he made war against the king and ended up snaggin the kingdom for himself.
17. Once he was in charge, he did right by the Lord, and the folks thrived under his rule; he lived a good long life, had a bunch of kids, and even anointed his son Corom as king after him.
18. Corom did right by the Lord all his days, had himself plenty of kids, and after a good long while, he passed just like everyone else; then Kish took over from him.
19. Kish passed away too, and then Lib became king in his place.
20. And Lib too did what was right in the Lords eyes. In his time, them poisonous snakes got wiped out. So, they headed south to hunt for food for the people since the land was full of critters. Lib also turned into quite the hunter himself.
21. They built a big ol' city at the narrow part of land where the sea split it.
22. They saved the land down south as a wilderness for huntin. And the northern part of the land ended up packed with people.
23. They was mighty diligent, buyin and sellin, tradin back and forth to make a bit of profit.
24. They worked all kinds of ores, makin gold, silver, iron, brass, you name it; they dug it up and piled it high to get their metals, create work for themselves.
25. They had fancy silks and finely spun linens; they made all sorts of clothin to cover up their bodies.
26. They crafted all kinds of tools to farm the land, for plowin and sowin, reaping and hoeing, and even thrashing.
27. And they whipped up tools for workin with their animals.
28. And made all sorts of weapons for war, creatin super detailed stuff.
29. Couldnt nobody be more blessed than they was, and the hand of the Lord surely helped em be prosperous. They was livin in a land that was mighty fine, just like the Lord said it would be.
30. Now, Lib lived a good while longer and had a passel of kids; he even had a boy named Hearthom.
31. Then Hearthom took his daddys seat, and when he ruled for twenty-four years, bam! That kingdom got

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

snatched away from him. He spent the rest of his days in chains.

32. He fathered Heth, and Heth lived all his life in captivity. Heth had Aaron, and Aaron also spent his life in chains; then Aaron had himself a boy named Amnigaddah, who lived in captivity too; he had a son named Coriantum, and guess what? Coriantum stayed in captivity all his days too; then he had a boy named Com.

33. Then it came to pass that Com took half of the kingdom. He ruled that half for forty-two years and went to fight against King Amgid, and they tussled for a whole bunch of years, and during that time, Com got the upper hand on Amgid, takin control of the rest of the kingdom.

34. In Coms days, bandits started poppin up in the land; they went back to the old tricks, makin oaths like they used to, and schemin again to bring the kingdom down.

35. But Com fought against em a whole lot; still, he couldnt quite win against em.

## **Ether Chapter 11**

1. Well now, back in the days of that ol' boy Com, there was a heap of prophets showin' up, tellin' folks that if they didnt turn their lives round, that great crowd was gonna be gone for good, and all they had to do was turn to the Lord and quit all them murders and evil deeds.

2. But here's the kicker, them folks didn't want nothin' to do with what the prophets had to say, so them prophets skedaddled over to Com lookin for some safety, cause them folks wanted to wipe em out.

3. So they started throwin all kinds of predictions at Com, and bless his heart, he had himself a good life after that.

4. He lived to be an old fella, had himself a son named Shiblom, and when he kicked the bucket, Shiblom took the reins. But wouldn't ya know it, Shiblom's brother wasnt too happy bout that and boy, did a war break out all over the place.

5. Well, Shiblom's brother sure stirred up a mess and got it in his head that all them prophets predictin doom for the people needed to be taken outta the picture.

6. Then things got rough all over the land, cause those prophets were sayin a big ol curse was gonna come down if folks didnt clean up their act, and it was gonna be worse than anything ever seen before, leavin' bones

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

all over, like piles of dirt if they didnt stop bein so wicked.

7. But shoot, they didnt listen to the Lord and just kept on with their corrupt ways, and next thing ya know, fights broke out all over, along with a heap of famines and sicknesses that caused a whole lotta destruction, the likes of which nobody had seen in ages all this happened while Shiblom was around.

8. Eventually, folks started realizin their mistakes, and as they did, the Lord showed 'em some mercy.

9. Then Shiblom ended up gettin' himself killed, and that fella Seth got caught up in captivity, settlin in for a life behind bars.

10. Then Ahah, his boy, took over the throne, runnin' things his way for the rest of his days, doin all sorts of nasty things that spilled a whole lotta blood, and he didnt stick around long either.

11. Now Ethem, bein in Ahah's family tree, hopped on the throne too and was up to no good just like the rest.

12. Then time rolled on, and in Ethem's time, a whole bunch of prophets came back around, warnin' folks again that the Lord was plannin' to wipe 'em clean off the earth if they didn't quit their shortcuts and mischief.

13. But then, wouldn't ya know it, the folks just shut their hearts up tighter than a clam and wouldnt listen, so the prophets were all sad and just left em be.

14. Now Ethem kept on with his bad judgments his whole life and had himself a boy named Moron. Come to find out, Moron took over next and didnt do much better before the Lord than Ethem did.

15. Then a big ol ruckus started amongst the folks cause of that secret club lookin to get power and riches; a tough guy rose up amongst 'em and took a swing at Moron, even knockin' half the kingdom right outta his hands, and he ran that half for quite a stretch.

16. But then Moron got his act together and reclaimed his kingdom back.

17. Wouldn't you know, then another strong fella popped up, and he was kin to the brother of Jared.

18. Next thing ya know, he takes down Moron and grabs the kingdom for himself; so Moron had to sit back in captivity for the rest of his days and had a son named Coriantor.

19. Now Coriantor found himself stuck in chains all his life.

20. During Coriantor's time, plenty of prophets came by again, pointing out marvelous things and hollerin for

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

the folks to mend their ways, sayin if they didnt, the Lord God was gonna come down with judgment to wipe em out.

21. And that the Lord would send another group of folks in to take over the land, just like He did with their ancestors.

22. But them folks pushed away all the prophets' words, what with their sneaky society and all their wicked ways.

23. Then Coriantor had himself a boy named Ether, and wiggle on outta here, he died, never gettin' outta that captivity his whole life.

### **Ether Chapter 12**

1. Well, let me tell yall, back in the day when Ether was around, ol' Coriantumr was the big boss man over the whole dang place.

2. Now, Ether, he was one of them prophets, right? So, he stepped up during Coriantumr's reign, feelin the Spirit real strong and just couldnt help but preach to folks.

3. He was hollerin from sunrise to sunset, tellin folks to put their faith in God and turn their lives 'round, or else theyd face the end of the line, saying that by faith, everything gets done.

4. So, whoever believes in God can sure enough hope for a better life after this one, yeah, even a cozy spot right next to God. That hope comes from faith, anchorin folks souls, keepin 'em steady and doin good deeds, givin' glory to God.

5. Now, Ether prophesied some mighty wonderous things, but folks just didnt believe em cause they couldnt see nothin.

6. And now, here I am, Moroni, wanna chat a bit 'bout these matters; let me show yall that faith is what yall hope for but cant see. So, dont argue just 'cause ya cant see it; ya wont get a witness til after you put your faith to the test.

7. It's 'cause of faith that Christ showed himself to our ancestors after he rose up from the dead. He didnt reveal himself until they had faith; gotta be some folks with faith out there, cause he didnt show up to

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

everyone.

8. But thanks to folks' faith, he revealed himself to the world and put in a good word for the Father, settin up a way for others to get a taste of that heavenly gift, hopin for what they havent laid eyes on.

9. So, listen up, y'all can have hope too, and get in on that gift, if yall just have a bit of faith.

10. Yall see, it was by faith that them old-timers got called to the holy order set by God.

11. So, it was by faith that Moses got the law laid down. But God, through his Son, paved a way thats even better cause, contendin with faith, its all been made right.

12. If there ain't no faith in folks, God cant work no miracles for em; thats why he didnt show himself til folks had faith.

13. You see, it was Alma and Amuleks faith that knocked that prison down to the ground.

14. And it was Nephi and Lehis faith that switched up the Lamanites, lettin em get baptized with fire and the Holy Ghost.

15. And it was Ammon and his buddies faith that worked some mighty miracles with the Lamanites.

16. Yep, all them miracle folks pulled it off cause of their faith, even before Jesus showed up and after too.

17. And those three disciples were promised they wouldnt see death till after they had faith; they didnt get that promise until their faith kicked in.

18. Ain't nobody done miracles til after they had faith; so first, they had to believe in the Son of God.

19. And there were many whose faith was so strong, even before the good Lord came, they couldnt be held back from the veil, seein things with their own eyes that they had believed in, and boy were they happy!

20. And hey now, we see in this here record that one of em was the brother of Jared; he had such a powerful faith in God that when God pointed his finger, the brother of Jared could see it plain as day cause of the promise he had by faith.

21. And after the brother of Jared saw the Lords finger, due to that promise he had by faith, the Lord just couldnt keep anything hidden from him, showin him everything cause he was no longer kept behind that veil.

22. And its by faith that my ancestors got the promise that these things should be passed down to their kin



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

through the Gentiles; thats why the Lord gave me the word, yeah, even Jesus Christ.

23. So, I told him, Lord, them Gentiles are gonna make fun of us cause we ain't so good at writin; sure, you made us strong in speakin through faith, but writin'? Not so much. You made our people talk a whole lot, thanks to the Holy Ghost you blessed us with.

24. But you also made our writin kinda rough cause our hands aint the best. You see, you didnt give us the strong writin skills like the brother of Jared; he could write like nobody's business, and folks could read what he wrote real good.

25. Our words pack a punch, sure, but it dont show up on paper like it should, so when we try to write, we trip over our own words, and I worry the Gentilesll poke fun at us.

26. And when I spilled that out, the Lord spoke back to me, sayin: Fools will mock, but theyll be the ones cryin.' My grace is just right for the humble, so no ones gonna take advantage of your weakness.

27. If folks come to me, Ill make sure they see their weakness. I give folks weakness so they can stay humble; my grace is good enough for all those who humble themselves before me. If they do that, and have faith, Ill turn their weak stuff into something strong.

28. Look, Ill show them Gentiles their weakness, and Ill show em that faith, hope, and charity are the keys to comin to methe wellspring of all things good and right.

29. And I, Moroni, heard these words and felt comforted, saying: O Lord, let your righteous will be done, cause I know you work with folks according to their faith.

30. For the brother of Jared told that mountain Zerin to moveand it moved. If he hadnt had faith, that mountain wouldnt have budged; so, you work after folks have faith.

31. Thats how you showed yourself to your disciples; after they had faith, and called on your name, you revealed yourself to em with great power.

32. I also remember you said youd built a house for man, even among the mansions of your Father, where folks can have a better hope; so, yall gotta hope, or else you aint gettin in where youve prepared a spot.

33. And again, I remember you said you loved the world so much, even layin down your life for it, just so you

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

could pick it back up again and make room for the children of men.

34. Now, I know that love you have for all mankind is charity; without that charity, folks cant claim their place in the mansions youve got set aside for em.

35. So, I know what you said, that if the Gentiles dont have charity, specially 'cause of our weakness, youll test em, take away their talents, and give those gifts to folks who got more to offer.

36. And I prayed to the Lord, askin him to give grace to the Gentiles, so they could have that charity.

37. And it came to pass that the Lord replied, If they aint got charity, it dont matter to you, youve been faithful, so your garments will be clean. Cause you see your weakness, you will be made strong, even takin a seat in the place Ive got ready in my Fathers mansion.

38. And now I, Moroni,m sayin goodbye to the Gentiles and my brothers whom I love, til we meet up at the judgment seat of Christ, where everyonell see that my clothes aint stained with your blood.

39. And then youll know Ive seen Jesus, and he talked to me face to face, plain and simple, like two folks chattin in their own language about these matters;

40. And Ive only written down a bit cause my writin' ain't so good.

41. And now, Id advise yall to go look for this Jesus that the prophets and apostles scribbled about, so you can have the grace of God the Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost keepin' company with you for all time. Amen.

## **Ether Chapter 13**

1. Well now, lemme tell ya, ol' Ether's chattin' 'bout a New Jerusalem that's fixin' to be built right here in America by the kin of Josephhe's prophesyin, gettin' kicked outta town, writin' down the tales of the Jaredites, and callin' out the end of them Jareditesseems like war's brewin' all over the place.

2. So here I am, Moroni, tryin' to wrap up my story 'bout the folks that got wiped out that I been tellin' ya 'bout.

3. Cause ya see, they just flat-out ignored all of Ether's words; he laid it all out for 'em, from the get-go of mankind; and when the waters pulled back from this here land it turned out to be a real fine piece of property,

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

better than all the rest, a land picked by the Lord himself; so the Lord wanted all yall livin here to serve Him proper.

4. And it was the spot for the New Jerusalem, comin down from the heavens, and the Lord's holy place.

5. Now, Ether he seen the days when Christ showed up, and he started talkin about a New Jerusalem on this here land.

6. He also yapped 'bout the house of Israel, and the old Jerusalem where Lehi hailed from once it got wiped out, it was gonna rise up again, a holy town fer the Lord; so it wasnt exactly new, seein' as it had been around before; but it sure enough was gonna get rebuilt, turn into a holy city for the Lord; and it'd be a place for the house of Israel

7. And that a New Jerusalem was gonna spring up on this here land, fer the leftover kin of Joseph, and there's some clues to back that up.

8. Just like Joseph brought his daddy down to Egypt, he ended up dyin there too; so the Lord, bein' merciful, brought some of Joseph's kin outta Jerusalem, wouldnt let em go to waste, just like He was merciful to Joseph's papa.

9. So then, the leftover folks from Joseph's house done got themselves a spot on this here land; it's gonna be their home; and they gonna build a holy town up for the Lord, like that ol' Jerusalem; and they ain't gonna be confused no more, 'til the end comes when the whole earth's gonna vanish.

10. And there's gonna be a brand new sky and a brand new earth; its gonna be a whole lot like the old one, cept that old one's gone, and everythin gonna be fresh and new.

11. Then comes the New Jerusalem, and bless their hearts, them what lives there, 'cause they wearin white cause of the blood of the Lamb; and theys counted among the leftover folks of Joseph, whos from the house of Israel.

12. Then the old Jerusalems gon show up too; and bless them folks too, cause they been scrubbed clean in the Lambs blood; theys the ones scattered all over and gathered back from all directions, even from the north, and theyre gettin' to claim the promise God made to their forefather, Abraham.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

13. And when all this goes down, it lines right up with the verse that says, them that was first is gonna be last, and them that was last is gonna be first.

14. Now, I was about to scribble some more down, but I was told to hold up; but man, Ethers prophecies were somethin wild; they just tossed him aside like yesterdays trash; so he hid himself away in a rock by daylight, and at night hed sneak out, seein' the stuff that was comin' on the people.

15. As he was snug as a bug in that rock, he kept writein the rest of this here record, watchin' the folks get taken down at night.

16. Would ya believe it, that very same year he got kicked outta the crowd, a big ol war broke out, folks was risin up, strong folks, tryin' to take Coriantumr down with their sneaky plans of evil, which we've talked about.

17. Now Coriantumr, he studied up on all sorts of war stuff and how to outsmart folks; so he went to battle against them out to get him.

18. But he didn't wanna turn from his ways, neither did his pretty sons and daughters; the same goes for Cohors pretty kids; or Corihors littlest ones; no, sir, not a single pretty face on this whole earth was feelin bad 'bout their wrongdoings.

19. So it got to where, in that first year with Ether hidin in that rock, plenty folks got themselves killed by those sneaky crews, tryin to take down Coriantumr so they could grab the throne.

20. Well, thats how it went down, Coriantumr's boys fought a whole lot and bled a whole bunch.

21. Then in year two, the Lord sent word to Ether, tellin him to go and holler at Coriantumr, sayin if hed turn round, along with his whole family, the Lord would hand over the kingdom and spare the folks

22. Otherwise, them folks was gonna get wiped, and only he and no one else in his family was gonna live to see what's comin with the prophecies about another crowd takin the land for their own; plus, Coriantumr was gonna be buried by them; and every single soul except Coriantumr himself was gonna get destroyed.

23. Well, wouldnt ya know it, Coriantumr didn't change his tune, neither did his family, nor the folks; the wars just kept on goin'; they even tried to take out Ether, but he skedaddled again into that rock.

24. Then out popped this fella named Shared, who went up against Coriantumr too; he laid the smackdown on

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

him, so much so that in year three, he had Coriantumr all chained up.

25. But then, in year four, Coriantumrs boys came back and gave Shared a good beatin', takin' the kingdom back for their daddy.

26. Now a war broke out all over the land, every fella with their crew fightin for what they wanted.

27. And there was thieves and just all kinda bad business was goin' down everywhere.

28. Then it happened, Coriantumr got wild mad at Shared, gatherin' up his armies to go against him; they met up in the valley of Gilgal, and oh boy, that battle got real heated.

29. For three days, Shared was throwin punches at him. Finally, Coriantumr got the upper hand and chased him all the way to the plains of Heshlon.

30. Then on them plains, Shared wasnt done and gave Coriantumr another good whup, pushin him right back to the valley of Gilgal.

31. And Coriantumr, bein stubborn, jumped back on Shared again in the valley of Gilgal, where he finally took him down and finished him off.

32. But Shared got a hit in on Coriantumrs thigh, and ol Coriantumr didn't go to fightin for two whole years, while blood was spillin all over the land, and there weren't nobody to stop em.

## **Ether Chapter 14**

1. Well, ysee, the folks wickedness put a mighty curse on the landCoriantumr got himself in a whole heap of trouble fightin against Gilead, then Lib, and then Shizthere was blood and mess all over the place.

2. Now, I reckon it started gettin pretty rough on the land 'cause of all them folks sins, where if a man just laid his tools or sword on the shelf or wherever hed stash it, hed wake up next mornin and itd be gonesuch was the curse all 'round.

3. So every fella clung tight to what was his, holdin onto it with both hands; nobody was borrowin or lendin nothin. And all the men kept their swords ready in their right hands, protectin their stuff, their lives, and their kin.

4. Now, after a couple years went by and Shared kicked the bucket, his brother stood up and challenged

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

Coriantumr. Well, that Coriantumr whipped him and chased him off to the wilds of Akish.

5. Then the brother of Shared went and threw down in the wilderness of Akish; that fight was real fierce, and a whole mess of folks met their maker by the sword.

6. So, Coriantumr laid siege 'round the wilderness, and that brother of Shared decided to sneak out at night to take a stab at Coriantumrs army while they were drunk as skunks.

7. He strolled on over to the land of Moron and took a seat on Coriantumrs throne.

8. Now, Coriantumr stayed with his troops out in the wilderness for two whole years, and let me tell ya, twas a good time for beefin up his army.

9. Gilead, the brother of Shared, he got himself some muscle too, thanks to a whole mess of sneaky schemes.

10. It just so happened that his own high priest went and did him in while he was sittin pretty on his throne.

11. And wouldnt ya know it, one of them secret folks offed him in a sneaky spot and took the crown for himself. His name was Lib, and he was a big fella, taller than any other man around.

12. Now, in Libs first year, Coriantumr waltzed back up to the land of Moron and challenged Lib to a tussle.

13. Well, they fought it out, and Lib got a hit in that wounded Coriantumrs arm; still, Coriantumr's army kept pressin on, which made Lib skedaddle to the seashore.

14. Coriantumr chased after him, and Lib threw down again right there on the beach.

15. Lib got the upper hand, and those folks in Coriantumr's army hightailed it back into the wilderness of Akish.

16. Then Lib went after Coriantumr til he caught him on the plains of Agosh. Coriantumr had herded all his people with him as he ran from Lib in that part of the land.

17. Once he hit them plains, Coriantumr clashed with Lib, and he gave him a whuppin till he kicked the bucket; still, Lib's brother shows up to take on Coriantumr, and that skirmish got real ugly, causin Coriantumr to run again from Libs brothers army.

18. Now, Libs brother went by the name of Shiz. It came to pass that Shiz chased Coriantumr, toppled a bunch of towns, and took out both women and kids, burnin them places down.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

19. Folks around the land grew fearful of Shiz; yessiree, a cry rang out who in the world can stand against Shiz's army? Look at him sweepin the land clean!

20. Then the people started gatherin up in armies all across the land.

21. They split up; some skedaddled to Shiz's side, while others ran to join Coriantumr.

22. The war had been so fierce and the bloodshed so long, you wouldn't see a patch of land that wasn't covered by the dead.

23. It was so fast and furious that no one was left to give them poor souls a proper burial; they just kept marchin from one bloodbath to the next, leavin folksmen, women, and kiddies layin all over for the worms to feast on.

24. And the stench of it spread all over the land; folks couldn't catch a break day or night 'cause of that smell.

25. But Shiz didn't give up chasin Coriantumr; he swore he'd make Coriantumr pay for his brother's blood that got spilled, plus the Lord had told Ether that Coriantumr wouldn't fall by sword.

26. So, here we see the Lord unleashin His wrath on 'em, their wicked ways settin 'em up for sure-fire destruction.

27. Then Shiz followed Coriantumr eastward to the coast, and they battled for three straight days down there.

28. The destruction in Shiz's camp was so bad that folks started gettin scared and ran from Coriantumr's soldiers; they rushed to the land of Corihor, clearin out the folks who wouldn't join 'em.

29. They set up their tents in the valley of Corihor, and Coriantumr threw his tents up in the valley of Shurr. Now, Shurr was close to hill Comnor, so Coriantumr rallied his troops on Comnor and blew a trumpet for Shiz's army to come on out for a fight.

30. Well, they came runnin, but got pushed back again; then they tried a second time and got sent packin again. By the third time, things got real heated.

31. Then Shiz landed a blow on Coriantumr, givin him some nasty wounds; Coriantumr, bleedin bad, fainted and got carried off like he was a goner.

32. Now, the number of folks lostmen, women, and kidson both sides was so high that Shiz called his people

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

off from chasin Coriantumrs army; so, they all headed back to their camp.

### **Ether Chapter 15**

1. Well now, a whole mess of folks from the Jaredites got themselves slain in a right nasty battle Shiz and Coriantumr rounded up everyone for a showdown And wouldnt ya know it, the Spirit of the Lord just up and quit tryin to help em That Jaredite nation was all but wiped out Only Coriantumr was left standin.

2. So, after Coriantumr got himself patched up from them wounds, he started thinkin bout the words old Ether had laid on him.

3. He realized that nearly two million of his folks had bit the dust from the sword, and his heart was feelin heavy; yep, nearly two million strong men went down, along with their wives and little ones.

4. He started feelin real sorry for the wrongs he had done; he remembered those words the prophets had preached, and every single one of 'em was comin true, and his soul was just heavy and wouldnt let up.

5. And it came to pass that he penned a letter to Shiz, askin him to show some mercy on the folks, and hed just go ahead and give up his crown for the lives of em.

6. Well, when Shiz got that letter, he fired back his own, sayin if Coriantumr would throw in the towel, hed use his own sword to take him out but would spare the people.

7. Now, it came to pass that folks werent repentin for their wrongdoings; and Coriantumrs people was all fired up at Shizs folks, while Shizs addled folks was just as mad at Coriantumrs mob; so, Shizs gang was itchin for a fight with Coriantumrs bunch.

8. And when Coriantumr saw the bus was about to leave without him, he hightailed it once more from Shiz's folk.

9. Then he found himself at the big waters of Ripliancum, which folks say means really big, so they set up camp there; and Shiz camped out nearby too, and come morning, they was all ready to rumble.

10. And wouldnt ya know it, they had themselves a mighty rough scrap, and Coriantumr got himself hurt again, o course he fainted from losin all that blood.

11. And it came to pass that Coriantumrs army pushed on Shizs boys so hard they had em retreatin; they went



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

runnin south and camped at a spot called Ogath.

12. Then Coriantumrs army set up camp by good ol hill Ramah; thats the very hill where my dad Mormon stashed those sacred records for the Lord.

13. And it came to pass that they gathered up all the folks left on the ground who hadnt been killed off, 'cept for Ether.

14. Then Ether watched all the goins on; he saw that all those folks hopin for Coriantumr were crowdin round his army, and the ones rootin for Shiz was flockin to his side too.

15. So, for four long years, they were rustlin up all the folks who was still breathin, tryin' to get every last one of em on their side and gatherin all the strength they could muster.

16. And it came to pass that when they all came together, everyone heading to their own army with their kinmen, women, and younguns all loadin up with weapons for war, sportin shields and breastplates and the whole bitthey marched against each other ready for a tussle; and they fought all day long without a winner.

17. And when night fell, they was all tuckered out and headed back to camp; after settlin down, they started a howlin and cryin for all the folks lost in battle; their wails echoed across the land louder than a pack of coyotes.

18. And it came to pass that come mornin, they were back at it again, and boy, what a tough day that was; but still, they didnt get the win, and when night fell once more, their cries and laments filled the air for all the ones they lost.

19. Then Coriantumr wrote Shiz another letter, askin him to not come at em again, but to just take the throne and spare the lives of his folks.

20. But lo and behold, the Spirit of the Lord had up and stopped tryin to help em, and ol Satan had a grip on their hearts; they was just too hard-headed and blind to see they was on the road to ruin, and they charged into battle again.

21. And it came to pass they fought all day long, and when darkness rolled in, they dropped down for a snooze on their swords.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

22. And the next day they fought till the stars twinkled back up in the night sky.
23. And when night rolled around again, they was all fired up and angry, like a fella had too much moonshine; and they went back to sleep on them swords.
24. And the next day, they dove back into battle; but when darkness set in, all but fifty-two of Coriantumrs fell, and sixty-nine of Shiz's went down too.
25. And it came to pass that they snoozed on their swords that night, and come mornin, they was back at it again, swingin their swords and shields with all their might that whole day.
26. And as the night set in, there was thirty-two of Shiz's folk, and twenty-seven of Coriantumr's still standin.
27. And it came to pass that they munched on some grub, got some sleep, and prepared for death comin on the morrow. And boy, were they a sight to behold, big and strong as an ox.
28. And it came to pass they fought for three long hours, and finally fainted from all the blood theyd lost.
29. And it came to pass that when Coriantumr's boys had muster enough strength to even move, they was fixin to run for their lives; but wouldnt you know it, Shiz got back up, and his men too, swearin in his anger that hed take Coriantumr down or die tryin.
30. So, he chased em down, and come morning, he caught up with em again, and they was back at it with swords. It came to pass that when the dust settled, only Coriantumr and Shiz was left standin, and Shiz had fainted from all that blood loss.
31. And it came to pass that when Coriantumr rested a moment on his sword, he took a swing and lopped off Shizs head.
32. And it came to pass that after he did that, Shiz raised himself up for just a second, then fell; he struggled to breathe a bit longer, and then he was gone.
33. And it came to pass that Coriantumr ended up on the ground, lookin like he was out of the game.
34. Then the Lord spoke to Ether, tellin him to get a move on. So he did, and saw that everything the Lord said had come to pass; and he finished up his record (though he didnt write down a hundredth of it) and hid em in a way that the folks of Limhi could find.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

35. Now the last words left by Ether go like this: Whether the Lord wants me to be taken up, or whether I gotta face what Hes got in store for me here, dont matter none, as long as Im saved in His kingdom. Amen.

### **Moroni**

#### **Moroni Chapter 1**

1. Well, Im Moroni, and after finishin up that whole story about Jareds folks, I figured Id be done writin. But shoot, I aint kickin the bucket just yet, so Im keepin my name under wraps round them Lamanites, cause they might just wanna do me in.

2. Now listen here, their fights are hotter than a pepper sprout, and cause they cant stand each other, theyll take out any Nephite who wont renounce Christ right quick.

3. As for me, Moroni, I aint backin down from Jesus; so Im just wanderin round wherever I can to stay alive and kickin.

4. So, Im tossin down a few more words, even though I thought Id be done; guess Im not write-off quite yet. Im hopin these bits might do some good for my kin, the Lamanites, one of these days, if its Gods plan.

#### **Moroni Chapter 2**

1. Well, lemme tell ya, Jesus done gave those twelve Nephite fellers the power to hand out the Holy Ghost like it was candy. 'Round A.D. 40121.

2. Now, heres what Jesus told 'em, the ones he picked out, while he laid them hands on 'em

3. He called 'em by name, sayin': Yall gonna be askin the Father in my name, real powerful like; and once ya do that, youll get the power to lay your hands on folks, and youll be givin' em the Holy Ghost; and youll do it in my name, 'cause thats how my apostles roll.

4. So, Jesus said all this to em when he first showed up; the crowd didnt catch on, but those disciples sure did; and all the folks they laid their hands on? Well, they got the Holy Ghost right then and there.

#### **Moroni Chapter 3**

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

1. Well now, them elders get together and lay hands on folks to make 'em priests and teachers. 'Bout A.D. 401 to 421, yknow?
2. Way them disciples, callin' themselves the elders o' the church, went 'bout ordaining them priests and teachers
3. First off, they got down on their knees and prayed to the Big Man upstairs in Jesus' name, then proceeded to lay their hands on 'em, sayin':
4. "In Jesus' name, Im ordaining ya as a priest (or if yer a teacher, reckon Im makin ya a teacher) to go out and preach about turnin' away from sins and finding forgiveness through Jesus Christ, holdin' tight to your faith in His name till the very end. Amen."
5. And thats just how they went 'bout ordaining those priests and teachers, based on the talents and callings Gods given to folks; they did it all by the power of the Holy Ghost that was workin' in em.

## **Moroni Chapter 4**

1. Well, let me break it down for ya:
2. The way them elders and priests go 'bout servin' up the good ol' bread that stands for Christs flesh and blood to the folks at church is laid out real nice-like; they do it just like Jesus told 'em to, so were certain its done right; and that elder or priest, he went on and served it up
3. And they all got down on their knees with the congregation, prayin' to the Father in Jesus's name, sayin':
4. Hey God, the big ol Eternal Father up there, were askin ya, in the name of your Son, Jesus Christ, to bless this bread and make it special for all yall who eat it; so they can chow down thinkin bout your Son's body, and promise ya, O God, the big ol Eternal Father, that theyre fixin to take on your Sons name, always keep Him in mind, and stick to the commandments He set forth for 'em, so they can always have His Spirit hangin' around with 'em. Amen.

## **Moroni Chapter 5**

1. Well now, let me tell ya how they handlin' that sacramental wine, y'hear? This here's what went down:

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

2. They grabbed that cup and said,

3. Hey there, Almighty Father up above, were askin ya, in the name of Your boy, Jesus Christ, to bless this here wine for all those folks sippin' on it, so they remember the blood He shed for 'em; so they can show ya, oh Lord, that theyre keepin' Him in their hearts and always thinkin' bout Him, so they can have His Spirit hangin out with em. Amen.

### **Moroni Chapter 6**

1. Well now, when it comes to baptism, let me tell ya, folks whore truly sorry for their mess-ups get dunked and welcomed into the foldmembers of the church who really mean it get a clean slatemeetings run smooth-like cause the Holy Ghost is in charge. This heres about A.D. 401 to 421.

2. Now, I gotta say a little somethin bout baptism. Ya see, them elders, priests, and teachers got baptized, and it aint like they just jumped in there without showin they was readyhad to have somethin to show they was worth it.

3. They didnt let just anyone get baptized, neither. Folks had to come in with a broken heart and a real contrite spirit, and they had to tell the church they was genuinely sorry for all their sins.

4. Nope, nobody got dunked unless they took on the name of Christ, swearin' up and down they was gonna serve Him til the end.

5. Once they got baptized and cleaned up real good by the power of the Holy Ghost, they joined the bunch known as the church of Christ; their names were written down so folks could remember em and feed em the good word of God, keepin em on the straight and narrow, ever watchful and prayin, leanin on the good deeds of Christ, whos the start and the finish of their faith.

6. The church folks gathered together a whole lot to fast and pray, takin time to chitchat bout their souls well-bein.

7. And they sure met up often to break bread and share some wine, all in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

8. They were serious bout keepin sin outta their midst, and if anyone was found gettin into trouble, three witnesses from the church would put em on blast before the elders. If they didnt change their ways and

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

confess, their names got scratched off the list, and they werent counted among Christs people no more.

9. But any time they turned around and asked for forgiveness, really meanin it, they got a pass.

10. And the church sure held their meetings guided by the Spirit, full of the Holy Ghosts power; whenever the Holy Ghost led em to preach, encourage, pray, plead, or sing, you bet they followed that lead.

### **Moroni Chapter 7**

1. Well now, an invites bein thrown out for yall to come chill in the Lords restYa better pray with a real heartThe Spirit of Christ helps folks figure out what's good and what's notThe devil's tryin to get folks to turn their backs on Christ and do bad stuffThe prophets let us know Christ's cominWith faith, miracles happen and angels show upFolks oughta be hopin for eternal life and hold tight to love.

2. Now, Im Moroni, and I gotta jot down a few words from my dad, Mormon. He talked a lot bout faith, hope, and charity; thats how he rolled with folks when he was teachin em in the synagogue they built for worship.

3. Now, listen up, my dear brothers; its by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and His holy will, cause of the gift He gave me, that I get to chat with yall right now.

4. So, I wanna speak to yall who are part of the church, who follow Christ peacefully, and have enough hope to step on into the Lord's rest from now til yall be chillin with Him in heaven.

5. And I reckon I see how yall are cause ya walkin' peacefully with folks round ya.

6. Cause I remember the word of God sayin ya can tell em by their deeds; if their doin good stuff, then theyre good folks too.

7. Cause listen here, God said a feller cant be bad and do good; if hes givin a gift or prayin to God, and aint doin it with a real heart, it aint worth a hill of beans.

8. That there ain't countin for righteousness neither.

9. And if a fella is bad and gives a gift, hes doin it all grudgy-like; so it counts for nothin more than if he just kept that gift for himself. So God sees him as bad.

10. And its the same if a man prays without a real heart behind it; yep, it dont profit him a thing, cause God dont take none of that.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

11. So remember, a bad fella cant do good; he aint gonna give a good gift neither.
12. Cause you know what? A sour well ain't gonna give up good water; and a good well can't drip out bad water. So a fella servin the devil can't follow Christ; and if hes followin Christ, he cant be servin the devil.
13. So, all good things come from God, and all the bad stuff? Yep, that comes from the devil; cause hes against God, always fightin, persuading folks to sin, doin evil all the time.
14. But lookie here, whats from God invites folks to do good all the time; so anything pushin to do good, love God, and serve Him, thats inspired by God.
15. So, my dear brothers, be careful not to call the bad stuff good or think that the good stuff is from the devil.
16. Cause Ill tell ya, yall got the right to judge, so ya can tell the good from the bad; and how to tells just as clear as day is from night.
17. Cause the Spirit of Christs given to every man, so he can figure out the good from the bad; now Im showin ya the way to judge; anything invitin to do good and get ya to believe in Christ, thats all from the power and gift of Christ; so ya can know for sure its from God.
18. But anything pushin folks to act bad, not believe in Christ, deny Him, and not serve God, now that's easy to spotthe devils at work there; he dont persuade no one to do good, not even a single one; neither do his angels, and neither do folks who give themselves to him.
19. And now, my brothers, since ya know the light that helps ya judgethis light bein' the light of Christmake sure yall dont judge wrong, cause with whatever judgment ya use, thats how ya gonna be judged too.
20. So Im askin' ya kindly, brothers, to look closely in the light of Christ so ya can figure out good from bad; and if ya grab hold of every good thing and dont judge it wrong, yall will surely be children of Christ.
21. And now, brothers, how in tarnation can ya hold on to every good thing?
22. Let me get to that faith I was talkin bout; and Im fixin to tell ya how you can grab onto all the good stuff.
23. Cause God, knowin all things, from forever to forever, sent angels to help out us folks down here, showin' us about the comin of Christ; and in Christ, every good things gonna come.
24. And God let the prophets know, speakin right from His own mouth, that Christ was gonna show up.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

25. And there were lots of ways He showed us good things to folks; all good stuff is from Christ; otherwise, folks wouldve fallen, and no good could come to em.

26. So through angels servin and every word comin from Gods mouth, men started to have faith in Christ; and by faith, they were able to grab onto all the good stuff; and thats how it was till Christ showed up.

27. After He came, folks were saved by faith in His name; and by faith, they became the children of God. And just like Christ lives, He told our ancestors: Whatever ya ask the Father in my name, if its good, and ya believe youll get it, then its gonna happen for ya.

28. So, my dear brothers, did miracles fade away cause Christ went up to heaven and sat down by the Father, claimin' His mercy rights over the kids of men?

29. Cause Hes done what the law requires, and He claims all who believe in Him; and those whove got faith in Him will cling to every good thing; so Hes fightin for the cause of the kids of men; and Hes livin forever up in the heavens.

30. And since He did this, my dear brothers, have miracles stopped? Im tellin ya no; angels havent stopped servin folks down here neither.

31. Cause theyre stuck to Him, servin how He tells em, showin up for folks with strong faith and a steady mind in all kinds of godliness.

32. Their job is to call folks to repent, and to do whats required in the Fathers covenants, which He made with us folks, preparin the way by tellin the word of Christ to the chosen ones from the Lord, so they can testify about Him.

33. And by doin' that, the Lord Gods gettin things ready so the rest of folks might have faith in Christ, so the Holy Ghost can set up shop in their hearts, and thats how the Father brings about the covenants He made with us.

34. And Christ said: If ya got faith in me, ya can do whatever's good in me.

35. And He said: Repent, all yall around the world, and come to me, and get baptized in my name, and have faith in me, so ya can be saved.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

36. So now, my beloved brothers, if what Ive been sayin is true, Gods gonna show ya, with power and great glory come the last day, that its true. So, if its true, has the day of miracles come to a close?

37. Or have angels stopped showin up for the kids of men? Or has He held back the Holy Ghost from em? Or will He, until time ends, or the earths still standin, or theres one human left on this here planet to be saved?

38. Im tellin ya, no way; cause its by faith that miracles happen; and its by faith that angels show up and serve folks; so if that stuff's stopped, woe be unto the children of men, cause its cause of their doubtin and its all for nothin.

39. Cause no man can be saved, accordin to Christs words, unless hes got faith in His name; so if those thingsve stopped, then faiths stop too; and thats a nasty state for man, cause its like there aint been no redemption.

40. But hey now, my beloved brothers, I reckon better things of ya, cause I see that you got faith in Christ cause of your gentle spirits; if you didnt have faith in Him, then yall wouldnt fit to be counted with the folks of His church.

41. And again, my beloved brothers, I wanna talk to ya bout hope. How in the world can ya get to faith, less you been hopein?

42. And what is it yall hopin for? Now, Im tellin ya, ya can have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of His resurrection, to be raised to eternal life, thanks to your faith in Him, like the promise says.

43. So if a mans got faith, he sure needs to have hope; without faith, there aint no hope to be had.

44. And again, listen up, Im tellin ya, he cant have faith and hope, less hes gentle and easy to get along with.

45. If not, then his faith and hope is just worthless cause none are good in Gods eyes, less theys meek and humble; and if a man stays meek and humble and admits by the Holy Ghost's power that Jesus is Christ, he gotta have charity; if not, he aint worth a dime; so he better have charity.

46. And charity takes its time, is kind, dont get jealous, is standin' tall and not all puffed up, dont look for its own way, ain't easily stirred up, dont think bad thoughts, and dont celebrate wrongdoings, but gets happy over the truth, withstands all things, believes all things, hopes for all things, and endures all things.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

47. So, my beloved brothers, if ya aint got charity, yous nothin;cause charity dont ever fail. So hold tight to charity, which is the top of em all, cause all things gotta fail

48. But charity is the true love of Christ, and it lasts forever; and whoevers got it when the last day rolls around is gonna be just fine.

49. So, my dear brothers, pray to the Father with all your hearts energy, that ya might be filled with this love Hes givin to all who truly follow His Son, Jesus Christ; that ya might be sons of God; that when He shows up, well be like Him, cause well see Him just as He is; that we might have hope; that we might be cleaned up just like He is pure. Amen.

### **Moroni Chapter 8**

1. Well now, the dunkin' of them little kiddos is a downright wicked shameThem little ones are all full of life in Christ 'cause of the AtonementYa got faith, turnin' from sin, bein' humble and sweet of heart, takin' in the Holy Ghost, and stickin' it out till the end leads yall to salvation. Somewhere 'round A.D. 401-21.

2. A letter from my daddy, Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was scribbled not long after I got my call to preach. And heres how he put it down for me:

3. My dear son, Moroni, Im just tickled pink that your Lord Jesus Christs been thinkin on ya, and called you to do His holy work.

4. Im thinkin of ya all the time in my prayers, keepin' ya in my heart as I talk to God the Father in the name of His Holy Child, Jesus, hopin' Hell keep you hangin' on to your faith 'til the end.

5. And now, my boy, I gotta talk to ya about somethin' thats weighin' real heavy on my heart; it bothers me somethin' fierce that yall are arguin over things.

6. Cause if'n I learned anything true, theres been some squabblin' lastin among yall 'bout dunkin' them little ones.

7. And right now, son, I want ya to get after it hard, to fix this big ol mess; thats why Im writin' you this letter.

8. Right after I caught wind of all this, I asked the Lord what I oughta do. And the Lord spoke to me through the Holy Ghost, sayin:

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

9. Pay attention to what Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God, has to say. I come into this world not to call the good folks, but the sinners 'round here to turn from their ways; the whole ain't needin' a doc, only them that's sick; so listen here, little children are good as gold, 'cause they aint done no wrong; so the curse of Adam dont stick to 'em in me, which means it aint got no hold on 'em; and that whole law of circumcison? Well, thats gone with me.

10. And thats how the Holy Ghost made the word of God clear to me; so my dear son, I know its a downright joke before God if yall go on baptizin them little kids.

11. Now listen up, Im tellin yall this you oughta preach repentance and baptism to them who know right from wrong and can make that choice; yeah, teach them parents that they gotta repent, get dunked, and humble themselves just like their little ones, and theyll be saved along with their kids.

12. And them little ones dont need to repent or get baptized. Now see here, baptisms for turnin from sin to keepin the commandments and wash away the sins.

13. But them kiddos are alive in Christ since the beginning of time; if that werent true, then Gods pickin favorites and changin' His mind; how many little kids passed on without gettin baptized!

14. So if them little ones cant be saved without baptism, well then they must be headed straight to a never-endin hell.

15. Listen here, Im tellin you, anyone thinkin them little kiddos need baptism is sittin in a pot of bitterness and tangled up in sin; cause he aint got no faith, hope, or love; so if he dies with them thoughts, hes headin down to hell.

16. Its downright awful to think that God saves one kid 'cause they got baptized, and another's gonna be lost 'cause they ain't.

17. Shame on them that twist the paths of the Lord this way, for they gonna be gone unless they change their tune. Im speakin boldly here, got Gods authority behind me; and I ain't scared of what man might do, 'cause perfect love kicks fear to the curb.

18. Im filled up with charity, which means everlasting love; so all kids are just the same to me; I love them

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

little ones with a love thats just perfect; theyre all equal and share in salvation.

19. For I know God aint playin favorites, neither is He one to be wishy-washy; Hes steadfast from all time to all time.

20. Little ones cant repent; so its plain ole wicked to deny 'em the pure love of God, cause theyre all livin in Him by His mercy.

21. And anyone sayin them little kiddos need baptism is turnin their back on the mercies of Christ and dismissin the Atonement and the power of His redemption.

22. Woe to them, cause theyre danglin close to death, hell, and a heap of sufferin. Im sayin it straight up; God told me to. You best pay attention to 'em or theyll be against ya at the judgment when you meet Christ.

23. For see here, all them little kiddos are alive in Christ, just like all them who ain't livin' by the law. The power of redemption hits all them who dont follow no law; and if ya aint condemned, or holdin no blame, ya cant repent; and for folks like that, baptism dont mean a thing

24. Cause its just mockery to God, denyin the mercies of Christ, the power of His Holy Spirit, and leanin' on dead works.

25. Now listen, my son, this here aint right; repentance is for them under condemnation and feelin the weight of broken law.

26. And the first step in repentin is gettin dunked; and baptism comes by havin faith to follow the rules; and followin the rules brings the wash away of sins.

27. And the wash away of sins leads to bein' meek and humble of heart; and cause of that meekness and lowliness comes the visit from the Holy Ghost, which Comforter fills ya with hope and perfect love, and that sort of love sticks around through prayer, until the end comes, when all the saints get to hang out with God.

28. Now, my son, Ill drop you another letter if I dont head out soon to face them Lamanites. Just look at the pride of this here nation, or them Nephites people, its been their downfall unless they change their ways.

29. Pray for 'em, my boy, that they find repentance. But Im worried the Spirits givin' up on em; and in this part of the world, theyre tryin to shut down all power and authority from God; and they got the Holy Ghost on the

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

run.

30. And after turnin their back on such great knowledge, my son, theyre bound to come to an end, just like the prophecies spoken by the prophets, and our Saviors own words.

31. Goodbye now, my son, till I write again, or until we meet up once more. Amen.

### **Moroni Chapter 9**

1. The second epistle of Mormon to his son Moroni.

2. Comprising chapter 9.

3. Well, my dear boy, Im writin ya again so ya know Im still kickin; but Im fixin to share some heavy stuff with ya.

4. Now listen here, Ive had a rough time goin against them Lamanites, and we didnt come out on top; and poor Archeantus didnt make it, and neither did Luram and Emron; shoot, we lost a heap of good folks.

5. And now, son, Im real worried that them Lamanites might just wipe us out; they aint budging on the repentin, and ol Satan keeps stirrin them up to fight each other.

6. Ive been at it with them day in and day out; when Im preachin Gods word all fiery-like, they get all shook up and mad; but if I tone it down, they just harden their hearts, and thats why Im scared the Spirit of the Lord aint fussin with them no more.

7. Its like theyre so fired up with hate that they dont even fear death no more; theyve lost any kinda love for one another, always thirstin for blood and vengeance.

8. Now, my dear son, despite their hard-headedness, we gotta keep workin hard; cause if we quit, well be in a heap of trouble; we got work to do in this ol body of ours, so we can take down the enemy of all thats good, and rest our weary souls in Gods kingdom.

9. Now I gotta tell ya bout what folks are sufferin. From what I learned from Amoron, them Lamanites got a whole mess of prisoners from the tower of Sherrizah; and let me tell ya, they got men, women, and kiddies.

10. Them Lamanites done killed the husbands and daddies of those women and kids; and they feedin the women the meat of their own husbands, and the kids their own papas; and they only give em just a smidge of

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

water to drink.

11. And even with this terrible mess the Lamanites is makin, it aint as bad as what our folks are doin in Moriantum. Cause look here, theyve taken many a Lamanite gal prisoner; and after takin away what was most precious to em, which is their virtue and purity

12. And then they go and murder em in a bone-chillin way, torturin their bodies till they meet their end; and once theyre done, they chow down on their flesh like wild animals, cause their hearts are stone cold; doin it all as some kinda twisted show of bravery.

13. Oh my dear son, how can a people like this, with no manners or decency

14. (And it wasnt even too many years ago when they was a civil and happy bunch)

15. But oh my son, how can a crowd like this, findin joy in so much filth

16. How can we reckon that Gods gonna hold off on judgment against us?

17. Look here, my hearts cryin: Woe is unto this people. Come on down in judgment, O God, and dont let their sins, and wickedness, and foul deeds be seen by you!

18. And again, my son, theres a whole lotta widows and their daughters still stuck in Sherrizah; and what little food the Lamanites didnt take, well, the army of Zenephi scooped that up too, leavin them to scramble around lookin for scraps; and a lotta old women are just givin up and dyin along the way.

19. And the army Im with is all weak; and them Lamanites is sittin right in between Sherrizah and me; and anyone whos run off to join Aarons army has fallen prey to their awful cruelty.

20. Oh, the wickedness of my people! They got no sense of order or mercy. Im just a man, and Im only as strong as any ol man, and I cant keep givin orders any longer.

21. And theyve gotten strong in their twisted ways; theyre all the same, merciless, with no regard for age; they take pleasure in everything cept for whats good; and the pain our women and children are feelin all over this land is just too much to bear; aint no words can say it, nor can it be wrote down.

22. Now, my son, I ain't gonna dwell on this horrible picture no more. You know the wickedness of this people; you know theyre without principles and feelins; and their sin is worse than the Lamanites.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

23. Son, I cant recommend em to God less He might strike me down.

24. But listen, my son, I commend you to God, and Im puttin my trust in Christ that youll be saved; and Im prayin to God that Hell let you live long enough to see His people come back to Him, or face total destruction; cause I know theyre fixin to be lost if they dont repent and turn back to Him.

25. And if they go down, itll be just like what happened to the Jaredites, all cause of their stubborn hearts, always seekin blood and revenge.

26. And if the worst does happen, we know a whole lotta our brothers have jumped ship to the Lamanites, and even more will likely follow; so go ahead and jot down a few things, if youre still around when I may not be seein you again; but I sure hope to see you soon; I got some sacred records to hand over to you.

27. My boy, stay strong in Christ; dont let the heavy stuff Ive written get ya down or wear ya out; but may Christ lift ya up, and may His sufferin and death, and showin His body to our forefathers, and His mercy and patience, and the hope of His glory and eternal life, find a cozy spot in your mind forever.

28. And may the grace of God the Father, who sits high up in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, whos sittin right next to His power, till everything bows down to Him, be with you and stay forever. Amen.

## **Moroni Chapter 10**

1. A testimony of the Book of Mormon comes by the power of the Holy GhostFolks get them Spirit gifts when they stay faithfulSpiritual gifts are always hangin around faithMoronis words talkin from the dirtCome on over to Christ, get all fixed up in Him, and clean up your souls. 'Bout A.D. 421.

2. Well now, I reckon I, Moroni, writin' what I think is right, and I'm writin' to my kin, the Lamanites; and I want 'em to know that it's been more than four hundred and twenty years since that sign got given about Christ comin.

3. And here I am, sealing up these records after I say a few things to you.

4. Now listen up, I wanna urge ya that when ya read this here stuff, if its Gods wisdom that ya should take a look at it, you better remember how kind the Lords been to folks since Adam was around all the way up til you get these words, and think on it real hard in your hearts.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

5. And when you get hold of this here, Id urge ya to ask God, the Eternal Father, in Jesus' name, if these things aint true; and if you ask with a heartfelt soul, really meaning it, havin faith in Christ, Hell show you the truth of it, through the power of the Holy Spirit.
6. And with that Holy Spirit, you can know the truth 'bout all things.
7. Now whatevers good is just and true; so, nothin thats good turns its back on Christ, but gives a tip o' the hat that Hes real.
8. And you can know He is, by the power of the Holy Spirit; so Id implore ya not to deny the power of God; Hes workin through folks according to their faith, the same today, tomorrow, and forever.
9. And once more, I urge yall, my brothers, dont turn away the gifts from God, 'cause theyre plenty; and they all come from the same God. Theres all sorts of ways these gifts get handed out; but its the same God doin it all; given through the Spirit of God to folks, to help 'em out.
10. For see here, one person gets to share the wisdom of the Word;
11. And anothers teachin the knowledge by that same Spirit;
12. And anothers got a heap of faith; and anothers got them healings by that same Spirit;
13. And again, theres another that gets to work mighty miracles;
14. And then theres another, prophesyin' about all sorts of stuff;
15. And again, there's one seein angels and them spirits helpin out;
16. And again, theres another that speaks in a whole mess of languages;
17. And once more, another gets to interpret those languages and different tongues.
18. And all these gifts come from the Spirit of Christ; and theyre given to each person as they can take it.
19. And I tell ya, my dear brothers, remember that every good gift comes from Christ.
20. And I wanna remind ya that Hes the same yesterday, today, and forever; and all them gifts I mentioned, the spiritual ones, ain't gonna fade away, long as the worlds around, 'cept for the doubt of folks.
21. So, there's gotta be faith; and if theres faith, then theres gotta be hope; and if theres hope, theres gotta be charity.



## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

22. And if ya aint got charity, then ya cant be saved in God's kingdom; and if ya ain't got faith, you aint gonna be saved there neither; and if ya got no hope, well, you ain't gonna make it either.

23. And if you aint got hope, then you sure are gonna be in despair; and despair comes 'round 'cause of sin.

24. And Jesus said to our folks: If ya got faith, you can do all sorts of things I need done.

25. And now Im talkin to everyone far and wide if the day comes when the power and gifts of God are no more among ya, itll be 'cause of doubt.

26. And woe betide the children of men if thats how it is; 'cause there wont be no good folks left, not one. If theres just one good person among you, theyre doin it through the power and gifts of God.

27. And woe to them who toss all these aside and die, 'cause theyll pass away in their sins, and they ain't gonna be saved in God's kingdom; and I say this cause Christ said it; I ain't lyin.

28. And I wanna urge you to keep these things in mind; 'cause the time's comin quick when youll see I aint lying, 'cause youll see me at Gods judgment bar; and the Lord Gods gonna ask ya: Didnt I tell ya my words through this man, like someone hollerin from the dead, like speakin outta the dust?

29. Im sayin all this to fulfill the prophecies. And look, theyre gonna come straight from the mouth of the everlasting God; and His words are gonna keep passin down through the generations.

30. And Gods gonna show ya that what I wrote is the real deal.

31. And one more time, I urge ya to come to Christ, grab on to every good gift, and dont you dare touch the bad stuff, nor anything dirty.

32. And get up and shake off the dust, O Jerusalem; yeah, and put on your finest clothes, O daughter of Zion; and shore up your stakes and spread your borders wide forever, so you won't be ashamed anymore, that the promises of the Eternal Father He made to ya, O house of Israel, can come true.

33. Yeah, come to Christ, and get all fixed up in Him, and ditch all that ungodly stuff; and if you turn away from that ungodliness, and love God with all your heart, mind, and strength, then His grace is enough for ya, 'cause through His grace, you can be perfect in Christ; and if you get that grace from God, you cant deny His power.

## **The Book of Mormon - southern**

34. And if youre perfect in Christ by Gods grace, and dont deny His power, then youre made holy in Christ by Gods grace, through the blood of Christ, which is in the Fathers covenant for the washing away of your sins, so you become clean as a whistle.

35. And now Ill take my leave. Im fixin to rest in Gods paradise, 'til my spirit and body get back together, and Im brought forth mighty through the air, to meet you up at the sweet judgment seat of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of all the livin and the dead. Amen.

36. The End